This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ Make non-commercial use of the files We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ Maintain attribution The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ Keep it legal Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

(Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.)
CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I-IV

(ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S EDITION)

REÉDITED BY

JAMES B. GREENOUGH

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGÉ AND M. GRANT DANIELL

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
PREFACE

The editors have undertaken the task of reediting entirely the well-known Allen and Greenough Caesar to satisfy the ever-increasing demands of modern secondary education. In view of the improvements lately made in the text of Caesar by Meusel and others, they have changed the readings in many places, following chiefly Meusel's as almost a new textus receptus. Most of the changes will at once commend themselves. The editors have in general been conservative in regard to spelling, especially the new spelling of old Gallic names, feeling that much that is proposed of that kind as yet lacks certainty. But they have adopted the spelling -is for the accusative plural of i-stems in accordance with the prevailing usage. They have allowed themselves full liberty in enriching the notes as to grammar, exegesis, and subject-matter. They have added very full suggestions for parallel reading, and have spared no pains to enrich the study of this famous piece of literature. The treatises on military affairs and other introductory matters have been rewritten and brought out of the notes under one head, so that a pupil may have a chance to gain some general information before he begins to read. Special attention has been given to indirect discourse, the bugbear of Latin education, and throughout the earlier books the direct form has been printed in full in the notes, that any teacher who desires may
begin either the first or second book and avoid at the start the enormous difficulties of the indirect form. They have endeavored to put in every kind of illustration that might tend to make the story more real to the pupil's imagination.

In order to encourage pupils to associate words together for acquiring a vocabulary they have made a large number of groups of words containing the same elements without introducing the vague notion of roots. It is hoped that these may be found convenient to learn by heart, at least in some measure. Attention is also called to the foot-notes which have been added to the text; these refer backward to some previous use of the same word. The editors have not thought it desirable to give any pronouncing vocabulary of proper names, as generally these may be pronounced in the Latin manner, except those few that are familiar enough to have become English words, like Caesar and Cicero, which of course must be pronounced like English. The vocabulary has been enriched by a fuller insertion of idioms, and the etymological matter has been made clearer without sacrificing its peculiar character.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>List of Maps and Illustrations</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTRODUCTION:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. Life of Cæsar</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Roman Military Affairs</td>
<td>xxix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Gaul and the Gauls</td>
<td>xlv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. The Britons</td>
<td>lii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. The Germans</td>
<td>liii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. The Campaigns in Gaul</td>
<td>liv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Directions for Reading</td>
<td>lv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book I</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book II</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book III</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book IV</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Groups of Related Words</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Illustrations</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIG. 2. — CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(Bust in the Naples Museum.)
LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Babelon. — Description historique et chronologique des Monnaies de la République romaine. 1885.
Baumeister. — Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums. 1885-88.
Bertrand and Perrot. — Revue archéologique, 3e Série, Tome X.
Cohen. — Description générale des Monnaies de la République romaine, etc. 1857.
Fleury. — Antiquités et Monuments du département de l’Aisne, etc. 1877-78.
von Göler. — Caesar’s Gallischer Krieg, etc. 1856.
Guhl and Kohner. — The Life of the Greeks and Romans, described from Antique Monuments. 1875.
Head. — A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients. (Br. Mus.) 1881.
Jenfrain. — Essai d’Interprétation de Types de quelques Médailles muettes, émises par les Celtes-Gaulois. 1846.
von Kampen. — XV ad Caesaris de Bell. Gall. Commentarios Tabulae. 1879.
Lindenschmidt. — Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres wahrend der Kaiserzeit, etc. 1882.
Oehler. — Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bell. Gall. 1890.
Rheinhard. — C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bell. Gall. 1896.
Stoffel. — Guerre de César et d’Arioviste. 1890.

FIG.

1. Map of Gaul.
2. Caesar. Bust in the Naples Museum . . . . . . . vi
3. Campaign map of B.C. 58 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1
4. Two coins of Caesar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: Æneas with Anchises and the palladium. CAESAR. (2) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy and captives. CAESAR. Head . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1
5. Pas de l’Écluse (looking down stream). Photograph . . . 5
6. Map of Helvetia. Oehler . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Junction of the Rhône and Saône (looking south). Photograph</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Loading boats with supplies. Froehner</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Gallic remains. Grasset</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Soldiers marching with packs (sarcinae). Froehner</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Roman javelins (pila). Oehler</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Plan of battle with the Helvetii. von Kampen</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Roman swords. Oehler</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>View of Besançon (Vesontio). From a drawing</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>View of the fortress of Belfort. Photograph</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Coin of the Fabian family. Obverse: ROMA Q. MAX. Laurelled head of Apollo, lyre in front. Reverse: horn of plenty filled with fruits; thunderbolts; the whole in a wreath of grain ears and poppy. Cohen</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Map of the campaign with Ariovistus. Stoffel</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Soldiers attacked while encamping. Froehner</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Ostheim, looking towards Zellenberg. Photograph</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Plan of battle with Ariovistus. Stoffel</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 57</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Writing materials: atramentarium (for black and red ink); papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); dip-tycha (folding tablet), stylus, and erasing knife. Wall painting. Overbeck's Pompeii</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the Arc de Triomphe at Orange. Grasset</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Coin of Diviciacus, king of the Suessiones. Fleury</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Slinger (funditor). Dict. des Antiquités</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Berry au Bac. Photograph</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Battle on the Aisne. Oehler</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of Maps and Illustrations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fig.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Vinea or Testudo. Oehler</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Hautmont. Photograph</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Defeat of the Nervii. Oehler</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Litus</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Tuba</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>Cornu</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Aquillifer. Lindenschmidt</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Centurio. Lindenschmidt</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>Citadel of Namur. Photograph</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>Siege of the stronghold of the Aduatuci. From first ed.</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Siege works. von Göler</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Gallic coins. (1) Obverse: a Gaul running, with torch in one hand and torque (?) in the other. Reverse: bear (?). (2) Obverse: ox-head. Reverse: bear of the Helvetii. Fleury</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) (4) Of uncertain interpretation. Some modification of the human head is seen, also the form of a horse or boar, with ornaments. Jeuffrain</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Shipbuilder. Grave relief (Ravenna). Schreiber</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>Map of Octodurus. von Kampen</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>Galley. From the Prænestë relief. Baumeister</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Map of the Veneti neighborhood. Altered from modern map</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>View at mouth of the Loire. Photograph</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Roman battle ship. Wall painting at Pompeii. Oehler</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Trading vessel. Ancient relief. Baumeister</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>Gallic sword-blade. Museum at Namur. Photograph</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Soldiers making camp. Froehner</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 55-53</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Scenery on the Meuse. Photograph</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Bridge. From first ed.</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Cliffs of Dover. &quot;Shakespeare's Cliff.&quot; Photograph</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Catapulta. Modern restoration</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# List of Maps and Illustrations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>Anchor and tackle. <em>Arc de Triomphe</em> at Orange. <em>Schreiber</em></td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>Soldiers foraging. <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. <em>Jeufrain</em></td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>The legionary. Slightly altered from Bartholdi's Model in the Museum of St. Germain</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Obverse: horse. VIRO (perhaps name of a chief), or VIRO[mandui]. Reverse: various devices. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Rude representation of a human head. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Horse, stars, circles. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Cock. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72.</td>
<td>Signifer. <em>Lindenschmidt</em></td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>Soldiers. From first ed.</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>Scutum. <em>Rheinhard</em></td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.</td>
<td>Scutum. <em>Rheinhard</em></td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76.</td>
<td>Wall and ditch. <em>Oehler</em></td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>Castra Romana. <em>Rheinhard</em></td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>General view of siege operations. <em>Rheinhard</em></td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79.</td>
<td>Vexillum</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80.</td>
<td>Aquila</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83.</td>
<td>Caliga. <em>Oehler</em></td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of Maps and Illustrations.

ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>84.</td>
<td>Signa Militaria, Guhl and Kohner</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85.</td>
<td>Soldiers building camp, with guards, Froehner</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86.</td>
<td>Bridge, Model in the Museum of St. Germain, Oehler</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87.</td>
<td>Scorpio, Modern restoration</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88.</td>
<td>Testudo, Froehner</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89.</td>
<td>Ballista, Modern restoration</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>Sacrifice in camp, Military band (Cornicines), Froehner</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91.</td>
<td>Signum</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>Tabernaculum, Rheinhard</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93.</td>
<td>Oppugnatio, From first ed.</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94.</td>
<td>Chain mail, Fragment found at Mainz, Oehler</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95.</td>
<td>Helmets, Schreiber</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96.</td>
<td>Light-armed soldier, Lindenschmidt</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97.</td>
<td>Archer, Lindenschmidt</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98.</td>
<td>View of siege works, von Kampen</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99.</td>
<td>Plan of siege works, von Kampen</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>Gallic torques, Museum at Namur, Photograph</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>Hollow square, Col. of M. Aurelius, Oehler</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102.</td>
<td>Pluteus, Modern restoration</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103.</td>
<td>Pluteus, Modern restoration</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

"Julius Cæsar, whose remembrance yet
Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
Be theme and hearing ever." — Shakespeare.

"The greatest name in history." — Merivale.

I. THE POLITICAL CONDITION OF ITALY IN THE FIRST CENTURY B.C.

The Roman state was in form and name a commonwealth or republic. While Rome was a small agricultural community and her citizens a body of patriotic, sturdy, and independent freeholders, the task of government was easy and the constitution well adapted to its purpose. The wars that followed for the establishment and extension of her power at first fostered unity and soundness of national life. But in course of time Rome became an imperial state and took upon herself the guardianship of every country in the world. Wealth flowed into her coffers from every quarter of the earth, her citizens became corrupt, and the rule of the people became the rule of a rich landed aristocracy, whose principal ambition was to perpetuate its mischievous power. The organ of this aristocracy was the senate, a body of six or seven hundred men, who became members of it nominally by virtue of holding certain high offices, and who remained senators for life. In theory, therefore, the senate was elective, and rested on the popular will; but the members really became such on account of noble blood, wealth, or political, social, or other influence. Moreover, the great offices of the state came to be bought and sold openly and without shame, and opposing factions contended not with ballots alone, but with iron and
steel, so that the election place was frequently stained with the blood of the slain. It became increasingly difficult for one not possessing and willing to use such means to be elected to any office.

Opposed to the landed aristocracy was a class of wealthy capitalists known as *equites*, the “Equestrian Order.” Many of these were as rich as the senators, but their wealth — most of it gained by usury, state contracts, slave-dealing, and tax-gathering — consisted of money instead of land. They took no active interest in politics excepting so far as they could influence legislation to their advantage by lobbying and bribing.

There was no industrious middle class among the free citizens of Rome. Manufacture on a large scale, as a means of wealth, was absolutely unknown; while all mechanical industries were carried on by slaves. The poorer class of citizens, the *plebs*, were wholly influenced in their votes by their wealthy patrons or by scheming demagogues. The freedmen were the only class who could become rich by industry.

The rural portions of Italy were for the most part held in large plantations (*latifundia*), owned by nobles and cultivated by slaves, or, more frequently, occupied by great droves of cattle. This plantation system had crowded out the free peasant proprietors in almost all parts of the peninsula. After throwing up their farms, which foreign competition had made unprofitable, they flocked to Rome to swell the idle mob that lived on what their votes would bring. There still remained, especially in Northern Italy, a considerable body of small land owners; and the municipal towns (*municipia*), about four hundred in number, whose territories comprised, politically speaking, the whole area of Italy, were still the home of a fairly prosperous middle class. These had all received Roman citizenship after the social war (B.C. 90) and might, by their substantial character and intelligence, have served as a strong opposition to the corrupt aristocracy at Rome; but they lacked organization and leadership, and when they went to Rome to vote, they were wholly powerless against the turbulent political clubs of the metropolis, whose violence was a regular feature of all public proceedings. Yet in this class alone was the old Roman virtue to be found, and in it lay whatever hope there was to redeem the state.
Another menace to the government was in the constitution of the armies. After a man had been consul, he was given charge of a province and was put in command of several legions. While abroad he was not amenable to the government at home, and when he returned he used his old soldiers to further his political schemes, and rewarded them at the expense of the opposing faction, often by wholesale spoliation and murder.

Partisans of the nobility were known as *Optimates*; those opposed to them as *Populares*. Before Cæsar, the most conspicuous leader of the former had been Sulla, of the latter, Marius, Cæsar’s uncle by marriage. These two men by their thirst for power and mutual hatred filled all Italy with bloodshed and terror for years. Under the established régime there was no continuity in government, but a perpetual see-saw between rivals. Rome was kept in a constant electioneering excitement accompanied by the worst forms of demoralization. All the vast interests of the Roman world were sacrificed to the luxury and ambition of a governing class wholly incompetent for its task; and the only resource against anarchy appears to have been that some one man, by craft or by force, should get all the reins of power into his single hand. That man was destined to be Julius Cæsar.

II. CÆSAR’S EARLIER CAREER.

"Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village,  
Than be second in Rome." — Longfellow.

Caius Julius Cæsar (*Gaius Iulius Caesar*) was born July 12th, B.C. 100, or, according to some authorities, two years earlier. Assuming the later date, he was six years younger than Pompey, his great rival, and Cicero, the distinguished orator. His ancestry was of the noblest, and was supposed to reach back on his mother’s side to Ancus Marcius, the Roman king, and on the father’s to Æneas, the founder of the Roman nation and reputed to be the son of a goddess.

The time of his birth was during the great ascendancy of the *Populares* under Marius, his uncle; and his childhood was passed amid the horrors of the proscriptions that marked Marius’s dictatorship. Though Cæsar was connected by blood with the oldest and
Introduction.

proudest houses of Rome, he early showed his predilection for the party of the people; and the sturdily Marius, with all his defects, doubtless exercised a marked influence over the life and destinies of his young nephew. Caesar lost his father early in life, so that most of the responsibility for his education and bringing up rested upon his mother, Aurelia. She was a typical matron of the old school, managing her house with simplicity and frugality, and holding to the traditions and virtues of the ancient Romans. Tacitus, the Roman historian, couples her name with that of Cornelia, the famous mother of the Gracchi. Caesar owed much of his future greatness to her influence, and his love and reverence for her are highly honorable to both.

In the year 86, when Caesar was still a boy, he was appointed a priest of Jupiter. This office was a perfunctory one and had little real religious significance. In 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, an act which identified him thus early with the Populares; for Cinna was a very prominent leader of that party. It was soon after this that Sulla, the leader of the Optimates, returned from Asia Minor with a victorious army, prepared to take a terrible revenge for the proscription of Marius. Caesar soon fell under his displeasure because of his relationship to Marius. He was ordered to divorce his young wife because she was Cinna's daughter. In this crisis Caesar showed a prominent trait of his character, a trait which led him during all his life to brave every danger rather than allow himself to be controlled. Though but a youth, he refused to obey Sulla’s command. A price was set on his head and he was obliged to flee for his life. Often he was in great peril, and once he was taken, and escaped only by bribing his captor. His friends interceded for him, pleading his youth, and finally obtained his pardon, Sulla saying, “Take him, since you will have it so; but I would have you know that the youth for whom you are so earnest, will one day overthrow the aristocracy. I see in him many Mariuses.”

Caesar thinking it safer to leave Italy for a time went to Asia Minor, where he gained some military experience and distinguished himself for valor by saving a comrade's life. Sulla died in 78 and Caesar returned to his family and resumed his studies. He was a diligent and thorough student and doubtless followed the usual course
of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. To be a good
speaker was essential to political success, and Cæsar was especially
anxious to excel in that direction. He gave some public exhibitions
of his skill and won much applause; but anxious to perfect himself
still farther he went to Rhodes in 76, to study under Apollonius
Molon, the most famous teacher of oratory and rhetoric of the day.
On this journey, when near Miletus, he was captured by pirates and
held for a heavy ransom. He spent some time among them while
waiting for the money, and joined in their sports and games with the
greatest freedom, at the same time assuring them that he would hang
them all as soon as he was free. They seem to have regarded him
with mingled awe and admiration. The ransom was paid. Cæsar
was released, went at once to Miletus, where he hastily collected
a few ships and made a descent on the pirates before they dreamt
of danger. He recovered the ransom money and punished the pirates
as he had threatened.

On his return to Rome, he began his political career (B.C. 68) by
serving as quæstor, an office connected with the public treasury and
the first step toward the consulship. This was followed in 65 by the
ædileship. The taking of this office, which was one of the chief
magistracies, though it involved only the care of the public buildings
and the oversight of the great festivals and games, was considered
a direct bid for a future consulship, and a man's claims upon that
higher office were determined in large measure by the lavishness and
splendor of his ædileship. Cæsar was poor, but with characteristic
boldness he played for the highest political stakes and did not hesi-
tate to incur enormous debts, in fact so enormous that those who had
not the most perfect confidence in his capacity and his powers believed
him irretrievably ruined. His ædileship surpassed all before it in
magnificence; but he left it—as he remarked with grim humor—
worth more than a million dollars less than nothing.

After his ædilesship he identified himself more and more with the
popular faction, and even dared to restore some of the statues and
trophies of Marius, which had been banished from sight seventeen
years before by the order of Sulla. The people began to hope for
a successful revival of the Marian party and to look to Cæsar as its
leader.
In B.C. 63 he was elected pontifex maximus against the strong opposition of the Optimates. This office was one of great political power and dignity, though not formally a civil office. Cæsar held it for the rest of his life. In 62 he was elected prætor, an office of a judicial character, and this was followed by a year of command in Spain as proprætor. Before leaving for Spain, his creditors became insistent and threatened to detain him unless he paid them. Cæsar then obtained a large loan from the richest man in Rome, Crassus, who was ambitious for office and doubtless hoped to make good use in turn of Cæsar's brilliant abilities to further his own ends.

In Spain Cæsar gained valuable military experience and made his administration so profitable to himself, as was usual with provincial governors, that, though he left Rome owing millions of sesterces, he returned in the year 60 with enough money to pay all his debts. His design was to run for the consulship, the highest office in the gift of the people. To secure his election he effected a union of interests between himself and Crassus and Pompey. These were the two most powerful men in Rome,—Crassus because of his wealth, Pompey because of his fame as a general and his popularity with the army. The latter was, in fact, really the first man in the state. He had but recently returned from Asia Minor laden with the spoils of the Mithridatic war, and might easily have seized the dictatorship had he so chosen; but he disbanded his army and preferred to appear as a private citizen, but with almost autocratic power. He had quarreled with Crassus, but Cæsar reconciled them, and the three formed a sort of offensive and defensive alliance known as the first triumvirate,—what we should call a political deal. This was for Cæsar, who was at that time quite their inferior in fame and influence, a master stroke of craft and diplomacy.

In 59 Cæsar was elected consul almost without opposition. He well understood the critical condition of affairs and saw clearly the dangers that threatened the state, and instituted valuable reforms looking to its regeneration and salvation. The army and the moneyed classes represented by Pompey and Crassus were with him, and he could do almost as he pleased. His first act was the passage of an agrarian law, by which thousands of acres were to be distributed to the poor. This was not a mere act of bribery, but an attempt to
restore the peasant freeholders, who had been dispossessed by the rich. Then he passed the excellent body of laws known as the Leges Juliae, which mark an epoch in Roman jurisprudence, and which were devised in the interests of individual rights, purity of justice, morality, and good government. All that one man could do in a single year to save his country from anarchy, Cæsar did.

Cæsar was now forty-three years of age. With the exception of the time spent in Spain, his life had been employed in petty miserable contests with Roman factions. He longed for a new and larger field where he might have freedom to perform deeds worthy of his surpassing abilities and unbounded ambition. This opportunity came to him when, as proconsul, he was entrusted with the protection of the northern frontier against the Gaurs, and was assigned the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. It was a most hazardous post and doubtless many of the Optimates thought that they were well rid of him.

III. CÆSAR IN GAUL.

"What security men derive from a resolute spirit." — Cæsar.

By the 'deal' of the triumvirate, Cæsar was to have the government of Gaul for five years, while Crassus and Pompey were to remain in the city to look after the interests of the coalition. The bond was farther strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Julia, Cæsar's young and beautiful daughter.

Cæsar, as we have seen, was over forty when he went to Gaul. He was more of a civilian than a soldier and was far more at home in the Forum than in the camp. Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon had been trained in war from childhood. The qualities that are most potent in war — hope, confidence, audacity, and pugnacity — are qualities that belong to youth. So Cæsar is an anomaly in military history. In spite of his years and his comparative inexperience, he leaped at once to the highest place, and is counted to-day among the three or four greatest generals in history, if not the greatest of them all. He never lost a set battle and he showed infinite versatility in adapting means to ends, always doing the right thing at the
right time. He never admits the possibility of defeat and overcomes
the most stupendous difficulties with such ease that he rarely speaks
of them. His promptness of decision and rapidity of execution were
such that the enemy were constantly overwhelmed with awe and
were led to regard him as a supernatural being. 'Forced marches,'
'continuous marching day and night,' 'as quickly as possible' are
phrases that recur again and again in his narrative. Only a natural
ruler of men could get things done with such swiftness. He carried
out his plans with the greatest audacity and, at the same time, with-
out recklessness. No one could be more minute and thorough in
preparations than he. No one left less chance for luck, good or bad,
to enter into the result. In all that was done, his was the masterful
and presiding genius, and the legions rarely accomplished much in
his absence. His relations with his soldiers were most cordial. They
idolized him and he respected and admired them and constantly
labored for their safety and comfort. He allows them to share in
the glory of his victories and in his story lingers with delight over
their heroic exploits. He shared all their dangers and privations,
he excelled personally in deeds of arms, and he allowed himself no
luxury but a favorite horse. It is not strange that when trouble
came upon their master, his soldiers were true to him, and even
volunteered to serve without pay. Only three of his officers, two
of them Gauls, went over to the enemy, while thousands came to
him from the other side.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56,
Cæsar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their
future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost
like a royal court. More than two hundred senators were present,
and one hundred and twenty lictors were in attendance, attached to
the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pom-
pey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and,
after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar
command to that held by Cæsar,—namely, that Pompey should
command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also
that when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the
same way a second term of five years. His ten years' adminis-
tration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time
—an interval of ten years having elapsed—he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhae, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province into the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence.

Cæsar served eight campaigns in Gaul, an account of which is contained in the eight books of his Commentaries. Seven of these he wrote himself. The eighth was written by his friend and staff-officer, Hirtius. During these years he stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery. "He was the first to lead an army into interior Gaul, the first to cross the Rhine into Germany, the first to bring a navy into the Western Ocean or to sail into the Atlantic with an army to make war." He left a magnificent country for the Romans to appropriate and retain until their increasing corruption left it in turn an easy prey to the Germans. He inspired such terror of the Roman arms that the tide of barbarian invasion was stayed for centuries.

IV. CÆSAR'S LATER CAREER.

"The foremost man of all this world."—Shakespeare.
"Cæsar could bear no superior, Pompey no equal."—Lucan.

Meanwhile events had been moving on at Rome. With Crassus dead, Cæsar and Pompey were left in the enjoyment of almost absolute authority. They had been friends from youth, but none the less rivals, and the death of Julia (B.C. 54) sundered the last ties that bound them together. In 52 Pompey had been made sole consul and found himself at the head of a party which, under cover of the constitution, was determined to destroy Cæsar that it might retain the power which his reforms threatened to place in worthier hands.

Cæsar's proconsulship of Gaul would expire at the end of B.C. 49. He wished to run for a second consulship in B.C. 48. The senate
resolved to prevent this, and commanded him to resign his office and disband his army several months before the expiration of his term. If they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they knew they could crush him. Cæsar knew this too, and refused to obey the decree unless Pompey should also disband his troops. Pompey would have been willing to agree to this fair proposition, but his friends would not permit him, and were bent on destroying Cæsar. Naturally the charge of false play was made on both sides, and the strife continued until Cæsar was finally declared a public enemy. He therefore crossed the Rubicon, a small stream which formed the boundary of his province and the limit of his authority, and began to march towards Rome. He took but a single legion with him and continued his efforts to come to an understanding with the Optimates, having hopes of a compromise. He made a speech to his soldiers, explaining the situation, and was assured of their enthusiastic support. Labienus alone deserted him, corrupted, it is said, by Roman gold.

Cæsar's march through Italy was like a triumphal procession; the cities opened their gates to him and he was everywhere hailed with enthusiasm. Among the Optimates there was nothing but consternation and fear. They had pinned their faith to Pompey, who had boasted that he had but to stamp his foot on the ground and legions would spring from the earth ready to obey him. He had vastly overrated himself (as was his wont), and had no conception of Cæsar's power and genius. Cicero well sums up the situation in a letter to his friend Atticus: "The consuls are helpless. There has been no levy. With Cæsar pressing forward and our general doing nothing, the men will not come to be enrolled. Pompey is prostrate, without courage, without purpose, without force, without energy." Pompey had been looked upon by his partisans as almost divine. He had been peculiarly fortunate throughout his career and had made a great military reputation by assuming the laurels that others had won. Mommsen says of him: "He was radically a commonplace man, formed by nature to make a good corporal, but forced by circumstances to be a general." Now that he was confronted by a really serious difficulty and by a really able man, he was paralyzed.

Pompey with his forces and accompanied by the senators fled in
a panic to Brundisium and sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. Cæsar meanwhile continued his victorious advance, and in sixty days was master of Italy. Then he went to Spain, and before autumn closed had met and defeated all opposition there. Returning to Rome he made preparations to follow Pompey. Many prominent Optimates had fallen into his hands, but he let them all go free, to their own great amazement and to Cæsar’s eternal praise. In a letter he says: “I will conquer after a new fashion and fortify myself in the possession of the power I acquire by generosity and mercy.”

Cæsar followed Pompey across the sea from Brundisium, transporting his army in two divisions. He encountered considerable difficulty on account of storms and the lack of ships. After much skirmishing, anxiety, and suffering (on Cæsar’s part), owing to scarcity of food and supplies, he fought a battle at Pharsalia in Thessaly on Aug. 9, B.C. 48. Before the battle Pompey’s officers felt so sure of victory that a rich banquet was spread awaiting their return from the field. In numbers and equipment Pompey was much superior, and with him was all the wealth and respectability of Rome. He had 45,000 infantry and 5000 cavalry against Cæsar’s 22,000 and 1000, respectively; but he was overwhelmingly defeated and the battle ended in a terrible panic and great slaughter, in which 15,000 men lost their lives. As Cæsar viewed the slain he said sadly: “They would have it so. After all that I had done for my country, I, Gaius Cæsar, should have been condemned as a criminal if I had not appealed to my army.”

Pompey fled for his life and took ship to Egypt and was there murdered by the king, who hoped thus to win Cæsar’s favor. When Cæsar arrived there, however, a few days later, and Pompey’s head was presented to him, he is said to have turned away from the sight with horror and grief. He now overcame all remaining opposition in several short and brilliant campaigns. The first of these was in Asia Minor, where he conquered so easily that he reported it to the senate in the words that have since become famous: “Veni, vidi, vici.” By the battle of Thapsus in Africa (B.C. 46) and that of Munda in Spain (B.C. 45), the Pompeian party was finally crushed.

Cæsar now returned to Rome, where he was made imperator—possessing the entire imperium, or military dominion of Rome, not
Introduction.

of a single colony or province merely — and perpetual dictator (dictator perpetuo), which offices clothed him with all the political authority of the state. By the powers thus conferred he laid the foundations of the Imperial constitution, which was afterwards (B.C. 30) set in operation by his grand-nephew and adopted son, Octavianus, later known as Augustus. This scheme of government eventually became (as was possibly foreseen from the start) an hereditary monarchy, under the name and form of a republic. During the short period of Cæsar's rule he continued the good work of his first consulship and carried a series of measures of wise and practical statesmanship, such as the reform of the calendar, the regulation of the administrative system, and the policy of checks upon the abuses of the money power. He also planned extensive military expeditions against Parthia, Scythia, and Germany, and large public works and improvements, such as draining the Pompentine marshes and cutting through the isthmus of Corinth. With characteristic energy he accomplished much in a very short time.

But the possession of this exalted authority involved the utter overthrow of the constitution and necessarily excited alarm and jealousy among patriots and demagogues alike. Ruinors were abroad that Cæsar was seeking to be king, a name detested at Rome since the foundation of the republic. His rivals were jealous, and not a few friends were disappointed at not having received as large favors as they thought they deserved. Many of his former enemies were bitter against him, because he had been magnanimous enough to forgive them. These feelings culminated in a conspiracy against his life. The leaders were Cassius, a violent and fearless man driven mad by jealousy and baffled ambition; and Marcus Brutus, who had no better friend than Cæsar, but who fancied that he must emulate his ancestor, Brutus the first consul, who expelled the Tarquins. Cæsar received many warnings of what was going on, but disregarded them all with his usual indifference to danger. The deed was consummated in the Senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44. The great dictator was struck down by false friends and fell, pierced with wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue. This dastardly act received the condemnation it deserved, and few have dared to defend it on the ground of patriotism. Those concerned in it all
died violent deaths soon after. Both Brutus and Cassius committed suicide, the latter stabbing himself with the very dagger which he had used against Cæsar.¹

V. PERSON AND CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror
For now he lives in fame, though not in life." — Shakespeare.

"Great Julius, whom all the world admires." — Milton.

Suetonius describes Cæsar when a youth as tall, slight, and handsome, with dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. He adds further that he was neat to effeminacy about his dress and appearance. Fond of athletics, he excelled in all manly sports, especially in riding. In danger he knew no fear and often performed acts of great personal daring. His health was vigorous until his later years, and he could endure an apparently unlimited amount of labor and hardship. Added years gave him a majestic and commanding presence without detracting from the grace and courtesy of his bearing. We judge him to have been a man of singular charm and of unusual personal magnetism.

Thanks to the peculiar skill possessed by the ancients in the art of portraiture, many believe that we may see the great dictator as he was, from existing statues and busts. Two of the most noted of these are the busts in the British Museum (Fig. 47) and that in the Louvre (frontispiece). The one in the Naples Museum (Fig. 2) is judged by competent critics to be conventional and not modelled after the living man. Those first mentioned are thought by many to be true to life. The one in the British Museum represents Cæsar the statesman, the man of peace; the one in the Louvre, Cæsar the man of action, the martial hero.²

¹ For a vivid imaginative account of the conspiracy, see Shakespeare’s “Julius Cæsar.”

Introduction.

What Alexander was to the Greeks, and Hannibal to the Carthaginians, that and much more was Cæsar to the Romans. The two former excelled all men of their times in war only; but Cæsar had such extraordinary abilities in widely different directions that many regard him as the most remarkable man that history records. In whatever he did, he always did the best possible. He had the greatest diversity of gifts: as a student of language, he composed a treatise on grammar while crossing the Alps; as an orator, Quintilian says he would have rivalled Cicero had he devoted his time to this art; as a general, he has had no superior and hardly a peer; and, above all, he was the greatest politician and statesman of his time. To his statecraft all his other acts are subordinate, and by this they should be interpreted.

Cæsar was too great a man to be without enemies. He has been accused of being a traitor to his country, who by a deep-laid scheme overthrew its constitution. He was undoubtedly ambitious for power, and he used it in making such changes in the constitution as were sorely needed to keep it from going to pieces; but how far the acts by which he accomplished this desirable end were the result of a plan to further his personal ambition, and how far they were compelled by the stress of circumstances, we cannot judge. We do know, however, that he professed an earnest desire for peace, until he was driven into war by the hatred and perversity of his opponents.

He has also been accused of immorality, cruelty, and irreligion. It would be vain to maintain that Cæsar was a model of virtue in an age that was notoriously and openly wicked and profligate. We know that Cæsar was a man of perfect self-control, and that he was remarkable for extreme abstemiousness in eating and drinking. As for the rest, he was probably no worse than the average.

Doubtless he was cruel, judged by modern standards. He butchered without mercy thousands of defenceless men, women, and children. But we must remember that Cæsar was a Roman, of a people naturally cruel and careless of bloodshed, and, again, that he was dealing with Gauls and Germans, whom the Romans despised, and for whom he had not, nor could have, any feelings of sympathy or kindness. The doctrine of human brotherhood is something he never heard of. But, on the other hand, contrast with this his constant care
and anxiety for the welfare of his soldiers, his patience and forbearance with their mistakes, such as no modern commander has exhibited in his memoirs, and, above all, recall his mercy to his opponents in the Civil War, whom he freely pardoned and restored to honor and favor. Contrast Cæsar's dictatorship with the horrors of Marius and Sulla, and we cannot wonder that his clemency became famous.

That Cæsar was a skeptic is no doubt true. The age was skeptical and the learned classes no longer believed in the gods of their forefathers. What Cæsar's real beliefs were, or if he had any, we do not know. He often speaks of fortune as ruling in the affairs of men, and probably had some vague and dimly defined belief in a supreme power.

VI. CÆSAR'S LITERARY WORK.

As a man of letters Cæsar is hardly less eminent. His vast and massive intellect could hold in its grasp a great variety of subjects. He wrote on many different themes, such as philosophy, language, astronomy, and divination. Of all his books only his Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars have come down to us in complete form. They stand as the best military history that was ever written. Their ulterior purpose was to justify him in the eyes of the world for the course he took in opposing the senate and the government. He does this rarely by argument, but by such a tactful and masterful collocation of facts that the unthinking reader feels himself persuaded that Cæsar could hardly have done otherwise.

The style of these memoirs is remarkable for directness, terseness, and simplicity. Cicero, one of the greatest masters of style, says of them, "I pronounce them indeed to be very commendable, for they are simple, straight-forward, agreeable, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as one strips off a garment." While the language is lucid, it is packed full of meaning, and even a good Latinist needs to read slowly and with deliberation that the full thought of each sentence may be gathered. Sometimes a whole sentence is crammed into an adjective or a participle. To translate into good English requires, therefore, frequent amplification.

Like all great men, Cæsar rarely speaks of himself. In his works he refers to himself in the third person and with such modesty and
impartiality that you would never suspect him to be the writer. He
betray his identity by three slips of the pen where he uses the first
person. He never struts or poses for effect, not even when he is
narrating sublime deeds of heroism.

Cæsar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of intense activity.
They were jotted down as he journeyed and fought; mere notes,
as it were, for future amplification. Hirtius says, “While others
know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and
rapidity he dashed them off.”

For us the Gallic War has a peculiar interest because it treats of
the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most
of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of
modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us
such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of their
present political and social peculiarities.

VII. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CÆSAR’S LIFE.

B.C. 100 Born, July 12th.
“ 83 Marries Cornelia, the Daughter of Cinna.
“ 80–78 Serves with the Army in Asia.
“ 76–75 Studies Oratory at Rhodes.
“ 68 Quæstor.
“ 65 ædile.
“ 63 Pontifex Maximus.
“ 62 Prætor.
“ 61 Proprætor in Spain.
“ 60 Forms the First Triumvirate.
“ 59 Consul.
“ 58–49 Proconsul in Gaul.
“ 56 Meeting of the Triumvirate at Luca.
“ 50 The Trouble with Pompey begins.
“ 49 Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begun.
“ 48 The Battle of Pharsalia.
“ 46 The Battle of Thapsus. Declared Dictator for ten years.
“ 45 The Battle of Munda. Appointed Imperator for life.
“ 44 The Conspiracy. Assassinated in the Senate House on
the Ides of March.
II.

ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS.

I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

1. The Legions.
2. The Cavalry.
3. The Auxiliaries.
4. The Engineers and Artisans.
5. The Artillery.
6. The Baggage Train.
7. The Officers and their Staff.

II. THE STANDARDS.

III. THE MUSIC.

IV. THE LEGIONARY.

a. Enlistment.
b. Clothing.
c. Armor.
d. Weapons.
e. Baggage.
f. Food.
g. Work.
h. Pay.
i. Discipline.

V. THE CAMP.

VI. THE MARCH.

VII. THE BATTLE.

VIII. THE SIEGE.

IX. THE FLEET.

I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

1. The Legions.

The Roman legion corresponded to a modern Division, but was more an organic whole, since it was the smallest unit that had separate line officers. What its normal strength was in Cæsar's time we have no means of knowing; but a probable estimate puts it at 5000 men. The actual effective strength in the field, however, was usually much less, falling to 3000 men, as at the battle of Pharsalia (on Cæsar's own authority). This variation in number was due to the many absences from duty which always occur in a military organization, and to the losses incurred by the individual legions in previous campaigns. Losses in old legions were not usually made good by new recruits, but the latter were formed into new legions; hence the older the legion, the smaller usually its enrollment. The average effective strength of the legion in the Gallic War was probably near 3600 men.
Introduction.

The subdivisions of the legions were as follows:

1 legion = 10 cohorts of about 360 men each.
1 cohort = 3 maniples of 120 men each.
1 maniple = 2 centuries of 60 men each.

There were, therefore, 10 cohorts, 30 maniples, and 60 centuries in each legion. These divisions did not, however, like our companies, have special "commissioned officers," but were commanded by centurions who came from the ranks. The legions constituted the main body of the army and did most of the fighting, but there were other arms employed for various purposes (see below). The legions were designated by numbers, given in the order of their enlistment.

2. The Cavalry.

The cavalry (equitatus), originally of Roman citizens, was in Caesar's time composed almost exclusively of recruits from subject or allied states. In Caesar's army it was composed of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. There was no fixed ratio between the number of legionaries and cavalry. In the campaign against the Helvetians, Caesar had 4000 equites, in the battle of Pharsalia, 1000; but the number of legions was the same in both.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (alae) of about 330 horsemen each; these were subdivided into 10 squadrons (turmae) of 33 horsemen each; and these again into 3 squads (decuriae) of 11 each. See Figs. 12, 13.

3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliaries (auxilia peditum) were infantry forces from allied and subject states. Caesar nowhere gives the number of his auxilia, and it was doubtless as various as that of his cavalry. They were the light-armed soldiers (milites levis armaturae), the archers (sagittarii), and the slingers (funditores). See Figs. 30, 73, 96, 97.

The best slingers came from the Balearic Islands, the best archers from Crete and Numidia. The light-armed soldiers wore no heavy armor and carried a light round shield (parma). The archers had neither corselet, helmet, nor shield. The latter they could not carry on account of their bows.
Caesar placed little reliance on his *auxilia* for actual fighting, but used them for the most part to make a show of force and frighten the enemy (Bk. i. 51), and to assist in building fortifications. In engagements the bowmen and slingers were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*), and from this were called *alarii*.

4. The Engineers and Artisans.

The engineers and artisans (*fabri*) sometimes formed a separate corps under the command of a chief engineer (*praefectus fabrum*), and sometimes they were called from the ranks of the legions when their services were needed. Caesar had a chief engineer, but no special body of men (cf. Bk. v. 11). They were employed in building bridges, ships, winter quarters, and in repairing weapons and equipments.

5. The Artillery.

Engines of war were not often used on the battlefield, where modern artillery forms such an important branch of the service, but mainly in the defence and assault of fortified cities or camps. They had a limited use also in the fleet (Bk. iv. 25).

We have no exact account of the construction of these engines. Caesar almost always calls them *tormenta* (cf. *torquere, to twist*), a name which clearly points to the elasticity of twisted rope, sinew, or hair, for the source of their energy. They were of three kinds: *catapultae, ballistae, and scorpiones* (see Figs. 61, 89, 87). The *catapultae* shot great arrows in a horizontal direction, like a cannon; the *ballistae* hurled great stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells. The range of these weapons was from 1500 to 2000 ft. A *scorpio* was a small catapult having a range of about 350 ft. It was an accurate and deadly weapon. Caesar tells of one at the siege of Avaricum that marked and killed man after man in the same spot (Bk. vii. 25). The *tormenta* were usually served and kept in repair by the *fabri*, but as Caesar had no such corps, they were probably in his army served by legionaries.
6. The Baggage Train.

The baggage of the army, except the packs corresponding to knapsacks which the soldiers themselves carried (sarcinae), was borne by horses and mules (iumenta), and in wagons. The latter, however, were used mainly by the traders (mercatores) and sutlers (lixae) that followed the legion. The baggage of each legion was by no means inconsiderable. It consisted of tents, blankets, tools, the tormenta, provisions, etc., and required no less than 500 pack-animals to a legion. The inconvenience and delay occasioned by the care of so much baggage caused the Romans to call it impedimenta (incumbrances), and a legion marching with its baggage was called legio impedita; when without, legio expedita. Along with the baggage train went a multitude of drivers, grooms, officers' servants, and other menials, all of whom are included in the general term calones. Most or all of these were slaves. See Figs. 14, 55.

7. The Officers and their Staff.

The superior officers were: (1) the commander-in-chief (imperator or dux belli). He possessed the imperium or supreme military authority by virtue of his office, but by etiquette first received the name imperator from his soldiers after his first victory. In Cæsar's case it was bestowed after his victory over the Helvetii.

(2) The legati. These were men of senatorial rank (i.e. who had once held a curule magistracy). They were appointed by the senate or the people on the nomination of the proconsul. The senate also determined the number that a general should have; Cæsar had ten. They often acted as ambassadors and made treaties, but their chief duties were military. Their powers were in no way independent, but derived from the general, who might put them in command of one or more legions or confer upon them the imperium in his absence (legatus pro praetore). In his battle with Ariovistus Cæsar placed a legatus at the head of each of his legions (Bk. i. 53), thus giving them an independent command, a practice which he afterwards continued to the great advantage of the service.

(3) The quaestores were officers elected by the people annually to administer the financial affairs of the provinces, one for each imperator.
They had charge of the military chest, and saw to the pay, clothing, shelter, and general equipment of the legions serving in their respective provinces. On occasion they exercised the military authority of a legatus (Bk. i. 53); they were the ancient equivalent of a modern quartermaster. Besides these general officers, there were attached to each legion six tribuni militum, who were probably originally in command of the legion. They were divided into three pairs, each pair taking command in its turn. In Cæsar’s time they were no longer trained soldiers, but chiefly young men of equestrian rank, who went into the army for a year or two to get some military experience and thus begin their public career (cf. Bk. i. 39), so that ordinarily the legion had no proper commanding officers. Cæsar was not slow to see that these political and social favorites were not the men to lead his legions into battle, and he therefore introduced the lasting reform of transferring this duty to the legati, as mentioned above (cf. Bk. ii. 20; v. 1, 25, 47). Thereafter the duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the quaestor; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands (cf. Bk. vii. 47, 52).

Surrounding the superior officers there was always a large number of young men, forming a kind of staff, who acted as orderlies and body-guards. The only officers “of the line” were the tribunes, and, as appears above, their command was limited.

The real leaders of the men were the inferior (“non-commissioned”) officers, the centurions. Corresponding to sergeants and corporals, these were always plebeians, often of the lowest birth, who were promoted from the ranks entirely on account of their fighting qualities, and could never rise higher. There were two centurions in each maniple, making six for each cohort and sixty for the legion. The six centurions of the first cohort outranked the others and were called centuriones primorum ordinum, and were the only ones that ordinarily sat with the superior officers in the council of war. The first cohort always contained the flower of the legion, and the men in the first century of this cohort excelled all the others. Their leader,
Introduction.

the first centurion of the whole cohort (primus or primi-pilus) and so of the whole legion, must needs be a man of great personal prowess and skill, an actual fighter, one to whom all could look as to a model soldier. Such was, for example, Publius Sextius Baculus, who repeatedly deserved the praise of his general (cf. Bk. ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38), and Titus Balventius (vir fortis et magnae virtutis, Bk. v. 35). As a badge of his office the centurion carried a short staff (vitis), but he was armed much like the other soldiers (see Fig. 40).

The chief distinction in dress between the officers and men was the red tunica militaris worn by the legates and tribunes, and the purple cloak (paludamentum) worn by the general (Bk. vii. 88). The officers wore also coats-of-mail of gilded bronze (see Fig. 94).

Between the centurions and common soldiers in rank were the speculatores, evocati, beneficiarii, aquiliferi or signiferi, and bucinatores, tubicines, or cornicines. The speculatores or scouts obtained news of the enemy and carried despatches. The evocati were veterans who had completed their term of service, but remained in the army at the request of their commander. The beneficiarii were soldiers that had received some gift or privilege for meritorious service. The signiferi or aquiliferi were the standard bearers: soldiers selected for their courage and fidelity. The bucinatores and tubicines were the musicians. All of these had rights and exemptions not enjoyed by the common soldiers. See Figs. 39, 72, 90.

II. THE STANDARDS.

The term signa is applied in a general sense to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (aquila), usually of silver or bronze, about the size of a dove, on a wooden staff. It was sometimes carried by the chief centurion (primipilus) of the legion. Sometimes it had below it a little red or white banner (vexillum), inscribed with the number or name of the legion. See Figs. 13, 79, 80.

In a narrower sense, signum was used for the standard of the cohort or the maniple. Each cohort had its own signum (Bk. ii. 21), and in earlier times each maniple, but probably not in Caesar's day.
The cavalry and light-armed troops and all separate detachments carried only the *vexillum* (Bk. vi. 36). The general's flag at headquarters was also called *vexillum*. It was a large white banner with an inscription in red, giving the name of the general and that of his army. A large red *vexillum* displayed at headquarters was the signal for battle (Bk. ii. 20). See Fig. 79.

III. THE MUSIC.

The difficulty of carrying the voice through the din of battle early led the Romans to use the penetrating tones of brass instruments for giving orders. The four instruments used by them were the bugle (*bucina*), the trumpet (*tuba*), the cavalry trumpet (*lituus*), and the horn (*cornu*). See Figs. 36, 37, 38, 90.

The *bucina*, whose shape and appearance are uncertain, sounded the changes of the night-watch and the reveille in the morning. The *tuba*, a straight trumpet of brass more than three feet long, with a bell-shaped mouth, gave the signal for attack or retreat, the signal being taken up and repeated by the *cornu*. The latter was a circular-shaped instrument which the performer often placed about his neck. The *tuba* had a deep tone; the *cornu* a sharper one. The general's call to an assembly (*contio*) was the *classicum*, sounded by all the instruments at once.

IV. THE LEGIONARY.

*a. Enlistment.* — The legion was composed of Romans only. Citizens were liable to conscription between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The recruit must be of sound health and of suitable height. The Romans, as a rule, were rather undersized. Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops as compared with that of the Germans (Bk. i. 39; ii. 30); but the Romans had learned the lesson of civilization,—that victories are gained not by huge bones and big bodies, but by trained skill and scientific tactics. Man for man, the Germans were doubtless more than a match for the Romans; but against the organized and disciplined legion — the most effective machine for battle that the world had yet seen — they were almost
powerless. The term of service was twenty years, and after this the veteran was discharged with enough to provide for his old age. Often he reënlisted for farther service (*evocatus*).

b. Clothing.—All the legionaries were clothed alike. Next the skin was a nearly or quite sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*), reaching nearly to the knees; over this a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders (*lorica*). In cold or wet weather the soldier wore about him a wide woollen mantle (*sagum*), which was fastened by a clasp (*fibula*) on the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free. At night the *sagum* served as a blanket. About his waist was a leather belt (*cingulum militiae*), bound with metal and with strips of metal hanging from the front as a protection to the lower part of the body. His feet were covered with strong half-boots (*caligae*). This might be called his undress uniform. See Figs. 65, 73, 83, etc.

c. Armor.—The defensive armor consisted of a coat-of-mail (*lorica*, described above), a helmet, and a shield. The helmet (*galea* or *cassis*), of iron or of leather strengthened with brass, was open in front and adorned with a white crest, which was one of the *insignia* put on at the beginning of a battle (Bk. ii. 21). See Fig. 95, etc. The shield (*scutum*) was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide; it was made of wood slightly curved, and covered with linen and heavy leather. About the rim it was bound with metal, and also in the centre. There was a single handle on the inside and opposite it on the outside a boss or knob (*umbo*) of metal, to divert missiles and to strengthen the whole. A common device on the outside was a winged thunderbolt. See Figs. 74, 75, etc.

d. Weapons.—The weapons of offence were the sword and spear. The sword (*gladius Hispanus*) was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was used more for thrusting than for striking, and was not usually hung from the body-belt, but from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip (*balteus*). See Figs. 17, 73, etc.

The spear (*pilum*) of Caesar's soldiers was between six and seven feet long. The shaft was of wood and about four feet long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank that ended in a barbed head. From monuments and from remains that have been found in various places, the weight is estimated at about three pounds and the
hurling distance about 100 feet. Each legionary had one of these weapons. See Figs. 15, 65.

e. Baggage (Packs). — Besides his arms and armor, the legionary carried tools for digging, cooking utensils (vasa), food for at least two weeks (cibaria), his cloak or blanket (sagum), and usually one or two stakes (valli) for the rampart of the camp. The weight of the whole was about sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, the vasa, cibaria, and other small articles were tied in a compact bundle to the end of a forked stick and carried over the shoulder. During a halt this rested on the ground and the soldier could lean on it for support. Upon a sudden call to battle he could quickly lay it down and be ready (expeditus) for the fray. The forked sticks were named Marius’s mules (muli Mariani), after the great Marius who introduced their use. The collective personal baggage of the legionary was called his sarcina (see Figs. 14, 73).

f. Food. — The food provided for the legionary was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley. This he must grind for himself. The ration of food for one day was about two pounds. Every fifteen days he received two modii, — about two pecks. This monotonous diet was varied occasionally by meat and such food as he could find by foraging; and there was always the chance of bartering his rations for the greater variety carried by the traders (mercatores), who followed the army in large numbers and did a thriving business with the soldiers.

g. Work. — It has been truthfully said that Cæsar conquered Gaul as much with the spade and shovel as with the sword and spear. The legionary was above all a skilful digger, and besides the actual fighting, no small part of his labor was the almost daily task of fortifying the camp (castra munire). At least three hours were needed for this work. After this there were the watches to keep, the arms to burnish, and all the other busy routine of camp life.

h. Pay. — Cæsar paid his legionaries 12½ cents a day or about $45 a year. This was nearly the same amount that a day laborer could earn at Rome. The soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by the certainty of employment. A deduction from the pay was made for food and equipments furnished by the state. Food, however, was very cheap, and a soldier in active
service could always expect a considerable increase in his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.

1. Discipline.—The martial spirit of the soldiers and their attention to duty were maintained and increased by appropriate rewards and punishments. Among the latter the most usual were withholding of wages, degradation in rank, corporal punishment, dismissal from the service, and, in cases of flagrant offences, death. A minor offence committed by a company of soldiers was punished by putting them on barley rations and giving them extra work on the fortifications. Among rewards may be mentioned public praise in the presence of the army, promotion in rank, increase in wages, or the presentation of a crown of leaves or grasses, which corresponded to the bestowal of a modern military decoration.

V. The Camp.

The success of Roman arms in hostile and barbarous countries was largely due to the custom of guarding against surprise by making fortified camps. The summer camp (castra aestiva) and the winter camp (castra hiberna) seem to have been alike in all essential features. In the latter, however, more provision was made for the comfort and convenience of the men. Instead of tents, huts of timber and earth, thatched with straw or covered with hides, were provided for them. The camp was regularly in the form of a square, often with rounded corners, but the lay of the land necessitated many variations from the regular plan (see Fig. 77). Of all the camps of Cæsar that have been discovered, but one, that on the Aisne (Bk. ii. 5), approaches a square form. The site was chosen with great care, and was always on high ground and near wood and water. An ideal spot was the slope of a hill with some kind of natural defence on the sides and rear, and with sufficient ground in front for the array of the legions. Such a position would give the Romans an opportunity for their favorite onslaught e superiore loco (cf. Bk. ii. 8; Bk. v. 50).

A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select the site for the camp and stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the four gates (see Fig. 77): the porta praetoria, facing the enemy; the porta decumana,
in the rear; the porta principalis dextra, on the right side; the porta principalis sinistra, on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street, the via principalis. The forward half of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear half to the officers and their attendants. All about the inside of the fortifications ran a broad space, at least one hundred feet wide, left vacant for baggage, evolutions of troops, and to protect the tents within from missiles that the enemy might hurl over the walls. Near the middle of the camp was an open square (praetorium), in which stood the general’s tent (tabernaculum ducis). Before this was the altar on which he sacrificed, and on the left was a sodded mound of earth (tribunal or suggestus; cf. Bk. vi. 3), from which he pronounced judgment and addressed the assembled soldiers. The full details of the interior arrangement of Cæsar’s camp are not known; but every officer, every cohort, every maniple, every man had his appointed place.

No night passed that the army was not housed in such a camp, fortified by wall and ditch. As soon as the soldiers arrive at the spot marked out for them, laying aside helmet, shield, and spear, they begin to dig the ditch (fossa), the earth from which is used in constructing the wall (vallum). If time permits, the sides of the embankment are covered with sods to hold the earth, or with bundles of brush (fascines). The ditch was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep, the wall six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top to afford good standing room for a soldier in action. An ordinary camp for a night’s sojourn could be fortified in about three hours. If the camp was intended for more than one night (castra stativa), the fortifications were made stronger. The earth was made firmer by imbedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length, and on its top was set a breastwork of stakes (valli or sudes; cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72). This breastwork was about four feet high (see Fig. 76). Often wooden towers were erected on the walls (cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72), connected by galleries (pontes). The wall was made easy of access on the inner side by steps of brush. Sometimes small redoubts (castella) were built at a distance from the main camp. These were made on the same general plan.

After the camp had been fortified and the leathern tents (tentoria, pelles) put up in their assigned places, guards were set at the gates, and the regular routine of camp life began.
VI. THE MARCH.

When the trumpet gave the signal (signum profectionis) to set up camp (castra movere), the soldiers struck their tents and their baggage (vasa configere); at the second signal the baggage (impedimenta) was put on the pack-animals and in the way; at the third signal the army (agmen) began its march. The march was usually at sunrise, but it might be made earlier on occasion. The ordinary day's march lasted about seven hours; covered about 15 miles; a forced march (magnum iter) about 20 miles. Cæsar made many such, his men travelling immense distances with incredible swiftness.

When marching in the enemy's country, the main body of the army (agmen) protected itself by a vanguard (agmen primum) of light-armed infantry, and scouts (exploratores), and by a rearguard (agmen novissimum). Sometimes individual spies (spectatores) were sent far in advance to reconnoitre the country and to report the movements of the enemy's forces.

The order of march of the main body depended on the nearness of the enemy. When no enemy was near, each legion marched in a single column and was followed by its baggage train (see Bk. ii. 17). In the neighborhood of the enemy, a single column of troops in fighting trim (expediti), i.e. without packs (sarcinae), followed directly after the vanguard; then came the baggage of the whole army, while the remaining forces acted as a rear guard (cf. Bk. ii. 19). Sometimes, for additional security against flank attacks, columns of infantry marched on each side of the baggage train, forming a hollow square (agmen quadratum; see Fig. 101). If, when marching in this order, the army was compelled to halt and defend itself, the soldiers, by facing about, presented to the foe a complete circle (orbis) of armed men. When the foe was near and the ground level and open, the march was sometimes made in three parallel columns, which, by a simple evolution, could be quickly changed to the triple battle line (acies triplex), the regular formation for an engagement.

Streams were crossed either by fords or bridges. Romans could cross deeper fords than we, for they had no powder to keep dry
Roman Military Affairs.

(cf. Bk. v. 18). Sometimes a line of cavalry was sent across the stream to break the force of the current (cf. Bk. vii. 56). Bridges were usually very simple affairs of logs covered with earth and brush, or of boats, but Cæsar's masterpiece of military engineering was his roadway forty feet wide with which he twice spanned the Rhine (Bk. iv. 17; Bk. vi. 9; see Figs. 59, 86).

VII. The Battle.

As has been said (V), the camp was so chosen that the ground in front of it would be suitable for battle. The usual order of battle was tripexus acies. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other, varying in formation according to the depth of the line. As to the distance between the lines we have no definite information; nor even as to whether spaces were left between the cohorts. There were probably spaces between the different legions and doubtless between the centre (media acies), where the legionaries stood, and the wings (cornua), composed of auxiliaries and cavalry. Cæsar's lines were probably eight men deep. That would give each legion, estimated at 3600 men, a front of 180 legionaries, 45 for each cohort. When standing in open order for fighting, giving to each man the space necessary for the free use of his weapons, the front of each legion covered probably about 1000 feet, supposing the cohorts to stand close together; all this, however, is very uncertain.

When an attacking enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed forward, sword in sheath, and the front ranks with spears uplifted ready to hurl. When within range, the spears were thrown in a shower, the swords drawn, and a fierce charge made upon the mass of the foe, more or less disordered by the volley of spears. Along the front of the cohort rages a series of combats. The rear ranks press forward, throw their spears over the heads of their comrades, and take their places as the latter are wounded or weary. When the first line of cohorts has done its best, it makes room for the second line, re-forms, and gets breath for a new onset. Thus the battle goes on with the two
lines in almost constant motion. The enemy are given no rest and are worn out by the repeated charges of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is brought into action only in case the other two prove insufficient.

The cavalry in the rear, or on the wings, stand ready when the enemy break and flee to ride down the fugitives and cut them to pieces.

There were times when troops had to be arranged in special formations. The most important of these were the *cuneus*, or wedge, the *testudo*, or tortoise, and the *orbis*, or circle. The first was an attack in column instead of in line, and was of use in cutting through and dividing an opposing battle line. The second, in which the shields overlapped above like shingles on a roof, was used especially in approaching and storming walls, or whenever the enemy were to be driven from a higher position (cf. Bk. ii. 6; see Fig. 88). The last formation was like a modern hollow square with officers in the centre—except that from the character of ancient fighting it was rather circular than rectangular. It was necessary when the attack came from all sides at once (see Bk. iv. 37).

**VIII. THE SIEGE.**

The Romans excelled in the art of taking walled cities, and this skill gave them an immense advantage in their warfare with semi-barbarous and ignorant peoples. There were three methods of doing this: first, by an immediate attack (*oppugnatio repentina*); second, by an active siege, brought to a close by an assault (*expugnatio*); third, by investment and blockade (*obsidio*).

If there seemed to be a chance of success, a city was stormed at once with no formal preparation (*ex itinere*). Its defenders were driven from the walls by a shower of missiles (Bk. iii. 25); the moat was filled with brush and earth; the assaulters with shields locked in a *testudo* attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

If this method proved unsuccessful or impossible, a regular siege was begun. The work of a regular siege centred about the mound or *agger*, and to its construction everything else was subordinated.
It was begun at a distance from the wall, very nearly out of reach of the missiles of the enemy. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. At Avaricum the mound was 80 feet high (Bk. vii. 23–28). Its width was possibly 40 or 50 feet. It was made of earth and timber, and had connected galleries running through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover (see Fig. 78). The men engaged in constructing the agger had to be protected from the enemy. Those who were building worked behind lines of plutae (see Figs. 102, 103), large standing shields, which were moved forward from time to time as the agger progressed. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of sheds called vineae (see Figs. 33, 78), extending the length of the agger. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers and by engines of war (tormenta) standing behind lines of plutae or upon movable towers (turre). The latter stood on the agger or on either side of it, and advanced with it, and as they advanced increased in height story by story. As the workmen get nearer the wall the plutae will no longer protect them. Then they find refuge under strong sheds of wood called testudines or musculi, placed at the ends of lines of vineae.

When the mound has reached the wall, a breach is made through it for the final assault (expugnatio). Sometimes this was accomplished by undermining the wall, or it was pulled down from the top with huge iron hooks (falces murales). But the most common and most effective means was the battering ram (aries), a huge swinging beam from 60 to 100 feet long with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram’s head. This under a testudo, or in the lowest story of a tower, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. When the final assault was made, soldiers rushed in from every quarter, over the mound, through the breach, and from the movable towers, from whose highest stories drawbridges stretched to the walls.

Against these forms of assault the inhabitants used such means of resistance as they could. The most effective were masses of stone, thrown from the wall upon the works, and fire. To guard against
the latter, the besiegers had to cover all exposed woodwork with green hides. Battering rams and mural hooks were caught in slings and held fast, or drawn into the city, and mines were met by countermines. See Figs. 93, 98, 99.

When the location of the place was such that it could not be taken by such a siege as that described above, it was invested on every side (obsidio) and the inhabitants starved into submission. Among sieges of this kind were those of Gergovia (Bk. vii. 44–53) and Alesia (Bk. vii. 72–80), of which the last was one of the most remarkable of ancient times.

IX. THE FLEET.

Cæsar mentions two principal classes of ships: naves longae, or war galleys, and naves onerariae, or freight and transport vessels. As compared with the former, the latter were shorter, broader, and deeper; hence could carry greater burdens and were more seaworthy. They depended mainly on their sails, but often had rowers in addition. The naves actuariae of Bk. v. 1 were a special class of transport vessel, with both sails and oars. Cæsar used them to carry troops, horses, and munitions of war to Britain. See Figs. 48, 51, 52.

The war galley was long, low, and narrow; armed at the prow with a sharp beam (rostrum) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy’s ships; and propelled by one or two sails and a large force of rowers. The seamen (nautae) attended to the steering and the managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (remiges) were usually slaves. Galleys in Cæsar’s time mostly had three banks of oars. The steering apparatus was two broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The speed of these vessels was remarkable, almost equalling that of a modern steamship.

The fighting men were the legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact, there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat, and was commanded by military officers. Before going into action tormenta were placed on the deck, and also a turris; the mast was taken down and the sails and tackle housed. See Fig. 62.
III.

GAUL AND THE GAULS.

1. THE GALIC PROVINCE.

The district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which several centuries earlier had been occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and was not yet reckoned politically as a part of Italy; it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but as a whole it had been but recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean from the Pyrenees to the Alps, having for its northern boundary an irregular and uncertain line, which separated the territory of the conquered nations of Gaul from the states which were still free. To these two provinces was added also Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, whose power was not limited by the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, such as the old Greek city Massilia, were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, including Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute and under the jurisdiction of the governor, though the rights of Roman citizens were secured to them. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions; to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, but the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, if there was any excuse for war, and
of such excuses there was usually no lack. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome its rivals; in Gaul the Haedui, attached to Rome through some local rivalries, very well served this purpose.

Cæsar's province, at its western extremity, reached to Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than a hundred and fifty years. To the north lay four great nationalities, with all of which he was ultimately brought in contact. These were the Gauls proper, the Belgians, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (Libera Gallia) at that time consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half of it in extent and population, was occupied by the Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts, no doubt originally the same word. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, a separate people of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish; of these, the Basques of the present day are the representatives. To the northeast lived the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans. The Belgians occupied more territory than is now known as Belgium, including a considerable part of Holland on the one hand, and the northern belt of France on the other.

2. THE GALLIC PEOPLE.

a. Origin and Early History.—The Gauls were a branch of the great nations of the Indo-European family that in prehistoric times occupied parts of Asia and the greater part of Europe. They were known to the ancients as Celts or Gauls, and this name was applied without discrimination to all the barbarous peoples of the unknown west of Europe. The term was rather geographical than racial. The Romans, though they had been brought into contact with the barbarians of the north by war and commerce for many centuries, made no distinction, before Cæsar's time, between German and Gaul.
Gaul and the Gauls.

The Phœnicians, those pioneer traders and intrepid sailors of antiquity, had had commercial dealings with the Gauls at a very remote period. Several centuries later, but still at an early date (about B.C. 600), the Greeks had made a settlement near the mouth of the Rhone, which afterwards grew into the prosperous city of Massilia (Marseilles), and opened up some trade routes into the interior. Both Phœnicians and Greeks found the most powerful part of the Celts already well established in western Europe, and showing evidence of previous possession for a period going back of any assignable date.

The Celts had been for centuries a migratory and always a warlike people. These characteristics led them into many countries where they made settlements of more or less importance. Besides those who occupied Gaul proper, there were Iberian Celts (Celtiberi) in Spain, British Celts, Belgic Celts, Italian Celts in northern Italy, Celts in the Alps (notably the Helvetii), Illyrian Celts, and Asiatic Celts, who had settled in Asia Minor and were known as Galatians. It was to them, after they were Christianized, that Paul wrote his well-known epistle.

What knowledge the Greeks and Romans had of this powerful nation of barbarians was extremely vague. They had long hung like a dark storm-cloud on the northern frontier of both countries, and at intervals poured forth in overwhelming and destructive numbers. Once they spread desolation and dismay through Greece, and all but succeeded in plundering the rich temple of Delphi. In B.C. 390 Rome was destroyed by these same barbarians, and in B.C. 102 it was only the military genius of C. Marius that spared Italy a similar visitation.

Long before the time of Cæsar, the Romans had succeeded in subduing the Gauls south of the Alps, making the prosperous and orderly province of Cisalpine Gaul, as related above. Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum were more recent additions to the empire, and were less thoroughly subdued and civilized. They had been finally conquered by Q. Fabius Allobrogicus. All to the north had as yet been unexplored and uninvaded by Roman arms. The Gauls, according to circumstances and location, showed at this time various degrees of civilization. Those to the south and west, being nearer to the refinement of the province, had made rapid strides, had built many
flourishing cities, enjoyed prosperous and on the whole peaceful community life, and practised the arts and commerce. But those farther removed in the east and north, and the Britons, were still in a semi-savage condition. Cæsar’s expeditions among these are somewhat like similar military expeditions that nations are sending in our day to explore and subdue unknown Africa; and the trading posts established among them by the enterprising Greek merchants of Massilia, like the business ventures formerly sent among the Indians.

b. Character and Customs.—The Gauls are described as tall and of great physical strength, with a fair skin and blonde hair, which they often reddened by artificial means. Men of rank and of authority wore the hair and beard long. The more barbarous tribes gave themselves a terrible aspect by painting hideous devices on their half-naked bodies. Their voices were rough and harsh, their words few, and their language obscure and figurative. Disparaging others, boastful of themselves, arrogant, fond of idleness, they were very quarrelsome and always ready to fight, to relieve the monotony of their existence, if for no other reason. They were, however, high-spirited and brave to utter recklessness and contempt for death.

The Gallic women are described by an ancient writer as the most beautiful of all barbarian women and as thrifty housewives. He adds that, aided by his wife, who is much more formidable than he, the Gaul will hold his own in any conflict. The Roman invaders were often witnesses of the heroism of these veritable Amazons.

The Gauls lacked stability of character, and are often criticized by Cæsar for their fickleness; they were also very avaricious and given to superstitions. On the other hand, they were not vicious, but naturally of a simple and teachable disposition. They were very quick to learn and adopt whatever useful arts their neighbors brought to them. Their love of freedom was passionate; but their long years of wandering had not developed in them that feeling of national unity and that love of the soil that we include under the term patriotism.

The life of the less civilized tribes was rude in the extreme. Their houses were little more than huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. The dwelling was open to daylight by the door
alone, and had little or no furniture. Their beds were heaps of straw or furs. War was their principal occupation. They gave some attention to agriculture, raising the coarser grains, the better sort of fruits and vegetables being unknown to them. They also had large flocks and herds. They ate but little bread, but large quantities of meat, which they are described as cutting with their swords and eating in a ravenous manner.

The Gauls knew something of the arts and sciences. They did some weaving, and those on the coast had skill in shipbuilding and in navigation, and the Aquitanians were skilful miners. Their attempts at art were mainly imitations of what other lands brought to them. For example, they made more or less successful attempts to imitate the artistic coins of the Greeks and Romans. Several illustrations of Gallic coins may be found in the text (see Figs. 29, 64, 69, 70, etc., etc.). Cæsar was the first to bring to the world authentic information about most of these matters, and the student is referred for farther interesting details to his narrative (see especially Bk. vi).

c. Dress.—The details of Gallic dress are not fully known. Like most semi-civilized or savage people, they were very fond of bright colors and finery. They wore much jewelry—both men and women—of gold, if they could afford it, otherwise of bronze. Especially characteristic was the heavy collar of twisted gold (torquis, see Fig. 100), worn about the neck. The principal garments were a short, bright-colored tunic, either with or without sleeves, confined by a girdle of silver or gold, and trousers (bracæ). Over the shoulders was worn a short cloak (sagum) often of fine material and of gorgeous color. The character of the costume depended upon the rank and wealth of the wearer. The feet were protected by shoes or by soles of wood strapped on with leathern thongs. See Fig. 28.

d. Arms and Military Tactics.—As has been said, a Gaul’s chief business was war. He was always a soldier and, whether in youth or in old age, hastened to war with the same ardor. His principal weapon was a long two-edged sword, hanging from an iron or steel chain at the right side. It was adapted for striking and cutting, but not so much for thrusting, and was but poorly tempered. This in itself gave the Romans a great advantage through the superiority of their arms. The Gallic bronze sword came into use later,
Introduction.

and was a much better weapon. In Cæsar's time the iron sword probably still predominated. They had also various kinds of pikes, lances, and javelins, some made with peculiar waving and twisted blades to cause an uglier wound. Many weapons are mentioned with special names, but they are not capable of identification. Bows and slings, too, were used by them.

Ordinarily the Gaul wore no defensive armor. In fact, the common soldier went into battle with body almost bare. But the principal warriors wore chain mail (see Fig. 94), which is said to be a Gallic invention. At first this was made of iron. Later, better and lighter suits were made of bronze, and were sometimes adorned with silver and gold. The usual means for defence were the helmet and the shield. Shields were of various shapes and sizes and were adorned with figures of animals, etc., to suit the caprice or wealth of the owner, but the designs were of ancient origin. The helmets were surmounted with great horns, forms of birds or beasts, etc., designed to terrify the enemy (see Fig. 11). These also were, no doubt, survivals of earlier barbarism.

In battle they placed much reliance on their cavalry and in Northern Gaul and Britain on their war chariots. The infantry was arranged in great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx, with a line of shields before and on the sides, and sometimes with a roof of shields overhead, something like the testudo formation of the Romans. When they had drawn near, champions were accustomed to leave the ranks, and, brandishing their arms, challenge the foe to single combat. The first onset of the Gallic phalanx was terrific and often swept everything before it; but if that could be withstood, the advantage lay with the open and pliable order of the legion. In the latter every soldier was called into action, but in the former the great bulk of the Gallic warriors was practically imprisoned in the mass, and only those on the outside could use their arms.

e. Government. — The Gauls were not a single nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, united by a very slight bond of consanguinity and common religion. These tribes, which may be loosely compared to those of the North American Indians, though most of them were at a very much higher degree of civilization, varied greatly in extent and power, the smaller ones often main-
taining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate. But sometimes an ambitious leader, like Orgetorix, succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power. Thus the several states were torn by hostile parties, and were at the same time grouped into national factions, under the lead of the more powerful states. At the time of Cæsar, royalty had been almost abolished, and yearly magistrates (vergobrets) were elected instead. Every year representatives from the different states met in assembly, and questions of national policy were discussed. Owing to the violent and excitable natures of the Gauls, these assemblies often ended in tumultuous scenes of disorder.

At the commencement of war, a call to arms was sounded, to which old and young responded. The last man to appear was put to death with tortures in the presence of the assembled people.

4. Religion. — The Druids. — Cæsar says that the Gauls were devoted to religious matters. They were under the control of a class of priests known as Druids, who acted not only as priests, but also as arbitrers and judges. By them was treasured the religious and philosophic lore of the Gauls, and to them the Gallic youth went for instruction, some of them remaining in training as long as twenty years. One of their most important doctrines was that of the transmigration of souls. Belief in immortality gave the Gauls a contempt for death which enabled them to face the greatest dangers without flinching.

The Druids gave their instructions and performed their bloody sacrifices in the depths of the forest. The oak and the mistletoe were sacred in their eyes. The mysterious rites of their worship are not well known, but many cruel and horrible practices are attributed to them by ancient writers, among them human sacrifices. Cæsar mentions these, but did not know of their actual occurrence from personal observation.

The principal religious observances of the Gauls were gradually abolished under Roman rule, but many of them were 'baptized' into Christianity and survive to-day in various modified forms as a part of the popular religion.
Introduction.

The strange monuments of stone found in many lands, called 'cromlechs' and 'menhirs,' popularly supposed to be Druidic monuments, are far older than the Druids and have nothing to do with their religion.

Caesar gives the first authentic information about the Druids in his narrative (Bk. vi. 13-16).


Caesar left Gaul subdued and open to Roman occupation and greed. The country was rapidly colonized and civilized. Augustus divided it into four provinces and established the Roman authority on a firm basis. Only one great patriotic uprising occurred after Caesar's time, though the Gauls took part in the contests later for the imperial throne. In course of time the very language of Gaul became Latin, and this became the parent of modern French. In the fifth century tribes of Germans began to make inroads on the Roman domain, and the Franks, under Clovis as king, firmly established themselves in the north. Their power spread; they subjugated the inhabitants, and gave their name to the country, which it bears to this day,—France, the lands of the Franks. There were many social and political changes after this time, but the same life flowed on from Roman Gaul to modern France. The French still display many of the characteristics of the ancient Gauls; they live in substantially the same limits; many of their mountains, cities, and streams still bear the old names.

IV.

The Britons.

With Caesar begins the history of England. He found there a Celtic people, differing but little from those on the continent, save that they were more barbarous. What the condition or history of the British Isles was before Caesar's invasion is wrapped in obscurity. A few Greek writers refer vaguely to them, and there was an equally vague knowledge of the smaller islands lying near. Even Caesar
The Germans.

The Germans first appear in history in the campaigns of the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 113–101), the latter of whom were undoubtedly of Germanic origin. The Romans obtained their first considerable knowledge of the country from Cæsar. The ancient limits assigned to it were less on the west and south, but indefinitely greater on the east and north, than the modern. In those directions it was terra incognita to the Romans, and always remained so. They never did more than subdue the border tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar had relatively little to do with the Germans, but made such investigations as he could, the results of which are succinctly given in his narrative (Bk. iv. 1–3; Bk. vi. 21–28). The next account, in greater detail, was given by Tacitus in his "Germania," who corroborates Cæsar in all important particulars.

The Germans were much less civilized than most of the Gauls. They were just at the end of the nomadic stage, and were settling down and beginning community life. Their last onward nomadic movement was that under Ariovistus, which it was Cæsar's fortune to arrest (Bk. i. 31–54). They were a more manly and vigorous race than the Gauls, warlike, independent, and virtuous. The country is described as a dismal land, covered for the most part with forests and swamps, producing little food, and subject to almost constant winter.
VI.

THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

The campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58–51), and are told in eight books,—the last written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar,—each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline:

Book I. B.C. 58. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to settle in Western Gaul, and, after a bloody defeat, forces the remnant to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief, Ariovistus, back across the Rhine.

Book II. B.C. 57. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the Nervii, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all that Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) also are reduced to submission.

Book III. B.C. 56. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (Veneti, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tide-water inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the southwest (Aquitani), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar's officers.

Book IV. B.C. 55. An inroad of the Germans into Northern Gaul is repulsed, and Cæsar follows them by a bridge of timber hastily built across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn for a visit of exploration.

Book V. B.C. 54. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in Northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved after serious losses by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

Book VI. B.C. 53. Cæsar makes a second brief expedition across the Rhine against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and Northern Gaul is reduced to peace.
Directions for Reading.

Book VII. B.C. 52. Vercingetorix, a brave and high-spirited chief of Southern Gaul, effects a confederacy of the whole country, which is at length subdued. Vercingetorix surrenders himself to secure the quiet of the country, and is taken in chains to Rome, where he was afterwards put to death at Caesar's triumph.

Book VIII. B.C. 51. Slight insurrections breaking out here and there are easily subdued; and by the capture of the last native stronghold, Uxellodunum, the subjugation of Gaul is made complete.

VII.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

As "Caesar," though in many respects a book for advanced students, is often the first Latin classic put into the learner's hands, it may be well to give a few hints as to the method of study.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases and Moods; § 594 (pp. 381 ff.); B., pp. 117 ff.; G., pp. 437 ff.; H. 662 (558); H-B. 219 ff.; and the Definitions contained in § 269-280 (171-180); B. 160-165; G. 201-209; H. 376-384 (345-361); H-B. 219-229.

2. Notice at once the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, etc., — which show the corresponding relations of the words and ideas to each other, — may be present to your mind. If the form of the word gives several possibilities, hold them all in your mind, so far as may be, till something occurs in the progress of the sentence to settle the doubt.

3. Always try to take in the ideas in that order in which the Latin presents them. Read every word as if it were the last on a page and you had to turn over without being able to turn back. The mind soon becomes accustomed to the order of any language, as we see by the constant and almost unnoticed inversions of common speech and poetry. If, however, you are obliged to turn back, begin again at the beginning of the sentence and proceed as before. The greatest difficulty to a beginner is his inability to remember the first parts of a complex idea. This difficulty can often be lessened
by jotting down, in a loose kind of English, the words as they come in the Latin. In this way it is often easy to see what a string of words must mean, though we should never say anything like it in English.

4. Don’t try to translate formally until you have got a complete idea of some integral part of the sentence. It makes nonsense to render words mechanically, without thinking the corresponding ideas.

5. From the outset, notice that the emphatic position of words plays a most important part in Latin writing, and try to feel the emphasis of position as you read. See § 595–601 (343–346), and compare B. 348–351; G. 671–687; H. 663–685 (559–573); H-B. 620–630.

As an illustration of § 5 we append a translation of the first chapter of Book II with especial reference to the emphasis indicated by the order. As the translation is made expressly to bring out explicitly the force of order, it should not be taken as a model of desirable translation. Such a translation as is here given forces the emphasis on the attention more than is perhaps natural in English. The force is all present in the Latin, but in English it may often be left to be brought out by the context or by some kindred emphasis which the English substitutes. A short, easy passage from Book V is also given without comment for study and practice.

And BEING¹ thus in Hither² Gaul, as I have shown above, Caesær³ had frequent⁴ rumors brought to him,⁵ and despatches⁶ also from Labienus⁷ continued to inform him that

Cum esset Caesarius in citeriore Galliâ, ita uti suprâ dēmōnstrāvi-

mús, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterīsque item

Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnīs

¹ The emphasis on being binds this part of the narrative with the situation left at the end of the last book, as if it were “Caesar went to Hither Gaul,—and while he was engaged there.”
² Opposed to Farther Gaul, where the troops were.
³ The main subject of discourse.
⁴ The repetition of the stories is the significant fact, “he kept hearing,” but at the same time the rumors are opposed to Labienus’s despatches.
⁵ An emphasis continued in Latin from Caesar, the main person, but lost in English; see § 598. 1 (344. 1); H-B. 627. 2.
⁶, ⁷ Opposed to the rumors.
Directions for Reading.

ALL the Belgæ, who constituted a third part of [the whole of] Gaul, as I had [previously] stated, were conspiring [for an attack] against the Roman government and exchanging hostages. That for this conspiracy the reasons were these, namely: in the first place, because they were afraid (i.e. in their own minds) that when Gaul was all subdued, our army would be brought against them; and in the second place, because some of the Gauls (i.e. from outside) were tampering with them. These Gauls were partly those who were disturbed that the Roman army should pass the winter and get a footing in Gaul, just as Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contrà populum Römānum coniūrāre obsidesque inter sē dare. Coniurandi hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster adducerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūlis Gallis sollicitārentur, —partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere

8, 9 Both words together the subject of discourse, but the adjective most prominent, "the entire body of the Belgæ."

10 Opposed to the whole, as one might say, "a full third of the whole."

11 Here not the conspiracy itself, but the aim of it, is the most important part of the idea.

12 The main subject of discourse, "now this conspiracy, the reports said," etc.

13 The difference between "the reasons why were these" and "these were the reasons why" is obvious. Cæsar might say either.

14 A peculiar emphasis not directly carried out. Cicero would very likely have been more rhetorical and have opposed "fear" to "being tampered with." But Cæsar changes his point of view in the course of the sentence; and, as if he had said ipsi in the first member, opposes to the motives of the Belgae themselves, the Gauls by whom outside influence was brought to bear.

15, 16 The completion of the business now in hand is first emphasized, then the business itself.

17 Caesar brings out the whole force of the idea by opposing "them" to "Gaul," which has not before been emphatic, but which is now made so by being contrasted with the Belgians; cf. Chiasmus, § 598. f (344. f); B. 350, 11. c; G. 682 and r.; H. 666. 2 (562); H-B. 628.

18 See note 14.

19 Opposed to the "Germans."

20 Opposed to "stay any longer."

21 The English emphasis here represents the position of the two clauses, relative and antecedent.
they had been unwilling that the Germans should stay any longer there, and partly those who from [mere] fickleness and unsteadiness were [always] eager for new forms of government; [they were stimulated] by some also besides, who, inasmuch as in Gaul regal power was regularly usurped by the more powerful and by those who had means to employ soldiers, could not so easily succeed in such usurpations under our imperial control.

22 Opposed to the "Romans."
23 See note 20.
24 Notice that the view of the first party is a rational idea seriously thought out, to which implied state of mind the inconstancy of the second party is opposed.
25 A natural consequence of their character. For no good reason they got tired of the established order and wanted a change.
26 Opposed to other countries in which the government was more stable.
27, 28 The two means of attaining regal power.
29 And consequently wanted to rebel.
30 The Latin often compresses into an indefinite, and to us unemphatic, word (as rem here) a whole important idea. In such cases the true emphasis appears in English only when a suitable descriptive word is substituted for the vague one according to our way of saying things.
31 This control, of course, tended towards establishing order.

V. 23. After taking hostages he led his army back to the sea [where he] found the ships repaired. Having launched them, inasmuch as he had a great number of captives, and some of the ships had been lost in the storm, he proceeded to transport his army in two voyages. And [fortunately] it so happened that out of so many ships in so many voyages not a single one was lost that carried soldiers either that year in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim qui mōbilitàe et levitāe animī novīs imperīis studēbant, —ab non nihilis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eis quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant volgō régna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnse- quī poterant.

Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvis invenit refectās. His dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commēātibus exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigationibus, neque hoc neque superiōre annō ālla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs
or the year before, while of the ships which were sent back to him empty from the continent after discharging the soldiers of the first voyage, as well as of the sixty others that Labienus had had built later, very few reached their destination. Almost all the rest were driven back. portaret désiderarétur; at ex eis quae inänēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commēātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quīs posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur.
THE GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.

CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETII AND ARIOVISTUS. B.C. 58.

The Nations of Gaul.

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partis tris; quàrum ēnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam qui ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dividit.¹

Their Characters Compared.

Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeat atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique sunt Germānīs qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt,² quibuscum con- tinenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētii quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod fērē cotidiānīs proelīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Cf. ¹ dīvisa, l. 1. — ² incolunt, l. 2.
The Territories of Each.

Eōrum ēna pars,quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Oceānō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquaniēs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Bel-

gae ab extremīs Galliae finibus orientur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentrioniēm et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montis et eam partem Oceāni quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septen-

triōnēs.

Orgetorix with his Fellow Nobles Forms a Plan to Invade Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne consūlibus, rēgni cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et civi-
tātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiēs exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potīri.

He Persuades his People, the Helvetii.

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiō continetur. ëna ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētiōm ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostrām ab Helvētiīs dividit.

They Assent, being Warlike and feeling Cramped by their Narrow Limits.

His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum ināre possent; quā ex parte homi-

Cf. 1 partīs, p. 1, l. 1. — 2 pertinent, l. 5. — 3 longissimō, l. 7. — 4 continētur, l. 2.
nēs bellandi cupidi māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē finis habēre arbitrabantur, qui in longitūdinem milia passuum ccxl, in lātitūdinem clxxx patēbant.

They Employ Two Years in Preparations.

3. His rébus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent compārāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentis quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cópia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et 10 amicitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnściendiās biennium sībi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectionem lēge cōnfirmānt.

Orgetorix Consipres with Other Gallic Chiefs.

Ad eās rēs cōnściendiās Orgetorix déligitur. Is sibi lēgātionem ad civitātis suspēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Cas-ticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanis multitōs annōs obtinuerat et a senātū populi Römānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnōrigi Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, qui eō tempore principātum in civi-tāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnā-rētur persuādet, eique filiam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

His Arguments.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quin tōtius Galliae plurimum Helvētii possent; 25 sē suis cópiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōn-

Cf. 1 finibus, p. 2, 1. 3.—2 pertinent, 2, 5.—3 proximī, 1, 9.—4 persuāsit, 2, 14.—5 obtinēre, 2, 1.
firmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrāndum
dant, et rēgno occupātō per trēs potenti̧ssimōs ac firmissi-
mōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiriū posse spērānt.

Orgetorix is Brought to Trial.

4. Ea rés est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus
suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Dam-
nātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur.

He Escapes.

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium
ōmnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique
cōgīt, et omnis clientis obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnūm
numerus habēbat, ēōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam
diceret sē ēripuit.

His Death.

Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armis iūs suum exsequī
cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs
cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut
Helvētiī arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Still the Helvetii Persist in the Attempt.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōn-
stituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeat. Ubi
iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua
omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicīs ad quadrīngentōs, reliqua
privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod
sēcum portātūri erant, combūrunt, ut — domum reditiōnis
spē sublātā — parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent;
trium mēnsium molita cibāria sībi quemque domō efferre
iubent.

— 4 coēgīt, l. 9. — 5 cōnārētur, l. 13. — 6 exīrent, 2, 14. — 7 frūmentī,
3, 10.
Fig. 5 — Pas de l'Ecluse.
Campaign against the Helvetii.

Other Tribes are Persuaded to Join them.

Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti eōdem üsī cōnsiliō, oppidis suis vicisque exūstis, ünā cum eis proficiscantur; Boiōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārunt, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

Two Routes for Invasion Described.

6. Erant omnīō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent: ünum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carri dūcerentur; móns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut

Cf. ¹ proficiscendum, p. 3, l. 7. — ² carrōrum, 3, 8.
facile perpauci prohibère\(^1\) possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finis Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūlis locis vādō trānsītur.\(^5\)

\[\text{Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūros (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) existimābant, vel vī coāctūros\(^4\) ut per suōs finis eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectionem comparātis diem dicunt quā diē ad ripam Rhodani omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d.\(^6\) v. Kal. Āpr., L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōnsulibus.}\]

Caesar Resolves to Stop them, and Destroys the Bridge near Geneva.

\[\text{7. Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindi.}\]

They Ask Caesar’s Permission.

\[\text{Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōres facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis’ Nammēius et Verudoctius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent sībi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prō vinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sībi facere liceat.’}\]

\(^1\) prohibent, p. 1, l. 14.—\(^2\) trānsierant, 5, 4.—\(^3\) proximīs, 3, 10.—\(^4\) coēgit, 4, 9.—\(^5\) cōnantur, 4, 17.—\(^6\) proficiscantur, 5, 3.—\(^7\) lēgātiōnem, 3, 14.—\(^8\) itinerā, 5, 6.
Caesar Unwilling, but Puts them off to Gain Time.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēndum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faci- undi, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābat.\(^1\) Tamen, ut spatio intercēdere posset dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent,\(^5\) légātis respondit diem sē ad deliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. revertērentur.

Caesar Constructs Fortifications to Stop the Helvetii.

8. Interēa ēa legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemānnō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum infuit, ad montem Iūram, qui finis Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, mília passuum decem novem mūrum. in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perducit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō faciūis, sī sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii Attempt to Pass, but are Repulsed.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgāti ad eum revertērent,\(^5\) negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rō- māni posse iter ūlī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, ēa spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūncitis ratibusque complūribus factīs, alii vādis Rhodani, quā minima altitūdō flūminus erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis münitione et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi, hōc cōnāti dēstitērent.

Cf. \(^1\) facere, p. 6, l. 25. — \(^2\) existimābant, 6, 9. — \(^3\) conveniant, 6, 12. — \(^4\) perficere, 3, 23. — \(^5\) revertērentur, l. 9. — \(^6\) vādō, 6, 4. — \(^7\) quā, 5, 8. — \(^8\) saepe, 1, 8.
Through the Influence of Dumnorix, a Hæduan, they are Allowed to Pass through the Sequanian Territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquani invitis¹ propter angustiās² ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō, déprecātōre a Sēquaniān impetrā-
5 rent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquaniōs plūri-
num⁶ poterat et Helvētiēs erat amicus, quod ex ēa civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimōniōm dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgni adductus novis rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civi-
tātis suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem
10 suscipit et a Sēquaniān impetrat ut per finis suōs Helvētiōs
IRE patiantur,⁴ obsidēsque uti inter sēsē dent perficit: Sē-
quani, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiēs, ut sine
maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Cæsar Opposes this Movement also.

10. Cæsārī renūntiātur Helvētiēs esse in animō⁵ per
15 agrum Sēquaniōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Sāntonum finis
facere, quī nōn longē⁶ a Tolosātium finibus absunt, quae
civitās est in Prōvinciā. Id si fieret,⁷ intellegēbat māgnō
cum periculō⁸ prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicosōs,
populi Rōmāni inimicōs, locis patentibus⁹ maximēque frū-
20 mentāriis fīnitimōs habēret.

He Takes Active Measures.

Ob eās causās ei mūnitioīnī¹⁰ quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum
lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus conten-
dit duāsque ibi legiōnēs conscribit, et trēs quae circum

⁴ paterentur, 6, 10. — ⁵ esse in animō, 6, 24. — ⁶ longissimē, 1, 7. — ⁷ fī-
Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernis ēducit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpis erat; cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Some Tribes Resist his March, but he Crosses the Rhone with his Army.

Ibi Ceutrones et Grāioceli et Caturiges locis superiōribus occupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūri-bus his proelis pulsīs,² ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvin-ciae extrēnum, in finis Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit;³ inde in Allobrogum finis, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmi.

The Helvetii Commit Depredations on their March, and Several Tribes Ask for Caesar's Help against them.


The Helvetii Attempt to Cross the Saône.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finis Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicāri nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac līntribus iūnctis trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partis cópiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam fērē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Caesar Cuts to Pieces a Part (the Tigrurini), Who had not yet Crossed.

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantis adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concidit; reliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās 3 silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigrurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hic pāgus unus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum miserat.

Thus he Wipes out a Long-standing Disgrace.

Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars

civitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, sae prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar

nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est; quod ēius soceri L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem légātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

**Caesar Crosses the Saūne.**

**13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequi posset, pontem in Arari faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit.**

**The Helvetii Send an Embassy.**

Helvētiī repentinō ēius adventū commōti, cum id quod ipsi diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum unō diē fēcisse intellegerent, légātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius légātiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

**Divico's Speech.**

*Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:* 'Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommōdi populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ēnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī qui flūmen trānsissent suis auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūti tribu- eret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiās niterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et internecione exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

Caesar's Reply.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: 'Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētiī commemorāssent memoria tēnēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent; qui si alicūius iniūriāe sibi cōnsiūs fuisset, nōn fuisse difficīle cāvēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēponere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insonlenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālis, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

He Proposes Terms, Which are not Accepted.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, ut eā quae pollicēantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduōs dē iniūriās quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.' Dīvicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis instītūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc responsō datō discessit.

Slight Reverse of Caesar's Cavalry.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equītātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvīnciā et Haeeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partis hostēs iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen īnsećiō aliēnō locō cum equitātū Hēlvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostrīs cadunt.

The Hēlvētiī Move on; Cæsar Follows.

Quō proeliō sublātī Hēlvētiī, quod quīngentis equītibus tantam multīūdinem equītum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs laccum coēpērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapinis [pābulātiōnibus] populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnīs milibus passuum interest.

The Hāeduī Neglect to Furnish Grain.

16. Interim cotidiē Cæsar Hāeduīs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus (ut ante dīctum est) posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cópia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Arāri nāvibus subvēxerăt proptereā minus ūti poterat, quod iter ab Arāri Hēlvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Hāeduī; consērri, comportāri, adesse dicere.

Caesar Summons their Chiefs and Upbraids them.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstaře quō diē frūmentum militibus metīri oportēret, convocātīs eōrum principibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, — in

his Diviciācō et Liscō, qui summō magistrātui praerētat quem 5 vergobretum appellant Haedui, qui cēātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eis nōn

Cf. 1 intellegēbat, p. 8, l. 17. — 2 gravius, 12, 14. — 3 sūmptūrum, 7, 8.
sublevétur; prae sentim cum māgnā ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum suscēpet,1 multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus Explains the Situation: a Party Opposed to the Romans Prevents the Supply.

17. Tum dēsum Liscus ēratiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacerat prōpōnit: 'Esse nōn nullōs 2 quōrum auctōri-
tās apud plēbem 3 plurimum valeat, qui privātim plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātus. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ērati-
ōne multitudinem dēterrére né frūmentum cōnferant 4 quod dēbeant: praestārē, sī iam principātum 5 Galliae obtinēre 6
nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitārī quin, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmāni, ūnā
cum reliquā Galliā Haeduis libertātem sint ēreptūrī.7 Ab eisdem nostrā cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; 8 hōs ā sē coeruleī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē 15
quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū
potuerit tacuisse.'

Liscus Privately Discloses the Ambition and Treachery of Dumnorix, who Favors the Helvetii.

18. Caesar hāc ēratiōne Lisci Dumnorīgem, Diviciācī
frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praeenti-
bus eās rēs iactāri nōlēbat, 9 celeriter conciliūm dīmittit, 20
Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dix-
erat. Dicit liberius atque audāciōs. 10 Eadem sēcrētō ab
aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem,
summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem
grātiā, 11 cupidum rērum novārum. Complūris annōs portōria 25

Cf. 1 suspicit, p. 8, l. 10. — 2 nōn nullīs, 6, 4. — 3 plēbī, 3, 21. — 4 cōn-
ferī, 13, 25. — 5 principātum, 3, 20. — 6 obtinēbant, 6, 23. — 7 ēripuit,
11 grātiā, 8, 5.
reliquaque omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illa licentia contraria liceri audeat nemö. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultatis ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suum sumptus semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi sed etiam apud finitimäs civitatis largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causae matrem in Biturigibus homini illic Nobilissimo ac potentissimo conlocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiiuxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in aliis civitatis conlocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetii propter eam adfinitatem, odisse etiam suó nómoine Caesarem et Römänös, quod eorum appetui potentia eius dëminuta et Diviciacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Römänis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperi populi Römän nón modo de regno, sed etiam de eä quam habeat gratia, déspérare. Reperiébat etiam in quaerendö Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diëbus esset factum, initium [eius] fugae factum à Dumnorige atque eius equitibus, nam equitatum, quem auxilió Caesari Haedu mi serant, Dumnorix praerat; eorum fugæ reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

Caesar Thinks that Dumnorix should be Punished.

19. Quibus rebus cognitiüs, cum ad hās suspicitionēs certissimae res accèderent, — quod per finis Sèquanorum Helvëtiōs tráduxisset, quod obsidēs inter eós dandös cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nón modo iniūssū suō et civitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcissent, quod à magistrātū Haeduorum accusārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrábātur quā re in

Fig. 11.—Gallic Remains.
eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret.

But Summons Diviciacus, Whom he does not Wish to Offend.

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem,ē egregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnō- verat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri iubet, et cotidiānīsinterpretabus remōtis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in concilio [Gallōrum] dē Dumnorīge sint dicta; et ostendit quaē séparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offensioāne animī vel ipse de eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat vel civitātem statuere iubet.

Diviciācus Pleads for his Brother's Pardon.

20. Diviciācus, multīs cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātem statueret: 'Scirē sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterē quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiâm sed paene ad perniciem suam uerē- tur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgī commovērī. Quod sī quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem

existimātūrum
nōn suā voluntāte factum;
quā ex rē futūrum
uti tōtius Galliae animī a sē āverterentur.  

* And for his Sake Dumnorix is Spared.

Haec cum pluribus verbīs flēns a Caesare peteret, Caesar eīus dextram prendit; consōlātus rogat finem ōrandi faciat;
5 tantī eīus apūd sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī publicae
iniūriam et suum dolōrem eīus voluntāti ac precibus con-
dōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet; quae in
eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās
querātur, 4 prōpōnit; 5 monet ut in reliquum tempus omnis
10 suspicīōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre
dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum
loquātur, scire possit.

Cæsar Prepares for a Battle.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus 6 certior factus hostis
sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō,
15 quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, qui
cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum 7 est faciēm esse. Dé
tertiā vigiliā 8. T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prætōre, cum
duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus qui iter cōgnōverant, sum-
mum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui cōnsiliō sit
20 ostendit. Ipse dé quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs
ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit.
P. Cōnsidiōs, qui reī militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in
exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassi fuerat, cum explō-
rātōribus praemittitur. 10

Cf. 1 existimābat, p. 7, l. 5. — 2 āverterant, 13, 23. — 3 precibus, 15,
1. — 4 queritur, 15, 3. — 5 prōpōnit, 15, 5. — 6 explōrātōres, 10, 5. —
7 renūntiātur, 8, 14. — 8 vigiliā, 10, 7. — 9 cōnsilia, 15, 13. — 10 prae-
mittit, 13, 4.
Campaign against the Helvetii.

Considius, being Panic-stricken, Delays the Plan.

22. Primă lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius¹ mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset,² neque, ut posteā ex captīvis comperit, aut

ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus³ esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō ⁵ occupārī⁴ voluerit⁶ ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Cæsar suās cópiās in proxīmum⁶ collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Cæsare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cópiāe prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō ¹⁰ tempore in hostis impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelīōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Cæsar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenēri et

Cf.¹ longē, p. 8.1. 16. — ² absunt, 1, 7. — ³ cōgnōverat, 17, 5. — ⁴ occupātis, 9, 5. — ⁶ velint, 12, 15. — ⁶ proxīmās, 10, 12.
Helvētīōs castra mōvisse\textsuperscript{1} et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sībi renūtiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervālō, hostīs sequitur et milia passuum triā ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

\textbf{Cēsar} Turns towards Bibracte to Get Supplies. \textit{The Helvetii, Emboldened, Follow him.}

\textbf{5 23.} Postridiē ēius diēi, quod omnīnō\textsuperscript{2} biduum supererat cum exercitū frūmentum metīrī\textsuperscript{3} oportēret,\textsuperscript{4} et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōssimō, nōn amplius\textsuperscript{5} milibus passuum \textit{xviii} aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existīvit; \textit{itaque} iter ab Helvētiis āvertit\textsuperscript{6} ac Bibracte ire contenditur.\textsuperscript{6} Ea rēs per fugītīvōs L. Aemīli, decurīonis equītum Gallōrum, hostibus nūtiātur. Helvētii, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existīmārent, eō magis quod pridiē superiōrius locis occupātīs proelium nōn commississent,\textsuperscript{7} sive eō quod ré frūmentāria\textsuperscript{8} interclūdī posse cōnsiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō\textsuperscript{9} agmine insequī\textsuperscript{10} ac lacesse\textsuperscript{11} coepērunt.

\textit{Both Sides Prepare for Battle.}

\textbf{24.} Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Cēsar in proximum collem subdūcit equītātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum\textsuperscript{12} misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō tri-plicem aciem i:nstrūxi: \textsuperscript{13} legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre\textsuperscript{14} proximē cōnscriberat et omnia auxilia conlocāri, [ac tōtum mon-tem hominibus complēri, et interē] sarcinās ē ēnum locum

\textit{Cf. \textsuperscript{1} movent, p. 13, l. 1. \textsuperscript{2} omnīnō, 6, 18. \textsuperscript{3} metīrī, 14, 2. \textsuperscript{4} oportēret, 14, 2. \textsuperscript{5} amplius, 13, 15. \textsuperscript{6} contendit, 18, 21. \textsuperscript{7} committeret, 19, 9. \textsuperscript{8} frūmentāria, 8, 19. \textsuperscript{9} novissimō, 13, 5. \textsuperscript{10} insecūtī, 13, 5. \textsuperscript{11} lacesserē, 13, 11. \textsuperscript{12} impetus, 19, 11. \textsuperscript{13} instruit, 19, 8. \textsuperscript{14} citeriōris, 9, 6.}
cōnferrī, et eum ab his qui in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant \( ^1 \) mūnīri iussit. Helvētii cum omnibus suis carris secūti,

impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

Cf. \( ^1 \) cōnstitissent, p. \( 11 \), l. \( 23 \).
The Battle.


Cf. 1 conspectū, p. 9, l. 16. — 2 impeditōs, 10, 10. — 3 successērunt, 21, 5. — 4 adgressus, 10, 10.
The Helvetii are Defeated with Great Loss. They Retreat.

26. Ita anxipiti proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre\textsuperscript{1} nostrōrum impetus nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta\textsuperscript{2} et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum 5

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} sustinēret, p. 20, l. 19. — \textsuperscript{2} impedimenta, 21, 3.
sit, äversum hostem vidère nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs veni-entis tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūlli 1 inter carrōs rēdāsque 5 matarās ac tāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potiti 2 sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque únus ē filiīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter 8 iērunt: [nūllum partem 10 noctis itinere intermissō] in finis Līngonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, 4 cum et propter volnera militum et propter sepul- tūram occisōrum 6 nostri [trīduum morāti] eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Ĉaesar ad Līngonas litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā re iuvārent; qui si iūvissent, sē 15 eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō inter- missō cum omnibus cōpiis 6 eōs sequī coepit.

Negotiations for Surrender.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopīa adductī lēgātōs dē dēditioōe ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēniissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent supplicīterque locūti 20 flentēs 7 pācem petissent, 8 atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum 9 expectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Ĉaesar pervēnit, obsidēs, 10 arma, servōs qui ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.

Six Thousand Helvetii Flee, but Later are Captured.

Dum ea conquiruntur et cōnferuntur, 11 [nocte intermissā] 25 circiter hominum milia vi ēius pāgi 12 qui Verbigenus appel- lātūr, sīve timōre perterriti, 13 nē armīs trādītis suppliciō 14

Campaign against the Helvetii.

adserentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīōrum suam fugam aut occultāri aut omnīnō

ignorāri posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finisque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per finīs ierant, his uti conquerīrent et reducerent, si sibi pūrgāti esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habītī; reliquōs omnis, obsidibus, armīs, perfugis trāditīs in dēditionem accēpit.

The Helvetii Forced to Return.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finīs suōs, unde erant, profecti, revertī iussīt; et quod omnibus frūgibus amissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmentī cópiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicīsque, quōs incendērunt, restituēre iussīt. Id eā maxime ratione fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiōs discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germanī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finīs trāsīrent, et finītimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs, petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suīs concōcarent, concessīt.

quibus illi agrōs dedérunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condicionem atque ipsi erant recēpérunt.

Census of the Tribes Before and After their March.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis consectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominātīm ratiō consecta erat, qui numeros domō exīsset eōrum qui arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot pueri, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat caputum Helvetiorum milium cclxiii, Tulingorum milium xxxvi, Latio-brigorum xiii, Rauracorum xxiii, Bōiorum xxxii; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii. Summa omnium fuē-runt ad milia cclxviii. Eōrum qui domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numeros milium c et x.

Gallic Chiefs Congratulate Caesar.

30. Bellō Helvetiorum consēctō totius fēri Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnerunt: 'Intelligere sēsē, tametsi prō veteribus Helvetiorum iniuīris populi Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usū terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidisse; propterēa quod eō consiliō florentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvetīi reliquisserant, uti tōti Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potiērentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā déligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissem ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāque civitātis stipendiāriās habērent.'

They Request a Council.

25 Petiērunt uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre

quásdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō peters vel-
lent. Eā rē permīssā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre
iūrāndō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō
mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

Private Interview with Cæsar.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitātum qui 5
ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt 2 petiēruntque uti
sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā omniumque salūte 3 cum eō
agere 4 licēret. Eā rē imperātā 5 sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari
ad pedēs prōiēcērunt : 6 ‘Nōn minus sē id contendere et
labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea 10
quae vellent imperārent; propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum
esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūros vidērunt.’

Speech of Diviciacus the Hēduan. He Complains of the Encroachments
of the Germans.

Locūtus 7 est prō his Diviciācus Haeduus: ‘Galliae tōtius
factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principiātum tenēre
Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hi cum tantōpere dē poten-
tātū inter sē multitōs annōs contendere, factum esse uti
ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur.
Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; postea-
quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac
barbarī adāmāssent, trāductōs plūris; nunc esse in Galliā 20
ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum his Haeduōs
eōrumque clientīs semel atque iterum armis contendisse;
māgnam calamitātem pulsōs 8 accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem,
omnem senātum, omnem equitātumāmīsisse. 9 Quibus pro-
liis calamitātibusque frāctōs, qui et suā virtūte et populi 25
Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitia plūrimum ante in Galliā

— 4 ēgit, 11, 12. — 5 imperat, 8, 10. — 6 prōiēcissent, 24, 19. — 7 locūtī,
potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsidēs dare nobilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēne neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implō-rāturōs neque recūsāturōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum dicīone atque imperiō essent. Unum sē esse ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum qui addūci non potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs dare. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte prōfūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

The Hard Lot of the Sequani.

Sed pēius victoribus Sequanis quam Haeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus consēdisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē altera parte tertiā Sequanōs dēcēdere iūbēret, propterea quod paucis mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia homīnum XXIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis annis utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germāni Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim conferen-dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc consētuēdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Tyranny of Ariovistus.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīce-rīt, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēlīter imperāre, obsidēs nobilissimi cūiusque liberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūisque ēdere, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

The Gauls have no Hope but in Caesar.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvētii fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium aliās sēdis remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recenti victoriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī ādērēre posse nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur,1 Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniūriā posse défendere.' 10

The Sequani Remain Silent. Diviciacus Shows their Desperate Condition.

32. Hāc ērātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā omnēs quī aderant māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coeptūrunt.3 Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs4 ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed tristis capite dēmissō terram intuēri. Řīus reī quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsīs quae-siit.4 Nihil Sēquani respondēre, sed in ēdēm tristitīa tacitī permanēre. Cum ab īs saepius quaereret neque ūllum omnīnō vocem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hāc esse miserīōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,5 quod sōlī nē in occultō 20 quidem querī6 neque auxilium implōrāre audērent;7 absentisque Ariovisti crūdēlītātem, velut si cōram adesset, horrērent, propertēa quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās7 darētur, Sēquanis vērō, qui intrā finis suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruci- 25 ātūs essent perferendī.'

33. His rêbus cōgnitis Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbis cōnfīrmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futuram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūris factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne ōne habitā concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandum et suscipiendam putāret: imprīmis, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumero ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenēri, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrābatur. Paulātīm autem Germānōs consuecrcē Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venire, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperāturōs existimābat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonique fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent; [praeistant cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret]; quibus rêbus quam mātūrimē occurrentum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spiritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn viderētur.

He Requests an Interview with Ariovistus, Who Declines.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rêbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: ‘Si quid ipsi ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē
ad eum ventūrum fuisse; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportēre. Praeterea sē neque sine exercitū in eās partis Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidēri quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicissent, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negoti esset.

Caesar Sends a Second Message Stating his Demands.

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō gratiam referret, ut in conloquium venire invitatūs gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādućeret; deinde ēbsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs Redderet, Sēquanisque permittēret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illis licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniurīā lacesseret, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum īnferret. Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset uti quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei publicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amicōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, — sæ Haeduōrum iniurīās nōn neglectūrum.'

Ariovistus's Haughty Reply.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse belli ut

qui vícissent eis quōs vícissent quem ad modum vellent imperāre; item populum Rōmānum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō non praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ütērētur, non oportère sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superāti essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere qui suō adventū vectigālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum non esse, neque his neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum inlätūrum, si in eō manērent quod convēnisset stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id nōn fēcissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī afutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglectūrum, nēminem sēcūm sine suā pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congredērētur; intellectūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimi in armīs, qui inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.'

Complaints of the Hāedui and Treveri. Cæsar Hastens against Arioistivus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Cæsari mandāta referēbant, et lēgāti ab Haeduīs et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Haeduī ques-tum quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finis eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem dātis pācem Arioistī redimere potuisse; Trēveri autem, pāgōs centum Suēvōrum ad ripam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nāsuum et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus māturandum sibi existimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēvōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Arioistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam

FIG. 18.—BESANÇON (Vesontio).
celerrimē potuit comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both Strive to Reach Vesontio.

38. Cum tridui viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum máximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, triduique viam ā suis ēnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ēsu erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nāturā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubi, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādicēs montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatūs arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnis nocturnīs diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

The Roman Soldiers are Panic-stricken.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vocibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, qui ingenti māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdībili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armis esse praedicābant, — saepenumerō sēsē cum his congressōs nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisses, — tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentis animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum,

praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnun in rē militāri ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnūlli pudōre adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent,8 remanēbant. Hi neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī8 in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commune periculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtis castris testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātīm etiam ei quī māgnun in castris ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque quique equitātūi praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex his minus timidōs existimāri volēbant, nōn sē hostem verēri, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentāriam, ut satis commodē supportāri posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nūlli etiam Caesari nūntiābant, cum castra movēri ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō auditīs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar Makes Light of their Fears, and Proposes to Advance at Once.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset,8 convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ordinum ad id cōnsilium adhibītūs7 centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit; primum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaeendum aut cōgitandum8 putārent. ‘Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amicitiam adpetīsse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam9 ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret?10 Sibi quidem persuādēri, cōgnitis suis postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnem perspectā, eum neque suam neque populi Rōmānī

grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cur dē sua virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? 1 Factum ēius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonis ā Gāiō Mariō pulsis nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus 2 vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid

ūsus 3 ac disciplīna quam ā nōbis accēpissent sublevārent. 4 Ex quō iūdicāri posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermīs sine causā 10 timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent. 5

Dēnique 6 hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs 7 esse nostrō exercitiū nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et 15 fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaererent, reperire posse diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsis castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque sui potestā-

tem fecisset, desperantis iam de pugna et dispersae subitae adortum, magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locusuisse, hac ne ipsum quidem spervire nostris exercitus capi posse.

Quia suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulatium angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperrare aut praescribere videre curatur. Haec sibi esse curae; frumentum Sequanorum, Leucorum, Lingonem subministrare, iamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsius brevi tempore iudicaturos.

Quod non fore dicto audientis neque signa latiuri dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri; scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audientis non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defeuisse, aut aliquem facinore compertum avaritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuam vitam, felicitatem Helvetiorum bellae esse spectam.

Itaque sse quod in longiore diem conlaturosuisse repellentaturos, et proxima nocte de quartae vigiliae castra moturus, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an timor plus valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturus, de qua non dubitaret, sibique eam praeotiam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecepue et propter virtute censidabitur maximem.

Effect of Caesar's Speech. He Advances.

41. Hac oratione habitae mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est; princepsque decima legi per tribunos

militum ei grātiās	extsuperscript{1} ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicum fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ordinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt uti Caesari satisfacerent: \textquoteleft Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicum, sed imperātōris esse existimāvīsse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex aliīs eī maximam fidem	extsuperscript{5} habēbat, ut milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis aperitis exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dixerat, prefectus est. Septimō dīē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōratōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

Ariovistus Requests an Interview. Caesar's Precautions.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: \textquoteleft Quod antea dē conloquió postulāset, id per sē fīeri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret.' Nōn respuit condicionēm Caesar, iamque eum ad sānītātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petenti dēnegāset ultrō pollicērētur; māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiis, cōgnitis suis postulātis, fore uti pertināciā désisteret.

Diēs conloquió dictus est ex eō dīē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgāti ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitteretur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: \textquoteleft Verēri sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū veniret; aliā ratione sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.' Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tolli volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equi-

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} grātiām, p. 31, l. 12. — \textsuperscript{2} satisfaciant, 12, 21. — \textsuperscript{3} fidem, 17, 11. — \textsuperscript{4} conloquīō, 30, 25. — \textsuperscript{5} petēbat, 34, 4. — \textsuperscript{6} postulārent, 30, 24. — \textsuperscript{7} tolleret, 22, 2.
tātui committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallīs equitibus dētractis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfidēbat,1 imponere, ut praesidiōm2 quam amicissimum, si quid opus3 factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrŏdiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dīxit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum;4 ad equum rescribere.

Cæsar Plead with Ariovistus, but Renew his Demands.

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē5 spatiō ab castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equis dēvēxerat passībus ducentīs ab eō tumulo cōnstituit. Item equītēs Ariovistī pari intervāllō cōnstitērunt.6 Ariovistus ex equīs ut conlo- querunt et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit,7 quod rēx appellātus esset a senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnis hominum officiis cōnsuēsse tribūi docēbat; illum, cum neque adītum neque causam postulandi īūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecū- tum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque īūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotīēs quamque honorīfica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent.8 Populi Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem8 ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo suī nihil déperdere, sed grātiā, dignitātē,

Campaign against Ariovistus.

honöre auctiörës vellet esse; quod vërë ad amicitiam populi Römäni adtulissent, id eis ēripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem quae lēgäitis in mandäitis dederat: nē aut Haeduïs aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsidës redderet; si nüllam partem Germänörum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterëtur.

Ariovistus Arrogantly Repeats his Claims.

44. Ariovistus ad postuläta Caesaris pa sca respondit; dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: 'Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et accessitum a Gallis; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiiis domum propinquōsque reliquissē; sēdīs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī quod victörēs victis impōnere consuērīnt. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnīs Galliae civitātīs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnīs cópiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experīri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; si pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

Amicitiam populi Römāni sibi ornamentō et praesidīō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, idque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Römānum stipendium remittātur et dēditiciō subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Römāni amicitiam quam adpetierit.

Quod multitudinem Germänörum in Galliam tradūcat, id sē sui muniendi, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere: eius rei testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in


Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rērum ut nōn sciret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in his contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmāni usūs esse.

Débere sē suspicāri simulātā Caesarem amicitīā quem exercitum in Galliā habeat sui opprimendī causā habēre. Qui nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex his regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod si discēssisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sībi trādīdisset, māgnō sē illum praemīō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella geri vellet sine ùllō ēius labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum.

Caesar Does not Yield.

Ariovistī quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Rōmānī iūstissimum esse 5

\[\text{FIG. 21. — COIN OF THE FABIAN FAMILY.}\]

in Galliā imperium;\(^1\) si iūdicium senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ütī voluisset.'

The Germans Make a Treacherous Attack, and Cæsar Withdraws.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur,\(^2\) Cæsari nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius\(^3\) tumulum accēdere,\(^4\) et ad nos trōs adequate, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere.\(^5\) Cæsar loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostīs rēcīrent. Nam etsī sine üllō periculō legiōnis delēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs 15 hostibus dici posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs.\(^6\) Posteāquam in volgus militum ēlātum est quā adrogauntīā in conloquiō Ariovistus ësus omni Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque\(^7\) in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium ut dirēmisset, multō māior 20 alacritās studiumque pūgnandi māius exercitu iniectum est.

Cf. \(^1\) imperiō, p. 28, l. 5. — \(^2\) gerantur, 15, 13. — \(^3\) propius, 37, 16. — \(^4\) accessisset, 37, 16. — \(^5\) coniciēbant, 24, 4. — \(^6\) circumvenīrētur, 37, 26. — \(^7\) impetum, 40, 6.
Seizure of Two of Caesar’s Envoys by Ariovistus.


Manceuvrering and Skirmishing.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē6 ēius diēi praeter castra Caesarīs suās cópiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō comœātūque qui ex Sēquanis et Hāeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet.7 Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quinque Caesar prō castrīs suās cópiās prōdūxit et aciem instructam8

habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās¹ non deēsset.² Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuvit, equestri proeliō cotidiē³ contendit.

German Method of Fighting.

Genus hoc erat pūgnae quō sē Germāni exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlocissimi ⁵

Cf.¹ potestātem, p. 35, l. 18. —² défuisse, 36, 15. —³ cotidiē, 13, 17.
ac fortissimi, quós ex omni cöpiā singuli singulōs suae salūtis causā délégerant; cum his in proeliis versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant;¹ hī, si quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; si quī graviōre² volnere acceptō equō dēciderat, 5 circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celeriōs³ recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubis sublevāti equōrum currsum adaequārent.

Cæsar Fortifies another Camp.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenère Cæsar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibēretur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Ger-

māni cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici instructā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire⁴ iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter

passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter homi-
num numerō sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū
Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiæ nostrōs terrērent et mūni-
tioniæ prohibērent. Nihilō sēcius Caesar, ut ante cōnstitu-
erat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere
iussit. Mūnitis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem
auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

More Skirmishing, but No General Engagement.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque
cōpiās suās ēduxit, paulumque a māiōribus castris prōgres-
sus aciem ἵνα in truxit, hostibus pūgnandi potestātem fēcit. 10
Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter meridiē
exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem
suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppūgnāret misit.
Ācriter utrimque ὕσχα ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis
occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātis et acceptīs
volneribus in castra redūxit.

Reason for the Germans' Delay.

Cum ex captīvis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus
proelīō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud
Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset ut mātṛs familiae eōrum
sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus déclārarent utrum proelium
committi exūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: 'Nōn esse
fās Germānōs superāre, si ante novam lūnam proelīō con-
tendisset.'

Caesar Forces a Battle.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diē Caesar praeṣidiō utrisque castris
quod satis esse visum est reliquit, ēlāriōs omnis in cōnспектū
hostium prō castris māiōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multi-

Cf. 1 perterritī, p. 24, l. 26. — 2 auxilia, 20,23. — 3 uterque, 37, 27. —
4 prōdeo undum, 44, 5. — 6 minōrem, 35, 5. — 7 occāsum, 2, 9. — 7 intule-
tūdine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat,1 ut ad speciem ālāriis uterētur; ipse triplici instrüctā acie úisque ad castra hostium accessit.2 Tum dēmum necessāriō Germāni suās cópiās castris ēdūxėrunt generātimque cōn-stituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusīōs, Suēvōs, omnemque aciem suam rédis et carris circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs3 imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentis, passis manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

Description of the Battle.

52. Caesar singulis4 legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae-stōrem praefēcit,5 uti eōs testis6 suae quisque virtūtis habē-ret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minime fīrmam hostium esse animadvertērat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostri 15 ācritēr in hostis signō datō impetum fēcērunt, ita-que hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium7 pīla in hostis coniciendi nōn darētur. Rēiectis pilis cōminus gladiis pūgnātum est. At Germāni celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri qui in phalange8 insilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et désuper volnerērent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō9 cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus 20 adulēscēns,10 qui equitātui praerēt, quod expeditior11 erat quam ei qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōran-tibus nostri subsidīō misit.

Fig. 24 — View from Ostheim, looking towards Zellenberg.

53. *ita proelium restitütum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt*¹ quam ad flūmen

*Cf. *¹ dēsistere, p. 40, l. 26.*
Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pêrvenērunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus cōnfīsi trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salūtem repperērunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam dēligātām ad ripam nactus ēa profūgit; reliquōs omnis cōnsecūti equītēs nostri interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ľna Suēva nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dúxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Voccōnis soror, quam in Galliā dúxerat ē frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā perīit. Duae filiae hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus ē fugā trīnis catēnīs vincitus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostis equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem ēs Caesari nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adutilit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sībi restitūtum vidēbat; neque ēius calamiōtātē dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātōnē quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus ēsultum dicēbat utrum ēgī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. Cæsar Goes to Hither Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvi, qui ad ripās Rhēni vēnerant, domum reverti coepērunt; quōs Ubīi, qui proxīmi Rhēnum incolum, perterrītōs insequī 25 māgnum ex eis numerum occidērunt. Cæsār ūnā aestāte duōbus maximis bellis cōnfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. B.C. 57.

All the Belgian Tribes Conspire against the Romans. Reasons for this.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliá ita uti supra dé-
mônstrāvimus, crēbri ad eum rūmōrés adserēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnis Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandi hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri nōluerant, ita populi Rōmāni exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim qui mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novis imperiis studēbant, — ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā a potentiōribus atque eis qui ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātis habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsecquī poterant.

Caesar promptly Moves against them.

2. His nūntiis litterisique commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscripsit, et initā aestāte\(^1\) in interiōrem Galliam qui dēdūceret Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotiōm Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāverunt manūs\(^2\) cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūci. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quin ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finis Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi Submit and Promise Aid.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque\(^8\) omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmi, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Icīum et Andocombogium, primōs cīvitātis, misērunt, qui dicerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquis Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contra populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,\(^4\) parātōque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque\(^5\) rēbus iuvāre;\(^6\) reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germanōisque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,\(^7\) sēsē cum his coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnīs furōrem ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsangüineōsque\(^8\) suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ùtantur, ūnum imperium ūnimumque magistrātum cum ipsis 25 habeant, dēterrēre\(^9\) potuerint quin cum hīs cōnsentirent.'

Origin and Strength of the Belgae as Told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret\(^10\) quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperīēbat: plē-

Cf.\(^1\) aestāte, p. 48, l. 25. —\(^2\) manūs, 32, 27. —\(^8\) celerius, 44, 5. —\(^4\) coniūrāre, 49, 5. —\(^6\) cēterī, 29, 14. —\(^8\) cōnsanguineōs, 30, 7. —\(^9\) dēterrēre, 29, 8. —\(^10\) quaereret, 45, 17.
Fig. 28. — Gaul with Trumpet (carnyx).
rōsque Belgās esse ortōs¹ ab Germānis, Rhēnumque antiquitūs traductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi consēdisse Gallōsque qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque² esse qui patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā,³ Teutōnōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finis ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri uti eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spiritūs⁴ in rē militāri sūmerent.⁵ De numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicēbant, propterea quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniunctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum con-

ciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cognīcere armāta milia centum, pollicitōs⁶ ex eō numerō electa milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperiūm sībī postulāre.⁷ Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs;⁸ finis lātissimi mōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliāe potentissīmum,⁹ qui cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnūm tum etiam Britanniae imperiūm obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte déferrī; oppida habēre numerō xii, pollicēri milia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, qui

maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur longissimæque absint; quindecim milia Atrebatis, Ambianiæ decem milia, Moriniæ xxv milia, Menapiæ vii milia, Caletis x milia, Veliocassæs et Viromanduæ totidem, Aduatucæs decem et novem milia; Condurisæ, Eburonæs, Caerisæs, Paemaniæs, qui unó nömíne Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad xl milia.

Caesar Marches to the Aisne, and Encamps beyond it.

5. Caesar Rémis cohortatús liberáliterque oratióne próse-cútus, omnem senátum ad sé convenire principumque liberós obsidés ad sé addúci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciácum Haeduum mágnopere cohortatús docet quantó opere rei publicae commúnisque salútis intersit manús hostium distinéri, né cum tantá multitúdine únó tempore cõnfligendum sit. Id féri posse, si suás còpiás Haedu in finis Bellovacórum intróduxerint et eórum agrós populári coeperint. His datís mandátis eum á sé dímittit. Postquam omnis Belgárum còpiás in únum locum coactás ad sé venire [vidit] neque iam longé abesse ab eis quáus miserat explóratóribus et ab Rémis cõgnóvit, flúmen Axonam, quod est in extrémis Rémorum finibus, exercitum trádu cere mátüravít atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rès et latus únum cástrórum rípis flúminis múniebat et post eum quae erant tûta ab hostibus reddébat, et comméátus ab Rémis reliquisque civitátibus ut sine periculó ad eum portári possent efficiébat. In eo flúmine pónis erat.

25 Ibi praesidium pónit et in alterá parte flúminis Q. Titurium Sabinum légátum cum sex cohortibus reliquavit; castra in altitúdinem pedum xii valló fossáque duodevíginti pedum múniri iubet.


Cf. ¹ aegerrimē, p. 11, l. 8. — ² coeptae, 42, 2. — ³ diūtius, 49, 9.
Cæsar Sends Relief and the Belgæ Advance on his Camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Cæsar isdem ducibus úsus qui nūn-tiī ab Iccio vēnerant, Numidas et Crētās sagittāriōs et fundi-tōrēs Baleārēs subsidīō 1 oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmis cum spē dēfēnsiónis studiūm 2 prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundi oppidi discessit. Iūtque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrūm dēpopulāti, omnibus vīcis 8 aedificiāisque quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra Cæsaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Cæsar Strengthens his Position.

8. Cæsar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; 4 cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent 8 periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellexit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruen-dam nātūrā opportūnō 6 atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē 7 ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum loci aciēs inūctā occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris 9 dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulātim 9 ad plānitiem redībat, — ab utrāque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxīt circiter passuum quadrīngentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxiisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantis suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscripsērat 10 in castrīs

Cf. 1 subsidīō, p. 46, l. 27.— 2 studiūm, 41, 21.— 8 vīcōs, 25, 13.— 4 statuīt, 38, 1.— 6 audēbat, 38, 1.— 6 opportūnīssimum, 26, 22.— 7 plānitiēs, 38, 9.— 8 latus, 52, 21.— 9 paulātim, 34, 10.— 10 cōnscrip-sit, 50, 2.
The Belgae Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack him in the Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illīs initium trānseundi fīeret, ut impedi-tōs adgrederentur parāti in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trāns-

eundī initium faciunt, secundīōre equītum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertīs partem suā-

Cf. 1 adgressī, p. 22, l. 16. — 2 secundīōres, 12, 16. — 3 dēmōnstrāvi-
mus, 49, 1. — 4 reperiēbat, 50, 27.
rum copiarum traducere conati sunt, eō consiliō ut, si possent, castellum cui praerat\(^1\) Q. Titurius légatus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus\(^2\) potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populiarentur,\(^3\) qui magnō nōbis īsui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque\(^4\) nostrōs prohibērent.

Caesar Crosses, and Defeats them. They Decide to Disband.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs\(^5\) sagittāriōsqve pontem tradūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostis impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressi 10 magnum eōrum numerum occiderunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audacissimē trānsire cognantis multitudine tēārum repulērunt, primōsque, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānsseundō spem sē fēfellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquōrem prōgredi pugnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frumentāria\(^6\) dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō constitueērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque\(^7\) reverti, et, quōrum in finis primum Rōmāni exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique\(^8\) convenirent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārunt et domesticis cópiis rēi frumentāriāe úterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēduxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. His persuāderī ut diūtius 25 morārentur\(^9\) neque suīs auxiliōm ferrent nōn poterat.

On their Retreat, they are Pursued with Great Slaughter.

11. Ea rē conōstitūtā secundā vigilīā magnō cum strepitu ac tumultū castrīs egressī nullō certō ordine neque imperiō,

Cf.\(^1\) praerat, p. 53, 1. 12.—\(^2\) minus, 42, 4.—\(^3\) populāri, 52, 15. —\(^4\) commeātūs, 52, 22.—\(^5\) funditōrēs, 54, 2.—\(^6\) frumentāriāe, 36, 6. —\(^7\) quisque, 51, 10.—\(^8\) undique, 53, 5.—\(^9\) morātī, 54, 6.
cum sibi quiesse primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut cognosce fugae profectione videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatiores cognit, insidiis veritus, quod quae causae discenderit nonum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primaria luce confirmata re ab exploratorialibus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit; T. Labienum legatum cum legioniibus tribus subsequi iussit. His novissimis adorti et multa milia passuum prosecutum magnam multitudo nem eorum fugientium conciderunt; cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent fortiterque impetus nostrorum militum sustinuerent, priores, quod abesse a periculo videminentur neque illae necessitate neque imperio continuerent, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinis omnibus in fugae sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantum eorum multitudo nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium; sub occasum solis sequi destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, reciperunt.

The Suessiones, Alarmed by Caesars Advance, Surrender.

12. Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrae ac fugae reciperent, in finibus Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magni itinere ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare cunctatur, quo vacuo ab defensionibus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murreque altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fugae Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proximam

nocte convénit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtis,1 māgnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne2 mittunt et petentibus Rēmis ut cōnservārentur impetrant.3 In Like Manner the Bellovaci Surrender.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmis cīvitātīs atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coeptūnt sēsē in ēius fidēm4 ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs conten- dere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulieriēsque ex mūrō passis5 manibus suō morē pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Diviciacus, Leader of the Haeduoi, Pleads for the Bellovacii.

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiās ad eum reverterat — facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitā civitātis Haeduae fuisset; impulsōs ab suis principibus, qui dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnis indignitātis contumēliāisque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Qui ēius cōnsilī principēs fuissent, quod intellegērent quantam calamitātem civitāti intelissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmen-
tiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs útātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haed-
duōrum auctōritātem apud omnis Belgōs amplificāturum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.'

The Ambiani Surrender. Reports of the Nervii, Who are Waiting to Give Battle beyond the Sambre.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dixit, et quod erat civitās māgnā inter Belgōs auctōritāte atque hominum mult-
tūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in finīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, qui sē suave omnia sine morā dēdi-
dērunt. Eōrum finīs Nervīi attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum adītum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārum-
que rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rēbus relāgūēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse hōminēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; incēpitāre atque incū-
sāre reliquis Belgōs, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent

Cf. dimissō, p. 27, l. 5. — impulsōs, 35, 1. — redēgisset, 41, 3.
patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre\textsuperscript{1} sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condicionem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finis triduum iter fēcissent, inveniēbat ex captivis Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis non amplius mīlia \textsuperscript{5} passuum \textsuperscript{x} abesse; trāns id flūmen omnis Nerviōs cōnsē-disse\textsuperscript{2} adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis (nam his utrisque\textsuperscript{3} persuāserant uti eandem belli fortūnam experientur\textsuperscript{4}); exspectāri etiam ab eis Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in \textsuperscript{10} itinere; mulierēs quique per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs\textsuperscript{5} exercitui aditus nōn esset.

The Nervi, on Information Given by Deserters, Decide to Attack Caesar
while Pitching Camp.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis explōrātorēs centuriōnēsque praemittit qui locum castrīs idōneum\textsuperscript{6} dēligant.\textsuperscript{7} Cum ex \textsuperscript{15} dēditiciis Belgīs reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quidam ex īs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā,\textsuperscript{8} nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque his dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōti, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent,\textsuperscript{9} hanc sub sarciniōs adorirī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque direptis futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Aduvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium \textsuperscript{20} qui rem dēferēbant, quod Nervīi antiquītus,\textsuperscript{10} cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus ei rei student,\textsuperscript{11} sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent\textsuperscript{12} cōpiis), quō facilius

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} cōnfīrmāvit, p. 37, l. 2. — \textsuperscript{2} cōnsē-disse, 51, 2. — \textsuperscript{3} utrāque, 54, 20. — \textsuperscript{4} experiantur, 29, 4. — \textsuperscript{5} palūs, 55, 4. — \textsuperscript{6} idōneum, 44, 11. — \textsuperscript{7} dēlōgerant, 44, 2. — \textsuperscript{8} perspectam, 36, 17. — \textsuperscript{9} absint, 52, 1. — \textsuperscript{10} antiquītus, 51, 1. — \textsuperscript{11} studēbant, 49, 12. — \textsuperscript{12} valēre, 51, 13.
Fig. 34. — Hautmont.
finitimōrum equitātum, si praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitūdinem rāmis ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effecerant 1 ut ĵnstar mūri hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrāri sed ņē perspici quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostri impedīrētur, nōn omissendum sibi consilium Nervīi existimāvērunt.

**Fig. 35. — Defeat of the Nervii.**

**Nature of the Ground.**

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castris délēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter déclīvis ad flūmen Sabīm, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine 10 pari 2 acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus 3 huic et contrā- rius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, 4 ab superiōre

parte silvestris, ut nón facile intrórsus perspici posset. Intrā eás silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiónēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Nervii Make a Furious Assault and Throw the Romans into Confusion.

3 19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō òrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpro- pinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās totius exercitūs imperiamenta conlocārunt; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praeсидiiōque impeditimentis erant. Equi- tēs nostri cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trànsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs recipierent ac rūrus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentis insequi audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsū castra mūnire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab eis quī in silvis additi latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolávērunt impet- tumque in nostrōs equitātēs fēcerunt. His facile pulsis ac prōturbātis, increādībili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene únō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occu- pātī erant contendērunt.

The Critical Situation. The Discipline of the Roman Army.

20. Caesari omnia únō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum própōnendum (quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concūrrī oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi militēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant arces-sendi, aciēs instruenda,1 militēs cohortandi,2 signum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impedīēbat.3 His difficultātibus duae rēs erant

subsidīō,4 — scientiā5 atque úsus militum, quod superiōribus proelīs exercitāti quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis docēri6 poterant; et quod ab opere singulīisque legionibus singulōs lēgātōs Cae-sar discēdere nisi mūnitis castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Cæsaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur admi-nistrābant.

Cæsar Addresses the Tenth; the Rest are Already Engaged.

21. Caesar necessāriis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs militēs quam in partem fors obtulit décucurrit, et ad

legionem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōratiōne
cohortātus quam uti suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam reti-
nērent neu perturbārentur\(^1\) animō hostiumque impetum
fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam
quō tēlum adici posset, proelī committendi signum dedit.
Ātque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā prefectus,
pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tantā fuit exiguitās hos-
tiumque tam parātus\(^2\) ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo
ad insignia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās
scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam
quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prīma
signa conspēxit ad haec ĉōstitit,\(^6\) nē in quaerendis suis
pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

The Varying Fortunes of the Battle.

22. Īnstruēctō exercītū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque\(^4\)
collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī militāris ratiō
atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legionēs aliae alīa in
parte hostibus resisterent, saepebusque\(^6\) dēnsissimīs (ut
ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectī\(^6\) prōspectus impedīrētur,
neque certa subsidia conlocāri neque quid in quāque parte
opus\(^7\) esset prōvidēri neque ab ũnō omnia imperia adminis-
trāri poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae
quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two Legions Force the Atrebates into the River; Two Pursue the Viro-
mandui, but the Nervii Gain the Camp.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā
parte aciē ĉōstiterant, pilis ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine ex-
animātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs — nam his ea
pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiore in flūmen com-
pulērunt, et trānsire cōnantis\(^8\) įnsecūti gladiis māgnam

Cf. \(^1\) perturbātis, p. 57, l. 15. — \(^2\) parātissimam, 37, 2. — \(^3\) cōnsis-
— \(^7\) opus, 55, 1. — \(^8\) cōnātus, 57, 23.
partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flū-
men nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum iniquum 1 prōgressi
rūrsus resistentis hostis redintegrātō proelīō in fugam
coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ün-
decima et octāva, prōsligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant
congressi, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripis proeliā-
bantur. At tōtis ferē castris à fronte et ab sinistrā parte
nüdātis, 2 cum in dextrō cornū 3 legiō duodecima et nōn
māgnō ab ea intervāllo septima cōnstitissēt, omnēs Nervī
cōnfertissēmō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, qui summam 4 im-
peri tēnēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars
apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenēre, pars summum castrō-
rum locum petere coepit.

The Enemy have the Advantage. The Treveri, Panic-stricken, Withdraw
to their Homes.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armātūrae 5
pedītēs, qui cum eis ünā fuerant, quōs primō hostium 15
impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis
hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petē-
bant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō
collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōnspexerant, praedan-
dandi 6 causā ēgressi, cum respexissent et hostis in nostris 20
castris versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. 7
Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fre-
mitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti
ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Treveri,
quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opinīō 8 est singulāris, qui 25
auxilii causā ā civitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum
multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī 9 et
paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs,

Cf. 1 iniquīorem, p. 56, 1. 15.—2 nüdātus, 53, 7.—8 cornū, 46, 22.
—4 summam, 51, 20.—6 armātūrae, 56, 7.— 6 praedandi, 61, 1.—
7 mandārunt, 10, 11.— 8 opinīōnem, 54, 13.— 9 premēbant, 46, 24.
Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnis partis fugere vidissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendorunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīisque eōrum hostis potītōs, civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar Enters the Fight in Person and Inspires his Soldiers.

5 25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgēri signisque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vidit, — quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus fērē centuriōnibus

Cf. 1 dēspērantīs, p. 36, l. 1. — 2 cōnfertissimō, 65, 10. — 3 impedimentō, 22, 6. — 4 occīdērunt, 56, 10. — 5 signum, 63, 5.
aut vulnerátis aut occísis, in his primípílô P. Sextíó Baculó, fortíssímô vírō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cónfectório, ut iam sê sustinère nōn posset; reliquós esse tardiórés et nōn nūllós¹ ab novíssimis désértó proelíó excédere ac téla vitàre, hostís neque à fronte ex inferiōre locó subeuntís intermittere et ab utróque latere instáre, et rem esse in angustó vídit neque úllum esse subsidium quod submitti² posset,—scútō ab novíssimis [ūni] milití dētráctó, quod ipse eō sine scútō³ vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit; centuriónibusque nōminátim appellátis reliquós cohortátus milités signa inferre et manipulós laxáre iussit, quó facilius gladiis úti possent. Cúius adventú spē inlátā militibus ac redintegrátō⁴ animó, cum prō sē quisque in cónspectú imperatóris etiam in extrémis suis rébus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum⁵ hostium impetus tardátus est.¹¹

Meanwhile Labienus, having Taken the Enemy's Camp, Sends a Reinforcement to Cæsar.

26. Caesar cum septímam legiōnem, quae iùxtā cónsitetrat, item urgērí ab hoste vidisset, tribúnös militúm monuit ut paulúm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostís inferrent.⁶ Quó factó, cum aliúi subsidium ferret neque timérent nē āversi ab hoste circumvenièrentur, audácius resistere ac fortius púgnāre coepérunt. Interim milités legiōnum duārum quae in novíssimō agmine praevidió impedimentís fuerant, proelíó nūntiātō, cursū⁷ incitátō in summó colle ab hostibus cónspicieiēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrís hostium potitus⁸ et ex locó superiōre quae rēs in nostrís castrís gerentur⁹ cónspicātus, decíram legiōnem subsidiiō nostrís misit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cálōnum fugā quō in locó rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra, et

Cf. ¹ nōn nūllis, p. 49, 1. 8.—² submittātur, 53, 13.—³ scútis, 64, 10.—⁴ redintegrātō, 65, 3.—⁵ paulum, 45, 9.—⁶ intulērunt, 22, 19.—⁷ cursū, 64, 24.—⁸ potiundī, 54, 5.—⁹ geruntur, 50, 6.
legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad cele-
ритātem sibi reliqui fēcērunt.

The Tide of Battle Turns.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut
nostri, etiam qui volneribus cōnfectī prōcubuisissent, scūtīs
innīxi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostīs
cōspicāti etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equītēs vērō,
ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte délērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnant,
quō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs
etiam in extrēmā spē salūtīs tantam virtūtem praestītērunt
ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insiste-
rent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; his dēiectis et
coacervātis cadāveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumultū tēla
in nostrōs conicerent et pilā intercepta remitterent; ut nōn
nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicāri dēbēret ausōs
esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās,
subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs
animī māgnitudō redēgerat.

The Nervii Utterly Routted, and Most of them Slain.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad internecionem gente ac
nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum
puerīs mulieribusque in aestūaria ac palūdēs coniectōs
dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōriōs nihil impedi-
tum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium qui supererant
cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt;
et, in commemorāndō civitātīs calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad
trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quingentōs
qui arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixērunt. Quōs
Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ësus misericordiā vidērē-

Cf. 1 cōnfectōs, p. 64, 1. 25.—2 occurrēbant, 65. 17.—8 conicerent,
53. 9.—4 lātissimōs, 51. 15.—5 iniquum, 65. 2.—6 palūs, 55. 4.—
1 tūta, 52. 22.—8 dēdidērunt, 59. 20.—9 commemorāvit, 38. 17.
tur, diligentissimè cōnservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūti iussit, et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent. ¹

The Aduatuci Withdraw to a Stronghold. Their Origin.

29. Aduatuci, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nerviis venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere 5 domum revertērunt; cūntis oppidis castellisque ² désertis

sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātürā mūnitum contulērunt. ³ Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimiūs rupis dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter ⁴

Cf. ¹ prohibuerint, p. 51, l. 5. — ² castellum, 56, 2. — ³ contulissent, ⁴ lēniter, 54, 21.
acclivis aditus in laticudinem non amplius pedum cc relinquebatur; quem locum duplici altissimo murō münierant; tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutās trabis in murō colocabant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedimentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre non poterant citrā flūmen Rhenum dépositis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesidiium sex milia hominum unā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimis exagitāti, cum aliās bellum inferrent aliās inlatum défenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pácē factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum délēgerant.

They Scoff at the Roman Siege Works.

30. Ac primō adventū¹ exercitus nostrī crēbrās² ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum xii, in circuitū xv miliōnum, crēbrisque castellis circummūniti oppidō sēsē continēbant.

Ubi vineās³ āctis aggere⁴ exstruēctō turrim procul cōnstituī vidērunt, primum inridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: ‘Qui-busnam manibus aut quibus viribus⁶ praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae’—nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae

Cf. ¹ adventum, p. 60, l. 6. — ² crēbrī, 49, 2. — ³ vineās, 57, 26. — ⁴ aggere, 58, 1. — ⁵ viribus, 48, 2.
māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptui est — 'tanti oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē conlocāre confiderent?'

They Become Alarmed, and Offer to Surrender Conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī: 5 'Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, qui tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritātē prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestāti permittere' dīxērunt. 'Ūnum petere ac dēprecāri: si forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs auditōrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnis fērē fīnitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praeastāre, si in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō pati quam ab his per 15 cruciātum interīci inter quōs domināri cōnsuēssent.'

They Accept Caesar's Terms, but Treacherously Retain Part of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōnservātūrum, si, prius quam mūrum aries attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēdītiōnis nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēdītiōnis populi Rōmānī inūriām inerent.' Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdīnem acervi armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter

parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celat a atque in oppidō retem, portis patēfactis eō die pace sunt ēsi.

They Make a Sally from the Town, but are Repulsed. More than 50,000 Sold as Slaves.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudi militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī1 a militibus 5 iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō (ut intellectum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūros aut dēnique indigentius servāturōs crēdiderant,—partim cum eis quae retinuerant et celāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factis aut viminibus intestīs, quae subītō, ut temporis 10 exiguitās2 postulābat, pellibus indūxerant,—tertia vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitionēs ascēnsum vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō ēruptīōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximis castellīs eō concurrūm3 est, pūgnātumque 15 ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllō4 turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnāri dēbuit,6 cum in unā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eiīs diēi refrāctis portis, 20 cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostrīs, sectionēm eiīs oppidi universam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum numeros ad eum relātus est milium quinquāgintā trium.

Crassus Subdues many Coast Towns.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne 25 ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitātēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās civi-

Cf. 1 oppidānīs, p. 54, 1. 3.—2 exiguitās, 64, 7.—3 concurrī, 63, 2. —4 vāllō, 52, 27.—5 dēbēret, 68, 14.
The Belgian Confederacy.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta huius belli ad barbarōs opinō perlāta est utī ab eis natiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolentī ad Caesarem mitterentur qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperātā factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque proparbat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipsi in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turōnōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae eis locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Italiam prefectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīrōdecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.


FIG. 44. — GALLIC COINS.
BOOK III.

CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN. B.C. 56.

Galba is Sent to Guard the Passes of the Alps about the Upper Rhone.

CUM in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione xii et parte equitatus in Nantuatis, Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui a finibus Allobrogum et laca Lemanno et flume Rhodan ad summamas Alpis pertinent. Causa 5 mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpis, quo magni cum periculó magnisque cum portoria mercatorès ire consuerant, patēfieri volēbat. Huic permissis, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factís castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum unidine légatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constitute cohortis duas in Nantuatis conlocare et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicum Veragorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle, non magna adiecta planitiem, altissimus montibus unidine continetur. Cum hic in duas partis flume divideretur, alteram partem eius vicum Gallis [ad hie- 15 mandum] concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallō fossāque munivit.

Cf. 1 portória, p. 15, l. 25. — 2 vacuum, 57, 24.
Campaign in the Alps.

Fig. 46.—Map of Octodurus.

Having gone into Winter Quarters, he is threatened by large numbers of the native tribes, who occupy the neighboring heights.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrès transissent frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vici quam Gallis concesserat omnīs noctū discussisse, montisque qui impendērent ā maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri. Id 5 aliquot dē causis acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandi legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum, quod legiōnem—neque eam plēnissimam, détrāctis cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, qui commeātūs peteṇāi causā missi erant—propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; 1 tum 10 etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla cónicerent, nē primum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat

Cf. 1 dēspiceret, p. 11, l. 20.
quod suós ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dole-
abant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam per-
petuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnāri et ea
loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habē-
bant.

Galba Calls a Council. He will Defend the Camp, if Possible.

3. Hīs nūntiis acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum
mūnitōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frumentō
reliquōque commeātū satīs esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne
factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existi-
māverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere
cœpit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculi
praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia fērē superiōra
loca multitudine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque
subsidiō venīri neque commeātūs supportāri interclūsis
itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae
ēius modī sententiae dīcēbantur ut, impedimentis relictīs
eruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad
salūtem contenedor. Māiōri tamen partī placuit hōc
reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim rei ēventum experīrī
et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls Attack Vigorously.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōnstitu-
issent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur,
hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs
gaesaque in vāllum conicerē. Nōstri primō integrīs viribus
fortiter prōpūgnāre neque ēllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre
mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēn-
sōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre;
sed hōc superāri quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī
proeliō excēdēbant, alii integrīs viribus succēdēbant: quārum

Cf. 1 doleant, p. 12, l. 15. — 2 repentinō, 11, 7. — 3 sententiam, 56,
Fig. 47. — Gaius Iulius Caesar.
rērum ā nostris propter paucitātem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo défessō ex pūgnā excēdendi, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius loci ubi cōnstiterat relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facul-
tās dabātur.

The Battle Rages for Six Hours. The Only Hope is in Making a Sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pūgnārētur ac nōn sōlum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs déficerent,³ atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostris vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmi pili centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vol-
neribus diximus, et item Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliā māgni et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spēm salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur.⁴ Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper³ intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodō tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō signō ex castrīs ērumpenter atque omnem spēm salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are Defeated with Great Loss; but Galba Withdraws to the Province.

6. Quod iūssī sunt faciunt ac subitō omnibus portis ērumpiōne factā neque cōgnōscendi quid fieret neque sui conli-
gendi hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā³ fortūnā eōs qui in spēm potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstitābat, plūs tertiā parte interfecτā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam cōniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsis-
tere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiís fūsīs armīisque exūtis sē intrā mūni tionēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō

sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopīa per-
mōtus, posterō diē omnibus ēius vici aedificiis incēnsis in
prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut
5 iter dēmorante incolūmum legiōnem in Nantuātīs, inde in
Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Operations in Northwestern Gaul on the Seacoast. Crassus Sends
Messengers to Collect Supplies.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs cum omnibus dē causīs Čaesar pācā-
tam Galliam existimāret [superātīs Belgis, expulsiis Germā-
nīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnis], atque ita initiā hieme in
10 Īlyricum prefectus esset, quod ēās quoque nātiōnēs adire et
regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subītum bellum in Galliā coē-
tum est. Ėius belli haec fuit causa. P. Črassus adulēscēns
cum legiōne vii proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat.
Is, quod in locīs inopīa frumentī erat, praefectōs
15 tribūnōsque militūm complūris in fīnitimās civitātīs frūmentī
causā dīmisit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in
Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolītās, Q. Velānius cum
T. Siliō in Venetōs.

The Messengers are Seized by the Veneti, under whose Lead the Maritime
Tribes Demand a Return of their Hostages.

8. Hūius est civitātīs longē amplissima auctōritās omnis
20 ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvis habent Venetī
plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et
scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et
in māgnō impetū marīs vāsti atque aperti pauciōs portibus
interiectis, quōs tenent ipsī, omnis fērē qui eō mari īti cōn-
25 suērunt habent vectigālis. Ab hīs fit initium retinendi Sili
atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Črassō
– dedissent recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritātē
fīnitimi adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōn-

silia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sé coniurant nihil nisi commūnē consiliō aēctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant 1 ut in eā libertāte quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ārā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnēm lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.' 2

Fig. 48 — Galley.

Caesar Orders a Fleet to be Built on the Loire. The Veneti Prepare for War and Summon Allies.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvis interim longās aedificāri in flūmine Ligeri, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmīgēs ex prōvinciā instituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparāri iubet. Hīs rēbus

Cf. 1 sollicitārentur, p. 49, l. 8. — 2 remittere, 39, 5.
celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item civitātēs cōgnītō Caesaris adventū [certiōres factī], simul quod quantum in sē facinus\(^1\) admisisserat intellegēbant, légā-

---

5 tōs — quod nōmen ad omnīs nātīōnēs sā sanctum inviolātum—que semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitudine periculi bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īstituunt, hōc māiōre spē quod multum nātūrā locī confidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestiūriīs, nāvigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse confidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contra opiniōnem

Cf. \(^{1}\) facinore, p. 36, l. 15.
Campaign against the Veneti.

acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūri essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. His initis cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvis in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat,1 quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eās regionēs posita est, acessunt.2

Caesar's Reasons for Prosecuting the War. His Strategy "Divide and Conquer."

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās supra ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō dātis obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, imprīmis nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquaes nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegerrēt omnis ferē Gallōs novis rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitāri, omnīs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse,3 priusquam plurēs civitātēs cōspīrārent, partienda sibi ac lātius distribuen-dum exercitum putāvit.

Labienus Sent to the East, Crassus to the South, Sabinus to the North. Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximi flūmini Rēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō ā Gallis arcessiī dicē-

Cf. 1 cōnstābat, p. 77, l. 25. — 2 arcessendi, 63, 4. — 3 ōdisse, 16, 11.
bantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmēn trānsire cōnentur, pro-
hibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis xii et 
māgnō numerō equiūtātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē 
ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tanta e 
nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum 
cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolītas Lexoviōsque 
mittit, qui eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum 
adulescentem classī Gallicīisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus 
et Santonis reliquisque pācātīs regiōnibus convenire iussērat, 
praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. 
Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

Situation of the Strongholds of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modi ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in 
eextrēmis lingulis prōmuntūriisque neque pedibus aditum 
habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incītāvisset (quod [bis] 
15 accidit semper hōrārum xii spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod 
rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadis adflictārentur. Ita 
utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī 
quandō—māgnitūdine operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari 
aggere ac mōlibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequātis— 
dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium 
adpulsō, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēpor-
tābant omnia séque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē 
rūrsus isdem opportūnitātibus locī défendēbant. Haec eō 
facilius māgnam partem aestātīs faciēbant, quod nostrae 
25 nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō 
atque apertō mari, māgnīs aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllis 
portibus, difficūtās nāvigandi.

Description of their Ships. Comparison with those of the Romans.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-
taeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum 

Cf. 1 distinērī, p. 52, l. 12.— 2 minuendum, 17, 23.
navium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppes ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātæ; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perférandam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus confixa clāvis ferreis digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis¹ revinctae; pellēs² prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter confectae, sive propter inopiam lini atque ēius úsus inscientiam sīve eō (quod est magis vērisimile) quod tantās tempestātis Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac 10 tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum his nāvibus nostrae clāssi ēius modi congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum prae-stāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illīs essent aptōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eis nostrae 15 rōstrō nocēre poterant — tantā in eis erat firmītūdō — neque

Cf. ¹ catēnis, p. 48, l. 11. — ² pellibus, 72, 10.
propter altitudinem facile telum adigebatur et eadem de causâ minus commodè copulis continebantur. Accedebat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius et in vadis consisterent tuius et ab aestu relictae nihil saxa et cotis timèrent; quârum rerum omnium nostris navibus causas erat extimescendus.

The Battle. How the Romans Overcame their Disadvantages.

14. Compluribus expugnâtis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi neque eis nocérie posse, statuit expectando dam classem.1 Quae ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter cccc navès eorum parâtissimae atque omnis genere armorum ornâtissimae profectae ex portâ nostris adversae constiterunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singularis navis erant attributae, constabat quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim nocérie non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis tamen hâs altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabant ut neque ex inferior loco satis commodè tela adigi possent et missa à Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magnó usui rés praeparata à nostris,—falcês praecutae2 insertae adfixaeque longuris nonn absimili formâ mûralium falcium. His cum funés qui antennás ad malmôs destinabant comprehensî adductique erant, navigii rés miscis incitâtô praerumpèbantur. 25 Quibus abscessis antennae necessâriò concidebant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spès in vidis armamentisque consisteret, his éreptis omnis usus navium unô tempore érigeretur. Reliquum erat certâmen positum in virtute, quâ nostrî militès facile superabant atque eó magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus rés geriebatur, ut nûllum

Cf. 1 classi, p. 82, l. 8. — 2 praecutâs, 70, 3. — 3 eripî, 39, 2.
paulō fortius factum latère posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus déspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

They Defeat the Enemy and Capture their Ships.

15. Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās binae ac terna nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vi trānscedere in hostium nāvis contendēbant. Quod postquam barbāri fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere

contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotium cōnsiciendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsecēti expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque ad solis occāsum pūgnārētur.

Cf. 1 latēbant, p. 62, l. 19.
The Veneti Surrender. Their Leaders are Put to Death, the Rest Sold as Slaves.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae mari-
timae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs
etiam graviōris aëtātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut digni-
tātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in
5 ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quo
sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent
habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdidērunt.
In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligen-
tius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōnser-
10 vārētur. Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā
vēndidit.

Meanwhile Sabinus Goes among the Venelli, and is Challenged by them.
He Avoids an Engagement.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus
cum eis cōpiis quōs ā Caesare accēperat in finis Venellōrum
pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperī tenē-
15 bat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant,1 ex quibus
exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucis
dīēbus Aulercī, Eburovicēs, Lexovīque senātū suō inter-
fectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt
sēque cum Viridovice coniunxērunt; māgnaque praeterea
20 multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrō-
umque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandi studiumque
bellandi ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō2 labōre revocabat.
Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat,
cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset
25 cotidiēque āuctorōs cōpiās pūgnandi potestātem faceret, ut
iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus veniret
sed etiam nostrōrum militum vocibus nōn nihil carperētur;
tantamque opinōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum ca-
strōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat

Cf. 1 dēfēcisse, p. 59, l. 6. — 2 cotidiānīs, 17, 8.
quod cum tantă multitudine hostium, præsertim eō absente qui summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

By a Stratagem he Induces Viridovix to Attack him.

18. Hāc cōnfirmātā opiniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eis quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostis trānseek et quid fieri velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugas1 ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur docet; neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte 10

Sābinus clam ex castris exercitum ēducat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendi causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsionem negōti bene gerendi ēmitter dam nōn esse, ad castra īri oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sābini 15 cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eis erat prōvisum, spēs Venetici belli, et quod fērē libenter homo nēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimittunt quam ab eis sit concessum arma utī 20 capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant,3 ad castra pergunt.

Complete Victory of Sābinus.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus4 et paulātim ab īmō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, 25

Cf. 1 perfugas, p. 25, l. 8.—2 libenter, 39, 23.—3 complēta, 76, 13.—4 ēditus, 54, 18.
ut quam minimum spati ad se conligendos armandosque Rōmānis darētur, examinātique pervēnērunt. Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus prop-
ter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptionem 5 fieri iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte loci, hostium insci-
entiā ac dēfatigatiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pōgnā-
rum exercitiātione, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs1 viribus militēs nostri cōnsecūti māgnum numerum eōrum occidē-
runt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectāti paucōs qui ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pōgnā Sabinus et dē Sabini victōriā Cæsār est certior factus; civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dédidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est 15 animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātis per-
ferendās mēns eōrum est.

In Aquitania Crazsus is Attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crazsus cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, — quae, ut ante dictum est, [et regionum lātitū-
dine et multitūdine hominum] est tertia pars Galliae [est 20 aestimanda], — cum intellegēret in eis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōninus légātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Man-
lius prōcōnsul impedimentis āmissis prōfugisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē 25 frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne (quae sunt civitātēs Galliae provinciae finitimae [ex] his regionibus) nōminātim ēvocātis, in Sōtiātium finis exercitum intrō-
dūxit. Cūius adventū cognitō Sōtiātēs māgnis cōpiis 30 coāctis equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commisē-

Cf. 1 integrīs, p. 76, l. 29.
runte & deinde equitatu suo pulsō atque sequentibus nostris, subito pedestris cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiis conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hi nostrōs disiectōs adorti proelium renovārunt. 1

He Defeats them in Battle and Besieges their Stronghold. They Surrender.  


The Solduriī, or Brothers in Arms.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animis, aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperi tenēbat, cum dēvōtīs, quōs illi solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō uti omnibus in vitā commodis ūnā cum eis fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsīscant; neque adhuc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam qui, eō interfectō cūius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum his Adiatunnus ēruptionēm facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab ea parte mūnitionis sublātō, cum ad

arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen uti ēadem dēditōnīs condiciōne ēterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus Proceeds against Other Aquitanian Tribes Who are Conspiring, and Decides to Give Battle.


The Enemy Keep to their Camp, Which Crassus Attacks.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiās, duplīcī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliis in medium aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsili caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsi propter multītūdinem et veterem belli glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātiūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius2 esse arbitrā-

Cf. 1 ĭnstituunt, p. 80, l. 8. — 2 tūtius, 84, 4.
bantur obsessis viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victūriā potīri; et, si propter inopiam rei frumentāriae Rōmāni sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis īnfirmiōrēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis, sēsē castris 5

FIG. 54.—SOLDIERS MAKING CAMP.

tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alaclōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportēre quin ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupidentibus ad hostium castra contendit. 10

They Hold their Own for a Time.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis connectis défēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitionibusque dépellerent, auxiliāresque (quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat) lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opiniōnem pūgnantium prae- 15
bèrent; cum item ab hostibus cônsanter ac nôn timidē pûgnârētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nôn frûstrā acci-
derent, equitēs circūmitis hostium castris Crassō renûntiāvé-
runt nôn eadem esse diligentiā ab decumānā porta castra
5 mûnita facilemque aditum habère.

But are Forced to Abandon their Camp and Flee.

26. Crassus equītum praefectōs cohōrtātus ut māgnis
praemīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri
velit ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis eis cohorti-
bus quae praesidiō castris relictae intrītæ ab labōre erant
10 et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cô-
spicī possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pûgnam
intentis, celeriter ad eās quās diximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnē-
runt, atque his prōrūtis prius in hostium castris cōnstitērunt
quam plānē ab his vidēri, aut quid reī gerērur cōgnōsci
15 posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostri
redintegrātīs viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae acci-
dere cōnsuevit, âcrius impũgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs
undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per
mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.
20 Quōs equītātus apertissimis campīs cônsēctātus, ex milium
I numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convenisse côns-
stābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra
recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian Tribes Surrender to Crassus.

27. Hāc auditā pûgnā máximā pars Aquitāniae sēsē
25 Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit; quō in numerō
fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Ptiānii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs,
Elûsātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumni, Sibusātes, Cocosātes;
paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems
suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

Cf. 1 pollicitātiōnibus, p. 87, l. 6. — 2 redintegrātō, 67, 13. — 3 plē-
rumque, 70, 20.
In the North Caesar Advances against the Morini and Menapii, Who Take Refuge in Forests and Marshes.

28. Eōdem fērē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce misissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā ratione ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proelīō conten-dissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentisque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnire instituisset neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subito ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostri celeri-riter arma cēpērunt eōisque in silvās repulērunt, et com-plūribus interfectis longius impeditiōribus locis secūti paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

He Ravages their Territory, and then Goes into Winter Quarters.

29. Reliquīs deinēcōs diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituēt et, nē quis inermibus imprudēntibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdībilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfecētō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsīōrēs silvās pereurent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs consecūtae uti opus necēssāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrīum diūtius sub pellibus militēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incēnis, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitātibus quae proxīmē bellum fēcerant, in hibernis con-locāvit.

Cf. 1 inermēs, p. 68, l. 6. — 2 exstruēctō, 70, 16.
BOOK IV.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS. — FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN. B.C. 55.

German Tribes, Pressed by the Suevi, Cross the Rhine.

Éaque secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeīō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tenc terī māgnā [cum] multitūdine homīnum flūmen Rhēnum trānsierunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causā 5 trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēvis complūris annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agri cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Customs of the Suevi.


Cf. 1 alere, p. 16, l. 5.
et libertate vitae, quod a pueris nullō officio aut disciplinā adsuēfacti nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virīs alit et immānī corporum magnitudine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē consuētūdinem adduxērunt ut locīs frigidissimis neque vestītūs praeter pelليس habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in flūminibus.

Their Intercourse with Other Tribes.


Their Cavalry Tactics.

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestigīō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertiōs habētur quam ehippiōs ēti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ehippiātōrum equitūm quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē importāri nōn sinunt, quod ēā ré ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmināri arbitrantur.

The Ubii, Tributaries of the Suevi.

3. Públicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc ré significāri māgnum numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque unā ex parte ā Suēvis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque fīōrens, ut est captus Germānō-

Cf. 1 officiō, p. 81, l. 25.— 2 vēndidit, 86, 11. — 4 turpissimum, 30, 11.
rum; et paulo, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt ceteris hūmāniōres, propterēa quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōres ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitātem [quod] Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēvī
5 multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitūdinem gravitā-
temque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen
vectigālis sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōres infirmiōrēsque
1 redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, Expelled from Germany, Overcome the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencteri, quōs
10 suprā diximus, qui complūris annōs Suēvōrum vim sustinu-
ērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis
Germaniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās
regionēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūmi-

nis agrōs aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitū-
15 dinis aditū perterriti ex eis aedificiis quae trāns flūmen
habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praequi-
diis Germanōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illī omnia experti,
cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque
clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī
20 sē in suās sēdēs regionēsque simulāvērunt et tridūi viam
prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt, atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā
nocte equitātū cōnfectō insciōs inopinantisque Menapiōs
oppressērunt; qui dē Germanōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs

Cf. 1 infirmiōres, p. 91, 1. 4. — 2 vagāri, 90, 19. — 3 simulātā, 40, 14.
— 4 inopinantis, 10, 10.
certiorēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsīrunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

Caesar Distrusts the Gauls on Account of their Fickle Character. He Fears their Alliance with Germans.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritūs, quod sunt in cōnsiliis capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōnīstitere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quae arant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quāque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditionibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta respondeant.

He Resolves to Make War on the Germans.


Cf. 1 invitō, p. 12, l. 9. — 2 ēvocātīs, 88, 28.
7. Ré frumentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctis, iter in ea loca facere coeplit quibus in locis esse Germānōs au-
diēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, légāti
ab eis vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit �aurants: 'Germānōs neque
5 priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre,
si lacesantur, quin armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum
cōnsvētūdō [haec] sit ā māiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum
inferant, resistere neque dēprecāri. Haec tamen dicere,
vēnisse invitōs, electōs domō; si suam grātiam Rōmāni ve-
10 lint, posse eis usīlis esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuānt
vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnis
Suēvis concēdere, quibus nē dīi quidem immortālēs parēs
esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse nēminem quem
nōn superāre possint.'

He Orders them to Withdraw from Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus
fuit ērātīonis: 'Sībi nūllum cum his amicitiam esse posse,
si in Gallīā remanērent; neque vērum esse quī suōs finis
tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Gallīā
vacāre agrōs qui dari tantae praeertim multītūdīni sine
20 iniūriā possint; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus
considere, quōrum sint légāti apud sē et dē Suēvōrum
iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs
imperātūrum.'

They Delay.

9. Lēgāti haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēlītō-
25 rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; interēā nē
propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar
ab sē impetrāri posse dixit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam par-
tem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandi frūmen-

Cf. 1 laceseret, p. 31, l. 19. — 2 vidēbantur, 63, 14.
tandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missum; hōs exspectāri equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābatur.

The Meuse and the Rhine Described.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel-lātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavōrum [in Oceanum influit] neque longius inde miliibus passuum lxxx in Oceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpis incolunt, et longō spatiō per finis Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et ubi Oceanō adpropinquavit, in plurīs dēfluit partis multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars māgna a feris barbarīisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, — multisque capítibus in Oceanum influit.

Caesar Advances. More Parleying to Gain Time.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii mili-bus abesset, ut erat cōstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant uti ad eōs equitēs qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubīōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum si principēs ac senātus sibī iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condicione quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē úsū-rōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnfiendās sibī tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar ēodem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut tridui morā interpositā equitēs eōrum qui abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius miliibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissīmi conveniērent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs qui cum omnī equitātū 30

Cf. 1 ingenti, p. 33, l. 21. — 2 antecēdunt, 78, 22. — 8 praefectō, 92, 6.
antecesserant mittit qui nuntiārent nē hostis proelīō lacesserent; et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

The German Cavalry Treacherously Attack and Rout the Roman.

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōnspectē-5 runt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius dccc equitēs habērent, quod ei quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesse-rant atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab his petitus, īmpetū factō 10 celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus his resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt,1 subfossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectis, reliquōs in fugam con-iēcrunt atque ita perterritōs ēgerunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostri vēnissent.

Gallant Conduct and Death of the Brothers Piso.

15 In eō proelīō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in his vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, amplissimī genere nātus, cūius avus in civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī inter-clūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, 20 ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis volneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, qui iam proelīō exscesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Envoys Come to Ĉæsar, Whom he Detains. Vigorous Action Demanded.

13. Hōc factō proelīō Caesar neque iam sībī lēgātōs auidiēndōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eis qui per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum

Cf. 1 dēsiliunt, p. 95, l. 15.
intulissent: expectāre vérō, dum hostium cópiāe augērentur¹ equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proelīō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūti sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spati dandum 3 existimābat. His cōnstitūtis rébus et cōnsiliō cum légātis et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridē dieī diēi māne ēadem et perfīdiā et simulātiōne ēsi Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus māioresque nātū adhibītis, ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dicēbātur, purgandi² sui causā, quod (contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent) proelium pridē commississent; simul ut, si quid possent, dē indūtiis fallendō³ impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinēri iussit; ipse omnis 15 cópiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recenti proelīō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

Caesar Surprises the German Camp.

14. Acīē tripliā institūtā et celeriter VIII milium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rébus 20 subitō perterriti et celeritāte adventūs nostri et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsili habendi neque arma capiendi spatiō datō perturbantur, cópiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra défendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret.⁴ Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs 13 nostri prīstīni dieī perfidīā incitāti in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō qui celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostris restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaque proelium commisērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulie-rumque—nam cum omnibus suis domō exesserant 30

Rhēnumque trānsierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quōs conscriptandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

\[\text{The Germans are Defeated and Flee; Many are Slain or Perish in the River.}\]

15. Germānī post tergum\(^1\) clāmōre auditō cum suōs inter-

fici vidērent, armis abiectis signisque militāribus relictis sē

5 ex castris eīcērunt, et cum ad cōnfuentem Mosae et Rhēnī

pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō inter-

fectō, reliqui sē in flūmen praecepitāvērunt; atque ibi

timōre, lassitūdine,\(^2\) vi flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī

10 ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātīs ex tantī

belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum cccccxxx milium

fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eis quōs in castrīs

retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cru-

ciatūsque Gallōrum verīti, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, rema-

nēre sē apud eum velle dixērunt. His Caesar libertātem

15 concessit.

\[\text{Caesar's Reasons for Crossing the Rhine and for Building a Bridge.}\]

16. Germānicō bellō confectō multis dē causās Caesar

statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit

iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli\(^3\)

ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit,

20 cum intellegérent et posse et audēre populi Rōmānī exerci-

tum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equi-

tātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi

praedandi frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse, neque

proelīo interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in

25 finis Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eis coniūnixerat.

Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs misisset qui postulārent eōs

qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respon-

dērunt: 'Populi Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finire; si sē

\[\text{Cf. }^1\text{ terga, p. 89, l. 10.—}^2\text{ lassitūdine, 64, 24.—}^3\text{ impulsōs, 59, 4.}\]
FIG. 59. — PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; bb, trabes bipedales; cc, fibulae;
dd, directa materia longuiss cratibusque constrata;
ee, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae;
ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae;
g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.
Campaign against the Germans.

invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nūn aequum existi-
māret, cūr sui quicquam esse imperi aut potestātis trāns
Rhēnum postulāret? Utī autem, qui ūnī ex Trānsrē-
nānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant,
obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant ut sībī auxilio
ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvis premerentur; vel, si id
facere occupātiōnibus rei publicae prohibērētur, exercitum
modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sībī ad auxilium spemque
reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque
opiniōnem ēius exercitiūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō
proelīō factō etiam ad ultīmās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī
opiniōne et amicitia populi Rōmānī tūtī esse possent.
Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum
pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar his dē causis quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque sātis tūtum
esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populi Rōmānī digni-
tātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendi
pointis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, alti-
tūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sībī contendendum aut
aliter nūn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem
pointis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab
īmō praeacūta, dimēnsa ad altītūdinem flūminis, inter-
vāllo pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchi-
nātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat,
— nūn publicae modō dērēctē ad perpendicum, sed prōnē
ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent,
— eis item contrāria duō ad eundem modum iūncta inter-
vāllo pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim
ateque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque
insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum

tīgnōrum ĭunctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fibulīs ab ex- trēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsis atque in con- trāriam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmītūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vis aquae sē incitāvisset, 5 hoc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērectā materiā iniectā contextēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōsternē- bantur; ac nihilō sēcius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae īrō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniunctae vim flūminis exciperent; et 10 aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendi operis essent ab barbarīs im- missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent. 4

Cæsar Enters Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportāri 15 omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Cæsar ad utram- que partem pontīs firmī praesidiō relictō in finīs Sugam- brōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam peten- tibus liberālīter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. 20 At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstitūi coeptus est fugā comparātā,hortantibus eīs quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis exesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlūtūdinem ac sīlūs abdiderant.

He Learns that the Suevi are Preparing to Resist him, and after Eighteen Days Returns to Gaul.

25 19. Cæsar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omni- bus vicīs aedificīisque incēnsis frūmentīisque successīs, sē in finīs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque his auxiliīm suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēvis premerentur, haec ab eis cognōvit: ʻSuēvōs,

Cf. 1 distinendam, p. 82, l. 7.— 2 māteriam, 93, 19.— 3 mediocrem, 88, 23.— 4 nocēre, 83, 16.
B. G. IV. 20.]  First Invasion of Britain.

posteaquam per explôrâtôrês pontem fieri comperissent, 
môre suô conciliô habitô nûntiôs in omnis partis dimísisse,¹ 
uti dé oppidîs démigrâtèrent, liberôs, uxôrês, suaque omnia in 
silvis dêpônerent, atque omnês qui arma ferre possent 
ûnum in locum convenîrent; hunc esse délécûm medium 
feré regîônum eârum quâs Suêvi obtinêrent; hic Rômânô-
rum adventum exspectàre, atque ibi décêrâtêr cônstituísse.'

Quod ubi Caesar comperît, omnibus eis rêbus cônsèctîs 
quârum rêmum causâ tràduçere exercîtum cônstituèrât, ut 
Germânis metûn inícère,² ut Sûgambrôs ulciscerêtur, ut 
Ubiôs obsîdiône liberâret, diébus omnînô xviii trâns 
Rhênum cônsumpîtis, satis et ad laudem et ad utîlîtatem 
prôfectum arbitrâtûs, sê in Galliâm recêpit pontemque 
rescidit.³

Caesar Determines to Invade Britain.

20. Exiguâ parte aestâsis reliquâ Caesar, etsî in his locîs 15 
(quod omnîs Galliâ ad septentriônês vergit) mâtûrae sunt 
hiemês, tamen in Britanniam profíscîci contendit: quod 
omnibus ferê Galliciês bellîs hostibus nostrîs inde submini-
strâta auxilia intellegîbat; et, si tempus [anni] ad bellum 
gerendum déficeret, tamen mágno sibi ūsui fore arbitrâ-
bâtûr, si modo însulam adísset, genus homînûm perspexis-
set, loca, portûs, adítûs côgnovisset; quae omnîa ferê 
Galli erant incôgnïta. Neque enim temerê praeter mercà-
tôrês illô adit quisquam, neque eis ipsîs quicquam praeter 
ôram marîtimam atque eâs regîônês quae sunt contrâ Gal-
lliâs nôtum est. Itaque vocâtis ad sê undique mercatóribus, 
neque quanta esset însulae mágnitùdô, neque quae aut 
quantae nûtionês incolicerent, neque quem úsum bellî habê-
rent aut quibus însîtîtûs ûterentur, neque qui essent ad 
maiôrem náûium multîtûdinêm idônei portûs reperìre poterat. 30

— ⁴ subministrândîs, 91, 14.
He Sends Volusenus on a Reconnaissance, then Commius.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīnum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam tràiectus. Hūc nāvis undique ex finitimis regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcērat classem, iubet convenire. Interim cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō 1 ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt qui pollicеantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtenerēre. Quibus auditīs liberālīter pollicitus hortātusque ut in ea sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōn-
stiterat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātīs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volu-
sēnus perspectis regiōnibus quantum ei facultātēs darī potuit, quī nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbarīs committere non audēret, quintō dīē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

The Morini Submit. A Fleet is Prepared.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnē-
runt qui sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī 2 bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sībi Caesar satīs opportūnē acci-

Cf. 1 perlāta, p. 73, l. 4. — 2 imperītum, 40, 9.
disse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs. Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnūm eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter lxxx onerāriis coāctis [contrāctisque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstīmābat, quod praeterea nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātis praefectīisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant xviii onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum viii ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equītibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottaē lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgāti nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpiciōm Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praecipuis sidiō quod sātis esse arbitrābatur portum tenēre iussit.

The Fleet Crosses the Channel, Finds Difficulty in Landing, and Comes to Anchor.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvignandum tempestātem tertīa fere vigilia solvit, equītēisque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvis cōnscedere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administram strātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quartā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspevit. Cūius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex locīs superiōribus in litum tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō conveniērent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnīisque militum convo-cātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fieri vellet

Cf. occupātiōnibus, p. 103, l. 7. — nactus, 48, 5. — adigēbātur, 84, 1.
ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militaris ratiō, maximē ut mari-
timae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque instābilem
mōtum habērent), ad nūtum 1 et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab
eis administrārentur. Hīs dimissīs et ventum et aestum
5 ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs an-
coris, circiter milia passuum vii ab eō locō prōgressus,
apertō ac plānō lītore nāvis cōnstituit.

The Britons Resist the Landing of the Romans.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō
equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ātī
cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi
prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficūltās quod
nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstitui nōn
pote rant; militibus autem, ignōtis locīs, impeditīs manibus,
māgnō et grāvi onere armōrum oppressiūs, simul et dē nāvi-
15 bus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hosti-
bus erat pūgnandum; cum illī aut ex aridō aut paulum in
aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs
locīs, audāctēr tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitā-
rent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omnīnō
20 generis pūgnae imperītī nōn ēadem alacritāte ac studiō quō
in pedestrībus utī proeliis cōnsuērant nitēbantur.

Caesar Manœuvres for an Advantage. Valor of a Roman Centurion.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quārum
et speciēs 2 erat barbarīs inūsitātor et mōtus ad ďūm
expeditiōr, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs
25 incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstitui, atque inde
fundis, sagittīs, tormentīs hostīs prōppeli ac submovērī
iussit; quae rēs māgnō ēsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium
figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum
permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem re-

tulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitūdinem maris, qui x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni fēliciter ēvenēret, "Dēsilite," inquit, "commilitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere;

![Catapulta](image)

**FIG. 61. — CATAPULTA.**

ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvi prōiēcit atque in hostis aquilam ferre coeplit. Tum nostri cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūnīversi ex nāvi dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proxīmis [primīs] nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūti hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, but, Having no Cavalry, Cannot Pursue the Fleeing Britons.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alīa ex nāvi quibuscumque signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulāris ex nāvi ēgredientis cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plurēs paucōs circum-

Cf. 1 cunctandum, p. 90, l. 22.
sistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantis 1 cōnspexerat hās subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī 5 simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suis omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostis impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equītēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristīnam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

Conference with British Envoys, Who Sue for Peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram à Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. 15 Hunc illi ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōratōris modō Caesarīs mandāta déferrēt, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant: tum proeliō factō remīsērunt; et in petendā pāce ēius rei culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur 2 petīverunt. Caesar que-stus 3 quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiaē dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi par-tem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcēs-sītam paucīs dīebus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Interea suōs re-25 migrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitātīsque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt.

The Cavalry Transports Driven Back by a Storm.

28. His rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii dē quibus suprā

dēmonstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt.1 Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coūrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae
eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem 5 partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

The Fleet almost Wrecked by Storms and High Tides.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs 10 maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita únō tempore et longās nāvis, [quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat] quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatāe, tempestās adflic- 15 tābat,2 neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dābātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs 3 reliquae

Cf. 1 solvit, p. 107, l. 18. — 2 adflēctārentur, 82, 16. — 8 frāctōs, 27, 25.
cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmissis — ad nāvigandum inūtiles, māgna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent; et omnia 5 deērant quae ad reficiendās nāvis erant āsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemāri in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in his locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

The Britons Seize the Opportunity and Plan to Renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūti, cum 10 et equītēs et nāvis et frūmentum Rōmānīs deēsse intellege- rent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte 1 cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedimentis Caesar legionēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīoone factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod his superātis aut reditū interclūsis nēminem posteā bellī infe- rendi causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōndidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūratiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepercunt.

Caesar Suspects their Design.

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. 2 Itaque ad omnis cāsus subsidia comparābat. Nam et frū- mentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gra- 25 vissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbātur, et quae ad eās ōres erant ūsuī ex continentī comportāri iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, xii nāvibus āmissīs, reliquis ut nāvigāri satis commodē posset effēcit.

Cf. 1 exiguitātem, p. 90, l. 18. — 2 suspicātus, 97, 20.
He Takes Measures to Thwart them. They Attack a Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābatur vii, neque ūlla ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāre, — ei qui prō portis castrōrum in statīōne erant Caesari nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiorem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod

Fig. 63. — Soldiērs Foraging.

erat suspicātus, aliqual novī à barbaris initum cōnsili, cohortis quae in statīōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in statīōnem succēdere, reliquās 10 armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō lon-gius à castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicāti 15

Cf. 1 cōnfertōs, p. 66, l. 7.
hostēs húc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās delituerant; tum dispersōs depositis armis in metendō occupātōs subitō adorti, paucīs interfectis reliquōs incertis ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Mode of Fighting with War Chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Primō per omnīs partīs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equītum turmās insinuāverunt, ex essedīs désiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgāe interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illī à multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equītum, stabilitātem pedītum in proeliō praestant; ac tantum ēus cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in décliī ac praecipītī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderāri ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrēre et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērunt.

The Foragers Rescued. Large Numbers of Britons Assemble.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs nōvitātē pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxiliō tuli; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuēt et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūris diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrīs in castris continērent et hostem à pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum

suís praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expulisserant, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitudine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

They Give Battle and are Defeated.

35. Caesār, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat,—ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celerītāte periculum effugerent,—tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commissō Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcūm trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in acī prō castris cōnstituīt. Commissō proelīō diūtiūs nostrōrum militum impetus hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūti quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūris ex eis occiderunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsī sē in castra recēpérunt.

Cæsar Returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē légātī ab hostibus missī ad Cæsarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Cæsar numerum obsidum quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōisque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, īnfirmī nāvibus hiemī navigatiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post medium noctem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolamēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eis onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā délātae sunt.

Attack of the Morini on Cæsar’s Troops.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militiae circiter cccc atque in castra contendereant, Morīnī, quōs Cæsar in Britanniām proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt.
Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia vi convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equītātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim nostrī milītēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris IIII fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucīs volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equītātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

The Rebellious Morini Subdued. Thanksgiving at Rome.

NOTES.
BOOK FIRST. — B.C. 58.

THE HELVETIAN WAR.—Early in the year 58 B.C. the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of becoming masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west, and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise that his flight and death — when he was charged with guilty conspiracy and put on trial for his life — caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Caesar, during a fortnight’s parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance across the river; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier when they were overtaken by Caesar, who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign, lasting only from March to June, is called the Helvetic War.

READING REFERENCES ON THE HELVETIAN WAR.

Dodge’s Caesar, pp. 50–81.
Froude’s Caesar, pp. 214–231.
Trollope’s Caesar, pp. 35–38.
Fowler’s Julius Caesar, chap. 8.
Holmes’s Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul, pp. 26–36.
Napoleon’s Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 3.
Plutarch’s Lives, Caesar.

N.B. The grammars cited are those of Allen and Greenough ($), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), Harkness (H.), and Hale and Buck (H–B.). References in parentheses are to the old editions. Cf. (confer) = compare; sc. (scilicet) = supply; ff. = and following; subjv. = subjunctive; inv. = imperative; fn. = footnote.
Notes: Caesar.

PAGE 1. LINE 1. Gallia: that is, Transalpine Gaul, excluding the Roman province (Provincia) in the southeast, as well as Gallia Cisalpina, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including the country to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see map, Fig. 2). — omnis (predicate), as a whole. — est divisa, is divided: the adjective use of the participle, not the perfect passive; § 495 (291. b); B. 337. 2; G. 250. r.²; H. 640. 3 (550. N.²); H-B. 320. iii. — unam: sc. partem.

1 2 incolunt: in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense) change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: of which one is inhabited by the Belgians, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom. — Belgae: probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh; they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see Bk. ii. ch. 1). — Aquitani: of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques) inhabiting the districts of the southwest (see Bk. iii. ch. 20). — alienam: here alteram would be more usual as meaning the second in the list. — qui . . . appellantur: notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent, as with the indefinite relative (whoever) in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative (those) who. So here tertiam qui = tertiam partem ei incolunt qui; see § 307. c (200. c); B. 251. 1; G. 619; H. 399. 4 (445. 6); H-B. 284. 1. — ipsorum, etc.: notice that the position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case the English idiom is the same: in their own tongue . . . in ours.

1 3 Celtae: probably of the Gælic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch. — lingua: abl. of specification; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

1 4 different: the language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, another dialect of Celtic mixed with German.
14 inter se, from one another: the preposition inter may be used to show any reciprocal relation; § 301. f (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266.—Gallo: see note on incolum, l. 2.

15 dividit: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; § 317. b (205. b); B. 255. 3; G. 211. r.1; H. 392. 4 (463. ii. 3); H-B. 331. 3.

16 horum: part. gen. with fortissimi; § 346. a. 2 (216. a); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346. —propeterea quod, because; lit. because of this, that, etc. The difference between this and the simple quod is only one of greater emphasis — almost as strong as and the reason is or and it is because.

17 cultu, civilization, as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life.—humanitate, refinement, of mind or feeling.—provinciae: the province of Gallia Narbonensis, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (Marseill), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (Narbonne), a Roman colony. The name Provincia has come down to us in the modern Provence.

18 mercatores: these were traders or peddlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic, as with our Indian traders, was intoxicating drinks,—wines from the southern coast, which, especially, as Caesar says, "tend to debauch the character." These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine.—commen: this verb means, especially, to go back and forth in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Liger (Loire).—ea: object of important.

19 effeminandos: § 506 (300); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628 (544); H-B. 612. iii.—proximi: notice how the three superlatives, longissime, minime, and proximi are arranged. After the emphatic idea of cultu, etc., is completed, the superlatives begin each its own phrase.

10 Germanis: dat. with an adjective of nearness; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. 1); H-B. 362. iii.—trans Rhenum: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between the Gauls and the Germans, and has so remained till modern times.—continenter (adverb from the participle of contineo, hold together), incessantly; strictly, without any interruption. The pupil should begin at once to notice the way in which words develop into groups expressing the same idea in the forms of the various parts of speech. See p. 260.

11 qua de causa, and for this reason: § 308. f (180. f); B. 251. 6; G. 610; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8; referring back to proximi, etc., and further explained by quod . . . contendunt.—Helvetii: here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls.—quoque: i.e. just as the Belgians.
Notes: Caesar.

122

1 12 reliquae, the rest of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. r.²; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. n.¹ 2); H-B. 346. c; notice the emphasis of position; the others as opposed to the Helvetii.—virtue, not virtue, but courage; for construction, see note on lingua, l. 3.—praecedunt, excel; lit. go ahead of.

1 13 proelii: abl. of means; finibus: abl. of separation.—cum prohibent, while they keep them off (pro-habeo).

1 14 ipsi (emphatic), themselves, the Helvetians; eos and eorum refer to the Germans.

2 1 eorum una pars, one division of them (the Gauls or Celts), the people being identified with the country.—quam . . . dictum est, which, it has been (already) said, the Gauls hold. Notice that in direct discourse it would be Galli obtinere: the subject nom. is changed to acc. and the indic. to the infin. after the verb of saying, dictum est: § 561. a (272. r.); B. 330; G. 527; H. 613. 2 (535. 1); H-B. 534. 1, 590. 1. Here quam is the object and Gallos the subject of obtinere, while the clause is the subject of dictum est; § 560, 561, 566. b (329, 330. a. 2); B. 330; G. 528; H. 615 (538); H-B. 238, 590. 1. a.—obtinere (ob-teneo), not obtain, but occupy; strictly, hold against all claimants. Ob in composition almost always has the sense of opposing or coming in the way of something. This is one of the many words which have entirely changed their meaning in their descent from the Latin. Always be on your guard against rendering Latin words by the English one corresponding. Obtineo does not mean obtain, nor occupo, occupy. The corresponding word is often suggestive as a guide to the meaning, but must not be used without careful examination.

2 3 ab Sequanis, on the side of, etc., regarded from the point of view of the Province; a very common use of ab; § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 2. n.⁸; H. 490 (434. 1); H-B. 406. 2.

2 4 vergit, etc., slopes to the north; the highlands (Cévennes) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly.—septentriones (septem triones, “the seven plough-oxen”): i.e. the constellations of the Great and Little Bears. The word is used both in the singular, as below, and in the plural, as here.

2 5 Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul, the country just described, not Gallia omnis.

2 6 spectant: i.e. considered from the Province, it lies in that direction.

2 8 ad Hispaniam, next to Spain, i.e. the Bay of Biscay: § 428. d (259. f); H. 420. 1 (433. 1).
29 spectat: cf. spectant above.—inter occasum, etc., northwest, i.e. from the Province.

211 Chap. 2. nobilissimus, of highest birth. Popular revolutions had, among the Gauls as among the Greeks and Romans, mostly dispossessed the old chiefs, or kings; and they had established an annual magistrate called Vergebret (ch. 16). But the heads of the ruling families would naturally be ambitious to recover what they could of the old class power, and Orgetorix is represented as aspiring to create a monarchy in Gaul.

212 M. = Marco. Always read and translate these names without abbreviation.—Messala, etc.: this was B.C. 61, three years before Caesar’s first campaign in Gaul. This construction of consiliumus was the usual way of denoting the year; not so formal in English as while Messala and Piso were consuls, but merely in the consulship of; abl. abs., § 419. a (255. a); B. 227. i; G. 409, 410; H. 489 and l (431 and 2); H-B. 421. 1.

213 cupiditate: abl. of means; § 409 (248. a); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. —coniurationem, a league sworn to fidelity by oath (iure).—nobilitatis: from the account given in ch. 4, we see how immense was the class power still held by the nobles, and why they would naturally join in such a combination.

215 civitati persuasit: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. ii); H-B. 362. ftn. and 1; the direct object of persuasit is the clause ut . . . exirent; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. i (498); H-B. 502. 3. a; translate the latter by the infinitive according to the English idiom. Votes were easily “persuaded” by such means as Orgetorix possessed. For the sequence of tenses in exirent, see § 484 (286. r.); B. 267; G. 510; H. 545. ii. 1 (493. 1); H-B. 476; and for the plur., see § 280. a (182. a); B. 254. 4; G. 211. 1; H. 389 (636. iv. 4); H-B. 325.

215 perfacile: predicate with esse, while its subject is the infin. clause with potiri; § 289. d (189. d); G. 422. 3; H. 394. 4 (438. 3); cf. H-B. 325. b; showing that it was quite easy, since they exceeded all men in valor, to win the empire of all Gaul.—esse: indir. disc., depending on some word implied in persuasit; § 580. a (336. 2. n.2); B. 314. 2; G. 546. r.1, 649. r.3; H. 642. 1 (523. i. n.); cf. H-B. 534. 1. a. Notice that the Latin has the power of putting various dependent clauses after a single verb. Here the idea of persuading takes the thing that was to be done in an ut-clause. The facts of which they were persuaded take the indir. disc. Careful attention to this usage will make many difficult passages easy. It is not the verb used, but the meaning, that decides the construction.—cum praestarent: subjv. after cum meaning since; § 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 526.

216 imperio: § 410 (249); B. 218. i; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429
Notes: Caesar.

2 17 hoc facilius, all the easier: originally degree of difference, as in all ablatives with comparative; but hardly different in sense from the abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 424. a. — id: object of persuasit; § 369 (227. f); B. 176. 2. a; G. 345; H. 426. 6 (384. 2); H-B. 364. 4: we should say, persuaded them of it. Usually with persuadere the dat. and acc. are both used only when the latter is a pronoun. — loci natura, by the nature of the country.

2 18 una ex parte, on one side: cf. ab Sequanis above, so undique, on (lit. from) all sides; hinc, on this side, etc. The effect on the senses is supposed to come from the direction referred to. — latissimo, very broad.

2 19 qui takes its gender not from flumine, but from Rheno; § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326.

2 23 his rebus, etc.: lit. from these things it was coming about that they roamed about less widely and could less easily make war, etc. But this is obviously not an English mode of thought, nor a form which any English-speaking person would ever naturally use. So here, as always, you must see from this clumsy expression what is meant and then express it in the natural vernacular, something like, from all this they were getting less free to wander and having less opportunity to make war, etc. Several other ways of expressing this may be imagined. One of the greatest advantages of classical study is to set the mind free from forms, and bring into prominence the possibility of saying the same thing in fundamentally different ways. — fierat: the imperfect expresses the continued effect of the causes; § 470 (277); B. 260. 1; G. 231; H. 534 (468, 469); H-B. 468. 2; the subject of fierat is the clause ut . . . possent; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2, cf. 284. 1; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a.

2 24 qua ex parte: here in which respect hardly differs from from which cause. — homines (a sort of apposition) = being (as they were) men eager for war.

3 1 bellandi: § 349. a (218. a); B. 338. 1. b; G. 374. 5; H. 626, 451. 1 (542. 1, 399. 1. i); H-B. 612. 1. — adficiebantur = adficiebantur: for the assimilation of consonants, see § 16 (11); B. 8. 4; G. 9; H. 374. 2 (344. 5); H-B. 51. 2. In this edition the unchanged form of the preposition is usually preferred. — pro, in proportion to; cf. our force of for.

3 2 multitudo: their numbers, including some small dependent populations, were 368,000 (see ch. 29).

3 3 angustos finis, too narrow limits. So in English such words often suggest a negative idea; cf. a “scant pattern.”

3 4 milia passuum, miles (1000 paces), the regular way of stating this measure, milia being acc. of extent of space, and passuum part. gen. The passus was the stretch from heel to heel, i.e. from where one heel is raised.
to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile *mille passuum* was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in a thousand double paces. — CCXL = ducenta quadraginta.

Always give the Latin words for numerals in reading the text.

3 5 patebant: throughout the latter part of this chapter notice the use of the imperfect of *description* or *general statement*, compared with the perfect of simple narrative in *persuasit* above and *constituerunt*, etc., below. This distinction is very marked in Latin, and must always be noticed, though not always translated. Our progressive imperfect is much more limited in its use than the Latin imperfect. But the latter always describes a situation and never advances the narrative of occurrences.

3 7 Chap. 3. quae ... pertinentem: dependent clause in indir. disc.; § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1 and a. The mood shows that its clause expresses not the writer's statement, but that of the speaker or actor or some other person concerned. Always bear in mind that Cæsar uses the subjunctive to express something different from the indicative, whether you can find the technical rule for it or not. — *comparare* ... *confirmare*: these infinitives correspond exactly with our idiom *to prepare*, etc., but the same meaning is oftener expressed by a subjunctive clause with *ut*; § 457 (271. a); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 1 (533. i. 1); H-B. 586. c.

3 8 iumentorum, beasts of burden; properly, yoke-animals (kindred with iugum, join, and iugum, yoke); carrorum, a Celtic word, two-wheeled carts. See Fig. 55, p. 94. — *quam maximum*, as great as possible: § 291. c, 321 (93. b, 207); B. 240. 3, 177. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4.

3 9 coëmere ... facere ... *confirmare*: notice that the Latin more easily dispenses with connectives than we do.

3 11 conficiendas, completing: *con* in composition may mean together; or, as here, may be simply intensive (cf. *do a thing up*). This word is shown to be a gerundive by having a noun with which it agrees. Cf. pro-*ficiscendum*, 3 7, where there is no noun; § 503 (296); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 623 (544. 1); H-B. 613. 1.

3 13 lege: probably a resolution passed in a public assembly.

3 12 in tertium annum *confirmant*, fix for the third year.

3 14 sibi ... suscepit, took on himself: for construction, see § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. Observe the force of *sub*, as if he put his shoulders *under* the load.
3 15 civitatis, clans, such as the Hædui, Sequani, etc., each constituting a commonwealth (civitas), — about 60 in all. Their territory had no local name, but was known only by that of the clan, which was sovereign and wholly independent, except for voluntary alliances (see ch. 30). The name Gallia itself — as was said of Italy a few years ago — was only “a geographical expression,” implying no united political sovereignty. — persuade, prevails on: suadet would be simply urges.

3 16 filio, Sequano: appositives with Castico.

3 17 obtinuerat, had held: see note on obtinere, 21. The pluperfect implies that he had held it formerly, but had been ousted by some popular movement.

3 18 amicus: an honorary title given by the Roman Senate to friendly powers; § 283, 284, 393. a (185, 239. i. n.2); B. 168. 2. b; G. 206; H. 393. 8 (362. 2. 2); H-B. 319. ii, 392. b. — ut . . . occuparet, to lay hands on: this clause is the object of persuade; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (498. ii); H-B. 502. 3. a; for the sequence of tenses, see § 485. e (287. e); B. 268. 3; G. 511. r,1; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491. 2; in English it would be expressed by the infin. — regnum: here, not hereditary authority, but personal rule, — what the Greeks called tyranny.

3 19 quod: the relative. — ante: i.e. before the popular movement. — Dumnorigi (dat. after persuade): Dumnoriax, a younger brother, restless, ambitious, and strongly attached to the old aristocracy of the clan; therefore a bitter enemy of the Roman supremacy. He afterwards headed a desertion of Caesar’s cavalry just before the second invasion of Britain, but was pursued and killed (Bk. v. ch. 6). It is implied that in the popular movement Dumnoriax had come into prominence. It must be borne in mind that the personal rule of a chief (regnum) was an entirely different thing from the prominence (principatum) which one man or another might have in the national councils; as the latter had no constitutional or official power.

3 20 Diviciaci: this Hæduan chief was of the order of Druids (see Bk. vi. ch. 13ff.); he had been in Rome where he made the acquaintance of Cicero and other eminent Romans. He was thoroughly impressed with the power and superiority of the Romans, and was a faithful friend and ally of Caesar. The party of Druids, represented by Diviciacus and Liscus (ch. 16), was in a manner the popular party, strong especially in the large towns; it was opposed to the old clan feeling kept up for ambitious purposes by military or tribal chiefs (principes) such as Orgetorix and Dumnoriax. The former, or popular party, was headed by the Hædui; the latter, or aristocratic, by the Sequani and Arverni. The Druids were a religious or priestly order, jealous of the aristocracy (equites) of the tribe or clan, which latter
The Helvetian War.

represented what may be called the patriotic or "native-Celtic" party (see Bk. vi. chs. 12-17). A knowledge of this division helps to clear up many of the events of Cæsar's campaigns. In fact, Gaul was conquered by the strategy underlying the maxim "divide et impera." — qui: i.e. Dumnorix. The regular rule is that the relative should refer to the last person named. But this in all languages is often overborne by the prominence of some preceding person. — principatum, highest rank, as distinct from political power (see above).

3 21 plebi acceptus, a favorite with the people (acceptable to the people). — ut idem conaretur: i.e. put down the constitutional authority, and establish a rule of military chiefs. The expression here is a striking example of the tendency of the Latin to say things by verbs which we say by nouns; Lat. attempt the same thing, Eng. make the same attempt.

3 23 perfacile factu: § 510. N.² (303. R.); B. 340. 2; G. 436. N.¹; H. 635 (547); H-B. 619. 1; in predicate agreement with conata perficere, which is subject of esse, depending on probat. — illis probat, undertakes to show them, i.e. Casticus and Dumnorix: conative present; § 467 (276. b); B. 259. 2; G. 227. N.²; H. 530 (467. 6); H-B. 484. — propterea quod: see note on 1 6.

3 24 ipse, etc., i.e. and so they could count on him for a powerful ally. — non esse dubium quin, there was no doubt (he said) that: here esse is infin. of indir. disc.; for the construction of quin, see § 558. a (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b. For purposes of analysis we may consider the quin clause a subject of esse, and dubium as a predicate adjective in the neuter to agree with the subject.

3 25 Galliae: part. gen. with plurimum; § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

3 26 se suis: begin as soon as possible to master the use of the reflexive in Latin, to which we have nothing that exactly corresponds in English. Our forms with self are emphatic and not ordinarily reflexive. The forms of se and suus refer (without emphasis) to the subject of their clauses, and in indir. disc. to the speaker. They take the place of an I or mine of the direct. Where no ambiguity would arise in English translate them by he and his. In case of ambiguity some device must be used to avoid it. Here there is an emphasis on se, but it comes from position. — regna: translate by the singular. To a Roman each man's power would be a separate regnum, hence the plural here. — conciliaturum: sc. esse, which is often omitted with the fut. infin.

4 1 oratione, plea, or argument (abl. of means). — idem et iusiurandum: i.e. assurance confirmed by oath; hendiadys; § 640 (385); B. 374. 41 G. 698; H. 751. 3. N.¹ (636. iii. 2); H-B. 631. 5.
43 regno occupato: abl. abs., expressing condition; § 419. 4, 521. a (255. 4, 310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 409, 593. 2; H. 489. 1, 638. 2 (431. 2, 549. 2); H-B. 421. 6, 578. 6; in case they should get in their hands the royal power = si occupaverimus in the direct.—per tres ... populos: i.e. Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani; a league between these, they hope, will secure their power over all Gaul.—firmissimos, most stable.

43 Galliae: governed by potiri; § 410. a (249. a); B. 212. 2; G. 407. d; H. 458. 3 (410. v. 3); H-B. 353.—posse: equivalent to a fut. infin.; § 584. b; B. 270. 3; G. 248. r.; H. 618. 1 (537. n.1); H-B. 472. d.

44 Chap. 4. ea res, this (i.e. the conspiracy). The word res is constantly used in Latin where we use some more specific word in English, as action, fact, event, estate, etc., according to the passage. The conduct of Orgetorix was treated as criminal because, though the Helvetians were prepared to emigrate in a body and subdue the rest of Gaul, they would not give to Orgetorix the power thus acquired.—moribus suis, according to their custom: abl. of spec.; § 418. a and n. (253. n.) ; B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 441, cf. 414 and a.

45 ex vinculis, out of chains, i.e. (standing) in chains; a Latin idiom; cf. ex quo, on horseback.—causam dicere: a technical expression for being brought to trial.—damnatum (sc. eum, object of sequi), if condemned = si damnatus esset. The Latin may almost always omit a pronoun of reference, if there is a participle or adjective to show what its form would be if expressed. In this sentence the subject of oportebat is the clause damnatum ... sequi; the subject of sequi is poenam; and ut ... cremaretur is in apposition with poenam, defining the punishment: § 562. 1, 571. c (329. 2, 332. f); B. 294, cf. 297. 3; G. 557; H. 571. 4 (501. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a. n. Translate, he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned by fire (lit. it must needs be that the penalty should overtake him, condemned, of being burned with fire). For the abl. in i, see § 76. 6. 1 (57. 6. 1); B. 38; G. 57. 2; H. 102. 4 (62. iv); H-B. 88. 2. e.

47 die constitutæ, on the day appointed: § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. For the gender of die, see § 97 (30. a, 73); B. 53; G. 64; H. 135 (123); H-B. 101.—causa dictionis, for the trial (it would be more usual to say dictionæ); dictionis depends on die, and causa is the objective gen. after dictionis.

48 familiaris, clansmen: ordinarily this word means slaves; but it is more probable that it here means all who bore his name or regarded him as their chief.—ad (adv.) ... milia decem (in apposition with familiaris), to (the number of) ten thousand.
49 clientis, retainers: volunteer or adopted followers. — obseratos, debtors: the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul; see Bk. vi. ch. 13.

410 eodem: an adverb. — per eos, by their means: § 405. b (246. b); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. 1. n.1); H-B. 380. d. — ine... diceret: a purpose clause.

412 cum... conaretur, when the state attempted. The force of the subjv. here cannot easily be made apparent in translation, and may be disregarded as too subtle for this stage of the pupil's advancement. It is perfectly manifest, however, and can be learned later; § 546 (323); B. 288. 1. b; G. 585; H. 600, ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.

415 quin... consicerit (consciscio), that he decreed death to himself (his own death), i.e. committed suicide. The construction of the clause is analogous to that with non dubito, etc.; § 558 (319. d'); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b. Observe that ipse, self, agrees in Latin rather with the subject; not, as in English, with the object.

416 Chap. 5. nihilō minus (often written in one word, as in English), nevertheless. — constituerant, had resolved: observe the pluperfect, as following not a real but a historical present.

417 ut... exeat, in apposition with id: as we should say, “namely, to go forth.” Clauses thus used in apposition with a noun or pronoun take the form required by the verb on which the appositional word depends. Here facere would take a result clause with ut, and so this clause has that form. — ubi... arbitratio sunt, when they judged: observe the regular use of the perfect indic. with ubi, postquam, etc., and cf. cum... conaretur above; § 543 (324); B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 602 (518. n.1); H-B. 557.

418 rem, enterprise; cf. note on ea res, l. 4. — oppida, towns, fortified and capable of defence.

419 vicus, villages, i.e. groups of houses about a single spot. The villages and houses were burned; partly to cut off hope of return, partly to prevent their being occupied by the Germans. — ad: cf. l. 8 above. — reliqua, etc.: i.e. isolated farmhouses not collected in villages.

421 portatur... erant, intended to carry: § 194. a (129); B. 115; G. 247; H. 236 (233); H-B. 162. — domum: following the verbal noun reditionis; § 427. 2 (258. b); B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. b.

423 molita... cibaria, meal. Food for 368,000 people (cf. 2611) for three months required five or six thousand wagons and about twenty-five thousand draught animals. This would make a line of march of over thirty miles. — domo: § 427. 1 (258. a); B. 229. 1. b; G. 390. 2; H. 462. 4 (412. ii. 1); H-B. 451. a.
5 1 Rauracis, etc.: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385, ii); H-B. 362 and i: German tribes from the banks of the Rhine.

5 2 uti: the older form for ut, common in Caesar. — eodem usi consilio, adopting the same plan: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407. N. 8; H. 477 (421. 1); H-B. 429. — una cum eis, along with them. The use of eis avoids ambiguity, though secum would be more regular, referring to the subject of the main clause; cf. note on se, 3 26. — oppidis . . . exustis, having burned, etc.: § 493. 2 (113. c. N); B. 356. 2. b; G. 410. r. 1; H. 640. 4 (550. N. 4); H-B. 602. 1.

5 3 Boios (from whom the name Bohemia is derived): a Celtic tribe, whom the great German advance had cut off from their kinspeople towards the west, and who were now wandering homeless, some of them within the limits of Gaul.

5 4 Noricum, etc.: now eastern Bavaria and upper Austria. — oppugnarant = oppugnaverant: § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

5 5 receptos . . . adsciscunt: in English, in a sentence like this, we should use a separate verb instead of the participle; § 496. N. 2 (292. r.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. r. 1; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 604. 1. Translate, they receive the Boii into their own number (ad se), and vote them in as their allies. They do not merely unite with them, but incorporate them into their own body as a homeless people.

5 6 Chap. 6. erant omnino, there were in all, i.e. only. — itinera . . . itineribus: observe the form of this relative sentence, common in Caesar, which gives the antecedent noun in both clauses. It is usually omitted in one or the other; in English, almost always in the relative clause; in Latin, quite as often in the other; § 307 (200); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399. 5 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.

5 7 possent: subjv. in a relative clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 1; i.e. not merely by which they could, but of the sort by which they could. In such clauses, which describe something by its qualities, the subjv. is regular in Latin. — Sequanos: i.e. the region now called Franche-Comté, north of the Rhone.

5 8 inter . . . Rhodanum: the pass now guarded by the Fort l’Ecluse, about nineteen Roman (seventeen and a half English) miles below Geneva (see note on 7 18). The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman province. The choice was either to cross the river and go through the country held by the Romans, or to proceed along its northern bank through the friendly Sequani. — vix qua, etc., where carts could scarcely be hauled in single file: § 137. a (95. a); B. 81. 4. a; G. 97; H. 164. 1 (174. 2. 1); H-B. 133. See Fig. 55, p. 94.
59 ducereuntur: the same "characteristic subj." as in possent. The
distinction is one that we rarely express in English; but a little study will
make it appear in most cases. — autem, then again.
61 possent: § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2.
62 multo facilius (cf. nihilominus, 4. 16), much easier in itself; but it
required them to crush the Roman legion at Geneva, and force their way
through about fifty miles of territory occupied by the Roman arms. —
propter qua: see note on 1 6.
63 nuper pacati erant: a rebellion "of despair" (B.C. 61) had been
subdued by C. Pomptinus.
64 locis: loc. abl.; § 429. 2 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N. 1; H. 485. 1
(425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. — vado: by ford (wading, vadendo). The bed of
the Rhone must have changed somewhat since Cæsar's
time. There is now but one ford between Geneva and
the Pas-de-l'Écluse.
68 sese persuasuros [esse]: notice that in the fut.
infin., used in indir. disc., esse is usually omitted (cf. con-
ciliaturum, 3 28; in dir. disc. we should have persuade-
binus), they thought they should persuade; its object is
Allobrogibus (cf. Rauracia, etc., 5 1). — bona animo,
well disposed; § 415 (251); B. 224. 1; G. 400; H. 473. 2
(419. ii); H-B. 443. Five years before, their envoys in Rome had intrigued
with Catiline's agents, whom they at length betrayed (see Cicero, Cat.
iii. ch. 9).
69 viderentur: § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B.
535. 2.
7 eos: again the demonstrative to avoid ambiguity; see note on eis,
5 2. — paterentur: the subjv. with ut is the regular form of object clause
after all verbs of commanding, inducing, and the like; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1;
G. 546; H. 564. 1 (498, ii); H-B. 502. 3. a.
61 diem . . . die: cf. itinera . . . itineribus, 5 6 and note.
62 convenient: the subjv. is used because diem dicunt has the force
of a command. The indic. would mean "on which they do assemble"; this
means "on which they should." Technically, the clause is a purpose clause;
§ 529 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544. ii; H. 590 (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2. — a. d. v.
Kal. Apr. (ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis): nominally March 28;
§ 631, 424. 8 (376, 259. e); B. 371 and 6, 372; G. App.; H. 754, 755 (642-
644); H-B. 664, 667. But the calendar was in a state of great confusion
at this time, and till Cæsar's reform twelve years later. — L. Pisone, etc.: notice
again the regular Roman method of giving dates; see note on
Messala, 2 19. Piso was Cæsar's father-in-law.
6 14 Chap. 7. Caesar: the tendency is so strong in Latin to put the most emphatic word first that it is so placed even when the first clause is a dependent one, as here. We should say: Caesar, when it was reported, etc., hastened; the Latin says: to Caesar, when it was reported, etc., [he] (which in such cases is unnecessary, having already been expressed in a different form) hastened. He was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship, preparing to set out for his province. Every consul was entitled to the governorship of a province for one year after his term of office, and, by a special law, Caesar’s government (consisting of the three provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum) had been conferred for a term of five years. The news of the emigration hastened his movements. — nuntiatum esset: the same idiomatic use of the subjv. with cum as in 4 12. The relation here, however, is more apparent. The clause gives not the time merely, but the circumstances, “upon this being,” etc.— id in apposition with eos . . . conari (the real subject of nuntiatum esset), that they were attempting.

6 15 maturat: travelling, his biographers say, one hundred miles in a day, and reaching the Rhone in a week, according to Plutarch. — ab urbe: this word, unless some other place is indicated, always means Rome, the city. Caesar was near, but not in the city, not being permitted to enter it while holding the military authority (imperium) of proconsul. Hence he says ab, not ex. — proficisci: the so-called complementary infin., used like our own with verbs which require another action to complete their sense.

6 16 quam maximis potest itineribus: § 291. c (93. 6); B. 240. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4; potest is usual with Caesar in this phrase, which is elliptical. In full it would be tam magnis quam maximis, as great as the greatest, i.e. the greatest possible. — ulteriorum: i.e. beyond the Alps. The northern part of modern Italy was still called Gallia Cisalpina, and was a part of Caesar’s province.

6 17 ad, near to, as far as.— provinciae: dat.; § 369 (227. f); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 364. 4.— imperat: i.e. Transalpine Gaul. Here impero is used in what seems to have been its original meaning, make requisition upon; see Vocab.

6 18 erat omnino: cf. erant omnino, 5 6 and note.

6 19 legio: the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous. With reference to the Roman legions, see chapter on military affairs, 1. 1.

6 20 rescindi: notice that inreo and veto, unlike other verbs of commanding and forbidding, take the acc. and the infin.

6 21 certiores facti sunt, were informed (made more certain): a technical expression for official communication or certain information.
623 qui diceent, who were (instructed) to say: the same construction as qua die conveniant above, l. 11, see note. Notice the difference between obtinebant, who did, etc., and diceent, who should, etc. Treat your subjunctives according to the sense, and use the rules only to formulate the usages; § 531 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544; H. 590 (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

624 sibi ... liceat: observe carefully the construction of the indir. disc.; § 584, 585 (336. A. B.); B. 317, 318; G. 650; H. 642–653 (523–531); H-B. 534. 1. 2; in dir. disc. it would be: Nobis est in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propertea quod aliud iter habemus nullum; rogamus, ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat. Careful attention to this construction in the beginning will be amply repaid later. — sibi: dat. of possession; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374; the subject of esse is the clause iter ... facere, while the whole passage, sibi ... liceat, is the object of diceent. Render, that they had (it was to them) in mind to march, etc.

626 rogare: of this verb the subject is se, understood (often omitted by Cæsar, contrary to the rule), and the object is the object clause ut ... liceat; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546 and n. 1; H. 565 (498. 1); H-B. 530. 2. — voluntate: abl. in accordance with which; § 418. a (253. n.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397; cf. H. 475. 3 (416); cf. H-B. 414. a.

71 L. Cassium ... occisum [esse]: object of memoria tenebat, as a phrase of knowing; § 459 (272); B. 330; G. 527. 2; H. 613 (535. i. 1); H-B. 589. This defeat happened B.C. 107, in the terrible invasion of the Cimbri or Teutons, to whom the Helvetians were joined as allies. "The army of Cassius was one of six swept away by these barbarians."

72 sub iugum, under the yoke (hence the word subjugate). The iugum was made by sticking two spears in the ground and laying another across them above. To pass under this was equivalent to laying down arms by a modern army.

73 concedendum [esse]: impersonal depending on putabat, thought that no concession should be made (lit. that it must not be yielded). — homines: subject of temperamentus [esse], depending on existimabat.

74 inimico anime: abl. of quality; cf. bono animo, 6 8. — data facultate: abl. abs., expressing a condition; § 496, 521. a (292, 310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 593. 2; H. 575. 9 (507. 3. n. 7); H-B. 421. 6; cf. 4 2. — faciundi: gerundive; § 504 (297, 298); B. 339. 1; G. 428; H. 626 (544. 1); H-B. 612. 1.

75 iniuria: not "injury" in our sense, but wrong, outrage.
Notes: Caesar.

7 6 dum... convenirent: notice again the purpose expressed in this clause, until the men should, etc. Cf. qua die conveniant, 6 11, and qui dicerent, 6 20; § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 5.

7 9 reverterentur: subjv. for inv.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538. In dir. disc.: diem (= time) ad deliberandum sumam; si quid vultis, ad. Id. Apr. revertimini. Note the changes made, and the reasons for them.

7 10 Chap. 8. ea legione, with that legion (abl. of instrum.). In this sentence observe how all the qualifying clauses come first and the direct objects, murum, fossam, come next before the leading verb perducit; § 596 and a (343); B. 348, 349; G. 674; H. 664 (560); cf. H-B. 623; while each relative belongs to the verb which comes next after it unless another relative intervenes,—a very convenient rule in analyzing a long and difficult sentence.

7 13 milia: acc. of extent of space; cf. 3 4; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. —decem novem, nineteen: following the windings of the river (see note on 5 8). —murum: this rampart, or earthwork, was on the south side of the river, leaving the passage undisputed along the northern bank.

The banks of the Rhone in this part are generally rugged and steep, with sharp ravines; there are only five short reaches—a little over three miles in all—requiring defences. The current is in general quite rapid. Some remains of Cæsar's works can still be traced, according to the French engineers who surveyed the ground under the orders of Napoleon III. According to Cæsar's statement the work was continuous (this is the meaning of perducit). This undoubtedly means that, after the five accessible points were strengthened by artificial defences, the entire left bank of the Rhone, from Geneva to Pas-de-l'Ecluse (17½ English miles), formed a continuous barrier against the Helvetians. The construction of any one of the fortifications may be described as follows: Along the crest of the ridge facing the river the slope was cut so as to be vertical, or nearly so, and then a trench was hollowed. The earth dug out was partly thrown up to increase the height of the wall, and quite likely in part thrown down the hill. At all events, it seems probable that the measure of 16 feet is the distance from the bottom of the ditch to the top of the wall. Thus the work formed really little more than a trench with scarp higher than the counterscarp. Then the crest was fortified with a breastwork of palisades, behind which the soldiers were protected while hurling their missiles at the enemy. This entire series of works, with the force at Cæsar's command, could not have occupied more than two or three days. See Map, p. 5.
7 14 pedum: § 345. b (215. b); B. 203. 2; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355.
7 15 castella (lit. little fortifications), redoubts. See treatise on military affairs, V. In them were stationed guards (praesidia). The redoubts were sufficiently numerous so that the guard from one or another could quickly reach any point in the lines that might be threatened. — quo facilius . . . posset, that he may the more easily: the usual construction where a comparative is to be used; without the comparative it would be ut . . . posset; § 531. a (317. b); B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568. 7 (497. ii. 2; H-B. 502. 2 and b.
7 16 se invito (abl. abs.), against his will: se is used because this is a part of what Caesar had in his mind; § 300. 2 (196. a. 2); B. 244. ii. a; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2. — conarentur . . . posset: note the sequence of tenses after the historical presents disponit and communit.
7 17 ubi . . . venit: notice the difference between this clause and those above noted with cum and the subjv. This one expresses a real time and not circumstance like the others. You cannot render it by “upon the coming” or any similar phrase.
7 18 negat se . . . posse, says he cannot, etc. His words would be: More et exemplo populi Romani non possum iter ulli per provinciam dare; si vim facere conabimini, prohibeo. — more et exemplo, according to the custom and precedents: always constituting the rule of conduct with the conservative Romans.
7 19 si . . . conentur: future condition in indir. disc.; see the direct as given in note to l. 18.
7 20 prohibitum [esse]: sc. se subject and eos, object. — deiecti, cast down: de in composition generally has the meaning down.
7 22 non numquam, sometimes: § 326 and a (150 and a); B. 347. 2; G. 449 and r.4; H. 656. 1 (553. 1); H-B. 298. 2.
7 23 si . . . possent: practically an indir. quest. depending on conati, trying if (whether) they could break through; § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 601, 460. 1. (b); H. 649. ii. 3 (529. ii. 1. n.1); H-B. 582. 2 and a.
7 24 conatu: abl. of separation, following destiterunt; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414); H-B. 408. 2.
8 1 Chap. 9. una: emphatic. — via, only the way. — qua: abl. of the way by which; § 429. a (258. g); B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476 (420. 1. 3); H-B. 426. — Sequanis invitis (abl. abs. expressing a condition), in case the, etc.
8 2 sua sponte, by their own influence; a rare meaning of this phrase, which is generally of their own accord.
8 3 possent: cf. note on nuntiatum esset, 6 14.
4 so deprecatore (abl. abs. denoting means), by his means as advocate.
—impetrarent, they might obtain (it): a purpose clause; § 531 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2.

5 gratia, personal influence.—largitione, lavish gifts and hospital-
ities: like those of old chiefs of the clan. These words are ablatives of
cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444.

7 duxerat: this word is used only of the man who marries a wife, i.e.
he leads her to his own house.

8 novis rebus: revolution, change in government, dat.; § 368. 3 (227.
e. 3); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346, r.²; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

9 habere obstrictas, to keep close bound: § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6;
G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. 1. n.); H-B. 605. 5.

10 impetrat has for object ut . . . patiantur, and perfect has uti . . .
dent,—clauses of result; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1);
H-B. 521. 3. a.

11 obsides: these were persons of prominence given by one state to
another as security for fidelity. If the compact were broken, the hostages,
usually children of prominent persons, would be held responsible and
punished.

12 ne . . . prohibeant; ut transeant: object clauses of purpose,
depending on the idea of agreement implied in obsides . . . dent.—itinere:
abl. of separation; cf. conatu, 7 24.

14 Chap. 10. renuntiatur, word is brought back: i.e. by messengers
sent to ascertain, as the prefix re implies; the subject is the clause Helve-

tii esse, etc.; see note on 6 24.

15 Santonum: a people north of the Garonne, on the Bay of Biscay.
This is so far from the borders of the province as to show that Cæsar was
only searching for a pretext. But the conquest of Gaul was already deter-
mined upon, and the warlike Helvetii were too dangerous a people to be
allowed to add their strength to that of the present inhabitants.

16 Tolosatium: the people of Tolosa, the modern Toulouse.

17 Id refers to the Helvetii marching into the territory of the San-
tones.—fieret: the subjv. of indir. disc. after intellegebat.

18 futurum [esse] ut . . . haberet, etc., it would be to the great peril of
the province that it should have, etc.; § 561. n.¹ (329. n.); B. 294; G. 506; H.
571 (540); H-B. 238.—ut . . . haberet: a substantive clause of result used
as the subject of futurum [esse]; § 537, 569 (319, 332. a); B. 284. 1, 297. 2;
G. 553. 4. r.³; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. Cæsar's thought would
be: “Id si fiet, magno . . . futurum est ut populus Romanus . . . habeat.”

19 locis (loc. abl.) patentibus, in an open country: the southwest part
of Gaul is a broad river valley, giving easy access to the province.
8 20 finitimos: predicate, have as neighbors, etc.
8 21 munitioni . . . praeficit, he put in command of the fortification.—
Labienum: this was Cæsar’s best officer, a prominent and influential politician of strongly democratic sympathies. He served Cæsar faithfully through the Gallic wars, but when the Civil War broke out he joined what he conceived to be the party of the republic, went over to Pompey, and was killed at Munda, B.C. 45.

8 22 legatum, aide, lieutenant: no English word exactly translates this word.—
magnis itineribus: cf. quam maximis
potest itineribus, 6 16. It is the usual phrase for forced marches of an army.
The ordinary day’s march of the Romans was about 15 miles; a magnum iter was from 20 to 25 miles.—Italian: probably only into his province of Cisalpine Gaul, but this was already regarded as a part of Italy.

9 1 Aquileiam: an important Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic. It continued to be the chief port of trade for this region till outgrown by Venice.—
qua proximum iter: i.e. by way of Turin and Susa, by Mt. Genève. Ocelum has been variously identified with Briançon and probably Grenoble.

9 5 compluribus . . . pulsis: the order is interlocked, his agreeing with pulsis;
§ 598. h (344. h); B. 350. 11. d.

9 7 Vocontiorum: this people extended from the Durance to the Isère.

9 8 Allobrogum: these extended as far south as the Isère, and had possessions north of the Rhone in the sharp angle at St. Didier.

9 9 Segusiauos: these were west of the Rhone in the region of Lyons and opposite Vienne. They probably extended across the Saône above Lyons, so that Cæsar only crossed the Rhone above its junction with the Saône and did not cross the Saône also. He evidently had his camp in the heights above Lyons in the angle of the two rivers. His army amounted to six legions of nearly 25,000 men and an uncertain number of Gallic cavalry. He had doubtless been joined by Labienus with his legion from
Geneva, though that fact is not mentioned. Cæsar evidently went beyond his province without the order of the Senate, hence his explanatory tone.

9 11 Chap. ii. iam, by this time. — angustiæs: i.e. the Pas-de-l’Ecluse before described; see Figs. 5, 6. The entire train of the Helvetii has been reckoned at 8500 four-horse wagons, extending some fifty miles (cf. note on 4 23). The passage must have been extremely slow. They probably followed in the line of the modern railroad as far as Culoz, then to Amberieu and across the plateau des Dombes to the Saône between Lyons and Macon, a distance of nearly a hundred miles. It is calculated that Cæsar must have been absent two months in Italy, and the march of the Helvetians probably took about the same time. This would make the time of these events about the latter part of June.

9 12 Haeduorum: it does not appear that these occupied the left bank of the Saône. But predatory excursions may have been made across the river, and in ch. 12 the Helvetians were engaged in crossing.

9 13 cum...possent, not being able, etc.

9 15 rogatum: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618. — ita se, etc.: in English supply saying or some such word. In Latin, after the idea of speech or thought is suggested, as here by legatos and rogatum, no further expression of saying is necessary. In dir. disc. this would be, “Ita [nos]...meriti sæmus, ut paene in conspectu exercitus vestri,...liberi nostri...non debuerint” i.e. our services have been such, etc., that we did not deserve to have this happen (as it has). Probably the account is somewhat exaggerated.

9 16 meritos: “Alone among the Gauls,” says Tacitus, “the Hædui claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people” (Ann. xi. 25). So, also, Cicero calls them fratres nostri.

9 17 [eorum]: words thus inclosed in brackets are of doubtful authenticity.

9 18 debuerint: if this were stated not as a result but independently, the form would be perf. indic., implying that the thing had happened contrary to what ought to be. According to the Latin idiom, the same tense is retained in such cases, contrary to the sequence of tenses; see § 485. c. n.2 (287. c. n.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); H-B. 478. The English idiom is that our lands, etc., ought not to have been, etc., putting the past idea into the infinit.; § 486. a (288. a); B. 270. 2; H. 618. 2 (537. 1); H-B. 582. 3. a. ftn.2. — Hædui Ambarri, the Hædui near the Arar (or Saône), occupying the angle between that river and the Rhone. They were evidently closely akin to the Hædui and were their allies.

9 19 necessarii, bound by necessitudo, or community of interests of any kind. — consanguinei, akin by blood.
The Helvetic War.

920 *depopulatis agris . . . prohibere*: i.e. their lands were already wasted, and it was with difficulty that they could keep off, etc.; see § 496. n.1 (292. r.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. r.1; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 421. 4; *depopulatis* is pass., though from a dep. verb; see § 190. 6 (135. 6); B. 112. 6; G. 167. n.2; H. 222. 2 (231. 2); H-B. 291. d.

921 *Allobroges*: from Culoz the Rhone flows almost south and then makes a very sharp turn to the northwest. It was probably in this angle that the Allobroges overlapped the river.

922 *sibi*: § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374. — *sölum* is a noun. — *nihil esse reliqui*: part. gen., a common usage with neut. adjectives; § 346. a. 1 (216. a. 1); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 440. 5. n. (397. 1); H-B. 346; i.e. they had nothing left, etc.; the land was completely stripped.

924 *non espectandum [esse]*: imper. as this construction is always passive. Translate by the act., *He must not*, etc.; see § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355. 251. 1; H. 302. 7, 431 (301. 2, 388); H-B. 373. 1.

925 *sociorum*: the Helvetians would be sure to levy upon the allies of the Romans wherever they found them.

926 *Santonos*: cf. § 15. — *pervenirent*: § 553 (328); B. 292. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. The subjv. is used because of the idea, *they should come*, technically called purpose.

101 CHAP. 12. *flumen*, etc., *the Arar (Saône) is a river which flows through*, etc.; not between, which would be expressed by *dividit*. The Saône joins the Rhone about seventy-five miles southwest of Lake Geneva.

102 *lenitate, sluggish current*, abl. of description.

103 *in . . . fluat*: indir. quest., subject of *judicari possit*: see § 574. n. (334. n.); B. 300; G. 467; H. 649. ii (529. i); H-B. 537.

104 *ratibus, rafts of logs; lintribus, canoes* of hollowed logs, joined to make a kind of bridge. — *transibant*: notice the imperf.; they were in the act of crossing.

105 *partis*: object of *duxisse; flumen*, governed by *trans* in composition; § 395 (239. 6); B. 179. 1; G. 331. r.1; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386.

107 *citra*: i.e. on the east side. — *Ararim*: for the acc. in *im*, see § 74. d, 75. a. 1 (55. d, 56. a. 1); B. 38. 1; G. 57. 1; H. 102. 2 (62. iii. 1); H-B. 88. 1. It is to be noticed that Gallic names were felt by the Romans as Greek, and were treated accordingly. — *reliquam = reliictam*: in fact, this adjective is, from its meaning, a kind of participle. — *de tertia vigilia*: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches, the third beginning at midnight. This movement took place soon after (*de*) the watch began.
Notes: Caesar.

10 10 eos impeditos, etc.: the emphasis gives a force like "while these were hampered and not expecting, he engaged them," etc. In Latin the two sentences are made into one; such telescoping of two coördinate ideas is almost regular in Latin.

10 11 concidit: see Vocab. — mandarunt = mandaverunt: § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

10 12 pagus: this "district" (Tigurinus) was about the modern Zurich. The inhabitants of the pagus probably composed a clan, and formed a division of the force.

10 15 L. Cassium: see 7 1, 2.

10 17 deorum: this reference to a special providence is noticeable in so stern a realist as Cæsar, and was possibly for political effect. Yet he often speaks of fortune as powerful in human affairs (cf. Bk. vii. ch. 42), and mentions divine omens which accompanied his victory over Pompey (Bell. Civ. iii. 105). A disbeliever in the superstitions of his day, he yet seems to acknowledge the presence of a controlling power. — quae pars... intulerat... ea... persolvit, render that part which, etc.: see § 307. b. n. (200. b. n.); cf. B. 251. 4; G. 620; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.

10 19 princeps poenas persolvit, was the first to pay the penalty: § 290 (191); B. 239; H. 497. 3 (442. n.); H-B. 243; referring to the complete overthrow of the rest later. Punishment was regarded among the ancients, not as suffering to be inflicted, but as of the nature of a fine or penalty to be paid; hence sumere, capere, to inflict, and dare or solvere, to suffer.

In 1862 numerous remains were buried in two trenches were discovered near this spot, possibly of those slain in this battle.

11 1 inuirlas, wrongs, not simply damage, as the word came to mean afterwards. From Cæsar's point of view, an offensive war against Rome is necessarily wrong.

11 2 soceri: L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia (Shakespeare's Calpurnia), and consul of the present year (see end of ch. 6). — legatum: notice how carefully titles are given, a matter of military and social etiquette; cf. consulem, 10 15.

11 4 Chap. 13. reliquas: the emphasis on this word displaces the connective ut, which would naturally stand first in its clause.

11 5 consequi, overtake (hence the frequent meaning acquire). — pontem... faciendum curat, has a bridge made: § 500. 4 (294. d'); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. n.2); H-B. 612. iii. — pontem: see chapter on military affairs, vii.

11 7 cum... intellegere: § 546 (323, 325); B. 288. 1. b; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525; cf. notes on 4 12, 6 14, 7 17. Here cum may be translated when, but the clause gives the state of mind of the
Helvetii as the main feature of the situation, and really expresses no time at all, but circumstance only, hence the subjunctive.—id: object of fecisse.

11 8 diebus XX, in the course of twenty days: § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439.—ut . . . transient: this clause is in app. with id, but, as it is through that app. the object of fecisse, it takes the result construction just as if it depended immediately on the verb of effecting; cf. note on § 17; and see § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. n.

11 9 legatos: a participle of lego (depute), used as a noun; hence, diplomatically envoy or ambassador, and in military affairs lieutenant.

11 10 Divico: now an old man, since the battle in which he was commander took place forty-nine years before. It was, of course, a piece of arrogance to send him.

11 12 si pacem, etc.: Direct,—

Si pacem p. R. cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos tu, Caesar, constitueris atque esse volueris (or Caesar constituerit . . . voluerit); sin bello . . . perseverabis, reminiscere et veteris in commodi p. R. et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ei qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non possent, noli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribuere, aut nos despicere; nos ita patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtute contenderemus (contendamus) quam dolo aut insidiis niteremur (niamur). Quae re noli committere ut is locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate . . . nomen capit aut memoriam prodat.

This discourse, as well as Caesar's answer, is confused by a partial identification of Caesar and the Roman people. Hence, many of the forms might be either third person as referring to the Roman people, or second or first as addressed to Caesar, or spoken by him.

*The indirect discourse is found in almost all languages, and each one has its own methods of change from the direct. In English it is regularly introduced by that. This word, however, is often omitted, in which case only the persons and the tenses are changed to fit the new relations. Dependent clauses keep their connectives, but change, like others, their persons and tenses. In long passages, if that is omitted, parenthetical phrases are frequently introduced to keep the connection of the thought, like "he said," "he asked," "he urged," "he begged." The passage here may be translated: "If the Roman people would make peace, etc., [that] the Helvetii would go . . . and remain where Caesar should settle them and desire them to be; but if they (the Roman people) should persist in pursuing them, etc., let him remember [he said] (or he begged him to remember), etc. As to the fact that (because) he had attacked, etc., he should
not ascribe it, etc., or despise them (the Helvetians). [That] they had [he said] been taught rather to contend, etc. Let him therefore not allow that place... to be,” etc. So in 12 8, num... posse, “could they, he asked.”

11 13 in eam partem... ubi, to whatever part, i.e. of Gaul. They were not, however, to be turned back from their migration.

11 15 bello: note the emphatic position as opposed to emphatic pacem, l. 12. — reminisceretur, subjv. for inv. of the dir.: he should remember, or let him remember.

11 16 incommodi, disaster (lit. inconvenience), a euphemism: cf. “the late unpleasantness” for our Civil War. For the government of the gen., see § 350. c (219); B. 206. 2; G. 376; H. 454 (466. ii); H-B. 350.

11 17 quod: conj., as to the fact that; § 572. a (333. a); B. 299. 2; G. 525. 2; H. 588. 3. n. (516. ii, 2, n.); H-B. 552. 2. — pagum: the Tigurini.

11 18 suis, to their people: § 302. d (190. a); B. 236. 1; G. 204. n.1; H. 494. 1 (441. 1); H-B. 250. 2. a.

11 19 ne tribueret, he should not ascribe it: cf. reminisceretur, l. 15.

11 21 contedere, niterentur: subjv. of result. — dolo, craft; insidiis, ambuscade. For these ablatives, see § 431 (254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. n.6; H. 476. 3 (425. ii, 1, n.); H-B. 438. 1.

11 22 ne committeret ut, etc.: § 568. n.1 (332. e); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 566. 1 (498. ii, n.3). — ubi constitissent, where they had taken their stand.

12 1 Chap. 14. eo sibi, etc.: Direct,—

Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii com-
memoraverunt (or vos commemorastis) memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero,
quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si... sibi conscius fuisset,
non fuit difficilis cavere; sed eo deceptus est, quod neque commissum a se
intellegebat qua re timeret, neque sine causa timendum putabant. Quod si...
oblivisci velit (velim), num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod me invito
iter... temptastis, quod Haeduos, ... vexastis, memoriam deponere posset
(possum)? Quod vestra victoria... gloriamini, quodque tam diu vos
impune iniurias tulisse admiramini, eodem pertinent. Conserunt enim di
immortales quo gravius homines... doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci
volunt... his... impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides
a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea quae pollicemini [vos] facturos intellegam, et
si Haeduis de iniuris quas... intelistis... satisfacietis [ego], vobiscum
pacem faciam.

12 1 eo (cf. note on quo minus, l. 3) minus... dari, he had all the
less hesitation.— dubitationis: § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 2; G. 369;
H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.
123 eo gravior . . . quo minus, he was the more incensed . . . in that . . . not, etc.: § 414. a (106. c, 250. r.); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424 and a.

124 qui si . . . fuisse, now if they (the Roman people) had been.

125 non fuisse (for fuit of dir. disc.): translate as if futurum fuisse, it would not have been; and see § 437. a (264. b, 308 d. n.); B. 271. i. b, 322. b; G. 597. 3 (a); H. 525. 2, 583 (476. 5, 511. i. n.8); H-B. 582. 3. a. n.2—eo deceptum [esse], they had been deceived by this.

---


126 quare timeret = propter quod, with quicquam for its understood antecedent. The clause stands as subject of commissum [esse], which in turn depends on intellegent: because they (the Roman people) did not know they had done anything to cause them to fear.

127 quod si . . . vellet, but if they (or he) should consent to forget, etc.: § 397. a (240. b); B. 185. 2; G. 333. 1, 610. r.1; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); H-B. 388. a.—contumeliae: for construction, cf. incommodi, 11 16.

128 num . . . posse, could they (or he), he asked, etc.: § 586 (338); B. 315. 2; G. 651. r.1; H. 642. 2 (523. ii. 2); H-B. 591. a. The infin. is used because the question is not a real one expecting an answer, but a rhetorical one asked for effect, and implying its own answer. Such questions are treated in indir. disc. as declarative sentences.—iniuriarum depends on memoriam below.
12 9 eo invito, against his will; we should expect se, referring to the
subject of posse, but Cæsar’s mind wavers between himself and the Roman
people, so that the pronoun does not exactly refer to the subject.
12 10 quod . . . vexassent is a clause of fact, properly indic.: § 572
(333); B. 286; G. 525; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555; it is subjv. by indir. disc.
12 11 quod: cf. note on quod, 11 17.—sua: i.e. the Helvetians; so
se tulisse, that they had committed.—quod . . . admirarentur: the two
quod clauses are used as the subject of pertinere, as for their boasting,
etc., and as for their wondering, etc., it tended in the same direction; i.e. it
all belonged together in the divine purpose of exalting them expressly to
make the fall more marked. “Divico had not said anything in the way of
direct boasting. This eloquent passage was perhaps an answer to his manner,
or to the fact that he was the same Divico who had slain Lucius Cassius.”
12 13 consuesse: present in force; § 205. N. 2 (143. c. N.); B. 262. a; G.
175. 5; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.
12 14 quo: cf. note on 7 15.
12 15 quos . . . his, to grant an interval of prosperity and longer im-
propriety to those whom they wish to punish for their guilt; the relative
clause, as usual, preceding: § 683. 2. n. (201. c); G. 620; H. 683. 2. n.
(572. ii. N.); H-B. 284. 5. Observe the change to primary tenses, when
the language of Cæsar expresses a general truth.
12 18 cum, though: § 549 (326); B. 309; G. 587; H. 598 (515. iii);
H-B. 526. — sibi, to him, Cæsar.
12 19 facturos [esse]: sc. eos.—Hæduis: dat. after satisfaciant
supplied from the next clause, pay damages.
12 20 ipsis (the Hædui): dat. after intulerint.
12 22 Write Divico’s reply in dir. disc.
12 24 testem: another allusion to the victory over Cassius.
13 2 CHAP. 15. equitatum. Who made up the cavalry? See chapter
on military affairs, 1. 2.
13 4 coactum habebat, lit. had collected, more strictly held (had in
hand) after being collected: § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3
(388. 1. N.); H-B. 605. 5.—videant: subjv. of purpose.
13 5 faciant: subjv. of indir. quest., qua being interrog.—cupidius, too
eagerly: § 291. a (93. a); B. 240. 1; G. 297. 2; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B.
241. 2.—novissimum agmen, the rear; agmen is the army in line of march
(ago), and its newest part is that which comes along last. See chapter on
military affairs, vii.
13 6 alieno loco, on unfavorable ground; so suo would be favorable (cf.
“one’s own ground”). For construction, see § 429. 1 (258. f. 1); B. 228. 1. b;
G. 385. N. 1; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436.
The Helvetian War.

13 e 8 equitibus: abl. of means.
13 e 10 novissimo agmine (loc. abl.), at their rear.—proelio: abl. of manner or means.
13 e 12 satis habebat, held it sufficient.—hostem...prohibere: in a kind of pred. agreement with satis, as object of habebat.—rapinis: § 400 (243); B. 214. 2; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 2.
13 e 13 ita...uti, in such a way that (correlative).—dies: cf. with diebus, 11 8, and note the difference between the acc. and the abl. of time.
13 e 15 quinis aut senis: distributives, implying that this was the constant or average daily distance between the two armies. They apparently marched along the Saône, in the direction of Châlon. Their exact route from the Saône towards Autun is uncertain. The country here is very irregular and broken; so that it was impossible for Cæsar to get any advantage by a rapid march or by an attack on the Helvetic rear. He consequently followed them, watching his chance.—milibus: § 406 (247); B. 217; G. 296; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. d.
13 e 17 CHAP. 16. Haeduos frumentum, demanded corn of the Haeduui: § 396 (239. c); B. 178. 1. a; G. 339; H. 411 (374); H-B. 393.
13 e 18 essent pollliciti: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc., which (he said) they had promised.—flagitare: histor. infin.; § 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595. Notice that this construction, like the imperfect tense, only describes a situation, and never advances the narrative. The word expresses an earnest and repeated demand accompanied with reproaches.—frigora, the cold seasons, or spells of cold; not the cold in general. The climate of Gaul in Cæsar's day was much colder than that of France now. The change has come from clearing away the forests and draining the marshes, which then covered much of the country.
13 e 20 frumenta: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder (pabuli) was scarce because Cæsar was following in the path of the Helvetians, whose thousands of cattle had almost swept the country bare.—ne...quidem, not even: § 322. f. (151. c); B. 347. 1; G. 448. 2; H. 569. iii. 2.
13 e 22 frumento: abl. after uti.—flumine: § 429. a (258. g); B. 218. 9; but G. 389; H. 476 (420. 1. 3); H-B. 426.—navibus: § 409 (248. c. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423.—propterea...quod: see 1 6.
13 e 23 ab Arari: i.e. towards the valley of the Loire, westerly, but by what road is unknown.
13 e 24 diem: acc. expressing duration of time.—ducere: histor. infin.
13 e 25 conferri, etc. [frumentum]: a climax. They said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was already at hand.
14 1 quo die: note the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, but do not translate it; see § 307. a (200. a); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.
14 2 metiri, serve; see chapter on military affairs, iv. f.
14 4 Diviciaco et Lisco: abl. in apposition with principibus. — summo magistratui præerat, held the chief office, of which the Celtic title was guerg breth, "executor of judgment," represented in Latin by vergobretus.
14 6 in suos, over his people.
14 7 posset: sc. frumentum. For the subjv., see § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.
14 8 propinquis, with the enemy so near: not attribute, but predicate; an abl. abs.
15 1 sublevetur: cf. essent polluciti, 13 18, and note; also sit destinatus just below; § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 508. 3; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. a.
15 4 Ch. 17. quod: sc. id, object of proponit.
15 5 esse non nullos, etc.: Direct, —
Sunt non nulli quorum auctoritas ... valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hi ... multitudinem deterrent ne frumentum conferant quod debent: præstat, si iam principatum ... obtinere non possunt, Gallorum ... imperia ... perferre; neque dubitant quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romanis, ... libertatem sint erupturi. Ab eisdem vestra (or Romanorum) consilia quaeque in castris gerantur (geruntur) hostibus enuntiantur; hi a me coerceri non possunt. Quin etiam, quod necessario ... coactus Caesari (tibi) enuntiavi, intellego ... quanto id cum periculo fecerim, et ob eam causam quam diu potui tacui.
15 6 privatim plus possint, have more power in private station: see note on 3 20.
15 7 improba oratione, reckless talk.
15 8 ne ... conferant, from bringing: § 558. b (331. e. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 596. 2 (505. ii); H-B. 502. 3. b.
15 11 neque dubitare quin: § 537. a (319. a); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 2. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b. — superaverint: perf. subjv. — una: an adv.
15 12 Haeduis: dat.; § 558 (229); B. 188. 2. d; G. 347; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — sint erupturi: the first periphrastic conjugation. It almost equals eripiant, but emphasizes the future intention of the Romans.
15 14 a se: i.e. by Liscus, as chief magistrate. — quod ... enuntiarit: cf. 11 17, 12 11, and notes.
15 15 caactus, on compulsion (lit. being forced).
The Helvetic War.

15.16 quanto...fecerit: cf. quas...faciant, 13.5 and note.—id: i.e. quod...enuntiarit.

15.19 Chap. 18. pluribus praesentibus, in the presence of many; observe that the abl. abs. will rarely bear a literal translation, but its force must be brought out in various ways.

15.20 iactari, banded about (frequentative of iacio).

15.21 Liscum retinet, [but] keeps Liscus. The omission of the conj. (asyndenton) is very common in Cæsar’s rapid narrative.—ex solo, from him in private.

15.22 secreto (from secerno), each by himself.

15.23 esse vera (sc. haec), that the facts are these.—ipsum esse Dum-norigem, etc.: Direct,—

Ipse est Dumnorix...cupidus rerum novarum. Compluris annos portoria...redemp ta habet...quod illo licente contra liceri audet nemo. His rebus et suam rem...auxit et facultatis...comparavit; magnum numerum equitatus...alit et circum se habet, neque solum domi sed etiam apud...civitatis largiter potest; atque...matrem...conlocavit, ipse...uxorem habet, sororem...conlocavit. Favet et cupid Helvetiis...edit...Caesarem...quod...frater...est restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem...venit; imperio populi Romani...de ea quam habet gratia, desperat.

15.24 summa audacia, [a man] of the utmost boldness. The general word is rarely, as here, omitted after a proper name with an abl. of quality.

15.25 rerum novarum: the regular expression for a change of government, revolution, or coup d’état. Such overturnings seem to have been frequent in Gaul.—portoria, customs dues or tolls, levied at the frontier; collected, apparently, as by the Romans, through publicani, who bid for the contract at public auction and made what they could above the contract price. The Hædui controlled at least a part of the Saône, which was a water-way into the centre of Gaul. It was customary among the ancients to levy tolls or blackmail on goods passing through their territories.

16.1 redempta: agreeing with vectigalia, and taken with habere, had bought in (cf. 8.9, 13.4).

16.2 illo licente, when he bid: see note on 15.19.

16.4 ad largiendum, for bribery, to buy political support: § 506 (300); B. 338. 3; G. 432; H. 628 (541. iii. N. 4); H-B. 612. iii.

16.7 causa, for the sake: as always when thus following a gen.—potentiae, power, as an attribute of the person; potestas is power to do anything; facultas, opportunity; imperium, military authority.

16.8 Biturigibus: near the modern Bourges, west of the Hædui.
uxorem: the daughter of Orgetorix; see 3 22. — ex matre, on the mother's side (a half-sister).

nuptum: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618; see Vocab. under conlocare.

Helvetii: dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

suo nomine, on his own account: a mercantile phrase applying to business debts, etc.

si quid accidat: a mild phrase, in case of any disaster; future less vivid protasis with venire as apodosis; § 589 (337); B. 319. B; G. 658; H. 646 (527. ii); cf. H-B. 580.

gominendi: gerund or gerundive? See 3 11 and note.

imperio (abl. of time and cause), under the rule.

quod . . . factum, in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish fought the other day. The idea expressed in English by whereas, as to the fact that, and the like is regularly expressed in Latin by a quod-clause with the indic., almost independent of the rest of the sentence; cf. 11 17, 12 11, 15 14, and notes.

initium fugae: it is implied that this action was treacherous.

auxilio Caesari: § 382. 1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 360 and b.

Chap. 19. res, facts; see note on 4 4. — accederent: § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. b; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525. This word is used as a kind of pass. of addo. — quod . . . traduxisset, the fact that (as he learned) he had led, etc. The verbs in these quod-clauses are in the subjv. on the principle of implied or informal indir. disc.; cf. 13 18, 15 1, and notes.

inter eos: i.e. the Helvetii and Sequani. — dandos: cf. pontem faciendum curat, 11 5 and note.

iniussu suo, etc., without his authority or that of the state. For form, see § 94. c (71. b); B. 57. 1; G. 70. A; H. 143. 1 (134); H-B. 106. 1; here suo is equivalent to a genitive.


causae: gen. depending on satis, which is used as a noun. — in eum . . . animadverteret, should proceed against or punish him (see Vocab.): a clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591 (503); cf. H-B. 521. 1.

quod . . . cognoverat, that he well knew, etc. (the present inceptive, cognosco, having the meaning to learn). This clause, in apposition with unum (only one thing), might in English be introduced by some such word as namely.
17.4 *studium*, *attachment*, as a partisan.

17.5 *voluntatem*, *good will*, as a friend. Note the absence of connectives in vivid narration.

17.6 *eius*: i.e. of Dumnorix. — *supplicio*, *punishment* or *execution*. This word is derived from the adj. *supplex*, down-bent, signifying on the bended knee; i.e. either as a supplicant for mercy, or, as here, to receive the blow of the executioner.

17.7 *prima quam conaretur*, before he should attempt: § 556. b (327); B. 292. 1. a; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. a.

17.10 *cui*, etc.: an easier construction would be *cuius fidei omnes res credebatur*. — *summam*. . . . *fidem*, full confidence.

17.11 *eo*: i.e. Diviciacus. — *commonfacit*, reminds or notifies (see Vocab.).

17.12 *ipse*: i.e. Diviciacus.

17.13 *apud se*, *in his* (Cæsar's) *presence*.

17.14 *ut . . . statuat*: cf. note on 6.10. — *offensione animi*, displeasure (of Diviciacus); *ipse*, which follows, refers to Cæsar: the gist of the request is in *sine eius offensione*. Cæsar hopes, in what steps he takes or orders to be taken against Dumnorix, not to incur the resentment of his brother.

17.17 Chap. 20. *complexus*: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees or falls at his feet.

17.18 *ne quid gravius* (a common euphemistic phrase), *no severe measures*. Notice that *gravius* is an adj., modifying *quid* (*anything*), a *subst.* — *scire se*, etc.: Direct, —

*Scio haece esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ego doloris capiit, prop-terea quod, cum ego gratia plurimum [possem] . . . ille minimum . . . posset, per me crevit; quibus opibus . . . paene ad perniciem meam utitur. Ego tamen et amore . . . commoveor. Quod si quid ei a te acciderit, cum ego hunc locum . . . apud te teneam (teneo), nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum; qua ex re . . . totius Galliae animi a me averteretur.*

17.19 *plus doloris*: except as an adv., this comparative is mostly used, as here, with the part. gen.

17.20 *ipse, se, suam, sese*: all refer to Diviciacus; *ille* to Dumnorix, which is also the subject of *crevisset* and *uteretur*.

17.22 *opibus ac nervis, sineus of power*, after *uteretur*: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

17.23 *gratiam*, as well as *perniciem*, takes *suam*.

17.24 *amore fraterno, love to his brother*: § 348. a (217. a); B. 353. 5. b; H. 439. 3 (395. n. 3); H-B. 354. d.

17.25 *si quid accidisset* (a euphemism; cf. *incommodi, 11.16* and note): pluperf. representing fut. perf. indic. (*acciderit*) of the direct by sequence
of tenses; a future condition; § 516. f (307. f); B. 319. B; G. 656, 657; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 580. b and n.—ei: i.e. Dumnorix.

18 1 futurum [esse] uti . . . averterentur, the hearts of all the Gauls would be turned from him: periphrastic fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3, 288. f); B. 115, 270. 3; G. 248; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. c. — Cf. 8 18.

18 4 rogat [ur] . . . faciat: § 565. a (331. f. r.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. r.2; H. 565. 4 (499. 2).

18 5 tanti, of so great account: § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380. 1; H. 448. 4 (405); H-B. 356. 1.

18 6 eius . . . precibus, in deference to his wish and prayers.—condonet (subjv. of result): this word means to give up a right to some one; here the just resentment of Caesar was given up to Diviciacus.

18 8 reprehendat: why subjv.? cf. 15 16. Note the same construction in the next clause.

18 10 praeterita, things bygone, the past.

18 11 custodes: i.e. spies.

18 15 Chap. 21. qualis esset, etc.: indir. quest. after cognoscerent.—natura, character.—qualis . . . ascensus: i.e. what kind of an ascent there was at various points of its circuit.—qui cognoscerent: § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2; the antecedent of qui is eos, quosdam, or some such word, to be supplied as object of misit, he sent men to ascertain. Such a relative may in Latin always imply its own antecedent, as in English: the relatives whoever and what; cf. qui . . . appellantur, l 2 and note.

18 16 facilem: sc. ascensum.—de tertia vigilia: cf. 10 7 and note.

18 17 priō praetōre, with powers of praetor. The praetor, like the consul, held the imperium or power to command; a legatus, not possessing this in his own right, might be temporarily invested with it by his commander. Labienus, and perhaps others of Caesar’s lieutenants, had the imperium in their own right, by special grant.

18 18 ductibus: a kind of predicate apposition; as guides; § 284 (185. a); B. 168; G. 325; H-B. 319. i.—qui . . . cognoverant: i.e. who had been of the reconnoitering party.

18 19 consili: a predicate gen. after quid sit; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. f; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340. Such genitives are not rare in Caesar, but are probably more or less colloquial.—sit: cf. reprehendat, l 8, above.

18 20 de quarta vigilia: about 2 A.M., the sun at this season rising here about four o’clock.

18 22 rei: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. l.2); H-B. 354.
The Helvetic War.

18. 23. Sulla, Crassi: Sulla, the dictator, had conducted the war against Mithridates about thirty years before (b.c. 88–84), and Crassus that against Spartacus some years later (b.c. 71). — in: sc. exercitu.

19. 1. Chap. 22. teneretur: subj. after cum, describing the situation; cf. 4 12, 6 14, 7 17, and notes.

19. 2. ipse: Cæsar.

19. 3. passibus: abl. of degree of difference after abesset; § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424; not after longius; § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r. 4; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. n. 2); cf. H-B. 416. d.

19. 4. aut Labieni: after adventus and coordinate with ipsius. — equo admissis, at full speed (with reins thrown loose).

19. 6. armis: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans; see Figs. 11, 28, 65, 75, 95, etc.

19. 7. insignibus: i.e. devices on shields and helmets, — stags’ horns, eagles’ plumes, etc.; see Fig. 11. The inference from this report would be that Labienus and his force had been cut to pieces, and Cæsar must expect an attack at once. This accounts for his next movement, which was to fall back and wait in line of battle, while Labienus was vainly expecting him.

19. 8. ut, as.

19. 9. ne . . . committeret . . . essent: subject of erat praecipuum; § 566 (331. l); B. 295. 1.

19. 10. ut . . . fieret, in order that the attack might be made on all sides at once: a purpose clause.

19. 11. monte occupato, etc., having seized the height, continued to look out for our men. Observe how the imperfects exspectabat and abstinencebat describe the situation; see note on 3 5.

19. 12. molto die: abl. of time, late in the day. — denique, not till: see Vocab.

20. 2. quod non vidisset, what he had not seen; sc. id, object of renuntiasse. — pro viso, as if seen: viso is used here as a noun. — quo, sc. eodem, at the same interval as usual, i.e. five or six miles; see 13 15.

20. 3. milia: acc. of extent; § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

20. 5. Chap. 23. diei: § 359. b (214. g); B. 201. 3. a; G. 360; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. c; making postridie more formal and precise. — omnino, in all (i.e. only).

20. 6. cum, within which, a common Latin idiom. — metiri: cf. 14 2 and note. — Biblacte, the modern Mont Beuvray, a considerable hill, about ten miles west of Autun (Augustodunum). The place afterwards became a Roman colony, and contains numerous Roman remains.
Notes: Caesar.

20 8 milibus: cf. 19 3 and note.—rei frumentariae (dat.), the supply of corn.
20 9 prospiciendum: impers.; sc. esse.—itaque: words in italics are conjectural readings.—avertit: towards the north, as the Helvetii were travelling westward to reach the Loire.
20 10 fugitivos, runaways, i.e. fugitive slaves.
20 11 decurionis: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 2.
20 12 existimarent: the subjv. is here used idiomatically because Caesar was not sure of the real reason; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. a.
20 13 eo magis, all the more: cf. note on 2 17.—superioribus, etc.: concessive, i.e. though they had gained an advantageous position, still they did not attack the Helvetii.
20 14 commississent: see note on existimarent above, 1. 12.—eo quod, etc., for this reason, because they felt sure that they (the Romans) could be cut off from their supplies; eo is abl. of cause, not different in sense from eo (magis) above, though its origin is different.—re: abl. of separation.
20 15 itinere converso: i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, their vain confidence led them to return and give Caesar the chance that he had been waiting for.
20 18 Chap. 24. 1d: governed by animum advertit treated as an active compound verb. The tense of the verb is perfect, as usual after postquam; cf. note on arbitrati sunt, 4 17.
20 19 sustineret: subjv. of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.
20 20 ipse: Caesar himself as opposed to the cavalry, which he had sent elsewhere.—medio: see Vocab. and cf. § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. r.2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. n.1); H-B. 244. —triplicem aciem: see chapter on military affairs, VII.
20 21 legionum: gen. of material; § 344 (214. 5); B. 197; H-B. 349. The four veteran legions stood side by side, each in three lines; see plan, Fig. 16.
20 22 summò: cf. note on medio, 1. 20.—proxime: these new legions last raised (cf. 8 23) were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle, and so they were set to guard the camp.
20 23 auxilia: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 3.—[ac totum, etc.]: this clause may well be read in this connection, though many editors omit it; cf. note on eorum, 9 17. The force of ac is and thus; see Vocab.
20 24 sarcinas: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 6 and IV. 4, and Fig. 14. In a regular battle these were left behind in camp. So here, they were deposited in one spot, which was to be the site of the camp when made
(muniri, 21 9) by the less trustworthy troops. Nothing is said of the baggage train (impedimenta), but it probably was sent on towards Bibracte.

21 1 cum: i.e. the spot chosen (locum, 20 24). — his: i.e. the soldiers last mentioned. — superiore: i.e. those who were at the top of the hill. — constiterant, were stationed; cf. § 476 (279. 6); B. 262. a; G. 241. 3. r.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

21 2 cum omnibus suis carris, etc.: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the habit of these peoples to go to battle with their families and their carts for encouragement as well as for defence.

21 3 confertissima acie . . . phalange facta: see introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

21 4 reiecto, etc.: the ancient cavalry were no match for any considerable number of foot-soldiers, and hence were not depended upon for the main engagement. They opened the fight, but were expected to flee as soon as the foot advanced.

22 1 Chap. 25. suo [equo remoto], etc.: i.e. his own and those of the officers and staff. This was often done before an engagement (cf. Sall. Cat. 59). Caesar is reported to have said to his men, “I will mount again when the enemy run.” — omnium: notice that the poss. gen. and the poss. adj. have the same sense, and so may be coördinated; cf. 19 4 and note.

22 4 pilis: see chapter on military affairs, iv. d and Fig. 15.

22 6 Gallis . . . impedimento: dat. of service and of person affected; § 382. 1. N. 1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and b.

22 7 pluribus, several.

22 8 inflexisset: subjv. with cum causal; cf. prae-
starent, 15. — sinistra impedita, since the left hand was hampered, which carried the shield.

22 9 multi ut, so that in the case of many, multi being placed first for emphasis.

22 12 mons: see battle plan, Fig. 16. — eo: an adv. — mille: acc. of distance.

22 13 capto monte, etc.: i.e. after the Helvetii had gained the mountain and the Romans were going up to attack them.

22 14 agmen claudebant, brought up their rear. The Boii or Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had been in front of the Helvetian line of march,
and were consequently in the rear when they faced round to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (latere aperto) as they came on the field from the road (hence ex itinere).

22 16 circumvenire: sc. coeperunt.
22 18 conversa signa . . . intulerunt, faced about (lit. bore their reversed ensigns upon the enemy), and charged in two divisions. The division stood not back to back, but at an angle, facing outward,—the two front lines facing forward, while the third met the flank attack of the new-comers (venientis), i.e. the Boii and Tulingi. The phrase conversa signa refers only to the movement of the third line, while intulerunt denotes the action of the entire army. The exact position of this battle is uncertain. It is usually placed at a point between Chides and Luzy, near the river Alène, and about ten miles south of Mont Beuvray.

23 1 Chap. 26. ancipiti: i.e. facing in both directions.—pugnatum est: impers. expressions should not be translated literally; here, a contest went on, the fighting continued, or something of the kind.
23 3 alteri: the Helvetians; alteri: the Boii, etc.
23 4 nam: in reference to the previous sentence; i.e. they did not flee, but retired in good order, for, etc.
23 5 proelio: abl. of time.—ab hora septima: i.e. from a little past 1 P.M.; sunset was about eight, so that each of the twelve daylight hours was about an hour and a quarter of our time. In the Roman reckoning an hour was one-twelfth of the time, whether long or short, between sunrise and sunset, and varied from about forty-five minutes to an hour and a quarter.—pugnatum sit: cf. note on l. 1. For mood, cf. sint, 12 18.
24 1 aversum hostem, a fleeting enemy.—ad multam noctem, till late in the night.
24 2 pro vallo, as a barricade.
24 3 e loco superiore, from vantage-ground, i.e. the height of the carts, etc.
24 4 coniciebant, subiciebant, hurled (from above), thrust (from below). For the form of these words, see § 6. d (11. b. 2); B. 9. 3; H. 58. 6 (36. 4); M-B. 30. 1. — carros redasque: the former a two-wheeled cart, the latter a four-wheeled wagon. See Fig. 55.
24 5 mataras ac tragulas: these were peculiar forms of pike or lance used by the western nations of Europe, not yet certainly identified.
24 6 impedimentis castrisque: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
24 7 potiti sunt: notice the use of tenses in the above passage. The narrative proceeds as far as pugnatum est (histor. perfect), then, as if
answering a question why the fight continued thus, Cæsar gives a description of the situation with pluperfect and imperfects. "The Gauls had made a rampart of their carts and from this they kept discharging missiles and using other means of defence." Then the narrative is resumed in the clause with potuti sunt: cf. note on 3 5.—captus est: observe that the agreement is with the nearer subject; § 317. c (205. d); B. 255. 2; G. 285. 1; H. 392 (463. 1); H-B. 329. 2.

24 10 Lingonium: i.e. the southern part of Champagne, towards the north; see map of Gaul, Fig. 1. The chief town of that region, now Langres, is about ninety miles from Mont Beuvray. It is very likely, however, that they reached the Lingones farther west. Napoleon III puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

24 11 propter, etc.: gives the reason of morati. —cum . . . potuissent: here the description of the situation (see notes on 6 14, 7 17, 11 7) is so clearly the cause of the main action that we may translate cum since and refer the subjv. to cum causal (cf. cum praestarent, 2 15; cum inflexisset, 22 8).

24 13 Lingonas: Greek form of the acc. common in these names of tribes; § 81, 82 (63. f, 64); B. 47. 3; G. 66. 4; H. 109. 5 (68); cf. H-B. 95.

24 14 qui si iuvissent, for if they should, etc.; the direct would be si iuvisset. —se, etc. = se (Lingonas) eodem loco habiturum (esse) quo Helvetios (haberet).

24 20 Chap. 27. 608: i.e. Helvetios.

24 21 essent: subjv. of integral part or attraction; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539. —iussisset: i.e. Cæsar; this change of subject, though unusual in Latin, is justified by the mention of eum in l. 18.

24 22 qui . . . perfugissent: i.e. fugitive slaves." Cæsar in his demand would say qui perfugerunt, but the subjv. is used in the indir. form; § 592. 2 (341. c); B. 323; G. 663. 2; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. a.

24 24 conquiruntur, conferuntur: to express the pass. it is often better in English to use the act. form, while they were hunting these up, etc.; the present tense is regular with dum; § 556 (276. c); B. 293. 1; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4 (467. 4); H-B. 559.

24 25 Verbigenus: from the parts between Berne and Lucerne.

24 26 perterriti: agreeing with the persons referred to in milia.—ne armis, etc.: i.e. either in sheer desperation or in the hope of escape. Note that after verbs of fearing ne is translated by that or lest.

25 2 occultari, be hid from Cæsar; ignorari, unknown to anybody.

25 3 existimarent: the supposed reason of the Helvetii, hence the subjv.; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. a; cf. 20 19 and note.

25 4 contenderunt ad, made (rapidly) for.
Notes: Caesar.

255 Chap. 28. quod: accustom yourself to the common use of the relative, where our idiom expects a demonstrative or personal. — quorum: the antecedent is his (dat.) following imperavit, the dir. object of which is uti reducerent.

256 sibi: dat. of reference; § 378 (235. b); B. 188. i. n.; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. n.º); H-B. 370. — purgati: perfect participle used as an adj.; § 495 (291. b); B. 337. 2; G. 250. r.º; H. 640. 3 (550. n.º); H-B. 320. iii.

257 reductos... habuit: i.e. he massacred them all.

258 in deditionem accepit: by this act they became formally the subjects of the Republic, and were entitled to its protection, as well as required to obey its requisitions and pay tribute.

2511 reverti, turn back (from a march or journey; redire, go back, from a place of rest). — frugibus: grain and other field produce.

2512 tolerarent: best regarded as a purpose clause like, "nothing [for] to eat," — § 531. 2 (317), — but referred by many grammarians to the "characteristic" use of the relative; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 517. 2 and a. The two constructions, having grown up side by side in Latin, were very often confounded.

2513 ipsos: the Helvetians and their allies as opposed to the others who were to provide food.

2514 ea ratione, with this view.

2518 Allobrogibus: these were within the Province, but the Latin often adds an explanatory word by means of que. The Helvetii were thus in the Roman manner stationed as a kind of colony on the frontier towards Germany. The wisdom of the Romans in the defence of their Empire is not less remarkable than their prowess in war.

2519 petentibus Haeduibus, to the Heduai, at their request: dat. after concessit, of which the object is ut Boios conlocarent. The Heduai were anxious for this accession to their strength because they were oppressed by the Sequani (cf. 27 21 ff.). It will be remembered that the Boii were emigrating when they joined the Helvetians and had no proper home to return to. The Heduai gave them land between the Elaver and the Liger rivers, and they appear later in several parts of Gaul. Their prowess in war made them valuable allies.

261 parem... atque ipsi erant, equal with themselves: § 324. c (156. a. 4); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 508. 5 (451. 5); H-B. 307. 2. a.

263 Chap. 29. tabulae, tablets, of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called stilus. See Fig. 27.— litteris Graecis: not in the Greek language, but in Greek letters. These were probably learned from colonists at Marseilles, as the
Gauls had no alphabet of their own. The Druids made use of Greek letters (Bk. vi. ch. 14), but the Gauls in general seem to have been ignorant of them (Bk. v. ch. 48). Specimens of Gallic names on coins appear in the names Dubnorex, Diviciacos, Vercingetorix. See Fig. 29, Fig. 68.

265 ratio, an account: followed by the indir. quest. qui . . . exisset.
266 possent: not the subj. of indir. quest., but of characteristic; § 535. a (320. a); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 521. 1. a.

2610 ad milia XCII, about 92,000. — summa, the sum; fuerunt agreeing with the plur. predicate. Deducting the Boii, who were adopted by the Hœdui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives (to be sold as slaves), in this short campaign, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other non-combatants. The carnage seems extraordinary even under the conditions of ancient warfare. But, as in all battles, many more must have escaped than the record showed.

Campaign against Ariovistus. — The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hœdui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman Senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship to the Hœdui (ch. 11); and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (ch. 35), recognizing his claims on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar's consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

Reading References on the Campaign against Ariovistus.

Abbott's Cæsar, pp. 86-93.
Dodge's Cæsar, pp. 82-90.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 9.
Froude's Cæsar, pp. 231-238.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 36-46.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 4.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, pp. 38-44.
26 15 Chap. 30. gratulatum: § 509 (302); B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.

26 16 intellegere, etc.: Direct,—

Intellegimus nos, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisti (repeteriris), tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse; propterea quod ea consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquerunt, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum... iudicassent, reliquasque civitatis stipendiarias haberent.

26 17 populi Romani, against, etc. (obj. gen. after iniuriis).—ab his repetisset, had inflicted on them; see Vocab., and cf. 10 14-18.

26 19 eo consilio, with this design: explained by the purpose clause uti... haberent; § 531. 1. N.1 (317. a); G. 546. N.3; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. a.—florentissimis rebus: i.e. with no plea of necessity. Translate by a concessive clause.

26 21 domicilio, for habitation: dat. of service.

26 25 concilium totius Galliae: of course Cæsar had no authority either to allow or to prohibit a congress of independent Gaul. But, considering his power and ambition, the Gauls thought it best to secure his countenance (voluntate, not auctoritate) beforehand. They also had business that specially concerned him.

27 2 iure iurando... sanxerunt, ordained under oath [of secrecy]; the object is ne quis, etc.

27 3 enuntiaret: subjv. with ne, after sanxerunt, used as a verb of commanding; § 563. d (331. d); B. 295. 4; G. 546. 2; H. 565 (498. 1); H-B. 502. 3. a; cf. also 6 10 and note. — nisi quibus, etc., except (to those) to whom some commission should be assigned (pluperf. for fut. perf. in dir. disc.). For omission of the antecedent of quibus, cf. note on qui... appellatur, 1 2.

27 5 Chap. 31. eo concilio dimisso, when this assembly had been (held and) dissolved: i.e. after providing for the business now to be described. — idem (eidem): nom. plur.

27 7 secreto, apart.—in occulto, in a secret place. These words are probably genuine.

27 8 Caesari ad pedes, at Caesar’s feet. Caesari is dat. of reference; § 377 (235. a); B. 188. 1; G. 350. 1; H. 425. 4. N. (384. 4. N.3); H-B. 368.

27 9 non minus, etc.: sc. dixerunt: Direct,—

Non minus id contendimus et laboramus, ne ea quae dixerimus enuntiantur, quam uti ea quae volumus impetremus; propterea quod, si enuntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nos venturos videmus.
Campaign against Ariovistus.

279 id: in app. with ne... enuntiarentur.

2713 Galliae, etc.: Direct,—

Galliae totius factiones sunt duae; harum alterius principatum tenent Haedu, alterius Arverni. Hi cum... multos annos contenderent, factum est uti... Germani... arcesserentur. Horum primo... milia... transierunt; posteausquam agros... homines... adamarunt, traduci sunt plurès; nunc sunt in Gallia ad cxx milium numerum (more probably ad... milia numero). Cum his Haedu... armis contenderunt; magnam calamitatam pulsi acciperunt, omnem nobilitatem... amiserunt. Quibus proeliis... fracti, qui... plurimum ante... potuerant, coacti sunt... obsides dare, etc. Unus ego sum ex omni civitate... qui adduci non potuerim ut iurarem aut liberos meos obsides darem. Ob eam rem... profugi et Romam ad senatum veni... quod solus neque iure iurando neque obisdibus tenedar.

Sed peius victoribus Sequanis accidit... quod Ariovistus... consedit tertiamque partem agri... qui est optimus... occupavit, et nunc... deederetur ubet, propterea quod... milia hominum XXIII... venerunt, quibus locus ac sedes parentur (possibly parentur)... Paucis annis... omnes... pellentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transibunt;... neque enim conferendus est Gallicus cum Germanorum agro, neque haec consuetudo victum cum illa comparanda.

Ariovistus... ut semel... copias... vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbe... imperat, obsides... poscit, et... exempla cruciatusque: edit, si qua res non ad nutum... eius facta est; Homo est barbarus, francus; tennessee... non possunt eius imperia diutius sustineri... Nisi quid in Caesar... erit auxili, omnibus... idem est faciendum quod Helvetiae fecerunt, ut domo emigrent, alid domicilium... petant fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovistus-sint, non dubito quin.de omnibus... qui apud eum sint (sunt)... supplicium sumat. Caesar... deterre potest ne maius multitudo... traducatur Galliamque... potest defendere.

2718 Galliae totius: not to be taken literally, but referring to the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

2714 factiones duas: see note on 3 20. — alterius: notice that this word may mean the one as well as the other. It depends on which one you look at first.—principatum; the head.

2715 Arvernus: these inhabited the mountainous country southwest of the Haedu, the modern Auvergne. They had been conquered in B.C. 121, but not reduced to a province. Before their conquest they had been one of the most powerful tribes. Apparently in the earlier wars the Haedu had befriended the Roman people from antagonism to these rivals.
27 16 contenderent: translate as if pluperf.; § 471. b (277. b); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. 2); H-B. 485. — factum esse uti, _it came to pass that_, etc.

27 17 Sequani: these were the rivals of the Hædui on the north. — mercide: § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. 1.

27 19 copias (= opes), resources. — _feri ac barbari_: as to the condition of the Germans, see Introduction.

27 20 adamassent (=adamavissent): § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. — _tructos pluseris_ (Germanos) _tructos esse_.

27 22 clientis: the subject states of the Ambarri, Segusiavi, etc.

27 23 omnem...equitatum: of course an exaggeration; Diviciacus was himself a noble, probably a senator; while his brother Dumnorix was a commander of the Hæduan cavalry.

27 25 qui...potuissent, coactos esse, (they) who had once, etc., were compelled.

28 4 quo minus: following a verb of refusing; § 558. b (317. b. N.1); B. 295. 3; G. 547; H. 568. 8 (497. ii. 2); H-B. 502. 3. b; see also note on 7 15.

28 5 dicione: i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

28 6 potuerit: the same in dir. disc.; § 535. b (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. a and fn. The tense has been retained, as is usual in result clauses; see note on 9 18.

28 8 Romam...venisse: see note on 3 20. His application was not successful. See Bk. vi. ch. 12. — _postulatum_: cf. _gratulatum_, 26 15.

28 11 peius...accidisse, a worse fate had befallen. Observe that a misfortune is usually said _accidere_, as if it fell on one, while a good thing is said _evenire_. — _victoribus_: here used as an adv., as often.

28 12 Ariovistus: supposed to be the German word _Heerfürst_, "prince of the host."

28 13 tertiam partem: i.e. upper Alsace, a part of the German conquest of 1870. This was the same proportion of conquered land taken by the German invaders (Burgundians) in this very territory in the fifth century of the Christian era. Such "annexation" seems to have been the ancient common law of conquest (Liv. II. 41).

28 14 optimus: this district (Franche-Comté) is one of the most beautiful in France. — _nunc...iuberet_: the same thing was afterwards done by the Burgundians. — _aliera, a second_.

28 17 quibus...pararentur=to be provided with a place for habitation (subjv. of purpose). — _futurum esse uti_ (periphrastic fut.; cf. note on 18 1), _the result would be that_.

Notes: Caesar. [B. G.]
Campaign against Ariovistus.

28 19 neque enim introduces an explanation admitting no doubt: for you see, for you know, for of course.

28 20 Gallicum: sc. agrum. — hanc = nostram: § 297. a (102. a); B. 87; G. 305; H. 505 (450); H-B. 271. ii. a. N.; said with some feeling of superiority or contempt. The Gauls looked upon the Germans as savages.

28 22 ut . . . vicerit: for mood and tense, see dir. disc.; cf. tense of potuerit, l. 6, above.

28 23 Magetobrigam: somewhere a little northwest of Vesontio (Besançon).

28 25 exempla cruciatusque: a so-called hendiadys. The Latin likes to dwell on an idea by giving its parts separately; edere exempla means to use every known form of (something) on the victims; cruciatus edere would mean to employ tortures. The whole combines the two ideas.

28 27 barbarum, etc., rude, passionate, and hasty.

29 1 nisi, etc., unless they find some aid.

29 9 idem: in apposition with ut . . . experiantur; cf. 4 17, 11 8.

29 3 ut domo emigrent: i.e. to forsake their home.

29 5 haec: notice the emphasis, as if he said: "Why! if this very colloquy should be reported," etc.—dubitare: sc. se, i.e. Diviciacum.—quin . . . sumat: § 558. a (332. g. r.); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 594. ii (501. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 2. b; cf. note on poenas persolvit, 10 19.

29 7 auctoritate: i.e. his reputation and the fear it inspires.

29 9 Rhenum: acc. after trans in traducatur; § 395. N.2 (239. 2. b. N.2; B. 179. 3; G. 331. R.1; H. 406 (372); H-B. 386. a.

29 13 Chap. 32. unus, alone: § 134. a (94. a); cf. B. 66; G. 95. R.1 H. 175. N.1. This whole scene is illustrative of the Gallic character.

29 15 quae esset: indir. quest. after miratus; cf. 13 5, 15 16, 18 15.

29 16 respondere: histor. infin.; cf. flagitare, 13 18 and note.

29 19 hoc: we may translate, in this respect, but for the real construction compare hoc facility, 2 17. — hoc esse, etc.: Direct, —

Hoc est . . . gravior fortuna Sequanorum . . . quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri . . . audent; absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adsit, horrent, propter a quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas datur, Sequanis vero, qui . . . Ariovistum receperunt, quorum oppida . . . in postestate eius sunt, omnes cruciatus sunt perferendi.

29 20 ne . . . quidem: notice the position of these words before and after the emphatic word or phrase.

29 21 absentis (predicate), even when absent.

29 22 crudelitatem: object of horrenter; § 274. b. (177. c); B. 175. 2. b; G. 330. R.; H. 405. 1 (371. iii. N.1); H-B. 391. 1. — adset: § 524 (312); B. 307. 1. 2; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3 and a.
Notes: Caesar.

29 23 tamen, after all, whatever they might have to suffer. — facultas: on the force of this word, cf. note on potentiae, 16 7.

29 24 Sequani: dat. of apparent agent with perferendi; § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1; the Sequani must endure (changing the voice).

30 2 Chap. 33. sibi curae: dat. of service; § 382. 1 and N. 1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. a; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and b; cf. 22 6, 22 15.

30 3 et . . . et: construe after adductum, induced by both . . . and. — beneficio . . . auctioritate: the first refers to services which would inspire gratitude, the second to the prestige which would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

30 5 secundum, in accordance with (lit. following).

30 7 putaret: subjv. after qua re, which may be considered equal to propter quas — ut propter eas. — quod, because, or that. — Haeduos, subject of teneri below.

30 8 appellatos (pred.), who had been often called.

30 11 quod: relative; the antecedent is the preceding clause Haeduos . . . Sequanos.

30 14 periculorum: pred., agreeing with Germanos consuescere, etc., he saw it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine, etc.

30 15 sibi . . . temperaturas . . . quin . . . exirent, would refrain (check themselves) from going forth. — sibi: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346. 2; H. 426. 4 (385. i); H-B. 362.

30 16 ut, as; fecissent being subjv. as dependent on exirent; § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. n. 1. 1); H-B. 539. — Cimbi Teutonique: these German tribes had been crushed by Marius (b.c. 102, 101), after having been for several years a terror upon the Italian frontier.

30 17 exirent: § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); H-B. 502. 3. b.

30 18 [praesertim, etc.]: this clause makes good sense and may be translated.

30 19 Rhodanum — only the Rhone. — rebus: dat. following occurrenc- dum [sibī]; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376; possibilities which he thought must be met at once. In this clause two things are to be noticed: first, that the Latin regularly puts an antecedent which is in apposition with something preceding in the relative clause, e.g. “which kind,” not “a kind which”; and, second, that a verb which governs the dat. cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subject. In both these respects the form must be altered in translating to suit the English idiom.
Campaign against Arioquistus.

30.21 *ferendus*, etc.: in Latin the negative has an attraction for the main verb. We should say, “seemed unendurable,” connecting the negative with the adjective idea.

30.23 Chap. 34. *ut* ... *mitteret*: a purpose clause, subject of *placuit*.

30.24 *medium utriusque*, between the two.

30.25 *conloquio* (dat.), for a conference.—*velle*, etc., depends on the idea of saying in *postularent*. Give the direct words of Cæsar.

30.27 *si quid*, etc.: Direct, —

Si quid *mihi* a Caesarre opus esset, *ego* ad eum *venisset*; *si quid ille me *vult*, illum ad me *venire* oportet. [The first condition is contrary to fact; § 589. b (337. b); B. 321. B; G. 597. R. 4; H. 647 (527. iii); H-B. 581 and b. 1; cf. 12 4: the second is a simple present condition; § 589. a. 1 (337. a. 1); B. 319. B; G. 595. R. 1; H. 646 (527. i); cf. H-B. 536.] Praeterea *ego* neque ... in eas partis ... venire *audéo* quas Caesar *possideret*, neque exercitum ... in unum locum contrahere *possum*. *Mihi* autem *mirum* *videtur* quid in *mea* Gallia, quam bello *vici* (vicerim), aut Caesar aut omnino populo Romano negoti *sit*.

30.29 *opus*: § 411. b (243. e. r.); B. 218. 2. a; G. 406; H. 477. iii. n. (414. iv. n. 4); H-B. 430. 2. a.— *ipsi*: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374. Observe in this sentence that the reflexives *ipse* and *se* refer to Arioquistus; § 298. e (195. k); B. 249. 3; G. 521. n. 8; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 1; and that the demonstratives *is* and *ille* refer to Cæsar; cf. also note on 326.

31.1 *quid* ... *se velit*, wants anything of him (lit. wants him for anything): a colloquial construction; § 390. d (238. b); B. 176. 2; G. 333. R. 2; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); H-B. 397. 1.

31.5 *mirum* ... *quid* ... *esset*: a sort of indir. quest.; *it seemed strange to him*, i.e. he wondered, *what business*, etc.—in sua Gallia, in his (part of) Gaul. Notice the emphasis of sua.

31.7 *negoti*: part. gen. with *quid*; § 346. a. 3 (216. a. 3); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

31.9 Chap. 35. *quonium*, etc.: Direct, —

Quoniam tanto *mea* populique Romani beneficio adfectus, cum in consulatu *mea* rex ... appellatus *sit*, hanc *mihi* ... gratiam *refert*, ut in conloquium venire ... *gravetur* neque de communi re dicendum sibi ... *putet*, haec sunt quae ab eo *postulo*: primum, ne quam multitudinem ... in Galliam traducat; deinde obsides quos *habet* ab Haeduis *reddat*, Sequanisque *permittat* ut quos illi *habent* (habeant) voluntate eius reddere ... *liceat*; neve Haeduos ... *lacessat*, neve his ... bellum *infrat*. Si id ita *fecerit*, *mihi* ... *perpetua gratia* ... cum eo *erit*; si non *impetrabo*, *ego*, — quonium
... senatus consuet uti quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret ... Haedui ... defenderet, — (ego) Haeduorum injurias non neglegam.

31 9 tanto ... affectus: see introductory note to this campaign, p. 157.

31 10 beneficius is explained by cum ... esset, and gratiam referat by ut ... putaret; the first sibi refers to Cæsar and the second to Ariovistus. In this sentence the causal clause is quoniam ... putaret, and the leading verb is esse: Since, though so greatly favored by the Romans, he made such an (ill) return (hanc gratiam referet) as to grudge coming to a conference when invited, and did not consider that he ought to speak or hear about their common business, (therefore) these were the demands he made (the things he required) of him, etc. Observe that in Latin the significant word, the verb (postularet), becomes in English the noun (demands).

31 15 ne quam, not any.

31 18 eius: Ariovistus; illis: the Sequani.

31 21 si non impetraret: i.e. this pledge or assurance.

31 22 M. Messala, etc.: cf. note on 2 19. This was in B.C. 61.

31 24 obtineret, should hold (as governor), not obtain. Avoid the kindred word in translation. Words are liable to change their meanings in 2000 years. See note on obtineere, 2 1. For construction, cf. note on 6 10. — quod, so far as. — commodo (abl. of specification) rei publicae, to the advantage of the state.

31 25 defenderet: see the reasons in the note on the campaign against Ariovistus, p. 157. — se: a repetition of se se above on account of the long parenthesis.

31 27 CHAP. 36. ius esse, etc.: Direct, —

Ius est belli ut qui vicerunt eis quos vicerunt quem ad modum velint imperent; item populus Romanus victis non ad alterius praescriptum ... imperare consuevit. Si ego populo Romano non praescribo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me ... in meo iure impediiri. Haedu mihi, quoniam belli fortunam temptaverunt et ... superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit qui suo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat. Haeduis (ego) obsides non reddam, neque his ... bellum inferam, si in eo mane bust quod convenit stipendiumque ... pendent; si id non fecerint, longe eas fraternum nomen populi Romani acrius. Quod mihi Caesar demunitiat se Haeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congregiatus; intelleget quid invicti Germani ... qui inter annos xiv tectum non subierunt (subierint), virtute possint.

32 1 eis: governed by imperarent. The verbs are in the past by sequence of tenses: § 482, 485 (285, 287. d); B. 267; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 476, 482. 1.
I. 35-37. Campaign against Ariovistus.

32 2 victis: governed by imperare. — alterius, any one else's.
32 5 suo: i.e. the Roman people. — uteretur: subjv. in an indir. quest.
32 6 suo: i.e. Ariovistus. — sibi . . . stipendiarios, tributary to him.
32 8 qui faceret, in making: subjv. also in dir. disc.; § 535. e (320. e);
B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 598 (517); H-B. 523.
32 10 non . . . neque, (on the one hand) he would not restore, etc., but
(on the other) he would not wrongfully, etc.
32 11 iniuria, abl. of manner, § 412. b (248. r.); B. 220. 2; G. 399. N.1;
H. 473. 3 (419. iii. N.8); H-B. 445. 1.
32 13 longe . . . afuturum, the name of brothers would be a great way
off from them, i.e. too far to help them.
32 14 quod, etc.: the whole clause is construed as an adv. acc.: as to
Cæsar's threat, etc.; cf. note on 16 18, and § 572. a (333. a); B. 299. 2;
G. 525. 2; H. 588. iii. N. (516. ii. 2. N.); H-B. 552. 2.
32 15 secum, sua: observe that these refer, one to Ariovistus, the
other to his antagonist; § 300 (196. a); B. 244; G. 520; H. 504. 2 (449. 6);
H-B. 262.
32 16 cum vellet, congraderetur, he might come on when he would.
32 17 inter refers to something coming between two extremes. Hence,
when applied to time, it means the entire interval between the beginning
and the end of a given period, and may be rendered during.
32 19 CHAP. 37. eodem tempore, etc.: in Latin the two actions are
made coördinate, but in English we should be more likely to make one
subordinate, at the same time that, etc.
32 20 Treveris: from the region of Treves in the valley of the Moselle.
— questum: supine (after veniebant, supplied from the one preceding); 
see 26 15, 28 8, and notes.
32 21 qui . . . essent: § 592. 3 (341. d'); B. 323; G. 650; H. 643 (524);
H-B. 535. 1. a. The following passage is a good example of what is called
informal indir. disc. The formal indir. disc. introduced by a verb of saying
has the main clause in the infin. and dependent clauses in the subjv.
But often the verb of saying and the thing said are expressed together in
some one word or phrase, as here questum. In such cases the depend-
ent clauses have the subjv. just as in formal indir. disc.; cf. 13 17, 15 2,
16 24 for similar examples.
32 22 ne . . . quidem: cf. note on 29 90.
32 24 pagos (see note on 10 12): these divisions were those known as
hundreds, meaning not only the people but the district they occupied. —
Suevorum: this is a general name, embracing a number of tribes that lived
in the interior of Germany. Their habits and customs are described in the
opening chapters of Book iv.
32 27 maturandum sibi (sc. esse): impers.; § 208. d (146. d') ; B. 138. iv; G. 208. 2; H. 518. 1 (465. 1); H-B. 600. 3. a; cf. exspectandum, 9 24 and note.

32 29 minus facile, not very easily: i.e. it would be impossible; but this is avoided as a word of ill omen.—resisti: impers.; § 372 (230); B. 187. ii. b; G. 217; H. 426. 3 (384. 5); H-B. 364. 2; cf. note on rebus, 30 19.

33 1 magnis itineribus: see chapter on military affairs, vi.

33 2 contendit: the place from which Caesar started is uncertain. After the destruction of the Helvetic force he appears in the country of the Lingones, sixty to eighty miles north of Bibracte. In that vicinity he held a council of the Gallic chiefs (ch. 30), but whether he remained there is not stated. He probably came towards the north in the direction of Langres.

33 3 Chap. 38. tridui: gen. of measure.—viam: § 390 (238); B. 176. 4. a; G. 333. 2; H. 409. 2 (371. ii. n.); H-B. 396. 1.

33 4 occupandum: gerundive agreeing with Vesontionem.—Vesontionem: the modern Besançon, about ninety miles E.N.E. of the former battle ground. There are many Roman remains here.

33 5 quod relates to Vesontionem, but agrees in gender with oppidum: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

33 6 finibus: the country which he had taken from the Sequani (Upper Alsace).—processisse, had advanced. The bracketed words are probably authentic, and at any rate may be translated.—ne, following praecavendum: § 558. b (331. e. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 3. b.

33 10 ducendum: cf. occupandum above, and note.

33 11 Dubis: the modern Doubs. This name is said to mean "black river." — ut, as it were.

33 12 spatum: object of continet.

33 13 pedum: pred. gen. after est; for construction with amplius, see § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.4; H. 471. 4 (417. n.2); H-B. 416. d.

—sexcentorurn: the real distance is about 1600 feet, but in other respects the present site exactly corresponds to Caesar's words. See view, Fig. 18.

—qua, where.

33 14 altitudine: abl. of quality or description.—radices: object, and ripae, subject of contingent.

33 15 hunc [montem], etc., this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.

33 17 oppido: the town must be regarded as having occupied the lower ground towards the bend in the river.
33 20 Chap. 39. moratur: cf. 24 24 and note. — percontatione, questions. — nostrorum: i.e. the soldiers who inquired in regard to the enemy.

33 21 vocibus, talk. — Gallorum: these, it would seem, volunteered reports. The whole indicates a great deal of talk on the subject, and to this Caesar attributes the panic. — mercatorum: see note on 1 8. — magnitudine: cf. altitudine, l. 14. Roman writers frequently speak of the huge size of the barbarians of the north as compared with themselves.

33 24 congressos, having met them.

33 27 hic: i.e. timor.

34 1 reliquis: i.e. aids or attachés (contubernales, comites), who attended the governor or commander of a province for the sake of military practice. These were often appointed from mere personal or political motives, and were of small use in the service, as it proved here. See chapter on military affairs, 1. 7.

34 2 quorum . . . inlata, these on various pretexts: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 279. 3.

34 3 quam . . . dicet, which, they said: § 592. 3. N. (341. d. r.); B. 323; G. 626. r.; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. a. N. §. See also note on qui . . . esset, 32 21. The verb is singular in Latin on account of alius.

34 6 voltum fingere, put on a brave face (voltum refers to the expression of the face).

34 7 tabernaculis: see Fig. 92.

34 9 totis castris: § 429. 2 (258. f. 2); B. 228. 1. b; G. 388; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. a. — testamenta obsignabantur: indicating utter despair.

34 11 in castris, in service.

34 15 rem frumentarium . . . timere, feared (for) the supply of corn, lest it might not be conveniently brought in: § 564 (331. f.); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498. iii); H-B. 502. 4. Observe the force of ut after vereri.

34 17 nuntiabant: what did they say in dir. disc.? — cum . . . iussisset, for cum iussisset (fut. perf.) of dir. disc. — castra moveri, to break camp; the regular expression.

34 19 signa laturos: i.e. advance. This is the technical term, as the standards were planted in the ground during a halt.

34 20 Chap. 40. omnium ordini, of all ranks. Was this usual? See chapter on military affairs, 1. 7.

34 22 quam . . . ducerentur: indir. quest.; cf. 10 3.

34 23 sibi quaerendum, etc., that they had a right to inquire (lit. it ought to be inquired) or consider (lit. it ought to be thought).

34 24 putarent: see note on 32 21. — Ariovistum, etc.: Direct,—
Notes: Caesar.

Ariovistus me consule... populi Romani amicitiam admiravit; cur hunc... quisquam ab officio discersum indicet? Mihi quidem persuadetur, cognitis meis postulatis... eum neque meam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore... impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem veremini? aut cur de vestra virtute aut de mea diligentia desperitis? Factum (est) eius hostis periculum...; factum (est) etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam a nobis acceptant sublevabant. Ex quo iudicari post quantum habeat in se boni constancia, propertia quod, quos... inermis sine causa timuistis (timueritis), hos postea arma- tos superstistis.

Denique hi sunt idem Germani quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi, non solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superaverunt; qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerunt. Si quos adversum proelium... commovet, hi, si quaerent (quaerant), reperire possunt... Ariovistum... dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione... quam virtute vicisse. Cui ratione contra homines barbaros... locus fuit, hac ne ipse quidem sperat nostros exercitus capi posse.

Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem... conferunt, factum adroganter, cum... de officio imperatoris desperare... videantur (videntur). Haec mihi sunt curae; frumentum Sequani, subministrunt, iamque sunt... frumenta matura; de itinere (vos) ipsi... iudicabitis.

Quod non fore dicto audientes... dicuntimi (more probably dicuntur milites), nihil (ego) ea re commoveor; scio enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit,... avaritiam esse convictam; mea innocentia perpetua vita, felicitas... bello est specta.

Itaque (ego) quod... conlaturus fui repraesentabo, et... castra movebo, ut... intellegere possim utrum apud vos pudor... an timor plus valeat. Quod si praeterea nemo sequetur, tamen (ego) cum sola decima legione ibo, de qua non dubito, nihilique ea praetoria cohors erit.

This speech, one of the most remarkable, if not of the most famous, of antiquity, stamps Caesar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. His whole fortunes may be said to have depended on this campaign, at the outset of which he is confronted with a mutiny. By this skilfully contrived address, in which he glosses over the difficulties of the undertaking, which he must have known well, he contrives to inspire in his soldiers the Roman spirit, which was invincible whenever it was really roused. Caesar's marvellous conquest of Gaul depended quite as much on the devotion of his soldiers as on his unequalled ability as a general.

34 25 cur quisquam iudicaret, why should any one think? For the form of question, see § 586 (338); B. 315. 3; G. 651. r.²; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. n.); cf. H-B. 513. 1 (dir., iudicet, dubit. subjv.). For the use of
Campaign against Ariovistus.

quissquam, implying a negative, see § 311 (105. a); B. 252. 4; G. 317; H. 513 (457); H-B. 276. 7.

34 sibi persuaderi: see note on 30 19; the subject of persuaderi is sum... repudiaturum.

35 1 quod... si intulisset, but if he should, etc.

35 2 quid tandem, etc., what, pray, should they be afraid of?

35 3 sua, their own; ipsius, his; ipse, used in this way to avoid the repetition of sua, is an indirect reflexive; § 300. b (196. a. 2. N.); B. 249. 3; G. 660. 5; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 2.

35 4 periculum (root in experior), a trial. — Cimbris, etc.: this was in B.C. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before, and was the worst danger that had threatened the Romans since the destruction of the city by the Gauls three centuries before. See Roman histories. — cum... videbatur: although this clause was a part of Cæsar's speech to his officers, yet the indic. is used to emphasize to the reader the reality of the fact it asserts; § 583. a (336. a); B. 314. 3; H. 652. 1 (529. N.1,2); H-B. 535. 1. d.

35 6 meritus: sc. esse.

35 7 servili tumultu (abl. of time): the insurrection of the slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, B.C. 73-71. These consisted, in part, at any rate, of Germans captured by Marius. A war at home, i.e. in Italy or on its borders, was called tumultus. — quos (referring to servos implied in servili)... sublevarent (change to pass. in translation, so as to keep the emphasis), who yet were considerably helped by the training and discipline which they had got from us. — aliquid: adv. acc.

35 9 quantum... boni, etc., how much advantage firmness has: § 289. a (189. a); B. 237. 2. a; G. 204. N.2; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 249. 1; for the tense of haberet, see § 485. d (287. d); H. 549 (495. v); H-B. 482. 1.

35 10 quos... hos: notice the antecedent following the relative. — inermis: i.e. the slaves of Spartacus's force.

36 12 hos esse: the Germans with Ariovistus. — quibuscum... congressi, etc. (changing the relative clause), whom the Helvetii had often met and beaten not only on their own ground, but even, etc.

35 14 qui: i.e. the Helvetii. — tamen: i.e. though they were strong enough to beat the Germans, after all, etc.

35 15 potuerint: § 485. c. N.1 (287. c. R.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi and ftn.2); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also 9 18 and 28 8. — adversum proelium: see 27 21 ff. — si quos... commoveret, if any were alarmed by (lit., if the disastrous battle disturbed any).

35 17 Ariovistum: subject of vicisse.

35 18 neque... fecisset, and had given them no chance at him.
36 2 adortum agrees with Ariovistum and governs desperantis, with which a pronoun (eos) must be supplied in English. This may always be omitted in Latin if any word appears to show its case.

36 3 cui rationi... hac = hac rationi cui: the noun being attracted to the relative clause; by this stratagem, for which there had been room against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hoped that our armies could be taken in; § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4. a; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6; cf. note on 30 19.

36 6 qui... conferrent, (those) who laid their own cowardice to the pretended difficulty about provisions, etc.

36 8 desperare, etc., to be discouraged about the commander's doing his duty. Such words as officium have a wider range of meaning in Latin than similar words in English, as duty, a duty, sense of duty, discharge of duty. — praescribere: sc. officium; i.e. that they were dictating to him what his duty was.

36 9 sibi... curae: cf. 22 6, 22 15.

36 10 subministrare, were. (now) furnishing. — esse, were beginning to be. — frumenta, crops; note the plur. and cf. with meaning of the sing.

36 12 quod... dicantur, as to its being said that they would not, etc.; cf. 12 11, 15 14, 32 14. — dicto audientes, etc.: cf. 34 18.

36 13 nihil, no way. — re: see note on 4 4. — quibuscumque: dat. after audiens dicto; i.e. no one has ever had a mutinous army who has not either been unsuccessful through his own fault, so that his men had no confidence in his ability, or else has been convicted of avarice by some overt act, so that they had no confidence in his integrity.

36 16 suam, his own: emphatic by position; equivalent to in his case. — innocentiam: the technical word, meaning freedom from the charge of plunder and extortion. In fact, Cæsar's fault lay just the other way, — a lavish and reckless generosity at the expense of subjects or allies. In this sentence, in opposite (chiastic) order, innocentiam is opposed to avaritiam, and felicitatem to male re gesta; a peculiarly Latin turn.

36 18 quod... fuisse, what he had intended to defer. — repraesentaturum, he would do at once. This is a legal term, meaning to do a thing before the time.


36 22 decima legio: this was the legion which had been stationed in the province of Gallia Transalpina (cf. 6 19); it was distinguished for discipline and courage.

36 23 praetoriam cohortem, body-guard, made up of the bravest men.

36 28 Chap. 41. innata est: agreeing with the last noun; cf. captus est, 24 7.
37 1 optimum judicium fecisset, had expressed the very highest opinion (a technical phrase).

37 3 cum tribunis... egerunt, etc., urged upon the tribunes... to apologise.

37 4 primorum: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

37 6 summa belii, the policy of the campaign.—suum... sed imperatoris: predicates after esse; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340.

37 7 satisfactione, apology; cf. satisfacerent, above.

37 8 ei, in him; after the phrase fide habere = fidere, which takes the dat. or abl.

37 9 ut... duceret (result): depends upon itinere exquisito; duceret refers to itinere. The sense is, such (a route) that it led, etc., a road which led. Cæsar might have said quod duceret but for the quod in the previous line. The valley of the Doubs above Besançon is very narrow and the mountains are precipitous; but, turning first to the north by the railroad coming from Vesoul and then up the valley of the Oignon River, the country becomes tolerably open to Villersexel and to Belfort, which lies in the gap between the Vosges and the Jura. This pass is interesting as having been for ages one of the great avenues from Germany into Gaul. See view, Fig. 20 and map, Fig. 22.—milium [passuum] limits circuitu, by a circuit of more than fifty miles. This must be reckoned as the distance to be traversed before coming to the main road again at about Belfort.

37 11 septimo die, etc.: at this time Cæsar must have been somewhere near Mühlenhagen (Mulhouse), about seventy-five miles from Besançon (see maps, Figs. 3, 22); at any rate, at some point beyond Belfort on the route from Besançon to Strasburg (120 miles), having passed beyond the gap into the valley of the Rhine. Ariovistus was then some twenty-four miles farther on.

37 12 a nostris: i.e. forces.

37 15 Chap. 42. quod: a relative; antecedent is id.—per se, so far as he was concerned (a common expression with licet).

37 16 accessisset: the subject is Cæsar.

37 17 non respuisset, etc.: notice the emphasis. Cæsar did not reject the offer (as one might have supposed he would do).

37 18 iam... reverti, that he was beginning to return.—arbitrabatur: the imperfect indicating the beginning of an action.

37 19 petenti [Caesari], when he asked it.—ultro: opposed to petenti.

37 21 fore uti... desisteret: periphrastic future (cf. 18 1, 28 17) following spem; that he would cease from his stubbornness.
conloquio: dat. of purpose; § 382. 2 (233. 6); B. 191; G. 356. n.1; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 361.

vereri: sc. verb of saying from postulavit. Note the force of ne after vereri and cf. ut, 34 16.

veniret: for veniat (hortatory) of dir. disc. — alia ratione, on any other terms.

interposita causa (abl. abs.), by putting in an excuse.

Gallorum equitatu: he had no other; see chapter on military affairs, i. 2. They numbered about 4000, about the same as a legion.

commodissimum: pred. adj. after esse, whose subject is the infin. clause eo ... imponere.

Gallis equitibus, dat. following detractus: § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. d'; G. 345. r.1; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371.—eo (=in eos), upon them.

si quid, etc., if there should be need of any active measures; quid is adv. acc.: § 390. c. d and N.3 (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378); cf. H-B. 387. iii.

facto: § 243. e. n.; B. 218. 2. c; G. 406; H. 477. iii (414. N.3); H-B. 430. 2. b. — quod cum fieret, while this was going on. On the use of the rel., see note on 58 9.

pollicitum: see 36 23.

ad equum rescribere, he enrolled them among the knights. The word equites means not only the cavalry service in war but a special privileged class in Roman society.

Chap. 43. tumulus terrenus, a smooth (i.e. not rocky) hill.

spatio: abl. of degree of difference.

equis, on horseback, abl. of means. — passibus ducentis (abl. of distance, or degree of difference) = 320 yards.

se: plural. — denos, ten on each side.

appellatus esset: see note on 32 21.—amicus: sc. appellatus esset.—munera: according to Livy (xxx. 15), the gifts sent to Masinissa, king of Numidia, were “a golden crown and bowl, a curule chair, an ivory staff, an embroidered toga, and a tunic with palm-leaf figures,” such as were worn in triumphal processions.

quam rem, a tribute which; see note on 30 19.

docebat, showed him.—illum: emphatic as opposed to other beneficiaries implied in the preceding.

aditum: i.e. right to approach the Senate.

ea praemia consecutum, had attained these prises, as if he had eagerly sought them (cf. introductory note to campaign against Ariovistus, p. 287).
38 24 ipsis (instead of sibi, which might refer to Cæsar alone): the Romans. — intercederent, existed between, indir. quest.
38 27 adpetissent: § 592. 1 (341. 6); B. 323; G. 633; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 535. r. a. In the dir. this might be either perf. indic. or the same as here. If only priority of time is meant, it would be indic.; if there is any internal relation between the main clause and the time clause, it would require the subjv. In this case the latter seems more probable.
38 28 populi, etc.: Direct,—

Populi Romani haec est consuetudo ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia... auctores velit esse; quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani adtulerunt, id eis eripi quis pati posse?
38 29 sui nihil, nothing of their own (dignity, etc.); sui is used substantively, and is a part. gen.
39 1 quod... adtulerissent, what they had brought to the alliance; i.e. the independence and dignity which they had possessed.
39 2 posset: § 587 (338. a); B. 300. 2; G. 651. r.²; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. 1. n.); cf. H-B. 503.— postulavit eadem, he made the same demands.
39 3 ne, etc.: these clauses are in apposition with eadem, and are indirectly quoted from imperative forms of the dir. disc.
39 8 Chap. 44. transisse, etc.: Direct,—

Transii Rhenum (ego) non mea sponte, sed rogatus et arcessitus a Gallis; non sine magna spe... domum... reliqui; sedis habeo in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendum capio iure belli quod victores victis imponere consuerunt. Non ego Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt; omnes Galliae civitates ad me oppugnandum venerunt ac contra me castra habuerunt; eae omnes copiae a me uno proelio pulsae ac superatae sunt. Si iterum experiri voluim, (ego) iterum parssum decertare; si pace uti voluim, iniquum est de stipendio recusare quod sua voluntate ad hoc tempus pepererunt.

Amicitiam populi Romani mihi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportet, idque... hac spe petii. Si per populum Romanum stipendum remittetur et dediticia subrakentur, non minus liberent... recusabo populi Romani amicitiam quam adpetii.

Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traduco, id mei muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facio: eius rei testimonium est quod nisi rogatus non veni, et quod bellum non intuli, sed defendi. Ego prius in Galliam veni quam populus Romanus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populi Romani... provinciae finibus egressus (est). Quid tibi vis? Cur in meas possessiones venis? Provincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra. Ut mihi concedi non oportet, si in vestros finis impetum faciam, sic item vos estis iniqui quod in meo iure me interpellitis.
Quod fratres a senatu Haeduos appellatos dicis, non (ego) tam barbarus sum... ut non sciam neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos, in his contentionibus quas Haedui mecum... habuerunt (habuerint), auxilio populi Romani usos esse.

Debo suspicari simulata te amicitia quem exercitum in Gallia habes mei opprimendi causa habere. Tu nisi decedes atque exercitum deduces... ego te non pro amico, sed pro hoste habebo. Quod si te interfecer, multis (ego) nobilibus... gratum... faciam; id (ego) ab ipsis... compertum habeo quorum omnium gratiam... tua morte redimere possum. Quod si discesseris et... possessionem Galliae mihi tradideris, magno ego te praemio remunerabo, et quaecumque bella geri voles sine ullo tuo labore... conficiam.

39 9 rogatum et accessitum: participles expressing cause.
39 10 sine magna spe magnisque praemiis = sine magna spe magnorum praemiorum; hendiadys, cf. 28 25 and note.
39 11 obsides: object of habere. Translate the participles concessas and datos by relative clauses.
39 14 sibi, on him, referring to the main subject, Ariovistus.—ad se oppugnandum: gerundive expressing purpose; cf. 33 4, 33 10.
39 21 oportere: impers.; its subject is amicitiam... esse.—id, not eam, because it refers to the idea, ut amicus populi Romani esset.—si remittatur: fut. cond.; § 516, 589 (307, 337); B. 268. 7; G. 656; H. 573. 1, 646 (507. i, 527. i); H-B. 536, 579. a; the pres. for imperf., contrary to regular sequence, for greater vividness.
39 22 per, through the action of.
39 23 subtrahantur, are got away (by underhand means).
39 25 quod... traducat, as for his bringing over; made subjv. by indir. disc.
39 26 impugnandae: observe the gerundive.
40 4 provinciam: emphatic; i.e. he had a right to govern it as the Romans did their provinces.—hanc Galliam, this part of Gaul.
40 5 ut... sic, as... so.—ipsi: i.e. Ariovistus (used as an indirect reflexive); see note on 35 3.
40 8 quod, in that.
40 9 imperitum rerum: i.e. unsophisticated; for construction, cf. 18 22.
40 10 bello proximo: i.e. B.C. 62.
40 14 debere se suspicari, etc., he had ground to suspect that Caesar, in keeping an army in Gaul, kept it under the pretence of friendship, [but really] for the purpose of crushing him (Ariovistus).
40 15 sui opprimendi causa: gerund; § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.; H. 626. 3 (542. i. n.1); H-B. 614.
40 18 nobilimbus...gratum: Caesar was the recognized head of the party opposed to the Senate and nobility. Many of the aristocracy would have been glad of any safe way to be rid of him.

40 20 compertum habere has almost the force of *comperisse*; § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. l. n.); H-B. 605. 5.

The three relatives *qui* (l. 16), *quod* (l. 17), and *quod* (l. 21) illustrate the principle that the relative, serving to connect with the previous proposition, may represent various conjunctions: *if he should not withdraw* (*qui* = *isigitur*); and *if he should kill him* (*quod*, adv. acc.); *but if he should withdraw* (*quod = sed*, etc.).

40 25 Chap. 45. *in eam sententiam qua re, to this effect* (to show) *why*.

40 26 negotio: abl. of separation. — *posset*: indir. quest.; cf. 18 15, 29 15, 38 23. — *neque suam*, etc.: Direct, —

Neque *mea* neque populi Romani *consuetudo patitur* uti optime meritos socios *deseram*, neque *ego iudico* Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello *superati sunt Arverni et Ruteni* ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus *ignovit* neque in provinciam *reedit* neque stipendium *imposuit*. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari *oportet*, populi Romani iustissimum *est* in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari *oportet*, *libera debet* esse *Gallia*, quam bello victam suis legibus uti *voluerit*.

40 28 *neque se iudicare, and he did not consider*; notice the emphasis.

41 1 *bello superatos*: B.C. 121, when the Allobroges also were subdued, and the Province probably organized; notice the emphasis. These peoples had been *conquered*, a fact which gave special rights to the Romans.

41 3 *ignovisset*: but, in fact, their country lay beyond the naturally strong frontier of the Cévennes, and so could not then be conveniently occupied by the Romans.

41 4 *antiquissimum quodque*: § 313. b (93. c); cf. B. 252. 5. c; G. 318. 2; H. 515. 2 (458. 1); H-B. 278. 2. b; Cæsar, referring to the statement of Ariovistus in 39 28, claims priority of conquest for the Romans.

41 7 *suis, its own*, referring through *quam* to *Galliam*.

41 8 *voluiisset*: the subject is *senatus* understood.


41 10 *tumulum*: governed by *propius*, which sometimes has the force of a prep.; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 416. 22; H. 420. 5 (437. 1); H-B. 380. b.

41 14 *periculo legionis, danger to the legion*; notice that in Latin the gen. is the regular form of one noun dependent on another, whatever prep. we may use to express the relation.
41. 15 committendum non putabat, ut dici posset, he thought that no ground should be given for saying. The subject of committendum is the ut-clause: § 568. N.¹ (332. e); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1).
41. 16 per fidem, through (misplaced) trust.
41. 17 elatum est, it was reported. Observe the regular mood and tense after posteaquam; cf. 4. 17 and note.
41. 18 omni Gallia: abl. of separation with interdixisset; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 462 (413); H-B. 408. 3.
41. 20 ut, how, with indir. quest.
42. 9 Chap. 47. coeptae: this verb is regularly pass. when used, as here, with a pass. infin. (aet).
42. 3 uti constitueret: following velle; § 563. b (331. b); B. 296. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (498. i); H-B. 587. a.
42. 4 suis: refers to Cæsar; se (l. 5) to Ariovistus.
42. 6 eo magis: cf. hoc facilius, 2. 17 and note. — retineri quin, be kept from: § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 554; H. 595. 2 (504. 4); H-B. 502. 3. b.
42. 7 legatum [e suis] = one of his own (officers) as an envoy.
42. 8 [e suis]: this may either be translated or omitted. The meaning is essentially the same. — magno . . . missurum, it would be at great risk that, etc. This meaning is given by the emphatic position of magno, etc. The Latin often puts into one sentence ideas which we are inclined to express (for emphasis) in two.
42. 11 humanitate: not humanity (cf. note on obtinere, 2. 1); the word refers to his education.
42. 19 Flacco: governor of Gaul B.C. 83. It was customary for slaves or aliens to become clients of the person from whom they received freedom or citizenship and to take his gentile name: § 108 (80. a); G. p. 493; H. 354 (649); H-B. 678. 1. Thus, here Procilius takes the name (C. Vale- rius) of his patron Flaccus, retaining his own as cognomen. — civitate donatus erat: § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 365. b.
42. 13 qua multa . . . utebatur, which Ariovistus spoke freely.
42. 14 in eo, in him.
42. 15 peccandi causa, ground of offence: i.e. the Germans had no reason to commit any outrage on him, as they might on a Roman.
42. 16 hospitio: the relation of hospes, existing between two persons of different cities or nations, made a sacred bond far closer than that of simple hospitality; see Vocab.
42. 18 quos: cf. note on 25. 5. — conspexisset: note the subjv. and cf. 4. 12, 6. 14, 7. 17, and notes.
42 20 venirent: indir. disc. for venitis. — conantis, etc.: this proceeding was evidently for effect upon the army which was in attendance. Ariovistus cried out aloud and did not allow the messengers to be heard.

42 22 Chap. 48. a Caesaris castris: this camp is placed by Napoleon III at the southern foot of the Vosges Mountains near Cernay (Sennheim), a few miles northwest of Mühlhausen, and thirty miles beyond Belfort (Fig. 20), the fortress which now defends this pass on the frontier between France and Germany. The march of Ariovistus placed him nearer the passage, so as to cut off Caesar's supplies.

42 25 Whether this camp was between Cæsar and the Vosges Mountains or merely beyond him in the open is uncertain.

42 26 supportaretur: § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539; and cf. 14 7, 24 21.

42 28 instructam habuit: cf. 40 20 and note.


43 3 castris: the place where may omit the prep. when the idea of means is prominent; § 429 (258. f); B. 228. 1; G. 389; H. 485. 2. (425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

43 4 hoc: pointing to the description which follows. — se exercuerant, were trained: § 476 (279. c); B. 262. A; G. 241. 3. r.; H. 299. 2 (297, i. 2); H-B. 487.

44 1 singuli [equeites] singulos [pedites]: i.e. one apiece.

44 5 si quo... prodeundum, if there was occasion for advancing to any place.

44 7 cursum adaequarent: Tacitus (Ger. 6) says: "They fight in combination [infantry and cavalry], and the foot soldiers, picked out of
the entire body of young men and placed in front of the line, are able to keep up with the cavalry in speed.” This method of fighting, peculiar to the Germans, seemed so advantageous to Cæsar that he employed it himself on occasion, notably at the battle of Pharsalia.

44 10 Chap. 49. consererant: cf. exercerant, above.

44 11 acie tripli: ci: see chapter on military affairs, vii.

44 13 castra munire: the spade and pickaxe were as familiar to the Roman soldier as the sword or javelin. See chapter on military affairs, v, also Figs. 23, 54, 76, 77, 85. In this case Cæsar had one larger camp about two miles east of the Germans, and a smaller one rather more than half a mile to the south of them.

45 8 Chap. 50. instituto suo, according to his previous practice: § 418. a (253. n.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 414.

45 11 tum: note the emphasis.

45 13 quae . . . oppugnare: a purpose clause; cf. l. 3 above.


45 19 matres familiae: according to Tacitus (Ger. 8), it was not matrons only, but women as a class, or most of them, to whom this prophetic power was ascribed.

45 20 sortibus: lots of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance. — vaticinationibus: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly the mere prophetic impressions analogous to “second sight.” — declararent: § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 557; H. 571. 2 (501. i. 2); H-B. 521. 3. a.— utrum . . . necne: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234. a.

45 21 non esse fas, it was not fated.

45 29 novam lunam: a common superstition among semicivilized peoples (cf. Tacitus, Ger. 11); so the Spartans refused to advance to Marathon before the full moon.

45 25 Chap. 51. alarios: the auxiliaries as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, from ala, a wing.

45 26 pro: note the force of the prep. here as distinguished from its meaning in 46 1; cf. also 3 1.

46 2 ad speciem, to make a show, as if the two legions were still there, while in fact they had joined the other force at the greater camp. — acie: of the legionaries alone. The six legions in battle array (triplici acie) presented a front of more than a mile in length.

46 3 necessario: the necessity seems to have come from the fact that the tactics of the Germans demanded more room than a crowded stronghold could give. Rarely in ancient warfare was a fortified camp
assailed. The usual way was to form two battle lines between the fortified camps.

46 5 intervallis: § 412 (248); B. 220. 1; G. 399; H. 473. 3 (419. iii); H-B. 445.
46 8 eo, thereon, i.e. the carts and wagons; cf. note on eo, 38 2.
46 9 profiscissentis, (the men) as they advanced (object of implora-bant).
46 11 Chap. 52. See chapter on military affairs, VII, for description of a battle.—singulos legatos, etc.: i.e. a legatus in command of each legion. This was the beginning of a very important reform in the military organization. Cæsar felt so keenly the evil of the command being divided among six tribunes that he detailed one of his legati nominally to assist the tribunes. After this time we find the legatus as the regular commander of a legion, with the six tribunes under him. On this occasion, having only five legati, he also appointed his quartermaster (quaestor) to that one of the six legions which was intended to be under his own special command.

46 13 eam partem: that, of course, would be the enemy’s left.
46 14 ita acriter . . . ut, so fiercely that.
46 17 coniciendi: observe the gerund with a dir. object (pila). Give the corresponding gerundive construction.
46 20 in phalange, upon the phalanx. This was a compact body of men with shields close locked in front and above, lapping over one another like shingles on a roof. See Fig. 88, the Roman testudo.
46 21 revellerent, etc.: i.e. they leaped upon the roof of shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (desuper).
46 24 P. Crassus: son of Marcus Crassus the triumvir. He next appears at the head of an important expedition against the Aquitanians, pp. 88–92.
46 25 adulescens: like our junior, to distinguish him from his father.
—expeditior, more free.
46 26 tertiam aciem: the line of reserves, kept for just such emergencies.
47 1 Chap. 53. restitutum est: contrasted with laborantibus, above.
47 2 prius . . . quam . . . pervenerunt: see note on 38 27.
48 1 Rhenum: the nearest point on this river was a little below Bâle, somewhat more than five miles distant from the supposed place of the engagement. But the Germans may have fled down the valley of the Ill, reaching the Rhine near Rheinau, some fifty miles from the battlefield.
48 2 tranare contenderunt, by great effort swam across.
48 5 reliquis omnis: said to be 80,000.
**Notes: Caesar.**

43 6 duae uxores: only chiefs among the Germans, says Tacitus (Ger. 18), had more than one wife; and this was for the sake of honor and alliances.

43 7 Sueva: for character and customs of the Suevi, see Bk. iv. chs. 1-3.

43 8 duxerat: cf. note on 8 7. Observe that duxerat in the line above has a different meaning.

43 10 Proclitus: see 42 10.

43 11 trinis catenis, three (sets of) manacles.

43 16 eius calamitate, by any harm to him; eius is obj. gen., and refers to Proclitus.

43 17 quicquam: adv. acc.; § 390. d and N.² (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 396. 2.

43 18 se praesente, in his presence.— ter: it was the regular usage of the Germans to consult the lot thrice (Tacitus, Ger. 10). This has come down to the present day in sundry games, etc.— consultum: impers., sc. esse.

43 19 necaretur: indir. quest.; the dir. was a dubit. subjv., necetur. The site of this battle is still very uncertain. The account of Cæsar's march would seem to point to some place from thirty to fifty miles beyond Belfort, and accordingly it has been located by some near Cernay and by others near Gemar, twenty miles farther down the valley. Perhaps it may have been even nearer the gap than Cernay. The plan in the text, that of Col. Stoffel, must be taken, therefore, only as a supposable arrangement. The country is nearly the same in all that region, and a few miles can make no difference. The great point is that for the first time a Roman army ventured beyond one of the natural bounds of Gaul into the valley of the Rhine and defeated a German horde on its own ground, as it were. The campaign against
Ariovistus settled the question of sovereignty over Gaul for several centuries to come. The Germans did not gain possession of it until after the fall of the western Roman empire.

48 24 Chap. 54. {U[ll]}: these lived near the modern Cologne, and were deadly enemies of the Suevi, and therefore generally in alliance with the Romans (Bk. iv. ch. 3). — Rhenum: governed by proximi; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.1; H. 420. 5 (391. ii. 2); H-B. 380. b and cf. proprius tumulum, 41. 10.

48 26 maturius, earlier; the decisive battle with Ariovistus was fought somewhere about the 10th of September.

48 28 in ceteriorem Galliam: south of the Alps.

48 29 conventus: the proconsular courts held for the administration of justice. A further reason for going was to be nearer Rome and to watch political movements there.

BOOK SECOND. — B.C. 57.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. — The people of northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which their descendants, the Dutch, exhibited long after in the same regions against the armies of Spain. The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear to have offered to Caesar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere until the great rising of B.C. 52. When their spirit was once broken, the conquest of the whole country was simply a question of time.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.

Dodge's Cæsar, chaps. 7, 8.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 10.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 14.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 3.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 5.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 3.

49 1 Chap. 1. cum esset, etc.; while Caesar was: subjv. with cum temporal; § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. B.; G. 585; H. 600. ii (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.
For discussion of the principle, see notes on § 14, 717, 117. The verb comes in this emphatic place on account of the close connection of these words with the preceding book; something like and being thus in, etc. See translation of this chapter in "Directions for Reading," p. lvii. citeriore Gallia: northern Italy. — *ita uti* (= ut), *as*: correlatives; the demonstrative word *so* is often omitted in English: § 323.5 (107); G. 110. 3; H. 305; cf. H-B. 144. — *demonstravimus, dixeramus*: the perfect here implies an act done before the time of writing (see end of Bk. i); the pluperf., what took place before the time of *demonstravimus*.

49 2 adferebantur, certior *fiebat*: imperf. of repeated action; § 470 (277); B. 260. 2; G. 231; H. 534. 3 (469. ii); H-B. 484. Translate *kept coming in*; *he was informed from time to time.*

49 3 litteris, by *despatches*: abl. of means; § 409 (248. c); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — Belgas . . . *coniurare . . . dare, that the Belgians, etc.: indir. disc., acc. and infin. following the verbal phrase certior *fiebat*: § 459 (272); B. 331. 1; G. 527; H. 613 (535); H-B. 589; direct. — Belgæ *coniurant*. Cæsar had not yet advanced farther north than the country of the Lingones, so that the Belgæ were as yet unattacked. — *quam* agrees with *partem*, though the proper antecedent is *Belgas*: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. r. 3. 6; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

49 4 esse: indir. disc. (with subj. acc. *quam*), after *dixeramus*. — dixeramus is in the indic. because, though a relative clause, it is parenthetical merely, and not a part of the report of Labienus: § 583 (336. 6); B. 314. 3; G. 628. r. a; H. 643. 3 (524. 2. 1); H-B. 535. 1. d.

49 5 *coniurare*: from the point of view of the Romans, any war against Rome is a "conspiracy"; a nation enslaved by Rome is "pacified." — *obsides*: see note on § 11. — *inter se, to one another*: § 301. 7 (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. n.); H-B. 266. — *coniurandi*: gerund; § 504 (298); B. 338. r. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

49 6 *has esse causas, that the reasons were as follows*: the report of Labienus continued, indir. disc. — *quod vererentur, sollicitarentur*: subj. because subord. clauses in indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 541; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2. The two clauses introduced by *primum* and *deinde* contain the two reasons for the conspiracy, and so the gist of the sentence. The rest, which makes the whole seem complicated, defines the classes of disaffected Gauls who, though conquered, hoped still to recover their liberty by means of their more warlike neighbors. These classes are two (partim . . . partim), but to these are added in Cæsar's words, but in a different construction (ab non nullis), some who had personal reasons for wishing to expel the Romans. — *ne . . . adduceretur*: subst. clause, object of *vererentur*: § 564 (331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498).
ii); H-B. 502. 4. — omni pacata Gallia: translate the abl. abs. freely, often by an active construction, having subdued, etc., or by a temporal, conditional, or such other clause as will best bring out the thought.

49 7 Gallia: i.e. Celtic Gaul, within which the previous campaigns had been conducted; § 521. a (310. a); B. 305. 1; G. 667; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 578. 6. — exercitus noster: i.e. to subdue them in their turn. — ab non nullis Gallis: § 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468 (415. i); H-B. 406. 1.

49 8 partim qui, etc.: not part of Labienus’s report, but explanatory remarks added by Caesar; hence the indic. — ut . . . ita: correlative; § 323. g (107); G. 110. 3; H. (305); H-B. 144. 563. — Germanos . . . versari: object of noluerant; § 457. 563. b (271. a, 330. 3); B. 295. N., 331. iv; G. 532; H. 614 (535. ii); H-B. 587 and a.

49 9 exercitum hiemare, etc., they took it hard (molestae ferebant) that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold (inveterascere, lit. grow old) in Gaul. The infinitives, with their subj. acc. exercitum, are in indir. disc. after molestae ferebant: § 572. b (333. b); B. 331. v; G. 650; H. 642. ii (523. N.); H-B. 594.

49 11 mobilitate: abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444. — novis imperiis studebant = were eager for a change of government (lit. new ruling powers): dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426 (385); H-B. 362. Notice that novis is emphatic.

49 12 ab nonnullis, by some also (sc. sollicitabantur); these were petty chiefs of clans. — quod (causal) . . . occupabantur, because royal power was (constantly) usurped. Notice the indic.; Caesar explains the statement of Labienus (quod . . . sollicitarentur) by facts from his own knowledge; § 540 (321); B. 286. i; G. 540; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555. A clause with the subjv. (occuparentur) would indicate that the reason assigned formed part of the letter of Labienus. — potentioribus: used substantively; the more powerful.

49 13 ad . . . facultatis, the means to take men into their pay. — conducendos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544. N.²); H-B. 612. iii.


49 15 imperio nostro: strictly a loc. abl., implying time, place, or condition, under our dominion. — consequi, complementary infin.: § 456 and N. (271 and N.); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 2 (533. i. 2); H-B. 586 and a.

50 1 Chap. 2. nuntiiis: abl. of cause; cf. mobilitate, 49 11. — duas legiones . . . misit: these were numbered XIII and XIV, making with the others (VII–XII) eight in all, amounting (with auxiliaries) to perhaps 60,000 men.
50 a inita aestate: abl. abs., expressing time when; § 419 (255); B. 227. 2. a; G. 665; H. 489. i (431. 1); H-B. 421. 1; aestas is the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.

50 b qui deduceret (the antecedent is Q. Pedium): relative clause of purpose; § 531 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.
—Pedium: Pedius was Cæsar’s nephew, son of his sister Julia. — legatum: see note on § 22.

50 c cum primum, etc.: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry and baggage animals could subsist. — incipere: cf. note on esse, 49 1. — ad exercitum: i.e. to Vesontio, in the country of the Sequani. See Map, Fig. 26.

50 d Senonibus: these were north of the Hædui, on the upper course of the Seine; their name is preserved in Sens. — reliquis Gallis, the rest of the Gauls: § 293 (193); cf. B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.1); H-B. 346. c.

50 e Belgis: dat. with finitimi; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362. — uti . . . cognoscant, to find out. This is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with negotium; § 563 (331); B. 295. i; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a. — gerantur: subj. as depending on cognoscant; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

50 f seque . . . faciant, and inform him (Cæsar); se is here used as the indirect reflexive; § 300. 2 (196. a. 2); B. 244. ii. a; G. 521; H. 504 (449. i); H-B. 262. 2. — constanter, consistently (with one another); their accounts all agreed.

50 g manus (acc. plur., subject of cogi): small bands or companies.

50 h tum vero: see Vocab. and observe the emphatic position. — dubitandum non [esse], he must no longer hesitate; the infin. of the second periphrastic conjugation, here used in indir. disc. after existimavit; § 158. d. N. (113. d. N.); B. 115; G. 251; H. 531 (466. N.); H-B. 162; dubitandum is impers.; § 208. d (146. d); B. 337. 7. b; G. 208. 2; H. 192. 1 (195. ii. 1); H-B. 600. 3. a. — quin can follow only a negative expression, as here non existimavit, etc. — quin . . . proficiscetur, to set out (lit. but that he should, etc.): relative clause of result depending on dubitandum [esse]; § 558. a (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 506. i (505. i. 1); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b. In the sense of hesitate, dubito regularly takes the infin. and not quin, but exceptions occur, as here.

50 i re comparata: on translation of the abl. abs., cf. note on 49 6.

50 j diebus: abl. of time within which; § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. — finis: i.e. north of the Matrona (Marne), crossing somewhere between Bois le Duc and Châlons (sur Marne). The march
from Besançon would be about one hundred and forty miles, or ten miles a day. He would so be about thirty-five or forty miles southeast of Durocor-
torum (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

50 19 CHAP. 3. eo: adv. — omnium opinione, than any one expected (following the comparative celerius): § 406. a (247. b); B. 217. 4; G. 398. n.1; H. 471. 7 (417. i. N.8); H-B. 416. c.

50 13 Remi: these were friendly to the Romans, who by their victory over Ariovistus (see Bk. i) had made them the second power in Gaul; cf. Bk. vi. ch. 12. — proximi Galliae, nearest to Gaul; for the dat., see § 384 (234. a); B. 192. i; G. 359; H. 444 (391. i); H-B. 346. c. — ex Belgis, of the Belgae, for part. gen. Belgarum; see § 346. c (216. c); B. 201. i. a; G. 372. r.2; H. 434. 2 (397. 3. N.8); H-B. 362; translate with proximi.

50 14 legatos, ds ambassadors, predicate apposition.

50 15 qui dicerent: a relative clause of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 595. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

The rest of the chapter consists of the speech of the ambassadors, as reported by Cæsar in indir. disc. Notice that the principal clauses are in the infin. with subj. acc., and all dependent clauses in the subjv.: § 580 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 650; H. 642–644 (522–524); H-B. 534. i, ii. In dir. disc. this speech would read as follows:

Nos nostraque omnia in fידem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus; neque [nos] cum reliquis Belgis consensimus neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliqui omnes Belgae in armis sunt, Germanique, qui cisc Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantusque est eorum omnium furo ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur (utantur), unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent (habeant), derterrere potuerimus quin cum his consentirent (consentiant).

50 15 in fīdem permittere, put themselves under the protection (good faith), etc.; more commonly with dat. — se suaque omnia, themselves and all their (possessions) ("their all"): object of permittere. The subj. acc. is regularly expressed in the indir. disc.; but here it is omitted to prevent the awkward repetition se (subject) se (object). In the next clause se is expressed.

50 16 neque, and (had) not: § 328. a (156. a); B. 341. i. d; G. 480; H. 657. 1 (554. i. 2); H-B. 307. 3. — cum Belgis: accompaniment; § 413 (248. a); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1 (419. i); H-B. 419. 1.

50 18 paratos (participial adj.), ready.— dare, facere, etc.: infinitives following paratos; § 460. b (273. b); B. 326. N.; G. 423; H. 608. 4 (533. 3); H-B. 586. f.
50 19 oppidis recipere, receive [the Romans] into their strongholds; oppidis is abl. of place without in: § 429 (258. f); B. 228. 1, cf. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); H-B. 436, cf. 446. 1.—frumento: abl. of means; cf. litteris, 49. 3.—ceterique rebus, everything else (necessary); see Vocab. —recipere, iuvare: sc. eos (i.e. the Romans) as object.

50 20 cis: i.e. the west or Gallic side.

50 21 seae... coniunxiisse, had united; it often happens that a verb used as active in Latin and requiring a reflexive object may be best translated in English by an intransitive. The reverse of this must not be forgotten in writing Latin. —tantum... ut: correlatives; § 537. 2. N.² (319. r.); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. ii. N.¹; H-B. 521. 2. a.

50 22 furorem, madness (blind and unreasoning passion).—ut... potuerint: result clause; § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2: for tense, see § 485. c. N.¹ (287. c. r.); B. 268. 7; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also note on 28. 6.—ne... quidem: § 322. f (151. c); B. 347. 1; G. 445; H. 656. 2 (553. 2, 569. iii. 2); cf. H-B. 302. 1.—Suessiones (obj. of detererrere): they occupied territory west of the Remi, about the modern Soissons.

50 23 iure et legibus: rights and laws; for case, see § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. 1); H-B. 429.—isdem: for eisdem.

50 24 unum imperium, etc.: i.e. their close confederacy did not prevent the Suessiones from leaguing with the other party.—cum ipsis: i.e. the Remi; in the indir. disc. se is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of ipse are occasionally used instead. Here ipse is used apparently for emphasis: § 298. c (195. k); B. 249. 3; G. 311. 2; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263.

50 25 quin... consentirent, from leaguing with: relative clause of result depending on detererrere; § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b. (Notice that detererrere is negated by ne... quidem above, which make the whole clause negative, though they are attached only to the emphatic word.)

50 26 Chap. 4. ab his: i.e. of the envoys; § 396. a (239. c. N.¹); B. p. 126, top; G. 339. R.¹; H. 411. 4 (374. N.⁴); H-B. 393. c.—quae... essent: indir. quest.; § 574 (334); B. 300. 1; G. 460; H. 649. ii (529); H-B. 537. 6.

50 27 quid... possent, what strength they had in war; quid is cognate acc. with adv. force; § 390. c and d. N.² (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 334; H. 409. 1, 416. 2 (371. ii (2), 378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii.—sic, as follows.—reperiebat: for force of the tense, cf. adferribantur, 49. 2 and note. Observe that the rest of the chapter is in indir. disc., except the words Remi dicebant, 51. 8.—plerosque, etc.: Direct,—
II. 3, 4.]

The Belgian Confederacy. 187

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque... traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incoebant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, ... Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos finis ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fit uti... magnam sibi auctoritatem... sumant. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata... propterea quod propinquitatibus... coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem... ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Belovaci... valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; finis latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos sulis rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magna partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc... summam totius belli... desertur; oppida habent numero XII, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecum milia Atrebates, (likewise) Ambiani, Morini, etc... Condusos, Eburones, etc... qui... Germani appellantur, arbitramur (conficere posse ou polliceri) ad xl milia.

50 27 plerosque, most of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N. 2); H-B. 244; see the end of the chapter, and compare, regarding the Nervii, Tacitus (Ger. 28). The Belgians were, no doubt, chiefly of Celtic blood; but possibly they considered the Germans a more proud and heroic ancestry.

51 1 ab Germanis: abl. of source; § 403. a. N. 1 (244. a. r.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. b.—Rhenum: acc. governed by trans in traductos; § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331; H. 413 (376. N.); H-B. 386. a.

51 2 traductos: participle agreeing with Belgas.—propter fertilitatem: construe with consedisse.

51 4 qui... prohibuerint: rel. clause of characteristic with solos; § 535. 6 (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. a and ftn. 1. Note the retention of the perfect tense contrary to tense sequence, and cf. ut... potuerint, 50 22 and note. — memoria: cf. diebus, 50 11. — Teutonos, etc.: cf. 35 5.

51 5 ingredi: the subjv. might have been used; § 457 (271. a); B. 295. 1; G. 532. R. 1; H. 596. 2 (505. ii. 1); H-B. 587 and a.—qua ex re, in consequence of which (fact); abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408. N. 7; H. 475. 4 (416. i); H-B. 444. b.

51 6 fieri uti, it was coming to be the case that: the subject of fieri is the clause uti... suumert; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. a.—memoria: abl. of cause.—sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. i. N.); G. 352; H. 425. 2 (384. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 366.
51 7 de numero, etc.: the rest of the chapter depends on Remi dicebant.

51 8 se habere explorata, had found out all about (de), etc.: habere explorata differs but little in sense from explorasse; § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. 1. n.); H-B. 605. 5 and a; in construction explorata agrees with omnia, which is obj. of habere. See note on compertum habere, 40 29.

51 9 propinquitatibus, ties of blood.—ad finitimatibus, alliances by marriage.

51 10 quantam quisque . . . pollicitus sit: indir. quest., object of cogoverint; cf. 50 26.

51 11 cogoverint: the primary tense is used in violation of the sequence of tenses. The statement is made more vivid by putting it in the same tense that was used by the speakers. They said cognovimus, we know (lit. have found out). The perfect is very often retained in indir. discourse.

51 12 virtute, etc.: abl. of specification.

51 13 armata milia centum = armatorum hominum milia centum. As here expressed, milia is the noun with which the adj. armata agrees; § 134. d (94. c); B. 80. 5; G. 293; H. 168 (178); H-B. 131. 3.

51 14 electa, choice troops, picked men.

51 15 sibi: dat. of reference; cf. sibi, l. 6, above; it refers to the Bellovaci.—suos, their own (i.e. of the Remi); notice that the reflexive regularly refers to the speaker. See note on cum ipsis, 50 24.

51 16 possidere: sc. eos, i.e. the Suessiones.—fuisse . . . esse: notice the difference of time; fuisse (in the dir. disc. fuit) refers to time past, esse (dir. est) to time present, with respect to the verb of saying (dicebant, l. 8).—regem: showing that royal power had not yet been overthrown among the Belgians.

51 18 cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.

51 19 Britanniae: the first mention of Britain by a Roman author.—obtinuerit, had held; in the dir. obtinuit, held. For tense, cf. note on cognoverint, l. 11, above.

51 20 summam: subject of deferri.

51 21 voluntate: abl. of manner; § 412. b and N. (248. R.); B. 220. 2; G. 399; H. 474. 1 (419. iii. n.3); H-B. 445. 1.—habere: the subject must be supplied from Suessiones, above.—numero: abl. of specif.; cf. 51 12.

51 22 Nervios, etc. (see Map, Fig. 26): the names of several of these tribes are found in the modern towns, as: Atrebatas, Arras; Ambiani, Amiens; Caleti, Calais; Viromandui, Vermandois; Condresu, Condres.

52 1 feri: pred. after habeantur, are regarded.

52 5 Condrusos, etc.: subjects of polliceri or conficere posse understood.—qui . . . appellantur: the indic. shows that this is an explanatory note
added by Cæsar, and not a part of the indir. disc., while qui ... habeantur above, on the other hand, is a remark made by the Remi, as is shown by the subjunctive.

52 6 Germani: this name seems to belong especially to the four last named (Condresi, Eburones, etc.).—arbitrari: in dir., arbitramur; in translation we may say they thought, parenthetically, as in the English usage in indir. disc.

52 7 Chap. 5. cohortatus, prosecutus: for the tense of these participles, cf. § 491 (290. b); B. 336. 5; G. 282. n.; H. 640. 1 (550. n.1); H-B. 601. 1.

52 9 obsides (pred. appos.), as hostages: if the chiefs should break their faith, these boys would probably be sold as slaves; cf. also note on 8 11. —quae omnia, and apt this. Latin very frequently connects clauses by a relative where our idiom prefers a conj. with a demonstrative: § 308. f (201. c); B. 251. 6; G. 610. r. 1; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8.

52 11 quanto opero ... inter sit, how greatly it concerns both the republic and their common safety. For the genitives, see § 355 (222); B. 211. 1; G. 381; H. 449. 1 (406. iii); H-B. 345.

52 12 inter sit: indir. quest.; cf. 50 96, 51 10. —manus (acc. plur.) ... distinieri: infin. clause, subject of inter sit. —ne confingendum sit, lest they should have to contend: clause of purpose depending on distinieri; § 530 (317); B. 282. 1; G. 545. 3; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. —confingendum sit is an imper. 2d periphrastic; § 193, 208. c (129, 146. d'); B. 115, 138; G. 208, 251. 2; H. 237, 302. 7 (234, 301. 2); H-B. 162, 600. 3. a.

52 13 id fieri posse, etc., this, he said, could be done, etc. Notice that no new word of saying is necessary in Latin, but in English one is usually inserted parenthetically.

52 14 suas copias: the emphatic position opposes the forces of the Hædui to the Roman army.—Bellovacorum: these lay farthest west and most remote from Cæsar’s field of operations; so that the manoeuvre indicated would divide the enemy (cf. 56 21–25).—introduxerint ... coeperint: fut. condition; in the dir. disc. these would be fut. perf.; § 516. c (307. c); B. 303; G. 596. 1; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a, 577. a.

52 15 eorum: i.e. Bellovacorum.—datis: words in the text thus printed in italics are conjectural readings not found in the MSS.

52 16 dimittit: the effect of his mission appears in 56 23, and he has returned to Cæsar in 59 2. —postquam ... vidit, as soon as he saw: § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561; H. 508 (518); H-B. 557.

52 17 neque: —que connects vidit and cognovit; ne- with iam = no longer.—[vidit]: see note on [eorum], 9 17.

52 18 ab eis: construed with cognovit.
Notes: Caesar.

52 19 Axiom (apposition), the Aisne; here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise. — in extremis ... finibus, in the remotest part of the territory of the Remi: $\S$ 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. 2, notes 1 and 2); H-B. 244; the phrase is used in a general sense merely, for Bibrax, a town of the Remi, lay eight miles farther off.

52 20 exercitium is dir. object of traducere; flumen (l. 19) is secondary object, depending on trans (tra-duco = trans-duco); $\S$ 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331. r. 1; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386. — castra: the site of this camp has been made out at Berry au Bac (Fig. 31), a little village about twelve miles north by west of Rheims and about twenty-five miles east of Soissons. Traces of Caesar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp (see Map, Fig. 32).

52 21 quae res, this movement (or manœuvre), i.e. his having crossed the river and then pitched his camp where he did. Caesar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. — ripis: cf. frumento, 50 19.

52 22 post eum quae erant, the rear of his army (lit. [those things which were behind him]). — tuta: pred. acc.; $\S$ 393. N. (239. a. N. 1); B. 177. 2; G. 340; H. 410. 3 (373. 1. N. 2); H-B. 392. a; the dir. object is ea, the omitted antecedent of quae. — commeeatus: subject of posseint.

52 23 ut ... possent: subst. clause of result, object of efficiebat; $\S$ 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a; cf. this with the pure result clause, 50 22, and with the subject clause of result, 51 6.

52 24 efficiebat: the subject is still quae res; observe the imperfect tenses describing the situation, and cf. note on 35.

52 25 in altera parte, on the other side, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Caesar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side towards the Suessiones.

52 26 pedum xii: gen. of measure, with vallo; $\S$ 345. b (215. b); B. 203. 2; G. 365. r. 2; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. When pronouncing the Latin, always give the Latin words for numerals. — duedeviginti pedem: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width. See chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 76.

53 1 Chap. 6. nomine: cf. the ablatives in 51 12. — Bibrax: this town has variously been identified as Vieux Laon, about the proper distance to the northwest, and Beaurieux to the west, more probably the latter.

53 2 miliar passuum octo, eight miles: acc. of extent of space; $\S$ 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. 1; passuum is part. gen.; $\S$ 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367; H. 440. 5 (397); H-B. 346; cf. note
on 34. — *ex itinere*, on the march, i.e. turning aside from their course to attack the town. — *magnolimpetu*: abl. of manner; cf. *voluntate*, 51 21.

53 3 *aeger sustentatum est* (impers.), it was with difficulty that they held out. In English we are often inclined to put into two clauses what the Latin crowds into one. — *Gallorum...haec, the attack* (mode of attacking) of the Gauls, being the same as (atque) that of the Belgians, is this (the following).

53 5 *circumieicta multitudo* (abl. abs.)...*moenibus, a host of men being thrown round all the walls*: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. 2 (386. 2); H-B. 376. Here the English absolute construction is admissible, though usually to be avoided.

53 6 *iaci*: complem. infin.; cf. *consequi*, 49 15 and note. — *coepiri sunt*: the pass. is used with the pass. infin. — *defensoribus*: abl. of separation; § 401 (243. a); B. 214; G. 405; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

53 7 *testudine facta*, *making a testudo*. See chapter on military affairs, vii (last part), and Fig. 88.

53 8 *quod, this*, i.e. the movements just described. — *tum, in the present instance*. — *multitudo*, subject of *conicerent*: § 317. d (2) (205. c. 1); B. 254. 4. a; G. 211. Exc. (a); H. 389. 1 (461. 1); H-B. 331. 1. — *cum...conicerent*: *cum* describing the situation, but almost causal; see note on 49 1.

53 9 *consistendi*: gen. of gerund with *potestas*; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

53 10 *nulli*: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374: *nobody could keep a foothold on the wall* (lit. *power of standing on the wall was to nobody*). — *cum... fecisset*: again describing the situation. — *opportundandi*: gerund; cf. *coniurandi*, 49 5.

53 11 *summa nobilitate et gratia*, [a man] of the highest, etc.; abl. of quality; § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443. — *inter suos, among his* [fellow-citizens]. — *oppido*: dat. with *praerat*; § 370 (228); B. 187. 3; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

53 12 *unus ex eis, one of those*: after numerals *ex* with the ablative is preferred to the part. gen. — *legati, as ambassadors*: pred. appos.

53 13 *nisi...posse*: indir. disc. depending on the idea of *reporting contained in non tummit*. Trans. *unless reinforced, he said, etc.* — *sibi*: i.e. Iccius; the dat. is used instead of *ad se* with *subsidium submitatur*, because the idea of help (for him) is more prominent than that of motion (towards him). In the dir. disc. the message of Iccius was:

*Nisi subsidium mihi submitatur, (ego) diutius sustinere non possum.*

54 1 CHAP. 7. 60, thither, to that place, i.e. Bibrax. — *idem ducibus usus*, employing the same men [as] guides: for the ablative, cf. *iure*, 50 23. Observe that *ducibus* is pred. appos.; cf. *legati*, 53 12.
54 2 Numidas et Cretas: both these (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. See Fig. 97.

54 3 Baleares (adj.): the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, east of Spain, were famous slingers. See Fig. 30. These nations served as auxiliaries in the Roman armies.—subsidio oppidanis: dat. of service with dat. of person affected; § 382. 1 and N. 1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. 6; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360. 6.

54 4 et . . . et: see Vocab.—studium . . . accessit, eagerness for a vigorous defence was inspired in the Remi.—propugnandi: obj. gen. of the gerund; cf.coniurandi, 49 5.

54 5 hostibus, from the enemy: dat.; § 376 (235); B. 188. 1; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N. 8); H-B. 366.—potiundi oppidi: gerundive; § 503. N. 2 (296. r.); B. 339. 4; G. 427. N. 6; H. 623. 1 (544. 2. N. 6); H-B. 613. N.

54 6 morati . . . depopulati . . . vicis . . . incensis: observe the change of the construction. The Latin can use a perf. part. with active meaning only (as here) of deponent verbs. The corresponding construction with other verbs is the abl. abs. with the perf. pass. part.; as here, vicis incensis, which is to be translated accordingly. See last note on 49 6.

54 7 quo, to which (or the like).

54 8 omnibus copiis: cf. 50 16, and for the omission of cum, see § 413. a (248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R. 1; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1); H-B. 420.

54 9 a milibus passuum minus duobus, less than two miles off: a is used adverbia; § 433 (261. d); B. 144. 1; G. 335. N.; H. 417. 3 (379. 2. N.); cf. H-B. 303. c: milibus is abl. of degree of difference: § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424: minus does not affect the construction: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N. 2); H-B. 416. d: amplius (l. 10) is acc. of extent of space: § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387: and milibus (l. 10), abl. after the comparative: § 406 (247); B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. We have here both of the two constructions allowable with these neuter comparatives; see reference under minus.

54 13 Chap. 8. eximiam opinionem virtutis, their high reputation for valor: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354.—proelio supersedere, to defer the engagement: for the abl., cf. defensoribus, 53 6, and see § 401 (243. a); B. 214. 1; G. 390; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

54 14 quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . auderent, indir. questions.—virtute: abl. of specif. But the whole is best rendered, tested the prowess of the enemy, and the daring of our own soldiers. Notice that the form of thought is entirely different in Latin and in English.
54 15 periclitabatur: note the tense and cf. adferebantur, 49 2 and note.

54 16 loco...idoneo: abl. abs. expressing cause.—ad...instruendum: gerundive expression of purpose; cf. 49 13.

54 18 tantum, etc., spread over as much (tantum) ground as (quantum), etc.—adversus, right in front.

54 19 in latitudinem, in breadth, i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the Aisne with a little stream, the Miette, which here makes a swamp.—loci: part. gen. with quantum, but more conveniently translated with the correlative tantum, with which it has to be supplied to complete the sense.

54 20 lateris dejectus (acc. plur.), lateral slopes (lit. slopes of the side).

54 21 in fronte, etc., falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain (see battle plan, Fig. 32).

54 22 transversam: i.e. at right angles to his line of battle.

54 23 passuum quadringentorum: gen. of measure; cf. pedum, 52 27. —extremas, the ends of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.2); H-B. 244.

54 24 tormenta: see chapter on military affairs, 1. 5, and Figs. 61, 87, and 89.

54 25 instruxisset: subjv. by attraction for fut. perf. ind.; § 593. 547 (342, 325. c); B. 324. 1, 289; G. 662 at end, 580; H. 652, 600 (529. ii, 521. i); H-B. 539, cf. 524. d.—tantum: adv. acc.; cf. quid, 50 27.—poterant: this clause is parenthetical, and hence is not (like instruxisset) attracted into the subjv.

54 26 ab lateribus, on the flanks: § 429. b (260. b); H. (434. i); H-B. 406. 2; modifying circumvenire.—suos: i.e. Cæsar’s, referring back to the subject of conlocavit.

55 1 si quo (adv.): sc. duci, but translate freely if they were needed anywhere.—esset: protasis of a fut. condition (si...erit); here in the imperf. subjv. because depending on the final clause ut...possent; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.—subsidió: dat. of purpose or end; cf. note on 54 3.

55 2 sex: see note on 50 1.—suas: notice the emphatic position, their forces too.

55 3 copias...eductas instruxerunt, had led out and drawn up, etc.: the Latin is fond of using a participle for what is practically a coordinate clause, instead of an additional finite verb.

55 4 Chap. 9. nostrum: poss. pron.; poss. gen. could not be used; § 302. a (197. a); B. 243; G. 362. R.1; H. 440. 1. N.2 (396. ii. N.); H-B. 339. a.
55 5 hanc: i.e. paludem. — si ... transirent, (to see) if our men would cross: § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460; H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. n.1); cf. H-B. 582. 2.

55 6 si ... fieret, in case they should begin the passage (lit. a beginning of crossing should be made by them): fut. condition (si ... fieret); here in the subjv. because part of the final clause ut ... adgredereantur; cf. note on esset, l. i.

55 7 adgredereantur: purpose, depending on parati, etc.

55 8 contendeabant: impers.; cf. note on 23 1.

55 9 nostris: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

55 11 ad flumen, etc.: evidently somewhat lower down, so that they were concealed by the hills beyond the marsh.

56 1 eo consilio ut, etc.: the final clauses are in apposition with consilio; § 531. i. n.1 (317. a); G. 545. 1; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. a.

56 2 castellum, the redoubt beyond the river, held by Sabinus (52 25).
— cui: cf. oppido, 53 11.

56 3 pontem: the bridge held at one end by a garrison, at the other by the redoubt (52 25). By destroying this, the Belgæ would cut off Caesars supplies and hinder his retreat; cf. 52 21–24. — si possent (l. 1), si minus potuissent: fut. conditions; possent represents the fut., potuissent the fut. perf. indic.; for change of mood and tense cf. note on 55 1.
— minus, not.

56 4 popularentur, prohiberent: in same construction as expugnarent.
— magno nobis usui: cf. note on subsidio oppidanis, 54 3. — ad bellum gerendum (gerundive), for carrying on the war; cf. 49 13.

56 5 commeatu: abl. of separation; cf. defensoribus, 53 6.

56 6 Chap. 10. ab Titurio: abl. of voluntary agent.

56 7 levis armaturae (gen. of description), of light equipment = light-armed (see chapter on military affairs, i. 3, and Figs. 73, 96). — Numidas, etc.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so could arrive at the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians.

56 8 traducit: with two accusatives; cf. 52 20 and note. — pugnatum est: cf. contendeabant, 55 8.

56 11 conantis: with reliquis.

56 12 equitatu: considered here as means or instrument; therefore, no prep. — circumventos interfecerunt: cf. note on eductas, 55 3.

56 13 ubi ... intellexerunt: the regular mood and tense with ubi; cf.

53 1. — de, with regard to.

56 14 neque, and ... not.
56 15 pugnandi causa: gerund construction, expressing purpose; § 404.
c, 533. b (245. c, 318. d); B. 338. 1. c; G. 373; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 444.
d, 612. i.

56 16 ipsos: i.e. the enemy. The superiority of the Roman commissariat was a most important factor in winning their victories. The enemy could not carry on a long campaign with a large army for lack of provisions, and when they were compelled to disband, the Romans destroyed them piecemeal at their leisure.

56 17 constituerunt here has two objects: (1) optimum esse, etc. (indir. disc.), (2) [ut] convenirent (subst. clause of purpose); § 580. d (332. h); B. 295. 1 and N.; G. 546. r.1; H. 565. 5 (498. i. N.); H-B. 589. a; cf. note on 2 1s. The subject of esse is the infin. clause quemque reverti: § 452 (330); B. 330; G. 422; H. 615 (538); H-B. 585. Thus the confederacy dissolves into a mere defensive alliance, and all the members are cut to pieces in detail. — domum: § 427. 2 (258. d); B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. b.

56 18 quorum: the antecedent is eos.

56 19 introduxisset stands for the fut. perf., and is attracted into the pluperf. subjv. by being made part of the purpose clause; cf. potuissent, 56 3. — convenirent: sc. ut; § 565. a (331. f. r.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. r.2; H. 565. 2 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftw.2.

56 20 suis, alienis, domesticis: notice the emphatic position of the adjectives.

56 23 quod . . . cognoverat: indic. because Caesar gives the reason on his own authority; cf. 49 13 and note. The clause is in apposition with haec ratio.— Diviciacum . . . adpropinquare: see 52 14.— finibus: dat. after adpropinquare.

56 24 his persuaderi, etc., these could not be persuaded, etc. (lit. it could not be persuaded to these). Verbs that take the dat. in the act. are used impers. in the pass. and retain the dat. — ut, etc.: subst. clause of purpose, depending for its construction on persuaderi, but (in the impers. construction) used as subject of poterat.

56 25 neque . . . ferrent, and so fail to carry (lit. and not carry). — suis: § 363 (225. d); B. 193; H-B. 365. ftw. par. 2.

56 26 Chap. 11. strepitu, tumultu, ordine, imperio: abl. of manner; cf. impetu, 53 2.

57 1 cum, where, describing the situation, but approaching in sense a causal clause: § 549. N.2 (326. N.3); B. 288. b; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 525.

57 2 fecerunt: notice the emphatic position; cf. the English, "the result was." — ut . . . videretur: subst. clause of result, object of fecerunt;
Notes: Cæsar.

§ 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. — fugae: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

57 3 per: the agent, when considered as instrument or means, is generally expressed by per with the acc.; § 405. b (246. b); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. N.1); H-B. 380. d. — speculatoribus, spies: they obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the scouts, exploratores, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

57 4 veritus, fearing; cf. note on 52 7. — discederent: indir. quest.; cf. 51 10, 52 11, 55 5.

57 5. castris, in camp: § 429. f (258. f); B. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

57 6. Re: i.e. the fact that the enemy were really retreating. — ab exploratoribus: abl. of agent; cf. above, per speculatorum. — qui moraretur: rel. clause of purpose; cf. 50 15.

57 7 his: dat. with praefecerit; cf. construction of oppido, 53 11.

57 10 milia: cf. 53 2.

57 11 cum: causal; cf. 57 1 and note. — ab extremo agmine, in the rear.

57 12 quos: relates to the implied subject of consistenter. — ventum erat: § 208. d' (146. d'); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. i); H-B. 290. a. 1.

57 13 priores: sc. and in English. This refers to the van of the retreating enemy. — quod . . . viderentur, because they seemed (i.e. they thought themselves). This word and continerentur are subjunctives as being part of the subj. clause cum . . . ponentur. For similar cases of attraction, see 55 1, 55 6, 56 1, 56 19.

57 15 exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus (abl. abs., the first defining the time of the second), breaking ranks on hearing the outcry (of those engaged in the rear).

57 16 sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. i. N.; G. 345; H. 425. 4 (384. 4); H-B. 366. — ponentur: same construction as consistenter and sustinerent.

57 17 tantam . . . spatium, killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed (lit. as the day was long); notice the correlatives tantam . . . quantum; § 152 (106); G. 642. 1; H. 189 (191); H-B. 144; cf. 54 18–20.

57 20 Chap. 12. postridie eius diei, next day (lit. on the day after that day): for the gen., see § 359. b (223. e); B. 201. 3. a; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. c. — priusquam . . . recipient, before the enemy could recover themselves: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.

57 21 in finis . . . duxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other.
The Belgian Confederacy.


57 23 Noviodunum (now Soissons): about twenty miles west of Bibrax. Celtic *dunum* = English town; hence Noviodunum = Newton or Newburg. *Soissons* is derived from *Suestiones*. — *ex itinere*: i.e. as soon as he arrived, by filling up the ditch and scaling the walls, without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach; cf. 53 2.

57 24 esse: sc. oppidum for subject.

57 25 paucis defendentibus (abl. abs. denoting concession), *though* there were few defenders. — oppugnare means *to attack*; expugnare, *to take* (by storm). Unable to take the town by storm, Cæsar was obliged to begin a regular siege. See chapter on military affairs, viii, and Figs. 43, 98, 99, 76, 78.

57 26 quaeque, etc.: i.e. wood, earth, stones, etc.; the antecedent of quae, if expressed, would be ea.

57 27 ad oppugnationum: § 506, 385. a (300, 234. b); B. 338. 3, 192. 2. n.; G. 432, 359. R. 8; H. 628, 435. 1 (542. iii, 391. ii); H-B. 612. iii, 364. 6.

58 2 magnitudine: i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. — quae, *which* (i.e. *the like of which*).

58 3 ante: adv.

58 5 petentibus Remis, *at the request of the Remi*. — ut conservarentur: subst. clause of result, obj. of impetrant; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501); H-B. 521. 3. a.

58 6 Chap. 13. obsidibus acceptis primis, *after he had received as hostages the chief men*, etc.

58 7 Galbae: see 51 19–21.

58 9 Bellovacos: their territory lay thirty or forty miles due north of Paris, about Beauvais. — *qui cum, and when they*. A relative is often used to begin a new sentence where the English idiom would lead us to expect a demonstrative with a connective (here *hi autem*). The relative serves to bind the new sentence more closely to the preceding. — *se suauæ omnia*: cf. 50 15 and note.

58 10 Bratuspantium: probably Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. Notice that *Bratuspantium* is in apposition with oppidum, not in the gen. according to the English usage.

58 11 circiter, etc., *[only] about five miles*. — *milia passuum*: cf. 53 2, 57 10.

58 12 maires natu: § 131. c (91. c); B. 226. 1; G. 87. 9; H-B. 122; natu is abl. of specification.

58 13 voce significare, *show by the tones of their voice* (of course they could not talk Latin). — in eius fidem . . . venire: i.e. surrendered at
discretion; cf. the clause se in fidem permittere, 50 15. Notice that the reflexive seor refers to the speakers, and represents the first person of the dir. disc.; eius refers to Caesar, the person spoken to.

58 14 neque, and [that they would] not.
58 16 pueri mulieresque, women and children.—ex muro: English says on the wall, from another point of view.

58 17 ab Romanis: § 396. a (239. c. N.1); B. 178. 1. a; G. 339. N.2; H. 411. 4 (374. N.4); H-B. 393. c.

59 1 CHAP. 14. pro his, in behalf of these, i.e. the Bellovaci.
59 2 eum: i.e. Caesar.

59 3 Bellovaci, etc.: the rest of this chapter is in indir. disc., depending on facit verba. Direct,—

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeducae fuerunt; impulsi ab suis principibus, qui dicebant Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnis indignitatis . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis defecerunt et populo Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intel- legebant quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt. Petunt non solum Bellovaci sed etiam pro his Haedui ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utaris. Quod si feceris, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas amplificabis, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderunt, sustentare consuerunt.

59 4 omni tempore, always.—in fide atque amicitia: i.e. they had been subject-allies of the Hædui.

59 4 impulsos (notice the emphatic position: not of their own accord, but induced by their chiefs): agreeing with the subject (eos) of defecisse and intulisse, which is to be supplied from Bellovacos.

59 5 dicerent: this word introduces another clause in the indir. disc., the statement of the chiefs, which is thus reported at second-hand by Cæsar as a part of the speech of Diviciacus. The subject is Haeduos; the verb, perferre.—omnis, all (kinds of).

59 7 qui, (those) who.—eius consili, in this design: § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. Notice that the gen. expresses nearly all the relations of one noun to another, and may be translated by in, to, and many other forms of speech in English.

59 8 quantam . . . intulissent: cf. 50 26 and note.

59 9 civitati: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.—Britanniam: the support and sympathy which the Gauls received from Britain was Cæsar’s excuse for his subsequent expedition there.—profugisse: the subject is the implied antecedent of qui.

59 10 sua clementia, his (characteristic or well-known) clemency: for the case, cf. 50 23, 54 1.
In eos: but for the interposition of Haeduos, this would be in se; § 300. b (196. 2); B. 244. ii; G. 520, 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2; here, as often, the last word or thought governs the construction.—utatur: subst. clause of purpose, after petre; § 563. d (331. d); B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 530. 2. ftm. 1; cf. also 6 10 and note. Observe that from this point the present and perfect tenses of the subjv. are used; cf. cognoverint, 51 11 and note.—quod si fecerit: fut. condition (more vivid); fecerit is perf. subjv. for the fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. The apodosis is amplificaturum: § 516. a (307. a); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574. 2 (508. 2); H-B. 579. a; on the use of quod, see note on qui cum, 58 9.

Quorum: the antecedent is Belgas.—si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint: general condition; see dir. disc. above. For the tenses used in general conditions, see § 518. b (309. c); G. 594. N.; H. 578. i (508. 5); cf. H-B. 579, 577. a.

Consuerint: present in force; § 205. b. N. 2 (143. c. N.); B. 262. A; G. 175. 5, 236. r.; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

Chap. 15. honoris Diviciaci . . . causa, out of respect for Diviciacus (lit. for the sake of honor).—Diviciaci: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. —causa: abl. of cause; § 404. c (245. c); B. 198. i; G. 373, 408; H. 475. 2 (416. ftm. 9); H-B. 444. d, 339. d; used almost like a preposition with the gen., and always following its noun, as here honoris.

Recepturum [esse]: the fut. act. infin. commonly omits esse, as here. —quod erat: the indic. implies that this was the real reason, not merely one given by Cæsar at the time (which would require quod esset); cf. 49 19.


Ambianorum: about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.

Eorum finis: notice the emphatic position. Their territories reach to the Nervii.—natura: i.e. what sort of people they were, like quales essent.

Reperiebat: cf. note on 49 2. —nullum aditum, etc.: Direct,—Nullus aditus est ad eos mercatoribus; nihil patiuntur vini . . . inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos . . . existimant; sunt homines fere magnaeque virtutis; incipientat atque incusant reliquis Belgas, qui se populo Romano dediderint patriamque virtutem proiereint; confirmant sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

Mercatoribus (dat. of poss.; cf. nulli, 53 10), traders have.—pati (subj. eos understood): the subj. acc. of the infin. in indir. disc. should regularly be expressed, but occasionally it is omitted when the sense is clear. Cæsar is very free in this respect, because his work is
only brief notes of his campaigns (commentarius). — nihil ... vini: § 346. a. 1 (216. a. 1); B. 201. i; G. 369; H. 440. 5 (397. 1); H-B. 346.

59 25 relanguescere: an inceptive verb (ending, -sco); § 263. 1 (167. a); B. 155. i; G. 133. v; H. 277 (280); H-B. 212. 2. — esse, that they are.

59 26 magnae virtutis: § 345 (215); B. 203. i; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. Note that the descriptive gen. has exactly the force of an adj., so that it is even connected with feros by a coordinate conj.: § 223. a (154. a); B. 341; G. 474; H. 657 (554); H-B. 305. i.

59 27 Belgas: object. — qui ... dedidissent ... proiecissent, who [they said] had surrendered, etc.: § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. a; cf. also note on 32 21.

60 1 patriam: an adjective.

60 2 missuros ... accepturos: on the omission of esse, cf. note on 59 18. The subject of the infinitives is esse, which refers back to the omitted subject (eos) of confirmare.

60 3 CHAP. 16. cum ... fecisset: for similar cum-clauses, cf. 49 1, 53 8, 53 10. — eorum: i.e. of the Nervii. — triduum: § 423 (256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

60 4 Sabim flumen, etc.: Direct, —

Sabis flumen a castris ... milia passuum x abest; trans id flumen omnes Nervii consederunt adventumque Romanorum exspectant una cum Atrebatisbus ... (nam his ... persuaserunt uti eandem belli fortunam experimenterur); exspectantur etiam ab eis Aduatucorum copiae atque sunt in itinere; mulieres quique ... inutiles videbantur in eum locum coniercrunt, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

60 4 Sabim: the Sambre, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa); § 75. a. 1 (56. a. 1); B. 37; G. 57. r.f; H. 102. 2 (62. ii. 2. (1)); H-B. 88. 1. The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt. — non amplius milia, etc.: milia is acc. of extent, and is not affected in construction by amplius; cf. a similar construction, 54 9, and see § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.f; H. 471. 4 (417. i. n.3); H-B. 416. d.

60 7 Atrebatisbus, etc.: small tribes to the south and west; modern Arras, Vermandois. — his: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. i.

60 8 experientur: subst. clause of purpose; cf. 59 10.

60 9 exspectari: note throughout this indir. disc. the variation between pres. and perf. infin., according as the dir. disc. has the pres. or perf. indic.

60 10 quiique, and (those) who (not to be confounded with the plur. of quisque with the same form); qui, as so often, implies its own antecedent eos, the obj. of coniectisse.
60 11 quo = in quem.

60 12 esset: already in dir. disc. a rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1; cf. 51. 4. The emphasis is shown in "to which on account of the marshes an army could not get access."

60 14 Chap. 17. locum ... idoneum: see chapter on military affairs, v. — deligant: cf. construction of dicerent, 50. 15. — ex ... Belgis: for part. gen. following complures, cf. 50. 13, 53. 12.

60 15 dediticia: i.e. the three states just subdued.

60 16 una, along (with him).

60 17 eorum dierum, during those days: see note on consili, 59. 7.

60 19 inter singulas legiones, between each two legions. — impedimentorum magnum numerum, a great number of baggage-animals (i.e. a very long baggage-train). See chapter on military affairs, I. 6.

60 20 neque, and that ... not (or no); notice that in Latin the connective has a strong attraction for the negative where our idiom separates them. — negoti: part. gen.; cf. nihil vini, 59. 23.

60 21 cum ... venisset ... abessent: subjv. because subordinate clauses in the indir. disc.; the verbs refer to future time, and represent respectively the fut. perf. and the fut. indic. of the dir. disc.

60 22 hanc: i.e. the first legion. — sarcinis: see chapter on military affairs, IV. 1, and Fig. 14. — adoriri: subject of esse (I. 20), quicquam being in the predicate. — qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis (abl. abs. = protasis of a future condition), if this should be routed, etc.

60 23 futurum [esse]: apodosis of the condition. — ut ... non audierent: subst. clause of result, subject of futurum [esse]; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 555. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a; the whole is little more than a roundabout way of expressing the fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3); B. 270. 3; G. 248. 2; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. c. — contra consistere, to withstand their attack.

60 24 adiuvabat: the subject is the subst. clause quod Nervii ... effecerant, the advice of those who reported the matter was reënforced by the fact that the Nervii, etc. Notice the emphatic position of adiuvabat, which may be expressed in English by using the pass. as above.

60 25 antiquitus: adv.; the use of the hedges described below was an immemorial custom, and they are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such about 400 years old still exist in England. — cum: causal.

60 26 nihil (adv. acc.) possent, had no strength. — neque enim, and in fact ... not. — ad hoc tempus: opp. to antiquitus. — rei: cf. construction of imperius, 49. 11.
60 27 quicquid (cf. nihil above) possunt, etc., all the strength they have is in infantry. — quo facilius . . . impedirent, in order to check the more

**Fig. 78. — General View of Siege Operations.**

*ABCD*, hostile wall; *ss*, testudines aggestitiae, protecting those levelling the ground; *hh*, agger; *xx, xx'*, etc., plutei, protecting those working on the agger; *efg*, line of plutei, manned with archers and slingers; *tt*, turres, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta; *rr*, covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers; *lq*, covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger; *f'g'*, position of plutei, covering the beginning of the agger; *mm*, covered gallery through the agger; *nnn*, etc., steps and platforms of the several stories.
easily; quo is the regular conj. introducing a purpose clause which contains a comparative; § 531. a. (317. b); B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. b.

61 1 prætandī causa: cf. 56 15. — venissent: attracted from the fut. perf.; § 593 (342); B. 324. i; G. 663. i; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

61 3 in latitudinem, etc.: i.e. when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang from its sides so as to make a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. These hedges were of course for the defence of individual farms to hinder cavalry from raiding across country.

61 4 ut ... præberent: object clause of result, depending on effec-

runt; cf. 57 a. — instar muri: § 359. b (214. e); B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 446. 4 (398. 4); H-B. 339. d.

61 5 quo (adv.): i.e. into which.

61 6 posset: result clause.

61 7 sibi: dat. of agent with omitterendum [esse].

61 8 Chap. 18. loci ... quem locum: § 307. a (200. a); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4. — castris: the dat. of purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions; § 382. 2 (233. b); B. 191. 1; G. 356; H. 425. 3 (384. ii. 1. 3); H-B. 361.

61 9 aequaliter declivis, with even downward slope.

61 10 quod agrees in gender with flumen. — vergebatur: imperf. of description; cf. note on 3 5. — ab: i.e. on the other side.

61 11 pari acclivitate: abl. of quality; cf. 53 11, 59 17. Notice the opposition to declivis, above. — adversus ... contrarius, facing this, and on the other side (of the stream).

61 12 passus: cf. 53 2, 57 10. — apertus: i.e. cleared of woods. — in fines, at the foot: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 290. r.2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. n.9); H-B. 244; opposed to ab superiore parte, along the upper portion: § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 1; H. 434. i; H-B. 406. 2.

62 1 ut non: observe that a negative result is expressed by ut non, while a negative purpose is expressed by ne.

62 3 secundum: preposition.

62 4 pedum trium: gen. of measure, here in the predicate; cf. 54 23.

62 6 Chap. 19. copiis: cf. 50 16, 54 8. — ratio ordoque: as these two words convey but a single thought, the verb is singular. — aliter ... ac, etc. (see Vocab.), was different from what the Belgae had reported (lit. had itself otherwise [than] as, etc.): § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 516. 3 (459. 2); H-B. 307. 2. a.

62 7 ad Nervios: § 363 (225. b); B. 358. 2. a; G. 340. r.2; H. 429. 3 (386. 3).
62 8 consuetudine sua, in accordance with his custom.
62 9 ducebat: for the order of march, see chapter on military affairs, vi. — conlocarat, had put in place [of greatest safety]; this verb (conloco) is often confounded by beginners with conligo, collect.
62 10 proxime conscriptae, latest levied. These were legions xiii and xiv, mentioned in 50 1, 2, which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.
62 11 praesidio impedimentis: cf. 54 3, 55 1, 56 4.
62 13 cum, etc.: this clause describes the situation, and is shown to be temporal by interim, which follows (cf. 53 8, 53 10, 60 3). This movement is important because it allowed time for the main body to arrive and begin the camp, contrary to the expectation of the Nervii.
62 14 reciperent . . . facerent, kept retiring, etc. (strengthened by identidem).
62 15 quem ad finem: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause, according to the Latin idiom. Translate as if it were ad finem ad quem, which, however, the Romans would rarely say.
62 16 cedentis agrees with eos, the understood object of insequi. Notice that the Romans can always omit a pronoun if its case is determined by some word in agreement.
62 17 opere dimenso, having staked out the works. See chapter on military affairs, v.
62 18 ubi . . . visa sunt: cf. 53 4, 56 13. Notice that this is purely temporal. Cæsar might have used cum with the subjv., but in that case it would describe the situation. A comparison of this with 62 13 shows the difference clearly.
62 20 quod tempus, the moment which. Notice the difference of the Latin and the English idiom; tempus is in apposition with the clause ubi . . . visa sunt. The attraction of the antecedent into the relative clause is regular when it is in apposition with something preceding (cf. 30 19, 38 19, and notes). — committendi proeli: depending on tempus. Notice that the gen. is the regular form to connect one noun with another, though we use various prepositions. — ut (just as) . . . confirmaverant: i.e. the movement was not a confused sally on the individual impulse of savages, but an organized attack with the united and settled determination to resist the invaders. He may have said this only to enhance the glory of his victory, but he more than once pays tribute to the prowess of the enemy, and he probably does so here.
62 24 ut, so that (result).
62 25 [et iam in manibus nostris]: i.e. within reach of our weapons. This makes sense, and may be so translated.
II. 19, 20. The Belgian Confederacy. 205

62 aduerso colle, etc., pushed straight up the hill. The way by which is put in the abl. without a preposition. — eos: after ad. — occupati, still at work on the fortifications (in operes); occupatus is regularly used as an adj.

63 1 Chap. 20. Caesari: dat. of agent; cf. sibi, 61 7. Notice the emphatic position of omnia. Cæsar had to do everything at one time. — vexillum: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to announce an engagement impending. See Fig. 121, and chapter on military affairs, II.

63 2 proponendum[erat]: second periphrastic, like agenda erant above; so also dandum, etc.

63 3 tuba: the signal to take their places in the ranks. See Fig. 37. — ab operes, etc.: those who were already detailed must have needed further orders before going into battle.

63 4 qui relates to the understood subject (ei) of arcessendi [erant]. — aggeris, materials for a mound, an unusual meaning. — arcessendi: soldiers who were out of hearing of the customary signals would need a messenger.

63 5 cohortandi: pass., as always, though from a deponent verb; § 190. d (135. d); B. 112. b; G. 251; H. p. 114, ftn. at end; H-B. 291. — signum dandum: the last signal for immediate action; cf.
64 5. This list includes all the functions of the commander, ordinarily extended over a considerable time. In this emergency Cæsar says these needed to be done at once, and this was impossible (cf. impediabat). But the difficulty was partially remedied by the good sense and discipline of the soldiers who did what was proper—without orders.

63 7 difficultatibus . . . subsidio: cf. 54 3, 62 11.

63 9 quid . . . oporteret: indir. quest., object of praescirebire; cf. 50 26.

63 10 quam connects similar constructions: § 323. a (208. a); H-B. 305. 1.

63 11 quod: i.e. the second of the two things mentioned. — singulos, etc., had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.

63 12 nisi munitis castris: abl. abs.; see, note on 49 6. The meaning here is not until after, etc.

63 13 nihil: adv. acc.; § 390. d. n. 3 (240. a); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii; it is stronger than non; nihil iam, no longer.

63 14 quae videbantur, what seemed best.
Notes: Caesar.

63 16 Chap. 21. necessariis: i.e. such as were (absolutely) necessary; observe emphasis.—ad cohortandos milites: gerundive of purpose; cf. 49 13, 54 16.

63 17 quam in partem—in eam partem in quam; cf. note on quem ad finem, 62 15.

64 1 decimam: Caesar's favorite legion; cf. 36 24.—non longiore... quam uti, with no more words than that they should, etc.

64 2 retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent: object clauses of purpose with ut, etc., expressing indirectly the commands given in his address.

64 4 quam quo... posset: rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320. e); B. 283. 2. a; G. 298; H. 591. 6 (503. ii. 3); cf. H-B. 521. 1 and 2. c.

64 7 pugnabantibus: sc. eis, and see note on cedentia, 62 16.—hostium depends on animus.

64 8 paratus-(adj.) ad dimicandum, ready for battle.

64 9 ad insignia accommodanda, for fitting on the decorations (of the helmets, etc.). Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer. Perhaps, too, the different legions were distinguished by the insignia of the helmets. At all events, these were considered important and were always put on before an engagement. See chapter on military affairs, VII.

64 10 scutis: abl. of separation; cf. 53 6, 56 5. On the march helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and ornaments kept in some unexposed place. See Fig. 14.—defuerit, failed, i.e. there was not time enough to, etc.; for tense, cf. 50 25, 51 5.—quam in partem, to whatever place.

64 11 ab operae: i.e. from his position in the work of fortifying.—quaeque, etc., and whatever standards he saw first (prima, adj. with signa), he fell in (lit. took his stand) there. The Roman soldier was so well drilled that, to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly the duties belonging to it.

64 12 haec (signa): antecedent to quae, but implying also the antecedent (in hae parte) of quam above, for which it is really substituted.—in quaerendis suis [signis]: gerundive. The standards distinguished the different cohorts, and hence they here refer to the place of each soldier in the ranks, as we might speak of a company or platoon. See chapter on military affairs, II; also Figs. 72, 84.

64 14 Chap. 22. ut... quam ut: as... than as. The military science of the ancients was adapted to level, open ground, in which the troops could be drawn up and kept in regular lines.

64 16 cum: causal; cf. 57 1.—aliae alia in parte, some in one position, some in another: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. For position of the various legions, see battle plan, Fig. 35.
The Belgian Confederacy.

64 17 saepibus...interiectis: cf. note on 60 25.
64 18 ante: i.e. in ch. 17. — impediretur: connected with resistent by -que in l. 17.
64 19 neque: here begins the main clause, the verb of which is poterant.
64 20 provideri: complem. infin. with poterat supplied from poterant. The subject of this poterat is the indir. quest. quid...opus esset. — ab uno (emphatic), by only one man.
64 21 fortunae: emphatic, set off against rerum. The circumstances were diversified; the fortune that attended them consequently had various results.
64 22 eventus (nom. plur.): subject of sequebantur.
64 23 Chap. 23. ut, as, i.e. in the position in which they were. The clause is nearly equivalent to an English participle, having taken up their position: cf. § 493. d. 2 (290. d.); B. 356. 2. e; H-B. 602. 1. Observe that in the sense of as, ut is not followed by the subj. — sinistra: here Labienus was in command.
64 24 acie: gen.; § 98. n. (74. a); B. 52. 3; G. 63. n. 1; H. 134. 2 (120); H-B. 100. 2. — pilis emissis: see chapter on military affairs, vii, and Fig. 15, p. 22. — examinatos: agrees with Atrebates (object of complicurunt).
64 26 ex loco superiore: i.e. from the higher ground up which the Atrebates had rushed after crossing the river.
65 1 impediam, embarrassed (in their attempt to cross). — ipsi: referring to milites, 64 23.
65 2 progressi: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill on the other side of the river. See description of the ground, ch. 18.
65 3 rursus resistentis (acc.), when they again made a stand.
65 6 ex loco superiore: i.e. starting from, etc. — in ripis modifies proeliamabantur (were continuing the fight).
65 7 totis: emphatic position (cf. English “exposed entirely almost”).
65 8 nudatis, being exposed, i.e. by the absence of the other legions, which were pursuing the enemy. The only ones left near the camp were vii and xii, in dextro cornu.
65 9 constitisset: causal, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter; but it is often impossible to say when the description of a situation passes over into cause. — magni intervallo, confertissimo agmine: best regarded as ablatives of manner, though we must remember that the Romans did not trouble themselves about our classifications. The ablative was the proper form for all these ideas; and so they used it for all without distinction, as we should use in, at, or by.
Notes: Cæsar.

65 10 duce: abl. abs.; translate under the leadership of.

65 19 aperto latere: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 429 (258. f); B. 228. i. 6; G. 338; H. 485. 2 (425. iii); H-B. 436. — legiones: the twelfth and the seventh. — castrorum: not part., but poss. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).

65 14 Chap. 24. levis armaturæ: descriptive gen.; note how it is naturally translated in English by a descriptive adj., light-armed. See chapter on military affairs, i. 3, and Figs. 73, 96.

65 15 una: adverb.

65 16 pulsos [esse]: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. quos. — adversis hostibus, etc., met the enemy face to face: § 370 (228); B. 187 iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

65 17 occurrebant ... ferebantur: these descriptive imperfects belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfects contenderunt, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on 3 5.

65 18 ab decumana porta: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 77. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.

65 20 cum respexissent, on looking back. Notice that this descriptive cum-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. cum ... vidissent, l. 26, below.

65 21 praecipites: adj., agreeing with calones, but with the force of an adv., pell-mell, in utter confusion; § 290 (191); B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 497 (443); H-B. 245.

65 22 qui, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions xiii and xiv as a rear guard; see 62 9-11.

65 23 orebatur: observe the sing. number, and cf. 62 6 and note. — alii aliam: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. — perterriti, frantic with fear, panic-stricken (thoroughly frightened). Observe the force of per- (see Vocab.).

65 25 quorum (poss.) virtutis (obj.) opinio, whose reputation for valor: § 348. b (217. b); B. 200; G. 363. r.2; H. 446. 2 (398. 2); H-B. 354.

65 26 a civitate: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.

65 27 compleri (was filling) ... premi ... teneri ... fugere: indir. disc. with vidissent. The present tenses indicate what they saw going on before their eyes (dir. complemur ... premuntur ... tenentur ... fugiunt). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.

66 2 domum: cf. 56 17 and note.
66 3 pulsos superatosque [esse]: indir. disc.; the subject is Romanos. — castris: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

66 4 hostia: acc., subject of potitos [esse].

66 5 Chap. 25. Caesar: subject of processit, 67 9. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are suspended. Such a sentence is called a Period: § 600, 601 (346); B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 685 (573); H-B. 629, 630. An English writer would have used several short, independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance; and a really good translation should have that form, thus: —

Caesar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, Cæsar snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank — it happened that he had come there without a shield himself — and advanced to the front.

66 6 ubi: construe with vidit, l. 8. — in unum locum: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.

66 7 sibi . . . impedimento, hindered one another in fighting (lit. were for a hindrance themselves to themselves); cf. 56 4, 62 11.

66 8 quartae cohortis: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, VI and VII. — omnibus centurionibus occisiis: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on omni pacata Gallia, 49 6.

66 9 signo: i.e. the standard of the cohort.

67 1 in his, among these. — primipilo: see chapter on military affairs, l. 7. — Baculo: this was one of Cæsar's best centurions. His further exploits are mentioned in Bk. iii. ch. 5 and Bk. vi. ch. 38.
673 iam... non, no longer.—tardiores, rather slack (discouraged):
§ 291. a (93. a); B. 240. 1; G. 297; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2.
674 ab novissimis, in the rear: so below, l. 8.—deserto proelio,
withdrawing from the fight (abl. abs.).
675 neque: correl. to et==both...not...and.
677 vidit: repeated from 66 8 on account of the length of the sentence.—neque ullam subsidium: the rear guard, legions XIII and XIV, had
not yet arrived.
678 possit: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 51. 4, 64. 5.—militi: dat.
after detracto; cf. construction of hostibus, 54. 5 and note.
6711 signa...laxare, to charge and [thus] open out the ranks, i.e.
as they advanced, the space between the ranks would be increased, and
so more room obtained for the use of the sword.—quo...possent:
cf. 60. 27.
6712 gladiis; cf. castra, 66. 3.—militibus: dat. with inlata.
6714 etiam...rebus, even in his own extreme peril.
6716 Chap. 26. constiterat (from consisto): not had stood, but had
taken up a position, and so stood; cf. consuerint, 59. 14; § 476 (279. e);
B. 262. a; G. 241. r.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.
6718 ut...coniungerent...inferrent: subst. clause, secondary obj. of
monuit; cf. 6. 10, 59. 10, and notes.—conversa, etc., should face about and
charge the enemy in opposite directions (lit. bear turned standards against).
The two united thus formed a kind of hollow square. It is not necessary
to suppose that the soldiers stood immediately back to back, though this
is probable, inasmuch as the attack was on both flanks and in front.
6719 alii: dat. after a verbal phrase of helping; § 367 (227); B. 187.
ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 365. fn.1. 2d par.
6720 ne...circumvenirentur: cf. ne...adduceretur, 49. 6.—aversi,
in the rear (lit. while their backs were turned).—ab hoste: collectively,
in which sense the plur. is more common.
6722 legionum duarum: i.e. XIII and XIV; see plan, Fig. 35.
6724 colle: i.e. the site of the Roman camp.—Labienus: he, with
legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see first lines of ch. 23.
6726 gerentur: indir. quest.
6727 qui: i.e. the soldiers of the tenth legion.
6728 esset: indir. quest.
681 nihil...secerunt, left nothing undone in the way of speed (i.e.
hastened as fast as they could).
682 reliqui: a pred. gen. Various genitives of this sort are used
with facere: § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 369. r.2; H. 447 (403); H-B.
340. a.
The Belgian Confederacy.

68 4 Chap. 27. *etiam qui, even such as* — *procubuisserant*, subjv. of characteristic; *cf. 67 8.* — *sicutis*: abl. with *innixi*; § 431 (254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. N.); H-B. 438. 2. a.

68 6 *inermes armatis, etc.,* (though) *unarmed, threw themselves upon the armed* (enemy). — *occurrerent*: result, like *redintegrarent.*

68 7 *delerent, praeferrent*: purpose clauses, but in slightly different relations, dependent on *pugnant.* The use of *quo* as a conj. to introduce a purpose clause when the clause contains no comparative is rare. It is used regularly in 60 27, 67 11. Here we should expect *ut.*

68 8 *at*: marks with emphasis the change of the narrative from the Romans to the enemy.

68 9 *tantam virtutem praestiterunt*: on this clause depend the following subjunctives of result, — *insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent.*

68 10 *primi, foremost.* — *iacentibus (sc. eis, dat. after insisterent), stood upon them as they lay fallen* (lit. *them lying).*

68 12 *qui superessent*: characteristic clause. — *ut ex tumulo, as if from a mound.*

68 13 *ut... debere, so that we may consider* (lit. *it must be judged*) that not without good hope of success (neequiam) did men, etc.; *ut... debere* is a result clause dependent on the whole of the preceding sentence. The subject of *deberet* is the infin. clause *hominem ausos esse.*

68 16 *quae*: the antecedents are the preceding infin. clauses describing the acts of the enemy; translate *deeds which.* — *facilia: pred. adj.; *§ 285. 2, 282. b (186); B. 233. 2; G. 211; H. 382. 2 (438. 2); H-B. 320. iii.*

The battle with the Nervii and their allies was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Their surprise of the Romans was complete, their courage such as to evoke Cæsar's wonder and admiration. Had the Romans come up in the order of march expected, — a legion at a time with intervening baggage, — they could hardly have escaped defeat or even annihilation. As it was, only the steadiness and discipline of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence and example at a critical moment saved the day.

68 18 Chap. 28. *prope ad interneclionem*: the Nervii were not by any means exterminated. Three years later they revolted again (Bk. v. ch. 38), and two years after that they sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia to relieve Vercingetorix (Bk. vii. ch. 75).

68 20 *aestuarium*: the country lying to the north, the modern Zealand, is low and marshy, cut up with bays and tide-water inlets.

68 21 *dixeramus*: for tense, cf. note on the same word, 49 4. — *cum*: causal; *cf. 57 1.* — *impeditum [esse], etc., there was no obstacle in the way of* (lit. *nothing hindered to*) the conquerors.
68 24 in...calamitate: gerundive construction.

68 26 qui...possent: this would naturally be a characteristic subjv. in the dir.; cf. 26 10. — quos: see note on 58 9.

68 27 usus [esse]: § 582 (330. b); B. 332. b; G. 528. i; H. 611. N.¹
(534. i. N.¹); cf. H-B. 590. 2. — misericordia (abl.), mercy: it has been observed that Cæsar's dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful for a Roman dealing with barbarians, but his cruelty seems to us atrocious.

69 2 ut...prohiberent: subst. clause of purpose, obj. of imperavit; cf. this construction with that of uti iussit just before.

69 4 Chap. 29. supra: see 60 9. — cum...venirent, while on the way. — omnibus copiis: cf. 50 16, 54 8.

69 7 sua omnia: cf. 50 13 and note. — oppidum: often identified with the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre (see Fig. 41). For a striking description of the locality, see Motley's "Dutch Republic," iii. 224. Others place it more probably at Falhize, opposite Huy, on the Meuse below Namur, though neither place quite agrees with Cæsar's description.

69 8 quod cum: cf. qui cum, 58 9 and note.

70 1 pedum: cf. 52 27.

70 3 conlocabant: notice the change of tense from the pluperf.

70 4 ex Cimbris Teutonisque: abl. of source; cf. 51 1; see note on 71 1.

70 6 impedimentis refers to cattle as well as portable baggage; hence the two verbs, agere and portare. Cf. ferre et agere, to plunder.

70 7 custodiam, a guard, whose duty it was to keep an eye on the booty, etc.; praesidium, a garrison, who were to hold the place. The words are in apposition with milia.

70 8 sex milia: this Teutonic military colony was probably merely adopted into the Celtic tribe of the Aduatuci, thus giving rise to the story that the whole tribe were of Teutonic descent. — una (adv.), with it, i.e. the impedimenta — hi: i.e. the six thousand. — eorum: i.e. the Cimbræ and Teutones.

70 9 obitum, destruction: the Teutons were totally defeated by Gaius Marius at Aquae Sextiae (Aix-les-Bains), B.C. 102; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ. — alias: adv.

70 10 inferrent: the regular word for offensive war. — inlatum [sibi bellum] defenderent, defended themselves when attacked. — consensu eorum omnium, by mutual agreement, i.e. between themselves and all their neighbors.

70 11 sibi domicilio: cf. 54 3. — hunc locum: the land between the Meuse and the Scheldt.
II. 28–31.]  

The Belgian Confederacy.  

70 19 Chap. 30. adventu: abl. of time.

70 13 faciebant: notice the tense, and cf. 49 2 and note. — parvulis: for the formation of the word, see § 243 (164. a); B. 153; G. 189. 6; H. 340 (332); H-B. 207. 1.

70 14 pedum XII: i.e. in height. — XV milium: fifteen miles (sc. passuum) seems large for so small a hill, but no satisfactory explanation has yet been given.

70 15 oppido: for the omission of in, cf. castris, 57 5 and note. For the siege operations, see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 43, 78, 98, 99.

70 17 viderunt: note the regular mood and tense in the temporal clause with ubi; cf. 62 18 and note. — invidere: histor. infin.; see note on 13 18.

70 18 quod . . . institueretur: because (as they said), etc.: subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; § 540, 592. 3 (321, 341. d’); B. 286. 1, 323; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 555. a. — ab tanto spatio, so far off (lit. away by so great a space): abl. of degree of difference, ab having an adv. force. — quibusnam, etc.: the enclitic nam gives a sarcastic emphasis to this jeering question of the barbarians, by what hands, pray, or what strength?

71 2 conlocare: indir. disc.; we should have expected the fut. infin., conlocatos [esse]. Apparently the Gauls thought the Romans meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (in muro); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.

71 3 Chap. 31. moveri, that it was actually moving: for the omission of the subj. acc. turrim, see § 581. N.1 (336. a. N.); B. 314. 5; G. 527. 4; H. 642 (p. 296, fn. 2); H-B. 592.

71 5 locuti, speaking: cf. 52 7.

71 6 existimare (sc. se, and cf. 59 23 and note), that they thought: depending on locuti.

71 8 possent: a rel. clause expressing cause; § 535. c (320. c); B. 283. 3. a; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523. — se (obj.) . . . permettere, that they surrendered themselves, etc.: depending on dixerunt.

71 9 unum, only one thing: notice the emphatic position of the word. — pro sua, etc., in accordance with his usual, etc.; cf. 68 27.

71 10 quam . . . audirent, which they were [all the time] hearing of: repeated action.

71 11 statuisset: for the fut. perf. (statueris) of the dir. disc.; § 516. c (307. c); B. 264. a; G. 595; H. 540. 2 (473. 2); cf. H-B. 536, 470. fn. 1.— ne . . . despollaret: subst. clause of purpose, in app. with unum, but really depending on deprecari for its form; see note on 4 17.
Notes: Caesar.

71 12 inimicos: cf. 70 10.
71 13 virtuti: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. — traditis armis (= si arma tradita essent): abl. abs., equivalent to a protasis; § 521. a (310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 593. 2; H. 489. 2 (431. 2); H-B. 578. 6. In the dir. disc. a vivid fut. condition, si arma tradita erunt, non poterimus.
71 14 sibi praestare, that it was better for them: impers.; the subject is the following infin. clause.—si ... deducarentur (fut. condition), if they should be reduced to such an extremity.
71 15 quamvis: from quivis.
71 16 consuessent: for the form, see § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. Give the speech of the ambassadors of the Aquatuci in dir. disc., and also Cæsar's reply, ch. 32.
71 17 CHAP. 32. consuetudine ... merito: cf. note on 65 9. This is a good example of the free use of the ablative case in Latin. If consuetudine were alone we should call it manner, "that in accordance," etc.; if merito were alone we should call it cause. Cæsar in using them both did not think of either category; to him they were both ablatives and needed no classification. We may call them cause if we like.
71 19 aries: a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework, and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 93). — attigisset ... dedidissent stand for attigerit ... dedideritis (fut. perf.) of the dir.: § 551. c (327. a); B. 291. 1; G. 574; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.
71 20 nisi armis traditis: cf. nisi munitis castris, 63 19.
71 21 facturum: i.e. in case they came to terms.—ne quam, lest any: § 310. a (105. d'); B. 91. 5; G. 315; H. 512. 1 (455. 1); H-B. 142.
71 22 re nuntiata ad suos: the idea of motion causes the use of ad; the dat. would refer simply to the utterance of the message, not to its being carried.
71 23 imperarentur: the subjv. shows that this subordinate clause is a part of the indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 534. 2. — facere: sc. se as subj. acc., which is very often omitted by Cæsar; cf. 59 23. We should expect facturos [esse]. The pres. infin. standing for facimus of the dir. is somewhat colloquial; § 468 (276. c); G. 228; H. 533. 2 (467. 5); cf. H-B. 571. — dixerunt: i.e. the ambassadors on their return.
71 25 ut prope ... adaequarent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep space between the wall and the end of the agger almost to the top. See Figs. 43, 76.
72 2 eo die: the day is thought of as fixing the time, not as marking its duration, hence the abl.: § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429);
H-B. 439.—pace . . . usi: i.e. they enjoyed the cessation of war and were peaceable, opposed to their later conduct.

72 3 Chap. 33. ex oppido exire: for the repetition of ex, see § 402 (243. b); B. 214. 2; G. 390; H. 462. 1 (413. N.8); H-B. 408. 1.

72 4 ne quam: see note on 71 21.

72 5 ante into consilio, in accordance with a plan previously agreed upon.

72 6 quod crediderant: a reason stated on the writer’s own authority, hence the indic.; cf. 49 12, 56 23.—praesidia: i.e. those stationed in the castella.

72 8 ex corte: abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 224; G. 396; H. 470 (415. iii); H-B. 406. 4.

72 9 viminibus interitis: in the same construction as cortece.

72 10 pellibus: abl.; § 364 (225. d'); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376. b.

72 11 qua, where; an abl. or instrumental form, used adverbially.

72 13 celeriter: note the emphatic position. Caesar had ordered them to give the signal, in case of any disturbance, and to do it instantly.—ignibus: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watch-tower.

72 14 eo, to that place.—concursum . . . pugnatum: impers. use of pass.; § 208. d (146. d'); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. a. 1; see note on 23 1.

72 15 ita . . . ut, they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to fight.—in extrema spe, for their last chance (lit. in the last hope).

72 16 iniquo loco: § 429. 1 (258. f'); B. 228. i. b; G. 385. N.1; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436.—qui . . . iacerent: subjv. of characteristic; cf. 51 4, 68 12, 68 26.

72 17 in una virtute, in valor alone.—cum . . . consisteret, at a time when, etc.; see note on 62 18.

72 18 ad, about.

72 19 postridie eius dies: cf. 20 5 and note.

72 21 sectionem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people, as slaves, with all their possessions.

72 22 capitum: cf. 26 7.—milium: pred. gen., after esse understood.

72 25 Chap. 34. Venetos, etc.: the name of the Veneti survives in the modern Vannes; that of the Redones, in Rennes.

72 26 maritimae civitates: inhabiting the modern Brittany and Normandy; they are spoken of at length in Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.

73 4 Chap. 35. perlata: notice the force of per; the news travelled from tribe to tribe.
73 s incolerent: subj. of integral part; § 593 (342); B. 324. i; G. 663. 1; H. 652. i (529. ii. N.1 1); H-B. 539.

73 6 se... daturas: fem. because they were representatives sent by the tribes and spoke for them.

73 7 in Italian: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Cæsar's province extended to the Rubicon.—Illyricum: this province formed part of Cæsar's government, but he went there only during the winter season; see 78 10.

73 9 Carnutes: their country lay between the Seine and the Loire, comprising the modern Orléans, formerly their capital; their name is preserved in the modern Chartres.—Andes (whence Anjou): near the lower Loire.—Turonos: preserved in Tours. These camps made a cordon from Orléans through Angiers and Tours and probably Vannes along the Loire to the sea-coast.—quaeque civitates: translate as if et civitates quae.

73 12 supplicatio, a public thanksgiving: ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. But Cæsar's party was now all-powerful at Rome. — quod: for id quod; § 307. d. n. (200. e. n.); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. r.2; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. a. n.3.

BOOK THIRD. — B.C. 56.

ALPINE CAMPAIGN. — The higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march. The two legions sent by Cæsar under Q. Pedius (Bk. ii. ch. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people while passing into the valley of the Rhone above Lake Geneva; hence this expedition, sent in the fall of 57, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes.

READING REFERENCES ON CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 9.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 11.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 4.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 6.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 4.

74 1 cum in Italian proficisceretur Caesar: cf. this with the beginning of the second book, cum esset Caesar in, etc. There the verb is made emphatic because the place where he was has been already named, and his
being absent is the most important idea. Here he is going to speak about a road to Italy across the Alps. Hence his destination becomes important and so takes the first place. If this were the first book, it would begin with Caesar, the principal personage in the narrative. If his going away were the main thing, it would begin with profisciscetur. But as it is, the route across, and so his destination, is here the main thing. Hence instantly the Latin order corresponds to the thought, and we have the form here presented.—profisciscetur: the familiar use of the subjv. with cum in descriptive clauses; cf. 11 7, 62 13. —Galbami: this officer was one of the assassins of Caesar, his old general. The emperor Galba, was his great-grandson.

74 3 qui a finibus, etc.: Geneva seems to have been at the northeast corner of the Allobroges' territory. Between that point and the entrance to the Rhone must have been the country of the Nantuates. On the other side of the Rhone were the Seduni and Veragri. See maps, Figs. 6, 46.

74 5 iter per Alpis: the pass of the Great St. Bernard, which reaches the Rhone valley at Martigny (the ancient Octodurus) at the great bend of the river. This was the shortest route across the Alps at this period. Hannibal is said to have crossed by the Little St. Bernard, and the pass by Mont Genèvre was also in use. —magnum cum periculo, but only with great danger, referring probably rather to the savage tribes than to the dangers of the way.

74 6 magnis portoriis, heavy transit-duties: portoriis and periculo are ablatives of manner; for meaning, see note on 15 23. — mercatores: see note on 1 8.

74 7 arbitraretur: informal indir. disc. The form of the original would be arbitraris with an inv. in the conclusion, which is absorbed in permissit and the following uti-clause; see note on 32 91.

74 8 hiemandi causa: cf. 39 26, 56 15.

74 9 secundis . . . factis, etc.: see notes on 15 19, 49 6 (last note).

74 15 hic, eius: both refer to vicus. — flumine, the Dranse.

74 17 concessit, etc.: he seems to have deprived the natives of one-half of their village to accommodate his troops, and to have left the rest to them.

75 3 Chap. 2. concesserat: indic. because not part of the indir. disc.; cf. qui . . . appellantur, 52 5 and note.

75 4 montis: not the higher ranges, but the lower heights directly upon the valley.

75 5 id, this, in apposition with ut . . . caperent; cf. note on 4 17.

75 8 neque eam plenissimam, etc., and that not entirely full. The twelfth legion had suffered severely in the battle on the Sambre (Bk. ii.
ch. 25), and was probably already below the normal strength before the
detachments were sent off. — detractis: see 74 11.

75 9 commenatus . . . causa: gerundive of purpose; cf. gerund, 74 8.

75 10 desperávérant, existímatabant, etc.: notice the imperfects describ-
ing the situation; see note on 3 5.

75 11 cum ipsi . . . decurrerent, when they should charge down from
the hills upon the valley. The imperf. subjv. of indir. disc. with cum is
here equivalent to the fut. indic. of dir. disc.

75 13 accédébat quod, and besides (lit. it was added that). The subject
of accédébat is the clause quod . . . dolebant; cf. 60 25.

76 2 Romanos . . . diungere: indir. disc. after persuásamus habeánt
— they had persuaded themselves (lit. they had it persuaded to themselves).
With persuásamus habeánt cf. coactum habeánt, 13 4, compertum habère,
40 90, habere explorata, 51 8, and notes.

76 6 CHAP. 3. hibernórum: see chapter on military affairs, v. In
the present case, Galba saved labor by appropriating a part of the Gallic
buildings without much ceremony; but he proceeded to lay out the usual
fortifications (munitiones).

76 7 perfectae: referring both to opus and munitiones, but agreeing
with the nearer; cf. 24 7.

76 10 consilio: i.e. of tribunes, cavalry officers, and first centurions.

76 11 quo in consilio: cf. 25 5, 58 9, and notes.

76 14 subsidio veniri, that any one should come to their aid: veniri is
impers., sc. posset implied in possent; subsidio is dat. of service or end
for which.

76 15 non nullae . . . sententiae, several opinions (or votes) given by the
officers in council.

76 18 maiorí . . . placuit, it was determined by the majority. — hoc . . .
defendere, to reserve this course for the extremity, and meanwhile, etc.

76 21 CHAP. 4. rebus . . . administrándis: dat. of the gerundive, ex-
pressing purpose; an unusual construction, the acc. with ad or in or the
gen. with causa being much more common. Why is constituisseát in
the subjv.?

76 23 decurrere, conígere, propugnáre, mittère, occurrere, ferre, supe-
rarí: histor. infinitives, describing the scene and implying incessant action;
cf. 13 18, 70 17, and notes.

76 24 gaësa: Gallic javelins of unknown form. — integris viribus (abl.
abs.), as long as their strength was unimpaired.

76 27 eo: adv. — occurrere, ran to meet the danger.

76 29 allíi, while others. — quarám rerum, things of which; cf. 30 19,
38 19, 62 20, and notes. The gen. is partitive with nihil.
Campaign against the Veneti.

77 1 non modo...sed ne...quidem, not only not, but not even, etc.; we should expect another negative after modo, but the Latin regularly omits it where both parts have the same predicate. Note the emphasis on saucio.

77 3 sui recipiendi: cf. 40 15 and note.
77 5 Chap. 5. cum...pugnaretur, when the fight had been (and was still) going on: § 471. b (277. 6); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. ii. 2); H-B. 485.
77 7 languidioribus nostris: abl. abs., expressing cause.
77 9 Baculus: see 67 1 and note.
77 13 unam: note the emphasis, only one.
77 14 experientur: note that the histor. pres. docent has the effect of a secondary tense on the dependent verb.
77 15 intermittent: a command in indir. disc., following certiores facit in the sense of instructs.
77 16 tela...exciperent: i.e. the Romans were to gather up the spent weapons to use them against the enemy, as their weapons were almost exhausted (l. 6).
77 19 Chap. 6. quod = id quod: cf. 73 12.
77 20 cognoscendi facultatem, opportunity of finding out.—sui conligendi, of collecting their wits: observe that sui is plural in meaning; cf. sui recipiendi, l. 3, above, and note.
77 23 circumventos interficiunt, they surround and kill.—ex milibus: for part. gen. after parte.
77 27 armis: abl. of separation.
77 28 exutis: agreeing with copiis; § 364 (225. d'); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 3. ftn.2; in their flight they threw their arms away. Of course the Romans did not catch them and strip off their arms.
77 29 fortunam temptare: cf. English “to tempt Providence.”—alio consilio...aliis rebus viderat, remembered that he had come with one design, and saw that he had met a different state of things.

NAVAL CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI.—The Veneti inhabited the peninsula of Aremorica called Bretagne, Brittany, or Little Britain, since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion. It has always been the home of the hardiest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast being clearly given in Caesar’s narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Caesar’s campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

78 8 Chap. 7. Germanis: i.e. under Ariovistus. It will be noticed that the geographical order, and not the order of events, is followed in
this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the Seduni are mentioned as the most important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.

78 10 Illyricum: part of Caesar's province.
78 19 Crassus: see 46 24-27, 72 24 ff.; for force of adulscens, see note on 46 25.
78 13 mare: following proximus with the construction of prope; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.1; H. 435. 2 (391. 2); H-B. 380. 6.
78 14 praefectos: officers of cavalry and auxiliaries.
78 15 compluris goes with civitatis.
78 19 Chap. 8. huius civitatis: i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.
78 20 orae: part. gen. — regionum: added to describe and limit orae.
78 21 Britanniam: at this time an important Celtic country, having close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain. — consuerunt, are accustomed: § 476 (279. e); B. 262. A; G. 236. r.; H. 299. 2 (297. 1. 2); H-B. 487. Cf. 59 14.
78 23 in magno . . . aperti: i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent storms.
78 24 omnis . . . habent vectigalis: i.e. levy tolls upon them all; vectigalis is in pred. app. with omnis.
78 28 subita . . . consilia: this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Caesar and other Roman historians.
79 5 quam acceperint: § 592 (341); B. 323; G. 628; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 1. a.
79 6 quam perferre, than to endure, following the comparative contained in malint.
79 9 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in legationem mittunt. The dir. disc. would be si vis, etc., remilte.
79 11 Chap. 9. aberat longius, was too far off; i.e. to take command at once in person. — navis longas, galleys. See chapter on military affairs, ix, and Figs. 48, 51. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars; see 84 25-28.
79 19 Ligeri: the Loire, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering. — institui, to be organized, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.
80 1 cum primum: the first moment when (lit. when first). Caesar had spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.
80 3 [certiores facti]: omit in translation.
Campaign against the Veneti. 221

80 4 admississent: indir. quest. — legatos . . . coniectos (the specific act): in app. with facinus, but the construction is determined by intellectu-gebant; see note on 4 17; legatos: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Cæsar's legati or lieutenants.

80 5 quod nomen: cf. quarum rerum, 76 29 and note.
80 9 pedestria itinera, etc., approaches by land.
80 10 concussa, impeditam: with esse. They depend upon a sciebant.
80 11 inscientiam: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance. — neque . . . confidebant, and they trusted that our armies could not, etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.

80 13 ut . . . acciderent, etc., granting that, etc.: ut here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the "Gallic War." Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 440 (266. c); B. 278; G. 608; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 532. 2. b.

81 1 posse and the following infinitives depend upon perspiciebant, l. 5.
81 3 gesturi essent: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conj. referring to future time.

81 4 longe aliam . . . atque, very different . . . from; cf. aliter ac, 62 6.— concluso: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.

81 9 socios: pred. apposition; cf. vectigalis, 78 25.— Osismos, etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexovii remains in Lisieux; Namnetes in Nantes; Diablantes in Jablins.

81 10. iniuria retentorum equitum, the wrong done by detaining the knights: § 497 (292. a); B. 337. 5; G. 664. R.²; H. 636. 4 (549. 5. N²); H-B. 608. 2. — rebellio, renewal of hostilities (not rebellion).

81 16 ne . . . arbitrarentur: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose clause is under the same construction as the nominatives iniuria, defectio, etc., which express other reasons for Cæsar's action, and are all in apposition with multa.)

81 17 idem: subj. of licere.

81 19 excitari: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a general truth; while odiisse answers to oderunt taken as a pres., all men naturally hate.

81 20 priusquam . . . consiprarent: see note on 38 27.

81 24 CHAP. II. flumini: dat. with proximi, but cf. 78 13.

81 25 adeat: after mandat, which expresses a command; cf. 6 10 and note; § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2): H-B. 502. 3. a.
Notes: Caesar.

81 **auxilio**: dat. of service or end for which. —**arcessiti [esse]**
dicebantur, were reported to have been invited.

82 2 **Crassum**: cf. 78 12 and note.

82 3 **Aquitaniam**: in southwest Gaul; see 27–10. These peoples were
of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest
in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt described in Book vii.

82 6 **Venellos, etc.**: in Normandy.

82 7 **distinendum**: cf. *pontem faciendum curat*, 11 5 and note.—
**Brutum**: afterwards one of the conspirators against Caesar, with the more
celebrated Marcus Brutus.

82 8 **Pictonibus, Santonias**: on the coast south of the Loire (*Poitou
and Saintonge*).

82 12 **Chap. 12. eius modi...ut, of such sort that.**

82 13 **lingulis**: some of these narrow tongues of land run out to sea
several miles.

82 14 **cum...incitavisset**: i.e. at high tide. — [bis]: apparently an
error of the MSS. Some editors read xxiv instead of xii; others refer it
to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers.

82 15 **quod...addictarentur**: subjv. as an integral part of the result
clause.

82 16 **minuente, at the ebb**: intransitive.

82 17 **utraque re, in either case.**

82 18 **superati**, agreeing with the subject of *coeperant*.

82 19 **his** (aggere ac molibus)...**adaequatis, when these were brought
level with the walls.**

General von Göler explains the Roman works as follows: "A dike was
extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town.
While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space
within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the
Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly
pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus
the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes them-
selves, being raised to the height of the walls, each served the purpose of an
*agger* for approach to the town."

82 23 **haec...faciebant, this they continued to do**: repeated action.

82 24 **partem**: duration of time.

82 25 **summa**: with *difficultas*; note the emphasis. —**vasto mari, etc.**: in
each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tide-
less waters of the Mediterranean. The words are abl. abs., which in ex-
pressions of time is closely related to the locative; see § 419 (255) ftn.; cf.
H-B. 421. 4.
Campaign against the Veneti.

82 28 Chap. 13. namque; introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti, "(but the Veneti had less trouble) for." — ipsorum, their own.

82 29 alique uno: abl. of degree of difference.

83 1 navium: depending on carinae understood. — quo ... possent:

cf. 7 15, 60 27.

83 2 atque item puppes, and the sterns too: accommodatae (being adapted) standing as an additional predicate.

83 4 quamvis: from quivis.

83 5 transtra, etc., the cross benches (for the rowers) of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a [man's] thumb.

83 7 pelles: the Romans used sails made of flax, the Veneti of skins untanned (pelles) or tanned (alutae).

83 11 tanta onera navium, ships of so great weight. — non satis com-

mode, not very well.

83 12 nostrae classi: dat. of possession, but translate, the encounter of our fleet with, etc.

83 13 praestaret, had the advantage (i.e. our fleet).

83 14 reliqua: here a neut. plur. substantive, everything else.

83 15 eis: dat. with nocere; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426.

1 (385. i); H-B. 362.

83 16 rostro: see Figs. 48, 51.

84 2 copulis: the Romans were not very skilful in naval tactics, and they always aimed, by means of grappling hooks and boarding bridges, to get aboard the enemy's ship and reduce the conflict as soon as possible to a hand-to-hand combat, in which they excelled. — accedebat ut, there was this additional advantage that, followed by the result clauses, ferrent, consis-
terent, and tamerent; cf. 41 15, 51 6.

84 3 se vento dedissent, ran before the wind. The phrase is a nautical one; hence venus is repeated to give the complete expression.

84 4 consisterent, rode at anchor.

84 5 ab aestu relictae: trans. if or when, etc.; § 496 (292); B. 337. 2. a, b; G. 664 ff.; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 604. 3. — nihil: cf. 63 13 and note.

84 8 Chap. 14. neque: see note on 80 11.

84 9 eis noceri posse, they could be harmed. Observe that the expression is imperf., and cf. 56 24 and note.

84 10 quae ubi: cf. note on qui cum, 58 9.

84 11 paratissimae, fully equipped; ornatisimae, thoroughly furnished. The battle was probably fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Caeser was encamped. The fleet of Crassus issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of
the Veneti came out of the Auray estuary, and passing through the Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite Cæsar's camp. See Fig. 49.

84 13 neque satis Bruto . . . constabat, and Brutus could not make out. agerent and insisterent refer to Brutus and his officers.

84 14 tribunis militum, etc. : in the ancient modes of fighting, the fleet was only a part of the army, and was commanded by the military officers, as here.

84 16 noceri, etc. : cf. similar phrase above, l. 9.

84 17 excitatis, raised. The abl. abs. has a concessive force, as is shown by the following tamen.

84 18 ex barbaris navibus, on the enemy's ships ; for force of ex, cf. una ex parte, ex itinere, etc.

84 20 magno usui, of great service (cf. auxilio, 81 96), in fact turning threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint at possible defeat.

84 22 muralium falcium, wall-hooks, long poles with sickle-shaped hooks attached, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Fig. 93). The gen. limits formae understood, which would be dat., after abseimili.—cum—whenever, as often as, and the sentence following is a general condition, the verbs comprehensi adductique erant being in the protasis, and praerumpebantur in the apodosis expressing repeated action, which is regularly expressed in Latin by the indic.; cf. 59 13 and note.

84 24 praerumpebantur, etc., they [the halyards] were torn away by driving the ship forward with the oars.

84 26 Gallicis navibus : dat. of reference used for poss. gen.

85 1 paulo fortius factum : one of Cæsar's mild expressions for an act of remarkable daring.

85 4 Chap. 15. cum, etc. : another general condition; see note on 84 22. — singulas, etc. : i.e. two or three ships surround each one of the enemy's.

85 6 contendebant, expressing repeated action; cf. with contenderunt below, which describes a single act; cf. 75 10. — quod postquam : cf. quae ubi, 84 10 and note.

85 8 cum . . . reperiretur : a causal clause : cf. 2 15, 57 1.

85 9 conversis . . . navibus : i.e. steered so as to run before the wind.

The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this quarter are from the east or northeast,—the precise winds needed for the two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is
just what happened on the day of the battle. The calm was probably just after midday.

85 14 *pervenerint, came to land*; for the tense, cf. 28 6, 50 22, the perf. subjv. being used, as usual, to express past time in a result clause, without regard to sequence of tense.

85 15 *hora III (quarta):* about 10 A.M.

86 2 Chap. 16. *cum . . . tum, while . . . at the same time.*

86 4 *convenerant, coegerant:* i.e. for this war. — *quod ubique, all that there were anywhere,* followed by the part. gen. *navium.*

86 5 *quo, whither:* i.e. any refuge.

86 8 *eo gravius . . . quo,* the more severely, etc., *in order that. — vindicandum [esse] (impers.), punishment should be inflicted.*

86 10 *sub corona vendidit, sold [as slaves] at public auction; lit. under the wrath,* since the captives were crowned like animals to be sacrificed, as indeed they had been in earlier times. Thus the only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble.

86 13 Chap. 17. *Venellorum:* along the Channel coast of Normandy.

86 14 *his:* cf. *classi, 84 13.*

86 16 *magnas copias:* most likely meaning here irregular troops as opposed to *exercitum.* — *his paucis diebus:* i.e. about the same time.

86 17 *Eburovices:* this branch of the Aulerci lived on the south side of the lower Seine.

86 18 *nolebant:* i.e. the Senate. — *claustrum:* i.e. against the Romans.

86 20 *perditorum, desperate:* there might well be many such, as it was now the third year of constant war in Gaul.

86 23 *loco, castris:* locative ablatives without a prep.; cf. 13 6, 57 5 and note.

86 24 *cum:* concessive.

87 1 *eo absente:* i.e. Cæsar. A *legatus* regularly had no *imperium,* or independent command, but served under that of his superior.

87 3 *dimicandum [esse]:* impers., with *legato* as dat. of apparent agent.

87 8 Chap. 18. *pro perfuga, in the character of a deserter.*

87 10 *neque longius ab esse quin:* an idiomatic shorthand expression amounting to *that not later than the following night Sabinus would,* etc.

87 14 *iri:* depending on *opertere.*

87 15 *superiorum dierum, on the previous days:* see note on *belli,* below.

87 17 *spes . . . belli:* subj. gen. denoting the source; notice that the regular way to express the relation between two substantive ideas is by the genitive. One idea is conceived as belonging to the other in some sense. See note, 62 20.
Notes: Cæsar.

87 18 fere . . . credunt, most men are glad to believe, etc.
87 19 non prius . . . quam, not . . . until: cf. 81 20.
87 21 ut . . . victoria (abl. abs.), as if victory were already assured.
87 22 armentis, cuttings, young growth trimmed off from trees.—vir-
gultia, brushwood.
87 25 Chap. 19. mille: an indecl. adj. in agreement with passus.
88 1 quam . . . spati, as little time as possible, subj. of dareetur.
88 2 que, and (consequently), as often with -que.
88 7 Note the emphasis on primum and statim.
88 8 quos: the antecedent is eorum.
88 15 animus, etc.: cf. 78 98 and note.

Southern Gaul.—The campaign in Aquitania was made merely for strategic
reasons, was not provoked by any attack or threat of war, and appears to have been
quite unnecessary (see note on 82 8) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aqui-
tani had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small, isolated
clans, and were besides of more industrious habits than the Gauls, being good miners
and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of
the war.

88 17 Chap. 20. P. Crassus, etc.: cf. 82 2–5.
88 18 ante dictum est: i.e. in 2 7–10. Omit bracketed words in lines
18–20.
88 19 tertia pars: these statements show extreme ignorance, as would
be natural (cf. the account of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 12–14).
88 21 Praeconinus, Manlius: these defeats were twenty-two years
before (B.C. 78), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the
Marian party, who held Spain for six years against Rome. (See Plutarch’s
“Life of Sertorius.”)

88 26 Tolosa et Narbone: Tolosa was an old Gallic town; Narbo, a
Roman colony established by the policy of Gaius Gracchus, b.c. 118. It
became the capital of the Roman province, to which it gave its name,
Narbonensis.

88 27 his regionibus: dat. after finitimae, which agrees with civitates.
Omit [ex].
88 28 nominatim evocatis: i.e. veterans who had served their term,
but were willing to reënlist. See chapter on military affairs, iv. a.—So-
tiatium: south of the Garonne, southeast of the modern Bordeaux; the
name remains in the modern Sós.

89 5 Chap. 21. superioribus victoriis: i.e. those just related;
§ 431. a (254. b. 2); B. 218. 3; G. 401. N. 8; H. 476. 3 (425. ii. 1. N.); H-B.
424.
89 7 sine imperatore . . . adulescentulo duce: an imperator is the chief commander of an army, holding the imperium, or power of military command conferred on him by regular formalities; dux is a general designation for any person holding a command, and might be given to a subordinate officer, like Crassus, who acted as an agent and under the imperium of his superiors.

89 9 perspici: the subject is the indir. quest. quid . . . possent.

89 12 vineas turrisque egit: see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 33, 43, 78, 98, 99.

89 13 cuniculis, mines (lit. rabbits), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. The mine was intended to run under the Roman agger. The roof was carefully propped up with wooden posts, and these being set on fire, when they were burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

89 15 aerariae secturaeque: this seems to mean copper mines and quarries (not entirely underground); but the meaning of the words is not perfectly clear. — diligentia: the Romans doubtless met the attack with countermines.

89 18 faciunt, they do (it).

89 21 CHAP. 22. soldurios, paid retainers (hence soldiers), a Gallic word. It is related that these soldurii were dressed in royal garments like their chief.

89 22 condicio: the same condition of service was found among the Germans (Bk. vi. ch. 23), and was the foundation of feudal vassalage. — commodis: abl. with fruantur.

89 23 quorum amicitiae, to whose friendship. — si quid . . . accidat: a euphemism, cf. 16 14.

89 24 sibi mortem, etc.: cf. 4 15.

89 26 qui . . . recusaret: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 5 6, 51 4.

89 27 cum his (repeated from cum devotis; cf. repetition of vidit, 67 7), with these (I say).

90 4 CHAP. 23. Vocatium, etc.: these were farther west.

90 7 quibus, within which.

90 8 quoqueversus, in every direction (quoque, the adverb of place formed from the distributive quisque; versus, the adverb of direction usually connected with prepositions, as adversus). It is often written quoqueversum.

90 10 citerioris: i.e. from the standpoint of Rome; now northern Spain. — Hispaniae: these Iberian populations were allied to the Aquitani (Bk. i. ch. 1). Spain had been subject to Rome for more than 150 years, but was always rather mutinous, and had made several attempts at
independence, especially under Sertorius, who defied Rome for ten years, b.C. 82-72; see note on 88 91. It was also the last stronghold of Pompey's party in the Civil War, till finally subdued at Munda, b.C. 45. — finitimae: pred. adj. agreeing with quae.

90 15 consuetudine populi Romani: a custom which they had learned in the service with Sertorius.

90 16 loca capere, etc.: i.e. to practise Roman tactics.

90 18 suas . . . augeri, etc.: these infin. clauses are in app. with quod. — diduci, be stationed in various places, to keep track of the enemy and prevent being surrounded.

90 22 decertaret: subjv. of result with quin after cunctandum [esse]; § 558 (319. d’); B. 283. 4; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b; cf. 29 5, 50 9, 50 25.

90 25 Chap. 24. duplci: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three (triplex acies).

90 26 in medium aciem: i.e. where they would be kept steady by his legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.

90 27 exspectabat, waited (to see) what, etc.

91 1 obsessis viis . . . potiri, to block the roads, cut off supplies, and win the victory without a wound.

91 3 sese recipere: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

91 4 infirmiores animo, dispirited: § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441. — adoriri cogitabant, had in mind to attack; sc. eos for obj., and see note on 62 16.

91 5 productis copiis: concessive (=although, etc.).

91 6 sua, their own.

91 7 opinione timoris, the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.

91 9 oportere: depending on some word of saying implied in voces. — iretur: cf. note on decertaret, 90 22. Translate freely, that they should go to the camp without further delay.

91 10 ad hostium castra: this is the only instance in the Commentaries of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a level stretch between the hostile camps. The Romans always chose their battle-ground with great care.

91 11 Chap. 25. telis coniectis (abl. abs.), by hurling weapons.

91 13 quibus: abl. with confidebat; § 431 (254. b); B. 219. 1. a; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. i. N.); H-B. 437.

91 14 lapidibus . . . comportandis: gerundive expression of means. — aggerem: i.e. Crassus was building a mound of turf to equal the height of the enemy’s rampart, as in the siege of a city.
91 15 opinionem pugnantium: i.e. they made an impression as if actually engaged.
92 2 ex loco, etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.
92 4 ab decumana porta: i.e. in the rear, where this gate was situated (see Fig. 77). The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps, probably under the instruction of the Sertorian officers.
92 13 prius . . . quam: this is often used with the indic. to show that one actual fact precedes another, just as succession is denoted by postquam. Here the subjv. subordinates the temporal clause to the main idea, like the subjv. with cum; cf. also 57 20 and note.
92 14 videri: sc. posse from the following posset. — rei: part. gen.
92 18 per, over.
92 20 apertissimis campis (see note on 62 27): i.e. the broad, treeless plains which abound in this part of the country.
92 21 quae: acc. plur.; the antecedent is milium. — Cantabris: a very hardy people of the western Pyrenees.
92 26 Chap. 27. Tarbelli, etc.: some of the names will be recognized in the modern Tarbes, Bigorre, Garonne.
93 3 qui . . . essent: cf. 89 26 and note. — neque: cf. 80 11.
93 4 arbitratus, thinking: the perf. part. of dep. verbs often has a present force.
93 5 alia . . . ac: cf. 62 6.
93 8 continentis, continuous: i.e. far-stretching.
93 15 longius, too far (farther than was safe). — locis: loc. abl., as usual without a prep.
93 17 Chap. 29. deinceps: i.e. in the days next following.
93 18 inermibus . . . militibus: abl. abs.
93 20 conversam, fronting, i.e. with the boughs turned towards the enemy. — pro vallo, as a palisade.
93 23 tenerentur, etc.: i.e. were just being seized.
93 24 eius modi . . . uti . . . intermitteretur, such that the work was constantly interrupted.
93 26 sub pellibus: the tents were of leather.
93 28 Aulercis, etc.: along the Seine, near Evreux and Lisieux.
BOOK FOURTH. — B.C. 55.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS. — The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of two tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Caesar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman Empire and the barbarian world.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS.

Dodge's Caesar, chap. 10.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, chap. 12.
Froude's Caesar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Caesar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 5.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Plutarch's Lives, Caesar.
Tacitus's Germania.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 5.

94 1 ea quae, etc.: mark the emphasis as shown by the order and compare the opening of Bk. iii and note. — Pompeio, Crasso: i.e. the year B.C. 55. Observe that the usual way of fixing a year is by naming the consuls for that year. The coalition between Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus, sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Caesar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands the whole control of affairs at home (see Introduction, "Life of Caesar").

94 2 Usipetes, Tencteri: beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.
94 4 quo: adv. = in quod.
94 5 quod . . . prohibebantur: Caesar states this reason as his own, therefore the indic. — Suevis: this people (the modern Swabians) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several tribes.
94 6 premebantur, prohibebantur: the imperfects here express that which was still going on, they were being hard pressed, etc.
94 8 centum pagos (see 10 19): there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the Hundred, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each hundred seems
to have sent 1000 men (singula milia) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.

94 9 bellandi causa: gerund, expressing purpose with causa. Observe that causa in this use always follows its case; cf. above causa transeundi, with a totally different meaning.

94 11 hi...illi, the latter...the former.—anno post, the following year: § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. i; G. 403. n.4; H. 488. i (430); cf. H-B. 424.

94 12 ratio, theory (theoretical knowledge); usus, practice (knowledge derived from experience).

94 13 sed: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, but, etc.—privati...agri: i.e. the land was held in tribal communities.

94 14 longius anno: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. vi. ch. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.

94 15 frumento (abl. of means), etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 22, and Tacitus, Ger. 27).—maximam partem: adv. acc.; it is worth while to learn the few words that commonly occur in this construction; § 390. e, 397. a (240. a, b); B. 185. i; G. 334. r.2; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 388.


95 1 quod...faciunt: this clause is a parenthesis; because, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will,—a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family and civil discipline.

95 3 alit: the subject is quae res.—hominis [eos] efficit, makes [them] men, etc.

95 4 eam: correl. with ut, introducing a clause of result.—locis (abl. abs., concessive) frigidissimis, even in their extreme climate.

95 5 vestitus: part. gen. with quicquam.—haberent, have; lavarentur, bathe: imperf. by sequence of tenses following adduxerunt; § 485. a (287. a); B. 268. i; G. 511. r.8; H. 546 (495. i); H-B. 481.

95 8 Chap. 2. eo ut...habeant, so (on this account) that they may have (some one) to whom, etc.

95 9 quam quo...desiderent, than that they want, etc. For the use of quo expressing cause with the implied negative, see § 502. N. (141. R.); B. 323; G. 541. N.2; H. 588. ii. 2 (516. 2); H-B. 535. 2. h.

95 11 impenso pretio, at high cost.—importatis non utuntur, do not import for use (lit. do not use imported).
Notes: Caesar.

95 13 deformia, ill-shaped.—summi laboris, (capable) of great labor (gen. of quality).
95 20 quamvis pauci, however few.—vinum: cf. the description of the Nervii, 59 29–36. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.
95 23 Chap. 3. publice, as a community.
95 26 una . . . Suevis, extending from (the territory of) the Suevi in one direction.—sexcenta: probably exaggerated.—agri, their lands.
95 27 Ubii: along the Rhine, opposite Cologne.
96 1 paulo . . . humaniores, somewhat more civilised than the others, although they are of the same race (Germans).
96 4 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen.
96 5 gravitatem, importance, referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while amplitudinem refers to their great numbers.
96 7 vectigalis: sc. eos referring to the Ubii.—humiliores (pred.): in translating sc. so as to be.
96 9 Chap. 4. in eadem causa, in the same situation.
96 12 quas regiones: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.
96 13 ad utramque ripam, along both banks.
96 14 multitudinis: see 102 10.
96 16 cis Rhenum: i.e. the west side.
96 18 vi contendere, to force a passage.
96 22 confecto: with itinere.
96 23 oppresserunt: not oppressed; see note on obtinere, 21.
97 2 priusquam . . . fieret: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. b; see also note on 38 27.
97 5 partem: acc. of time.—eorum copiis, on their supplies (cattle and grain).
97 6 Chap. 5. infirmatatem, weakness of purpose = sickness.
97 8 nihil . . . committendum, no confidence should be placed in them. Observe that committendum [esse] is impers. and nihil adv. acc.
97 9 est . . . consuetudinis, it is [a point] of Gallic custom: § 343. c (214. d); B. 198. 3; G. 366. r.1; H. 439 (401); H-B. 340.—ut . . . cogant, etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result in app. with hoc.
97 14 rebus atque auditionibus, facts and hearsays.
97 15 quorum eos . . . paenitere: § 354. b (221. b); B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457 (409. iii); H-B. 352.—in vestigio, on the spot: cf. 95 16.
97 16 serviant, are slaves to.—plerique: i.e. the travellers and traders.
97 17 eorum: i.e. the questioners.
Campaign against the Germans.

97 18 Ch. 6. graviori bello, too serious a war (i.e. unmanageable): § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

97 19 maturius, earlier, i.e. in the season. — ad exercitum: the army was now in Normandy; see 93 28.

97 20 facta: sc. esse; so with missas below.

97 21 missas legationes, etc.: these infinit. clauses explain ea.

97 22 uti . . . discenderent: i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgæ, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.

97 23 postulassent: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.; § 478, 519, 585 (281, 316, 336, b); B. 264, 312. 2, 318; G. 244, 516; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 468. 6, 536, 470. ftm. — fore parata, should be made ready (used for the fut. infinit. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like promiserunt, implied in invitatos. Instead of fore parata, we might expect fore ut pararentur.

97 24 Eburorum, etc.: German tribes.

97 27 permulisae, calmed from their terror (lit. soothed by stroking, like a nervous horse).

98 1 Ch. 7. equitibus delectis: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

98 3 a quibus: refers to locis.

98 5 priores, first, or, as aggressors (cf. the language of Ariovistus, Bk. i. ch. 36). — neque recusare, they do not decline, followed by quin and subjv.; cf. 50 25.

98 7 [haec]: may be translated. — quicumque: the antecedent is eis (dat.) implied with resistere.

98 8 neque deprecari, and ask no quarter (lit. and not beg off). — haec tamen dicere, this however they did say; supply se for subj. of dicere and following infinitives. For similar instances, see 59 23, 71 6, 71 23.

98 10 eis: i.e. to the Romans. — attribuant, subjv. in indir. disc. for inv. of the direct.

98 11 eos: sc. agros.

98 12 concedere, yield, as inferior.

98 13 reliquum . . . neminem: the position gives a force like, besides these there was no one else on earth, etc.

98 15 Ch. 8. quae visum est, what (it) seemed proper (to answer). He probably answered somewhat as in Bk. i. chs. 14 and 43.

98 20 Ubiorum: see ch. 3.

98 21 quorum sint, etc., whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him to (lit. and) complain, etc.

98 25 Ch. 9. post diem tertium (= tertio die), i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually counted in the Roman reckoning.
98 se propius se: cf. 41 10. — id: i.e. the two days’ delay (expressed by ne...moyret).
99 1 trans: i.e. westwardly.
99 2 expectari: change the voice and translate as active, they were waiting for.
99 4 CHAP. 10. Voségo, the Vosges: in fact, the Meuse flows from the plateau of Langres.
99 5 parte...recepta: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions; one branch (Vocalus, the modern Waal) unites with the Meuse near Bois le Duc (see note, ch. 15).
99 6 Omit the words in brackets.
99 9 Nantuantium: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 1, where they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch or kindred tribe. The list of names here is incomplete.
99 12 multis...effectis: translate actively, making many, etc.
99 13 feris...nationibus: see the introduction to Motley’s “Dutch Republic.”
99 15 capitibus, mouths (more commonly, sources).
99 17 CHAP. 11. ut erat constitutum, as had been arranged (i.e. the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Cæsar’s consent is omitted in ch. 9. It is there stated merely that they said they would return.
99 19 eos equites (antecedent to qui), the cavalry who, etc.
99 20 antecessissent: attracted into the subjv. by the ut-clause; cf. 73 5. — praemitteret: used without an object; translate send word.
99 21 sibi: i.e. the Germans. — potestatem: see note on 16 7.
99 22 quorum si, and if their: cf. note on qui cum, 58 9.
99 23 condicione...usuros, would accept the terms: see ch. 8.
99 25 dare: sc. petebant uti from l. 19. — eodem illo pertinere, tended the same way (see ch. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive (eodem and illo are adverbs).
99 28 aquationis causa: a small stream (probably the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.
100 3 accessisset: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5.
100 5 CHAP. 12. amplius DCCC, more than eight hundred: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.4; H. 471. 4 (417. i. n.3); H-B. 416. d. Tacitus in his “Germania” (chap. 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry.
100 9 indutilis: dat. of the end for which.
100 10 resistentibus: sc. nostris.
100 11 subfossis, etc.: after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men; observe again, as in 99 12, that an abl. abs. with a pass. part. is often best translated actively.

100 14 venissent: cf. 97 2.

100 17 genere: abl. of source; § 403. a (244. a); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469. 2 (415. ii); H-B. 413. — regnum obtinuerat, had held supreme power.

100 20 quoad: cf. this use and construction with that in l. 2.

100 25 CHAP. 13. neque iam, no longer: knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.

100 26 ab eis qui, from men who, etc., followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

101 1 expectare: subject of esse; note the emphasis of position.

101 2 pementiae: pred. gen.

101 3 quantum . . . auctoritatis, etc., how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle.

101 5 quibus: i.e. the enemy (dat., indir. obj. of dandum [esse]); on the relative serving as a connective, see note, 40 20.

101 7 quaestore: see Bk. i. ch. 52. — ne quem, etc.: cf. 71 21.

101 8 res, in app. with quod . . . venerunt.

101 9 eadem perfidia: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came, as they said, to offer amends for the attack of the day before.

101 11 simul . . . simul, partly . . . partly. — purgandi sui: cf. 77 3, and see § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.¹; H. 626. 3 (542. 1. n.¹); H-B. 614.

101 19 contra atque, contrary to what; see Vocab. Observe the subjunctives of implied indir. disc. in this passage.

101 13 si quid . . . de indutiis, whatever (lit. if anything) they could in the way of truce.

101 14 fallendo: i.e. by another trick. — quos, illos: both refer to the same subject. — quos oblatus [esse] gavisus, delighted that they were put in his power (gavisus, from gaudéo). By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.

101 17 subsequei, to follow in the rear; they usually went in advance (cf. 99 20), but now he could not trust them in the intended attack.

101 18 CHAP. 14. acie triplici: i.e. a march in line of battle; see chapter on military affairs, vi and vii.

101 19 quid ageretur, what was going on.
Notes: Caesar.

101 20 possent: cf. 97 2, 100 14.
101 21 et...et, both...and.
101 23 ne...an...an: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234; the three infinitives all belong to praestaret, whether it was better.
101 24 quorum timor cum: note the emphatic order.
101 29 reliqua multitudo: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder.

102 1 ad quos consecutandos (freq. of sequor), to hunt them down. Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch, in his “Life of Cæsar,” writes that when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, in order that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome. Cato was Cæsar’s bitter political and personal enemy, but still Cæsar’s cruelty and perfidy in this transaction can be justified only on the ground of absolute necessity. To secure the Roman power, he must destroy these Germans in order to establish the Rhine as the Gallic frontier and deter others from crossing.

102 3 Chap. 15. Germani: i.e. those who were fighting.—clamore: i.e. of those who were being massacred.
102 4 signis: figures of animals carried on poles; see Figs. 11, 84, 91.
102 6 reliqua fuga, further flight.
This action is usually placed at the junction of the Rhine and the Meuse. There are many reasons against this, but no other location seems possible without doing violence to the text, and for this no sufficient case is made out.
102 9 ex...timore, (relieved) from the apprehension of so great a war.

102 12 discedendi potestatem, permission to depart. This was a practical acquittal of the charge of treachery.
102 13 veriti: regularly pres. act. in force, fearing.
102 17 Chap. 16. illa, the following.
102 19 suis: note the emphasis on this word.
102 20 cum intellegent: here nearly equivalent to a participle.
102 21 accessit quod, and besides: see Vocab.
102 22 quam...transisse, which, as I mentioned above, had crossed: see 98 27 ff. (the conj. that of indir. disc. cannot be used in English to introduce a rel. clause). Observe that Cæsar the writer uses the first person (commemoravi); Cæsar the actor is always in the third.
102 25 Sugambrorum: living just north of the Ubii.
Campbell against the Germans.

102 27 intulissent: cf. antecessissent, 99 20. — dederent: observe the omission of ut; § 565. a (331. f. r.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. r.²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.².

102 28 finire: see introductory note to Bk. iv.

103 1 equum: pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause Germanos . . . transire.

103 2 sui . . . imperi: pred. gen. of possession after esse, under his power.

103 7 occupationibus rei publicae, by the demands of state affairs.

103 8 transportaret: same construction as ferret.

103 9 futurum [esse]: sc. verb of saying from orabant, l. 5; so, too, for the following sentence.

103 17 Chap. 17. dignitatis: cf. 103 2.

103 19 latitudinem, etc.: Cæsar's passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills, though here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles. The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet, and its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by bridges.

103 21 rationem, plan. The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough-and-ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows (see Fig. 59): —

1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (signa bina sesquipedalia), braced two feet apart and sharpened at the end, are set up by derricks and driven with pile drivers (fistucis) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream.

2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little in the other direction against the stream; the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. It is possible, as Rüstow thinks, that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.

3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (trabs bipedalis), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (fibulis) between the logs of each pair,— which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current.

4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties,— this part of the structure must be taken for granted,— planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (directa materia), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (longurii, crates) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring.
5. Piles (sublicae) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (pro ariete), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge.

103 29 tigna, probably unhewn logs.—bina, two and two, i.e. in pairs.

103 24 pedum duorum: i.e. between the timbers of each pair. —cum . . . defixerat, etc.: cum here equals whenever or as often as and the clause is equivalent to the protasis of a general condition; hence the use of the pluperf. indic.; cf. 84 22 and note.

103 26 sublicae modo, like a pile.

103 27 ut . . . procumbent, so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.

103 29 ab inferiore parte, downstream.—contra . . . conversa, slanting against, agrees with duo [tigna].

103 30 haec utraque . . . distinebantur, these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal [in thickness] to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum . . . distabat), with a pair of ties at each end. For number of utraque, see Vocab.

104 2 quibus [tignis] . . . revinctis, after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions: i.e. the horizontal beams held the piles (tigna) apart, which, sloping in opposite directions, had been secured by the clamps.

104 4 rerum, structure: see note on 44.—quo maior . . . hoc artius: the greater . . . the more closely, abl. of degree of difference. The only doubtful part of the description is in fibulis, of which the exact meaning is somewhat uncertain. They are thought by some to be cross-ties (as, in Fig. 86). But, as the word means properly a kind of clasp exactly like a modern safety-pin, it seems better to suppose they were clamps joining the two piles with perhaps an iron bolt put through, answering to the pin of the fibula.

104 5 haec . . . contexebantur, these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards placed lengthwise.

104 7 sublicae . . . agebantur, piles also were driven on the lower side in a slanting direction, so as to prop the bridge against the current.

104 8 pro ariete, as a buttress.

104 10 aliae item: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not.—spatio: abl. of degree of difference.

104 11 deciendo operis, to throw down the work: pred. gen. expressing tendency or purpose; § 504. a. N.1 (298. r.); B. 339. 6; G. 428. r.3; H. 626. 5 (544. n.3); H-B. 616, last example.
104 12 neu . . . nocerent, and that they [trunci, etc.] might not harm the bridge.

104 14 Chap. 18. diebus X quibus, within ten days from the time when. — coepta erat: pass. because used with the pass. infin.; cf. 53 6; see also I. 20 below.

104 15 traducitur: the histor. pres., resumed from 102 21.

104 16 Sugambrorum: these were a little to the northeast of the bridge.

104 21 hortantibus eis, etc.: i.e. the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.

104 23 in solitudinem: notice that the Latin construction is that following verbs of motion, on account of the meaning of abdiderant; we say hid in, etc.

104 27 Chap. 19. pollicitus: this word implies a main clause in the infin., se daturum, on which the conditional clause would depend. This clause does not appear, but the dependent clause remains in the subjv. according to the rule.

104 28 premerentur: a good example of the subjv. in implied indir. disc.; see note on 32 21.

105 1 per exploratores: cf. note on 57 3.

105 3 uti . . . convenirent: object clauses of purpose, following the verbal phrase nuntios . . . dimisisse, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice. The rest of the sentence contains only statements and is therefore in the indir. disc. construction.

105 5 hunc, etc., this had been selected about the middle, etc.: medium is used as a pred. agreeing with hunc in preference to an adverbial phrase in medio; § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 325. R. 6; H. 497. 4 (440. N. 2); H-B. 244.

105 7 decertare: not merely fight, but fight the decisive battle or decide the issue. This force of de is very common.

105 10 ut . . . liberaret, etc.: these clauses are in app. with rebus, and their form as result clauses is determined by confectis; see note on 4 17. In English some change of construction is often necessary in such cases. Here, having accomplished, etc. (namely), inspired, . . . chastised, . . . relieved.

105 13 arbitratus: cf. 52 7 and note.

First Invasion of Britain.—What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, and had a significant moral effect, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnaissance, or, perhaps, to open the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, Caesar sailed across to the cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp
on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds, so that they did not even come to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of daring. This expedition was, in fact, only intended for a "demonstration." Yet, as the beginning of the national history of England, the event assumes great interest and importance, so that it has given rise to volumes of comment and discussion both in France and England.

Reading References on the First Invasion of Britain.

Abbott's Julius Caesar, pp. 97-106.
Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 11.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Scarth's Roman Britain, chap. 2.
Tacitus's Agricola.

105 15 Chap. 20. exigua . . . reliqua: abl. abs.; translate by a temporal clause.
105 16 ad septentriones, towards the north (see Vocab.): cf. 11 ff.
105 18 omnibus bellis: abl. of time. — hostibus: dat. after submini-
strata.
105 19 si . . . tamen, even if time should fail, still, etc.
105 20 fore: the subject is practically the clause si . . . cognovisset, he
thought it would be of great advantage if, etc. In all languages the proper
subject is often absorbed in some different form of expression; here it is
properly "that fact," "that result," implied in the conditional clause. The
idiom is the same in English except that we supply "it."
105 21 adisset, etc.: the pluperf. represents the fut. perf. adierit of dir.
disc. Observe in this sentence that while Cæsar's action is given in the
perf. (contendit), his reasons are in the imperf. (intellegebatur, arbitrabatur);
cf. note on 35. The conditional clauses si deficeret, si adisset, etc., are
strictly fut. conditions carried into the past by the indir. disc.
105 22 quae omnia, all of which: § 346. ε (216. ε); B. 201. 1. b; G.
370. r.2; H. 442. 2 (397. 2. n.); H-B. 346. c. For the order, cf. 94 17,
30 19 and note.
105 23 Gallis . . . incognita: probably they were not so uninformed as
they seemed; cf. the relations of Commius, 106 13-17, and of the Veneti,
78 19. — neque enim: neg. of etenim, to be rendered with quisquam, for no
one; § 324. h (156. d'); cf. B. 341. 2. d; G. 498. n.8; cf. H-B. 311. 6. a and b.
First Invasion of Britain.

105 24 illo: adv.; see Vocab. — neque . . . quicquam, and nothing: observe that, as usual, the negative combines with the connective. — eis: dat. after notum; § 375 (232. a); B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 431. 2 (388. 1); H-B. 373. 2.

105 25 Gallias: i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

105 26 vocatis . . . mercatoribus, etc.; he called the traders, but could not, etc.

105 27 quanta . . . portus: these indir. questions follow reperire poterat. Notice that the imperf. poterat is used rather than potuit, referring to his repeated questions to the different traders.


106 1 Chap. 21. faceret: the subjv. here indicates a purpose or calculation in Cæsar’s mind. The perf. ind. would refer only to priority of time; § 551 (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 4. a; see also 38 27 and note. The English idiom expresses this by some such phrase as “before making the attempt.”

106 2 idoneum: this remark seems to have reference to his actual want of success, as appears later. — Volusenum: one of Cæsar’s tribunes; see 77 11. — navi longa: see chapter on military affairs, ix, and Figs. 48, 51.

106 5 Marinos, occupying the nearest point to Britain (Boulogne, Calais, Ostend, etc.): in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores.

106 7 quam . . . classem: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6. — Veneticum bellum: see Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

106 9 insulae: Britain was supposed to be an island, but the fact was not established, so far as we know, until more than a century later, when the Romans sailed around it.

106 10 qui polliceantur: a purpose clause, but in English best expressed by the pres. part.

106 11 dare: complement. infin., instead of se daturus [esse], a use not uncommon in Cæsar, and apparently somewhat colloquial; § 580. c. N. (330. f. n.); cf. B. 328. 1; G. 531. N.4; H. 618. 1 (537. N.); H-B. 593. a. — imperio: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385); H-B. 362.

106 14 Atrebatibus (see Bk. ii. chs. 4, 16, 23): the same people, it is said, had occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius. — ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates; § 321. a (207. a); G. 611. R.1; H. 308. 2 (304. iii. 2).

106 16 fidelem, etc.: perhaps Cæsar says this in view of the fact that Commius afterwards turned against him; see Bk. vii. ch. 76.
Notes: Caesar.

106 17 magni: gen. of indefinite value; § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 448 (404); H-B. 356. 1. — huic: indir. obj. of imperat; the order he gave is the whole clause down to nuntiet.

106 18 fidem sequuntur, i.e. accept the protection of.

106 19 se: i.e. Cæsar, the main subject, as usual in indir. disc.

106 20 quantum (sc. tantum)... auderet, so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture, etc.

106 22 auderet: subjv. of characteristic.

106 23 perspexisset: for tense, see § 485. e (287. c); B. 268. 3; G. 511. n.1; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491 and 2; the sequence of tenses does not depend upon the form of statement, but on the time as conceived in the writer's mind.

106 26 Chap. 22. superioris temporis, of the season before (see Bk. iii. ch. 28).

106 27 homines barbari, being (as they were) barbarians. — consuetudinis: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.

106 28 fecissent: the statement of the ambassadors, hence subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.

106 29 pollicerentur: the same construction as excusarent, above.

107 1 arbitratus: translate as present, as often with the perf. part. of dep. verbs.

107 2 belli gerendi: subj. gen.; connect with facultatem.

107 3 has... anteponendas, that occupation about these little matters should take precedence of [the invasion of] Britain. For the number of occupationes, see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N.5; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b.

107 4 indicabat: note this and the preceding descriptive imperfects; cf. note on 3 5.

107 6 navibus: see chapter on military affairs, ix. — coactis, gathered from various quarters; [contractis] (which may well be translated), brought together into port. This must have been either at Boulogne or a few miles farther north, at Wissant. The port has never been satisfactorily determined, but it must have been between Boulogne and Calais, about twenty miles apart in a straight line, which is near enough to give a definite idea of the place (see map, Fig: 56). This whole coast has suffered enormous alterations since Cæsar's time, and everything is much changed.

107 7 duas legiones: the seventh and tenth.

107 8 quod... habebat, what galleys he had besides.

107 10 ex eo loco, etc.: this would be at Ambleteuse or at Calais, according to the location of the main port. — tenebantur quo minus, were detained from, the usual construction after verbs of hindering: § 558. b
First Invasion of Britain.

(317. b. N. 1, 319. e); B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8 (499. 3. N. 9); H-B. 502. 3. b.

107 12 equitibus: of these there were 450.

107 18 Chap. 23. tertia...vigilia, at midnight. The date was very near August 26, when high water would be about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, could go out at about half-tide. — solvit, cast off the ships: a technical phrase used like our weighed anchor. — equites: these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as stated above.

107 20 paulo tardius: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28).

107 21 hora...quarta: this would be about ten A.M., an hour after high tide. The distance across is about thirty miles, and the landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

107 24 montibus anguste, etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore.

107 26 dum...convenirent, until the other ships should come up: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. When is dum followed by the indic.? cf. 24 24, 33 20, 41 9.


108 1 ut...postularent, as military science and especially seamanship require: rel. clause following monuit [ut]...administrarentur, enjoined that everything should be done promptly. Ut is omitted after monuit, as is often the case after verbs of directing or urging. The rel. clause has the subjv. because an integral part of the command.

108 9 ut quae...haberent, since they have, etc.: the imperf. is used by sequence of tenses; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592. 1 (517. 3. 1); H-B. 523 and b.

108 4 his dimissis, when they were sent to their posts (observe the distributive effect of di-). — aestum...secundum: the tide in this place would not turn east and north until about half past six.

108 6 progressus: towards the north.

108 7 aperto...litore: thought to be somewhere near Deal and Walmer Castle.

108 9 Chap. 24. essedariis: the essedum was a two-wheeled war chariot; see Figs. 81, 82. — quo...genere: i.e. including both cavalry and chariots, as described below, 114 5 ff.

108 10 consuerunt: to be translated by what tense? cf. 59 14 and note. — egredi: infin. for the more usual ne or quominus with the subjv.; cf. 107 10 and note.

108 12 alto: here a noun; see Vocab.

108 13 militibus (dat. after desiliendum), the men had to leap down.

108 14 oppressis (taken with militibus), weighted as they were. Notice in this passage the free use of participles and phrases to modify the main
idea, first the abl. of place, then the abl. abs., then a participle agreeing directly with militibus.

108 16 cum . . . conicerent, while they (the Britons), etc.: a good example of cum and the subjv. describing the situation; cf. 117, 6213.

108 18 insuefactos, trained to it, i.e. to charge to the water’s edge.

108 20 generis: gen.; cf. 10627.

108 21 pedestribus, on land, where the main strength lay in infantry.

108 22 Chap. 25. navis: subject of removeri; § 563. a (330. B. 2); B. 311. ii, 587. b; G. 423. N. 6; H. 613. 2 (535. ii); H-B. 587. b.

108 23 insition, quite strange.

108 25 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields. — inde: connect with propelli ac submoveri.

108 26 tormentis: see chapter on military affairs, i. 5, and Figs. 61, 87, 89. — ac: notice that this word always adds something with emphasis.

108 27 quae res, a manoeuvre which: cf. 9417 and see note on 3019.

109 2 qui . . . ferebat, the one who carried: the antecedent of qui is the understood subject of inquit. — X legionis: again the splendid tenth distinguishes itself; cf. 3624, 6726.

109 3 obtestatus, appealing to. Such prayers almost always preceded any formal address among the Romans, like “God save the Commonwealth of Massachusetts.” The words would be Quod vobis feliciter eveniat, desilit, etc. — legioni, imperatori: dat. of reference.

109 4 nisi volitus: a present simple condition; § 515 and a (306 and a); B. 302 and 4; G. 595; II. 574, 580 (508 and 4); H-B. 579, 582. 1.

109 5 ego certe . . . praestitero, I at any rate shall have done, etc.: § 478. N. (281. r.); B. 264. a; G. 244; H. 540 (473); cf. H-B. 494.

109 8 inter se, one another: § 301.f (196.f); B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. n.); H-B. 266. — universi, in a body.

109 9 ex proximis navibus, from the nearest ships. Omit [primis].

109 10 adpropinquaverunt: the subject is the soldiers, implied.

109 11 Chap. 26. ab utrisque, on both sides: cf. utraque, 10330.

109 13 poterant . . . submittebat: notice the numerous imperfects in this description, implying repeated or continuous action. — alius alia ex navi, men from different ships: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1
First Invasion of Britain.

(459. i); H-B. 265. — quibuscumque signis: dat. after occurrerat; the antecedent noun and pronoun (ea signis), if expressed, would be dat. after adgregabat.

109 ubi . . . conspexerant . . . adoriebantur, etc.: a general condition, whenever they saw, etc.; cf. 84 22, 103 24, and notes.

109 singularis, scattered soldiers.

109 adoriebantur, would attack: to express the repeated action. So, too, circumsistebant and coniciebant.

110 ab latere aperto: see 108 25. — in universos, upon the whole body. This word means not merely all, but all at once, or all together, and the like; cf. universi, 109 8.

110 speculatoria navigia: swift, light boats for reconnaissance. — quos . . . conspexerat . . . submittebat: another general condition, precisely like the one noted above (109 15), quos equalling whomsoever, or if any.

110 simul [atque], as soon as. — suis omnibus consecutis, and all their comrades had joined them.

110 longius, very far. — quod equites, etc.: they were wind-bound at the upper harbor, 107 9-12.

110 fortunam: this is not a mere casual remark, but an expression of his belief in "his star," always an important factor in the greatness of a commander; cf. 36 14 and note on 10 17.

110 quae imperasset, what he should require (in dir. disc. quae imperaveris).

110 quem . . . praemissum [esse]: cf. 106 13-19.

110 hunc, etc.: it is not unlikely that his imprisonment was a mere pretence. — oratoris modo, in the character of envoy (or spokesman).

110 ut ignosceretur, that their act might be pardoned: ignosco may take a dir. obj. of the thing, with an Indir. obj. of the person; § 369 (227. f); B. 187. i. a; H-B. 364. 4; hence the word here may be either personal or impersonal.

110 cum ullo, etc.: cf. 106 10.

110 bellum . . . intulissent: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Cesar's expedition for an invasion. — ignoscere: for the omission of the subject, cf. note on 59 23.

110 arcsitam, after they had been fetched.

110 remigrare, to move back, i.e. from the strongholds to their farms.

110 post diem quatum quam, three days after (according to English reckoning): § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N. 4 a; H. 488. i (430); H-B. 550. c.

110 naves, etc.: see 107 9.
Britanniae: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376, cf. 362. — *tempestas*: from the northeast.

*aliae...aliae, some...others.*

*propius...occasum*: cf. 98 26.

*cum...complerentur, since they began to fill*: the imperf. shows that the action was not completed.

*adversa nocte, in spite of the darkness.*

*Chap. 29. eadem nocte*: this was probably the night of August 30; the moon was then full at 3 A.M.

*aestus maximus, very high tides.* The ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean. One is at a loss to understand why the Romans had not learned more about the tides in the war with the Veneti.

*navis*: obj. of *compleverat*—[quibus, etc.]: an unnecessary explanation, and may be omitted.

*addictabat* (intensive), dashed about.

*facultas, etc.*: i.e. chance to manage their own ships or help their companions.

*funibus...amissis, etc., from the loss of, etc.*

*id quod*: § 307. d (200. e); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. r.²; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. a. n.³.

*quibus = ut eis*: result.

*quod...constabat, because it was understood*: the subject is *oporere*, of which the subject is *hiemari*, *that it was best to winter in Gaul.*

*provisum*: see note on 56 16.

*Chap. 30. principes*: subject of *duxerunt* in l. 14.

*hoc*: abl. of cause, originally degree of difference; see note on 2 17.

*optimum*: in pred. agreement with *frumento...producere.*

*factu*: cf. 3 23. — *duxerunt*: see Vocab. — *frumento commeatuque, corn and other supplies.*

*rem, the campaign. — his...interclusis, if these should be overcome, etc.*: abl. abs. expressing condition.

*rursus*: not a second time, which would be *iterum*, but back again from negotiations to hostilities.

*deducere*: i.e. from their farms; cf. 110 94.

*Chap. 31. at Caesar*: emphatic transition to Caesar from what the soldiers feared and the Britons planned; cf. 68 8.
112 ex eventu navium, from what had befallen the ships. — ex eo quod, from the fact that.
112 suspicabatur, began to suspect.
112 quae ... naves, earum, etc., the timber and the bronze of those ships which, etc.: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.
112 aere: the Romans used the word aes both for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust. They were employed to sheathe the rostrum, or beak, and to make the spikes that held the timbers together.
112 quae ... usui: the antecedent of quae is ea, the understood subject of comportari; see note on qui ... appellantur, 12.
112 reliquis ... effecit, he managed so that they could sail (navigari, impers.) tolerably with the rest.
113 Chap. 32. geruntur: § 556 (276. e); B. 293. i; G. 229. r.; H. 533. 4 (467. iii. 4); H-B. 559. Notice that this present is regular with dum when there is no contrast of time. Cf. the use of dum, 107 26. — frumentatum: supine; cf. 26 15.
113 pars hominum, some of the people.
113 remaneret: indicating peaceable intentions on the part of the enemy. — ventitaret, returned from time to time: freq. or iter.; § 263. 2 (167. b); B. 155. 2; G. 191. 1; H. 364 (336); H-B. 212. 1.
113 statione: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.
113 quam ... ferret, than usual.
113 id quod erat, what was the fact.
113 alicud ... consili (part. gen.), that some new design was on foot; infin. clause in app. with id.
113 armari, to arm: in verbs thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form. — paulo longius, some little distance.
113 premi ... sustinere, were getting hard pushed, and hardly held their ground.
113 conferent legione (abl. abs.), the legion was closely crowded together, while weapons were hurled, etc. Observe the tendency of Latin to convey a description, as here, by a participial phrase.
113 una, only one. — suspicati, supposing: cf. 107 1 and note.
114 dispersos, occupatos: agreeing with nostros understood from the preceding line.
114 3 incertis ordinibus (abl. abs.), because the ranks were unsteady.
114 5 Chap. 33. ex essedis: these chariots held six men (essedarii) each besides the driver (auriga), and were drawn by two horses.
114 6 terrore equorum: obj. gen., the terror that the horses arouse.
114 8 cum se ... insinuaverunt, when they have worked their way between: the protasis of a general condition, ex essedis ... proeliantur, being the apodosis; cf. 103 24. The perf. indic. with cum is here used as a protasis because a repeated action is spoken of. — equitum, the cavalry of the Britons. When the essedarii had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot.
114 10 illi: i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.
114 11 expeditum ... receptum, a ready retreat.
114 13 praestant, exhibit. Cæsar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see ch. 12), and later made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army. The ordinary cavalry was never able to cope with infantry; cf. Cæsar's stratagem in 38 1.
114 14 uti ... consuerint: clause of result following efficiunt. — declivi ac praecipiti loco, a steep downward slope.
114 15 incitatos equos sustinere, to check their horses in full gallop (complem. infin. after consuerint). — brevi, within a short space.
114 16 iugo: made of straight or curved wood, resting on the necks of the horses and holding up the pole of the chariot.
114 18 Chap. 34. quibus rebus, under these circumstances: abl. of means. — nostris: dat. following auxilium tulit. — novitate: depends on perturbatis.
114 22 alienum: see note on 13 6.
114 26 quae ... continerent: note the subjv.
115 1 quanta ... facultas daretur: indir. quest. following demonstravertunt.
115 2 sui liberandi: cf. 40 15 and note.
115 7 Chap. 35. ut ... effugerent: a result clause in app. with idem, the subject of fore, namely, that if, etc.
115 8 effugerent, would escape: the future idea is given by fore. — equites XXX: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.
115 9 ante: i.e. 106 13-19, 110 13-17.
115 12 tanto spatio, over as much ground: § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 389; H. 417. 3 (379. 2); cf. H-B. 426. c.
115 19 Chap. 36. die aequinocti, etc. (Sept. 24, always held to be a stormy season), since the time of the equinox was near and his ships were
unseaworthy. Napoleon III estimates that the return to Gaul occurred Sept. 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks.

115 23 esosdem portus, the same ports with the others.
115 24 paulo infra: the west current sets in on the French coast, while the east current is still running in mid-channel.
115 28 Chap. 37. primo: adv.; see Vocab.

116 1 orbe: the circle was formed by a small body of troops when entirely surrounded by the enemy. It was generally hollow, with officers and baggage in the centre. See chapter on military affairs, vii, last part.

116 5 horis: abl. of comparison with amplius; the more common construction would be horas; cf. note on 54 9.

116 6 postea vero quam, but as soon as.

116 12 Chap. 38. siccitas: see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. 5; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b; the tempestates of ch. 34 were apparently merely gusty weather without rain.

116 13 recipercnt: a purpose clause.—superiore anno: see Bk. iii. ch. 28.

116 22 supplicatio: cf. end of Bk. ii. The crossing of the Rhine strongly impressed the minds of the Romans at home, and so, too, the passage into Britain, though the last was in fact a failure. But, though Caesar had added nothing to Roman power, he had opened a new world to Roman ambition.
GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

N.B.—These lists are not intended to be exhaustive, and pupils may do well to add to them as they increase their vocabularies.

1
acer, sharp, violent.
acrider, violently.
acerbis, bitter, cruel.
acerbe, bitterly.
acerbé ferre, take hard.
acerbitas, bitterness, suffering.
acervus, heap.
acies, sharp edge, line.
[acus, needle.]
acuo, sharpen.
acutus, sharp.

2
alacer, lively.
alocrider, promptly.
alacritas, readiness.

3
aedaes, fireplace, house.
aedificium, building.
aedifico, build.
aestas, heat.
aestivus, hot.
aestus (boiling), tide.
aestuarium, tideway.

4
aequus, even, level.
ineways, uneven, unfavorable.
iniquitas, unfavorableness.

aequitas, fairness.
aequalia, equal.
aequaliter, evenly.
aequinoctium, equinox.
aequo, equalise.
adaequo, make equal.

5
ago, drive.
actarius, fast sailing.
agmen, line of march.
ager, field.
cogo, compel.
cogito, think.
adigo, force.
agito, pursue.
examino, weigh.

6
alo, foster.
altus, grown high.
altitudo, height.

7
alius, other.
alienus, of another.
alieno, alienate.
alias, elsewhere.
aliter, otherwise.
allo, elsewhere.
Groups of Related Words.

| 8 | animus (breath), soul, mind. |
|   | anima, breath.  |
|   | animal, animal. |
|   | examinis, out of breath. |
| 9 | ante, before.  |
|   | antea, before. |
|   | antiquus, ancient. |
|   | antiquitus, anciently. |
| 10 | ars, art. |
|    | articulus, joint. |
|    | arma, arms. |
|    | armo, equip. |
|    | armamentum, rigging. |
|    | armatura, equipment. |
| 11 | arx, citadel. |
|    | arceo, keep off. |
|    | co-erceo, restrain. |
|    | exerceo, exercise. |
|    | exercitus, training, army. |
|    | exercitatio, exercise. |
| 12 | augeo, increase. |
|    | auctor, responsible party. |
|    | auctoritas, influence. |
|    | autumnus, harvest season. |
|    | auxilium, help. |
|    | auxiliaris, helping. |
|    | auxilior, assist. |
| 13 | cadu, fall. |
|    | casus, fall, chance. |
|    | cadaver, body. |
|    | caedo, fell. |
|    | caedes, murder. |
|    | accido, befall. |
|    | accido, cut into. |
|    | concido, fall down. |
|    | concido, cut down. |
|    | incido, happen. |
|    | incido, cut into. |
|    | occido, fall. |
|    | occasio, occasion. |
| 14 | capio, take. |
|    | captus, capacity. |
|    | captivus, captive. |
|    | accipio, receive. |
|    | decipio, deceive. |
|    | excipio, take up. |
|    | excepto, catch up. |
| 15 | caput, head. |
|    | capillus, hair. |
|    | anceps, double-headed. |
|    | praeceps, head-foremost. |
| 16 | cerno, separate, distinguish. |
|    | certus, fixed, certain. |
|    | crimen, charge. |
|    | certe, surely. |
|    | [certo, decide by contest.] |
|    | certamen, contest. |
|    | concerto, contend. |
|    | decerno, decide. |
|    | decerto, decide by contest. |
|    | decretum, decision, decree. |
|    | discerno, decide. |
|    | discrimin, decision. |
| 17 | circum, around. |
|    | circa, circiter, about. |
|    | circinum, compasses. |
|    | circuitus, circuit. |
Groups of Related Words.

18
colo, till.
cultus, cultivation.
cultura, cultivation, culture.
[colonus, husbandman.]
colonia, colony.
incola, inhabit.
incola, inhabitant.

19
conscius, conscious.
[consciens, being conscious.]
conscientia, conscience.
consciscio, resolve.
insula, not knowing.
insciens, unknowing.

20
consto, be established (stand firm).
constans, firm.
constanter, firmly.
constantia, firmness.
constisto, take a stand.
constituto, establish.

21
consul, consul.
consulatus, consulship.
consulo, consult.
consilium, plan.
consultum, decree.
consulto, by determination, designedly.
consulto, consult.

22
cresco, grow.
creber, thick.
crebro, frequently.
creo, make to grow, create.
[Ceres, goddess of growth.]

23
curro, run.
currus, chariot.
cursus, course.
concurro, run together.
concursus, rush.
concurro, rush together.
decurro, run down.
excurso, sally.
incurro, rush upon.
incursio, attack.
incursus, rush.
percurro, run along.
succurro, run to help.

de, down from.
desuper, from above.
deinde, then.
demum, at last (farthest down).
denique, at last.
deterior, worse.

24
defatiscor, give out (cf. 'busted').
defessus, tired out.
defatigio, wear out.
defatigatio, exhaustion.

25
dico, say.
indico, ordain.
index, informer.
indicium, information.
indico, give information.
idx, judge.
idxium, trial.
[vindex, avenger.]
vidico, avenge.
dictum, thing said.
dictio, pleading.
dico, adjudge.
dicio, sway ('say so').
condicio, terms.
Groups of Related Words.

27
dies, day.
diu, long, all day.
interdiu, by day.
diutinus, long continued.
diurnus, by day, daily.
diurnitas, long.
diurnitas, length of time.
biduum, two days.
triduum, three days.

28
dies, day.
cotidie, every day.
cotidianus, daily.
hodie, to-day.
pridie, the day before.
postero die, the next day.
postridie, the day after.
[perendie, day after to-morrow.]
perendinus (adjective).

29
do, give.
dedo, give over.
editus, devotion.
editio, surrender.
editicius, surrendered.
reddo, give back.
trado, hand over.
donum, gift.
don, present.

duplex, double.
duplico, double.

31
emo (take), buy.
eximius, exceptional.
exemplum, specimen.

32
equus, horse.
eques, horsemans.
equester, of cavalry.
equitas, cavalry.
[equito], ride.
aequeito, ride up.
perequito, ride over.

33
ex, out.
exter, outer.
extra, outside.
extremus, last.

34
facio, make, do.
beneficus, well doing, beneficient.
facilis, easy (to do).
facultas, facility.
difficilis, difficult.
difficultias, difficulty.
difficultar, with difficulty.
factio, employment, party.
facies, face (the ' make ').
factum, deed.
facinus, deed (usually evil).
artifex, artist.
conficio, make up.
perficio, accomplish.

35
fides, faith.
fidelis, faithful.
perfides, faithless.
perfida, perfidy.
Groups of Related Words.

fiducia, confidence.
foedus, treaty.
infidelis, unfaithful.
confido, trust.

36
finis, bound, boundary.
fines, country.
finio, set bounds.
finitimus, neighboring.
adfinis, connection.
adfinitas, connection (by marriage).
confinis, adjacent.
confinium, neighborhood.
definio, set limits, fix.

37
fors, chance.
fortuito, accidentally.
fortuna, fortune.
fortunatus, fortunate.

38
fruor, enjoy.
fractus, enjoyment.
fructuosus, fruitful.
frugae, grain.
frumentum, grain.
frumentor, forage.
frumentatio, foraging.
frumentarius, of grain.

39
fugio, fly.
fuga, flight.
fugo, put to flight.
fugitivus, a runaway.
effugio, escape.
perfuga, refugee.
perfugio, escape to.
perfugium, refuge.
profugio, flee forth.
refugio, run away.

40
gerio, carry, carry on.
res gestae, exploits.
[aggero, heap up.]
agger, earthworks.
congero, heap together.
suggestus, raised mound.

41
iacio, throw.
iaculum, javelin.
iacet, lie.
actura, loss.
acto, toss about.

42
is, this.
item, likewise.
ita, so.
itaque, therefore.
iterum, again.
ideum, the same.
ideo, therefore.
ipse, himself.
eo, thither.
ea, that way.

43
iubeo, order.
iussu, by order.
inussu, without orders.

44
ius, right.
iudex, judge.
iiudicium, judgment.
iiudico, judge.
adiudico, assign.
deiudico, decide (between).
iiiniuria, wrong.
iustus, just.
iiustitia, justice.
iuro, swear.
Groups of Related Words.

coniuro, conspire.
coniuratio, conspiracy.

45
[lego, choose.]
legio, levy, legion.
delectus, levy.
legionarius, soldier.
lex, law.
[lēgo, assign by law.]
legatus, lieutenant.
legatio, embassy.
deligo, select.
diligo, love.
in telle ggo, understand.

46
[libet], it please.
libenter, willingly.
liber, free.
liberi, children.
libertas, freedom.
liberalis, generous.
liberaliter, generously.
liberalitas, generosity.
libero, set free.

47
mane, in the morning.
maturus, early, ripe.
mature, early.
maturo, make haste.
maturesco, ripen.

48
memini, remember.
mens, mind.
[demens], mad.
dementia, madness.
mentio, mention.
[memor], mindful.
memoria, memory.
moneo, remind.

reminiscor, remember.
commemoro, mention.

49
moveo, move.
mutus, motion.
mobilis, mobile.
mobiliter, easily.
mobilitas, mobility.
momentum, means of motion.
commuto, change.

50
nascor, be born.
natus, birth.
natalis, of birth.
nativus, native.
natura, nature.
natio, race.

51
navis, ship.
navicula, boat.
navalis, naval.
nauta, sailor.
nauticus, of a sailor.
navigo, sail.
navigium, vessel.
navigatio, voyage.

52
nosco, learn.
novi, be acquainted with.
notus, known.
notitia, acquaintance.
ignotus, unknown.
nobilis, famous.
ignobilis, ignoble.
nobilitas, nobility.
nomen, name.
nomino, name.
nominatim, by name.
ignominia, disgrace.
Groups of Related Words.

53
cognoscio, investigate.
ignosco, pardon.

nuntius, messenger, news.
nuntio, announce.
denuntio, warn.
enuntio, report.
renuntio, bring back word.
pronuntio, make known.

54
obsesa, hostage.
obsideo, blockade.
obsidio, blockade.
obsessio, blockade.

55
[Ops], goddess of abundance.
opes, resources.
copia, abundance.
copiae, resources.
copiosus, well supplied.
inops, poor.
inopia, want.

56
[paciscor, agree.]
pango, join.
pactum, agreement.
pax, peace.
paco, pacify.
pacatus, subject.

57
pario, acquire.
parens, parent.
parento, sacrifice to ancestors.

58
ex-perior, try.
peritus, experienced.
periculum, danger (trial).
periculosus, dangerous.
periclitor, be in peril.
aperio, open.
reperio, find.

59
paro, prepare.
impero, order.
imperium, power.
pareo, be on hand, obey.

60
parum, too little.
parvus, small.
parvulus, very small.
paucus, few.
paucitas, small number.
paulus, small.
paulatim, little by little.
paulum, a little.
paululum, a very little.
paulo, a little.
paulispe, a little while.

61
[pasco, feed.]
pabulum, forage.
pabulor, forage.
pabulatio, foraging.
pabulator, forager.
pater, father.
patrius, belonging to a father.
patronus, patron, protector.
patrius, uncle (on the father's side)

62
pes, foot.
pedes, footman (man on foot).
peditatus, infantry.
pedester, of men on foot.
pedalis, a foot long, etc.
impedio, entangle.
impedimentum, hindrance.
Groups of Related Words.

impeditus, hampered.
expedio, disentangle.
expeditus, unincumbered.
expedition, expedition.

pleo, fill.
compleo, fill up.
expleo, fill out.
plenus, full.
plene, fully.
pierique, most of.
plerumque, for the most part.
completus, filled up.
expletus, filled out.
plus, more.
plurimus, most.
complures, very many.
also
plebs, the populace.
populus, people.
publicus, of the people.
publice, publicly.
publico, confiscate.

porta, gate.
porto, carry.
adporto, bring in.
comporto, bring together.
deporto, carry away.
exporto, carry off.
reporto, bring back.
supporto, bring up.
transporto, carry over.
portus, harbor.
portorium, customs.

[petus], clean.
puto, clean up, reckon, think.
[purus], clean.
purgo, clear, excuse.
compero, reckon.
disputo, discuss.
disputatio, discussion.

pro, before.
probus, good.
improbus, bad.
prope, near.
propinquus, neighboring.
propinquitas, nearness.
protinus, straight away, right away.
propter, near by, on account of.
propterea, for this reason.

praetor, in front.
praeustus, burnt at the end.
praeter, along side, beside.
praeterea, besides.
praeterita, bygones.
prior, before.
primus, first.
pridie, the day before.

rego, direct, rule.
rectus, straight.
regio, direction.
regnum, kingdom.
regno, reign.
rex, king.
regius, royal.
[regula, rule.]
dirigo, direct.
directus, straight.
directe, straight.
pergo, keep on.

sancio, bind.
sacer, sanctus, sacred.
Groups of Related Words.

sacerdos, priest.
sacramentum, oath.
sacrificium, sacrifice.

70
seco, cut.
sectio, a cutting, a lot.
sectura, mine.
securis, axe.

71
sequor, follow.
secundus, second.
secus, otherwise.
secius, less.
sector, pursue.
socius, companion.
societas, society.

72
[sero, bind.]
servus, bondman.
servio, be a slave.
servo, guard.
conservus, preserve.
servilis, servile.
servitus, slavery.
sermo, speech (connected discourse).
praesertim, especially (at the head of the row).

73
similis, like.
simul, at the same time.
simultas, quarrel.
simulo, pretend.
dissimulo, pretend not.
simulatio, pretense.
similitudo, likeness.
simulacrum, image.

74
species, appearance.
conspicio, behold.
conspicuus, sight.
conspicor, espy.
adspectus, view.
specto, gaze at.
exspecto, expect.
speculor, watch.
speculator, spy.

75
sto, stand.
statio, station.
statim, forthwith.
status, position.
statuo, set up.
constituo, establish.
stabilis, stable.
stabilitas, steadiness.
stabilio, make firm.

76
sub, under, up.
superus, above.
super, over.
superior, superior.
supero, overtop.
supra, over.
summus, highest.
supremus, highest.
summa, total.
superbus, proud.
superbe, arrogantly.

77
tam, so.
tamen, nevertheless.
tametsi, although.
tandem, at last.
tantus, so great.
tantulus, so little.
tantum, only (so much and no more).

78
tango, touch.
contingo, touch, happen.
contagio, contact.
contamino, taint.
integer, untouched, whole.
redintegro, renew.

79
tempus, time.
tempestas, weather.
tempero, control.
temperantia, self-control.

80
teneo, hold.
tener, tender.
tenuis, thin.
tenuitas, scantiness.
tenuiter, scantily.
contineo, hold together.
continens, continuous (a continent).
continenter, without stopping.
continentia, self-control.
continuus, continuous.
continuum, forthwith.
continuo, continue.
continuatio, continuance.

also
tendo, stretch.
tento, try.
contendo, contend.
contentio, contest.
intendo, strain.
ostendo, show.
ostentatio, ostentation.

82
utor, use.
utilia, useful.
utilitas, advantage.
usus, use.
usitor, use.
usitatus, customary.

83
vero, turn.
versus, towards.
versus, verse.
universus, all together.
verso, deal with.
versor, engage in.
averto, turn aside.
adverto, turn to.
adversus, turned towards, opposed.
adversarius, opponent.
animadverto, attend to.
converto, turn about.
revertor, turn back.
rursus, back, again.
transversus, across.

84
vetus, old.
veteranus, veteran.
inveterasco, grow old in.

85
vir, man.
virgo, maiden.
virtus, manliness.
viritim, man by man.

86
volo, wish.
voluntas, will.
volutarius, volunteer.
voltus, countenance.
voluptas, pleasure.
malo, wish more.
nolo, not wish, wish not.
ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATIONS.

Fig. 84. — Signa Militaria.

Fig. 85. — Soldiers building Camp, with Guards.
FIG. 86.—PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS.
Additional Illustrations.

Fig. 87. — Scorpio.

Fig. 88. — Testudo.
Fig. 89. — Ballista.

Fig. 90. — Sacrifice in Camp. Military Band.
Additional Illustrations.

Fig. 91. — Signum.

Fig. 92. — Tabernaculum.

Fig. 93. — Oppugnatio.

Note. — This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no agger is employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very clearly some siege implements in active use.

Fig. 94. — Chain Mail (lorica hamata).
Fig. 95. — Helmets (galeae).

Fig. 96. — Light-armed Soldier.

Fig. 97. — Archer.
Fig. 98.—View of Siege Works.

Fig. 99.—Plan of Siege Works.
Additional Illustrations.

Fig. 100. — Gallic Torques.

Fig. 101. — Hollow Square (agmen quadratum).

Fig. 102. — Pluteus.

Fig. 103. — Pluteus.
VOCABULARY

to

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

COVERING SEVEN BOOKS.
### SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

| a... | active. |
| abs. | absolute(ly). |
| act. | active. |
| borr. | borrowed. |
| cf. | compare. |
| cog. | cognate. |
| comp. | composition. |
| comp., compar. | comparative. |
| concr. | concretely. |
| conn. | connection. |
| decl. | declined. |
| def. | definite, defective. |
| dep. | deponent. |
| dim., dimin. | diminutive. |
| distrib. | distributive. |
| emph. | emphatic. |
| end. | ending. |
| Eng. | English. |
| esp. | especially. |
| F., fem. | feminine. |
| fig. | figurative(ly). |
| fr. | from. |
| freq. | frequentative. |
| Gr. | Greek. |
| imp., imper. | impersonal. |
| inv. | imperative. |
| increased | indicates the addition of a letter or letters. |
| ind., indecl. | indeclinable. |
| indef. | indefinite. |
| insep. | inseparable. |
| instr. | instrumental. |
| inter., interrog. | interrogative. |
| intns. | intensive. |
| irr. | irregular. |
| lit. | literal(ly). |
| loc. | locative. |
| M., masc. | masculine. |
| neg. | negative(ly). |
| n. | neuter (intransitive). |
| N., neut. | neuter. |
| num. | numeral. |
| opp. | opposed. |
| orig. | originally. |
| p. | present participle. |
| pass. | passive. |
| perf. | perfect. |
| perh. | perhaps. |
| pl., plur. | plural. |
| poss. | possibly. |
| p. p. | perfect participle. |
| prob. | probably. |
| pron. | pronoun, pronominal. |
| reduced | indicates the loss of a syllable in derivation or composition. |
| reflex. | reflexive(ly). |
| rel. | relative. |
| sc. | supply. |
| sing. | singular. |
| Sk. | Sanskrit. |
| st. | stem. |
| subj. | subjunctive. |
| subst. | substantive(ly). |
| sup., superl. | superlative. |
| term. | termination. |
| transf. | transferred (i.e. fr. a proper to a forced meaning). |
| unc. | uncertain. |
| v. | verb. |
| wh. | which, whence. |
| weakened | indicates a change of vowel. |

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

(-). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem; between two words it means composition.

(†). A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

A root is generally given in SMALL CAPITALS.

(††). A dagger denotes a word not actually found, but assumed as having once existed.

(?) A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

**Full-faced** type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

1, 2, 3, 4, refer to conjugations of verbs.
VOCABULARY.

A.

Aulus (wh. see).

ā, see ab.

ab (ā, abs), [akin to Eng. off, of], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with abl., away from, from (cf. ex, out of). — Of place, with idea of motion, from: ab Arari iter convertere. — Of time, ab hora quarta. — Fig., from, with more or less feeling of motion: ab cohortatione profectus; temperare ab infurtis; tutus ab; ab ramis (from the branches, as far as where they begin). — With expressions of measure, off, away, at a distance of: a milibus passuum duobus, two miles off. — With different notion in Eng.: ortum est ab, began with; vacuum ab, desitute of; caput initium a, begin at; ab tanto spatio, so far off; ab officio discedere (for-sake, etc.); a quibus decedere (abandon, etc.); gratiam inire ab, secure gratitude from, win favor with; postulare ab, ask of. — Esp. with passives and similar notions, by: accidere a Caesare (at the hands of, showing the origin of this meaning). — Esp. also (prob. as the place whence the impression comes), on the side of, on, at, on the part of: a fronte; a tergo; ab infimo; a dextro cornu; a re frumentaria (in respect to); intitus ab labore (by). — In comp. off, away, apart; not, dis-, un-

abdītus, p. p. of abdo.

abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [ab-do (put)], 3. v. a., put away, remove, hide. — With reflex., conceal one's self, hide. — With in and acc., hide in, withdraw to (take refuge among), withdraw and hide away. — abditus, -a, -um, p. p., hidden, remote, removed: abditī in tabernaculis (secluding themselves, etc.).

abdūcō, -dicere, -düxi, -ductus, [ab-duco], 3. v. a., lead away, draw away, take away, lead off, carry away (of persons or things which move of themselves).

abeō, -ire -iī, -itūrus, [ab-oe], irr. v. n., go away, go off, retire, go (out of sight or away).

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ab-iacio], 3. v. a., throw away, throw down, throw (away from one's self).

abiēs, -ietis, [ʔ], f., fir or spruce (tree or wood).

abiectus, p. p. of abicio.

abiunctus, p. p. of abiungo.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iunctus, [ab-iungo], 3. v. a., disjoint, detach: abiuncto Labieno.
abriplō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus,
[ab-rapiō, seise], 3. v. a., carry off (with violence), drag away.
abs, see ab.
absćiōdō, -ciderēre, -cītī, -cīsus, [abs-caedo], 3. v. a., cut off, lop off, tear off, tear away.
absćiōsus, p. p. of absciōdo.
absēna, -entis, see absum.
absimilis, -e, [ab-similis, like], adj., unlike.
absistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p., [ab-sisto], 3. v. n., stand off, stand away, withdraw. — Fig., leave off, keep aloof.
abstīneō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus,
[abs-teneo], 2. v. n., hold (one's self) off. — Fig., refrain, spare: proelio (refrain from giving); mulieribus (spare).
abstrāctus, p. p. of abstraho.
abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus,
[abs-traho], 3. v. a., drag off, drag away.
absum, -esse, -fuī (āfuī), -futūrus,
[ab-sum], irr. v. n., be away, be absent, be off (at a distance). — Fig., suspicio (be wanting); nomen (be far from helping); ab eo quin (be far from being); multum quin (lack much of, etc.); longius quin (be farther off than that); abello (keep aloof, take no part in); ab hoc consilio (not be concerned in). — absens, p. as adj., absent, in one's absence.
abundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [† abundō, lost adj. st., abounding; cf. abunde, abundantly], 1. v. n., over-flow. — Fig., abound. — Transf. (of the place, etc., containing the thing), be strong in, be rich in, abound in.
ac, see atque.
acciuitas, -tatis, [acciivi- + tas], f., slope (upward), inclination, steepness.

Acio, -onis, [Celtic], m., one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans.

accommodatus, p. p. of accommodo.

accommodo, (ad-) -are, -avī, -ātus, [accommodo-fitting, or ad-commodo], i. v. a., fit on, fit: insignia (put on, adjust). — accommodatus, -a, -um, p. p., fitted, adapted.

accurate, [old case-form of accuratus, done with care], adv., with care, carefully.

accurō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), no p. p. [ad-curreo, 3. v. n., run to, run up (on foot), rush up (on horseback), ride up.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-cause, assign as a reason or charge], i. v. a., accuse, blame, find fault with.

accer, -cris, -cre, [AC, sharp (cf. acus, needle), + xia], adj., sharp. — Fig., keen, active, violent. See acriter.

acerbē [acerbus], adv., bitterly. — Fig. (of the mind), ferre inopiam (suffer severely from, etc.).

acerbitas, -tatis, [acerbō- + tas], f., bitterness. — Concrete in plur., sufferings (with a change of point of view in Eng.).

acerbus, -a, -um, [acer (treated as st.) + bus (cf. superbus)], adj., bitter (to the taste). — Fig. (to the mind), bitter, hard to bear, cruel.

acerbīmus, superl. of acriter.

acervus, -ī, [acer (shortened as st.) + vus], m., (pointed ?), a heap, a pile.

acēs, -ēs, [AC (sharp) + lea (cf. materies)], f., point, sharp edge. edge: oculorum (keen glance, glare).

— Esp., line, battle line, array, army (in battle array, cf. agmen), rank (of an army in several ranks): acie instructa depugnare, fight a pitched battle.

acquirō, see adquirō.

ācriter [acri- + ter], adv., sharply.

— Fig., fiercely, violently, hotly (of fighting), with spirit: acriter pugnatum est, a fierce battle was fought, there was hot fighting.

āctuarius, -a, -um, [actu-, movement (ac in ago) + arius], adj., fast sailing (provided with both sails and oars).

āctus, p. p. of ago.

acuō, -ure, -ui, -ūtus, [acu-, sharp (in acus, needle)], 3. v. a., sharpen.

— acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., sharpened, sharp.

acūtus, p. p. of acuo.

ad [?], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with acc. With idea of motion, to, towards, against. — Where the idea of motion is more or less obliterated, to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, near, in regard to. — Of time, till, at, on; ad diem, on the day. — With numerals, about. — Esp., deferre ad, lay before; recepti ad se (among); ad fortunam Caesari defuit (Cesar lacked to complete, etc.); contendere ad occupandum (to, for), and often with the gerund or gerundive expressing purpose; ad certum pondus (up to, i.e. of); ad modum (in); commere ad, visit; ad impedimenta (by); ad auxilium.
adāctus
(to give assistance); ad arbitrium (according to); proficiaci ad (for); ad unum, to a man; ad celebritatem (for, in the way of); ad speciem, for show; ad extremum, at last, finally.—In comp., to, towards, up to, up against, in, by, in addition, and the like.

a. d., see ante.

adāctus, p. p. of adigo.

adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-aquo, make equal; cf. aequus], i. v. a., make equal to: moles moenibus (make as high as).—More commonly with the verb neuter and the acc. or dat. depending on the combined idea, become equal to, equal: altitudinem muri (reach up to); cursum (keep up with).

adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-amō, love], i. v. a., take a fancy to, fall in love with, covet, become attached to.

addō, -edere, -didī, -ditus, [ad-do (1 and 2)], 3. v. a., give to.—Also, place to, add (with acc. or absolutely).

addūcō, -ducere, -ducī, -ductus, [ad-duco], 3. v. a., lead to, draw to, bring in (of persons), bring, draw in (towards one), drive, force.—Fig., induce, drive.

adductus, p. p. of adduco.

ademptus, p. p. of adimo.

adeō, -ire, -īi (-īvi), -itus, [ad-eō], iir. v. a. and n., go to, visit, get at, come to, come up, go to (a place), get in (to a place), advance (some-where), attack, approach (speak with), accost. with ad, come into the presence of.

adeō [ad-eō (thither)], adv., to that point.—Less exactly, to that degree, so much so: discussisse adeo ut (so speedily that).—Still weaker, in fact, at all, exactly.

adeptus, p. p. of adipiscor.

adequitō, -āre, -āvi, no p. p., [ad-equito, ride, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., ride up, ride against, skirmish with (of cavalry).

adfectus, p. p. of adficio.

adferō (aff-), -ferre, -tuli, -latus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring: litteras.—Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce: fortuna casus (bring about, give).

adficio (aff-), -ficere, -ficī, -fectus, [ad-facio], 3. v. a., do to, affect.—With acc. and abl., affect with, inflict upon, produce in, cause to, visit with, fill with.—In passive, suffer, receive, be in (a condition), be afflicted by, suffer from: beneficio adfectus, having received favors; magno dolore adfeci, be greatly distressed.

adfigō (aff-), -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [ad-figo, fix, fasten], 3. v. a., fasten to (by insertion or the like).

adfigō (aff-), -figere, -finxi, -fictus, [ad-fingo], 3. v. a., make up in addition.—Of rumors, invent more, add.

adfinitās (aff-), -tātis, [adfini-(close to, fr. finis, boundary) + ta], F., nearness.—Esp. of relation by marriage, relationship, alliance, connection.—Concretely, a connection: adfinitatibus coniuncti (marriages).

adfirmātiō (aff-), -ōnitis, [adfirmatio, cf. adfirmo, assert], F., assurance.—Concretely, an assertion.

adfixus (aff-), p. p. of adfico.

adfectō (aff-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-
addictus, p. p. of adfligo.

adfligō (aff.), -figere, -fixi, -fectus, [ad-fligo], 3. v. a., dash against, dash upon. Hence, overthrow, wreck;
aves (shatter, damage); arbores (throw down).

adfore (aff.), see addum.

adgregior (agg.), -gredi, -gressus, [ad-gradior, step, go], 3. v. dep., go towards, go to, march against, attack.
adgregō (agg.), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-gregō, flock, cf. gregāris, flock], 1. v. a., unite in a flock, gather: se (gather around, flock to); se ad amicitiam (attach one's self to).

adhæreō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesūrus, [ad-haerō], 2. v. n., stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in).

adhæresō, -ere, [ad-haeresco], 3. v. n., same meaning as adhaereō.

adhibeō, -ēre, -ūi, -itus, [ad-habeō], 2. v. a., have in. Hence, call in, admit, bring with (one). — Fig., employ, use.

adhibitus, p. p. of adhibeo.

adhortor, -āri, -ātus, [ad-hortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, address, urge, rally (soldiers).

adhūc [ad-huc, hither], adv., hitherto (of place). — Of time, up to this time, till now, to this day.

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacul, no p. p., [ad-laceō], 2. v. n., lie near, border on, be adjacent.

Adiastunna, 3, [Celtic], M., chief of the Sotiates.

adiciō (adici-), -icere, -iēci, -iectus, [ad-lacio], 3. v. a., throw to, hurl.

adiātus, p. p. of adiusco.

adiādicātus, p. p. of adiudico.

adiūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [adiudico, cf. index, judge], 1. v. a., adjudge, assign (by deliberation).

adiungō, -iungere, -iünxi, -iünctus, [ad-iungō], 3. v. a., join to, unite to, attach, unite with.

adiūtor, -tōris, [ad-tūtor, cf. adiuvō, help], M., helper, assistant, abettor.

adiūtus, p. p. of adiuvō.
adinvō, -iuvare, -iūvi, -iūtus, [ad-iuo, help], i. v. a., assist, help, help on, be of advantage, be an assistance to; ad spem (encourage).
adlātus (all-), p. p. of adfero.
adliciō (all-), -licere, -lēxi, -lectus, [ad-lacio], 3. v. a., allure to, invite, entice, attract.
admāturō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-maturō, fr. maturus, early], i. v. a., hasten: deflectionem (bring to a head more quickly).
administer, -trī, [ad-minister, servant], m., servant, minister: ad sacrificia (priest, celebrant).
administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-ministro, servē], i. v. a., carry into execution, perform, execute, carry out, carry on (war), attend to (duties): imperia (give, carry out the duties of a commander).
admīrātus, p. p. of admirō.
admīrō, -āri, -ātus, [ad-mirō, wonder], i. v. dep., be surprised, wonder at, admire. — admirandus, -a, -um, as adj., surprising. — admirātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, being surprised, wondering.
admissus, p. p. of admitto.
admittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, [ad-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go to), let go: admissī equo, at full speed. — Fig., allow (cf. com- and per-mitto): in se facinus (commit a crime); dedecus (permit to be incurred, incur). — Also pass. without in se, be committed.
admodum [ad-modum, measure, limītī], adv., to a degree. Hence, very, very much, greatly, exceedingly, so (very) much.
admonēō, -ère, -ul, -itus, [ad-mono], 2. v. a., warn, urge.
adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, [ad-olesceo, grow], 3. v. n., grow up (to maturity), mature. See also adulescens.
adror, -orīn, -ortus, [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., (rise up against), attack, assail.
adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of adror.
adparō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-paro, make ready, cf. pareo, be on hand], i. v. a. and n., prepare, get ready, make preparations.
adpellō (app-), -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [ad-pello, drive], 3. v. a. and n., land (ships), bring to land.
adpetō (app-), -petere, -petīvī, -petitus, [ad-peto, aim at], 3. v. a. and n., seek to gain, desire, aim at. — Abs., approach.
adpticō (app-), -plicāre, -āvī (-ul), -plicātus (-plicitus), [ad-plico, fold], 1. v. a., (bend towards). With reflex., lean against.
adportō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-porto, carry], 1. v. a., bring in, bring (to some place).
adprobō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-probo, esteem good, cf. probus, good], i. v. a., approve of, agree with (an opinion or action).
adpropinquo (app-), -āre, -āvī, no p. p., [ad-propinquo, cf. propinquus, near], 1. v. n., approach, come nearer, come near.
adpulsus (app-), p. p. of adpello.
adquirō (acq-), -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitus, [ad-quaero, seek], 3. v. a. (get in addition), acquire: aliquid (gain some advantage).
adriplo (arr-), -ripere, -ripui, -rep tus, [ad-rapiō], 3. v. a., snatch up, seize.

adroganter (arr-), [adrogant- (st. of p. of adrogo, assume) + ter], adv., with presumption, presumeably, with insolence.

adrogantia (arr-), -ae, [adrogant- (see preceding) + ia], f., insolence, insolent conduct, presumption.

adscendō, see ascendō.

adscensus, see ascensus.

adsciscō (asc-), -sciscere, -scivi, -scitus, [ad-sciscio, approve, fr. scio], 3. v. a., attach (by formal decree).
— Less exactly, attach to (one's self), unite with (one's self).

adsciduus (ass-), -a, -um, [ad- tсидuus (sed in sedeo, sit) + uus], adj., (sitting by), constant, continued, incessant.


adspectus (asp-), -üs, [ad- tспектus, cf. adspicio, look at], m., a looking at. — Transf., an appearance, aspect.

adsuefaciō (ass-), -facere, -feci, -factus, [ad-sue- (cf. suesco, become accustomed) -facio, make], 3. v. a., accustom, train. — Pass., be accustomed.

adsuefactus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p. of adsuefacio.

adsueścō (ass-), -suėscere, -suēvi, -suētus, [ad-suesco, become accustomed], 3. v. a. and n., accustom, become accustomed, become wonted (of animals).

adsuētus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p. of adsuesco.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [adsum], irr. v. n., be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be there, appear.

Aduatuca, -ae [Celtic, a fortress?], f., a fortress of the Eburones (prob. Tongres), near the Meuse.

Aduatuci, -orum [Celtic], m., pl., a tribe of the Belgae (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later, Tongri).

adulēscens (adol-), -entis [p. of adolesco, grow up], adj., young. — As noun, a youth, young man. — With proper names, the younger (Jr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulēscientia (adol-), -ae, [adulescent- + ia], f., youth.

adulēscientulus (adol-), -i, [adulescent- + unus, dim. end.], m. (often as adj.), a mere boy, very young.

adventus, -ūs, [ad-ventus, cf. advenio, come to], m., a coming, arrival, approach.

adversārius, -a, -um, [adversō- (reduced) + arius], adj., (turned towards), opposed. — As noun, opponent, adversary, foe, enemy.

adversus, p. p. of adverto, in various uses.

adversus, prep. with acc., see adverto.

adverto, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ad-verteo], 3. v. a., turn towards: animum (turn the attention, notice, see animadverto), turn against, turn (to anything). — adversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse, un-
favorable, in the face of: proelium (unsuccessful); hostibus adversus oc-
currebant (right against, in their front); in adversum os, right in
the face; flumine (up, cf. secundo); res adversae, adversity, want of
success. — adversus [petrified as adv., cf. versus], prep. with acc.,
against.

advocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [adv-voco],
ī. v. a., call (to one), summon.

advolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [adv-
volō], i. v. n., fly to, fly at. — Less
exactly, of cavalry, rush at, fly at,
charge upon.

aedificium, ĕ, [aedific- (cf. aedi-
fico) + ium], n., building. — Esp.
buildings standing singly, opposed
to villages, farm houses.

aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aedific-
(aedes, house, FAC in facio)], i. v.
a., build (of houses). — Less ex-
actly, of ships.

aeger, -gra, -grum, [?], adj., sick,
disabled.

eaegerrime, superl. of aegre.

aegrē [old case-form of aeger],
adv., feebly. Hence, with difficulty,
hardly, scarcely, barely.

Aemilius, -i, [?], M., (Lucius), a
Gaul, a subaltern in Caesar's Gallic
cavalry. Probably named from some
Roman Aemilius from whom he had
received the citizenship.

aequālīter [aequali- (fr. aequus,
even) + ter], adv., evenly, uniformly.

aequinoctium, -i, [as if aequinoct-
indirectly fr. aequō, equal, nox
(night) + ium], n., the time of the
equinox, the equinox.

aequitās, -tātis, [aequō- (even,
equal) + tas], f., evenness. Hence
(cf. aequus), fairness, justice. — Esp.,
aequitas animi, evenness of mind,
contentment, resignation.

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aequō-,
equal], i. v. a., make equal, equalize.

aequus, -a, -um, [?], perh. akin
to unus, formed with -cus instead
of -nus], adj., even, level, equal.

Hence, fair, just, equitable. — Esp.,
aequus animus, equanimity, content-
ment, resignation; aequo animo
aliquid facere (be resigned to, be
satisfied to, be content to); contentio
(on equal terms); aequo Marte, on
equal terms, with equal success.

aerariaus, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of
aes, copper) + arius], adj., (having
to do with copper). — Fem. as noun,
a mine.

aereus, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of
aes, copper) + eus], adj., of copper,
copper (as adj.).

aes, aeris, [?], n., copper. (as
metal for ships, or as money).

Hence, money. — Esp., alienum (débt,
another man's money).

aestās, -tātis, [st. akin to aedes
(hearth) + tas], f., (heat), summer
(the season for military operations).

aestimātiō, -onis, [aestimā- (st.
of aestimo, value) + iō], f., valua-
tion, estimation, value.

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aestim-
āri, -assayer], i. v. a., value, esti-
mate. — Less exactly, regard: gra-
vius (consider more serious, of
calamities).

aestivus, -ā, -um, [aestu- (cf.
aestus, heat) + ius], adj., hot.

Hence, summer (as adj.): tempus.
aestuarius, -a, -um, [aestus- (cf. aestus, tide) + arius], adj., (relating to the tide).—Only in neut., as noun, creek, estuary, marsh.

aestus, -tūs, [AID (in aedēs, hearth) + tus], M., heat (plur. in same sense). Hence, boiling, tide.

aetās, -tās, [for aevitas, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum, age) + tas], F., age (of old or young): aetate confectionis, oppressed with years.

aeternus, -a, -um, [aevo- (st. of aevum, age) + ternus], adj., (relating to age), eternal, lasting.

afr-, see adf-.

Africās, -a,-um, [Afrō- (st. of Afer, African) + cus], adj., of Africa. — Esp., sc. ventus, the S.W. wind (blowing from Africa to Italy).

āfuisse, āfutūrus, see absum.

Agēdincum, -I, [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne; now Sens.

ager, agrī, [AG in ago (drive?) + rus, akin to Eng. acre], M., land (cultivated), fields, country (opposed to city), territory (country), cultivated lands, fields (as opposed to woods).

agger, -eris, [ad-ger (for ges in gero, as st.], M., (that which is carried to a place), earth (for a wall), earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a rampart, a mole, a dike (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dike of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls): cotidianus (daily addition to the dike or walls).

agg- (except agger), see adg-.

agitātī, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [agitātī (freq. of ago, put in motion)], i. v. a., drive, chase. Hence, vex, trouble. —Fig., turn over (in mind), propose, discuss, purpose.

agmen, -minis, [AG (in ago, put in motion) + men], N., a moving, a march. —Concretely (of bodies in motion), a body in motion, a column, an army, a line (of troops in march), a train, a fleet. —Less exactly, an army (not in march). Phrases: primum (the van); novissimum (the rear); claudere (bring up the rear); conferto agmine, in close order; agmine, on the march; agmen legiōnum (the main column); extremo agmine, in the rear.

agō, agere, ēgī, ēactus, [AG, put in motion], 3. v. a., drive (apparently from behind, cf. duco, lead): sublices (drive down); vineas, turreas, etc. (set in motion, move on, advance); cuniculos (extend); ac portare (of live stock as booty, drive off). —Loosely, do (cf. “carry on”), act, treat, discuss, plead. —Phrases: conventum (hold); gratias (render, give, express, cf. habere and referre); quid agit, what is one about?; quid agitur, what is going on?; de obsessione agere (do anything about, engage in).

agricultūra, see cultura.

alacer, -cris, -cre, [?], adj., active, eager, spirited.

alacrītās, -tātis, [alacrī- (eager) + tas], F., eagerness, readiness, spirit, promptness.

ālārius, -a, -um, [alāri- (st. of
ala, wing, + rais, ius, adj. (belonging to the wings). Hence, of the allies (who held the wings of the army). — M. plur. as noun, allies, auxiliaries.

albus, -a, -um, [?, cf. Alpes], adj., white (pale, opp. to ater, cf. candidus, shining white, opp. to niger): plumbum album, tin.

alcēs, -is, [Teutonic, cf. elk], F., the elk (a large beast of the deer kind, resembling the moose).

Alesia, -ae, [Gallic], F., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now Alise-St. Reine.

aliás [unc. case-form of alius, but cf. foras], adv., elsewhere. — Of time, at another time: alius . . . alius, now . . . now (cf. alius . . . alius).

aliēnātus, p. p. of alieno.

aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [alienō, another’s], i. v. a., make another’s. — Also, make strange, alienate, estrange: alienata mente, in a frenzy.

aliēnus, -a, -um, [unc. st. akin to alius, other, (prob. imitated from verb-stems of 2d conj.) + nus], adj., another’s, of others, other people’s: fines (others’); aes (debt). Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable (cf. suus), foreign to the purpose. — Superl., m. plur. as noun, perfect strangers.

alīō [old case-form of alius], adv., elsewhere, elsewhere (of end of motion).

aliquamdiū [aliquam-diū, cf. quam diū], adv., for some time, some time, a considerable time.

aliquandō [alii- (in alius, other) -quando- when], at some time. —

Emphatically, at last (at some time, though not before).

aliquantō, see aliquantus.

aliquantus, -a, -um, [ali- (in alius, other) -quantus, how great (cf. aliquis)], adj., considerable. — Neut., as noun, a good deal, a considerable part. — aliquantō (as abl. of measure), by considerable, considerably, a good deal.

aliquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), [ali- (in alius, other) -quis, any], ind. pron. (more forcible than quis; not universal, like quiquam), some, any. — Emph., some (considerable), any (important). — As noun, some one, any one, something, anything.

aliquot [ali- (in alius, other) -quot, how many], indecl. adj., several, some (more than one, but not conceived as many).

alter [ali- (in alius, other) + ter], adv., otherwise, differently. — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context, alter se habere ac, be different from what, etc.; nec alter sentire quin, have no other idea but that.

alius, -a, -ud, [unc. root (cf. else) + ius], adj. pron., another (any one, not all), other, different, else, another (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), one . . . another, one another, one one (thing), another another: alius alia causa illata, alleging different reasons; alius ex alio (from different, etc., one from one, another from another). — Esp. in a partitive use, ex alius (with superl., most of all others, cf. “the
fairest of her daughters, Eve”);
alius atque (see atque).
all-, see adl-.
Allobroges, -um, [Celtic], m. plur.,
a Celtic people (of Gaul), living be-
tween the Rhone, the Isère, the
Lake of Geneva, and the Alps (in
Dauphiny and Savoy). They were
conquered in B.C. 121 by Fabius
Maximus.
alō, alere, alui, altus, [AL, nourish],
3. v. a., cause to grow, feed, nurse,
support (supply with food), foster,aise, keep (of animals): staturam
(increase). — Fig. foster, foment, feed.
Alpēs, -ium, [Celtic form, (cf.
albus) + is], f. pl., the Alps, more
or less loosely used of the whole
mass of mountains between Italy
(Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Ger-
many.
alter, -era, -erum, [AL- (in alius,
other) + ter (for -terus, compar.
suffix)], adj. pron., the other (of two).
— In plur., the other party. — Re-
peted (cf. alius), one the other, one
another (of two), one . . . the other.
— In plur., one party . . . the other.
— Also, the second (of more than
two), another (the second of three):
dies (the second). — Also (esp. with
negatives), another (beside one’s
self, where all are conceived as two
parties, one’s self and all the rest).
alternus, -a, -um, [alter- (as st.)
+ nus], adj., alternate, reciprocal,
mixed, alternating.
alitūdō, -inis, [altūs- (high) +
tudo], f., height, depth (cf. altus),
thickness (of a timber).
alūs, -a, -um, [p. p. of alo (nour-
ish), as adj.] (grown high by nour-
ishing), high. — From opposite point
of view, deep. — Neut., as noun, the
sea, the deep: in alto, in deep water;
ex alto, from the sea.
alūta, -ae, [? cf. alumen, alum],
r., leather (of a fine sort, like mo-
rocco?).
amb- [akin to ambo, both], prep.
only in comp., about, round about.
ambactus, -i, [prob. German], m.,
a retainer, a vassal.
Ambarrī, -ōrum, [Celtic], plur. of
adj., a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône.
They seem to have been clients of
the Hāeduī, and are called Haeduī
Ambarri.
Ambiānī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur.
of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief
town, Samarobriva, is now called
from their name, Amiens.
Ambibariī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m.
plur. of adj., an Aremorican tribe liv-
ing in a part of Normandy.
Ambillātī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m.
plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme
(possibly part of the preceding).
Ambiorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], m., an
able prince of the Eburones. He
caused a revolt of his nation against
Cāesar, which was partially success-
ful, and came near being entirely
so. He caused Cāesar uneasiness
for several years, and eluded every
effort to capture him.
Ambivaretī (Ambila-), -ōrum,
[Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Gallic
tribe, dependents of the Hāeduī.
Ambivarītī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m.
plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe on the
west bank of the Meuse.
ambō, -ae, -ō (-ōrum), [akin to amb-, round about], num. adj., both (together, cf. uterque, both separately).

ämēnēs, -entīs, [ab-mens], adj. (having the mind away), mad, crazy.

äsentia, -ae, [ament- (mad) + ia], F., madness, frenzy, (mad) folly.

amentiūm, -i, [? unc. root + mentum], N., a thong (attached to a javelin, and wound around it to give it a twisting motion in throwing, as with rifle balls).

amicitia, -ae, [amicō- (friendly) + tia], F., friendship, friendly relations, alliance. — Opp. to hospitium, personal friendship.

amicus, -a, -um, [unc. st. fr. AM (in amo, love) + cus], adj., friendly, well disposed: praesidium (devoted). — As noun, m., a friend, an ally.

amissus, p. p. of amitto.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., let go (away), let slip, let pass. Hence, lose (esp. of military losses).

amor, -ōris, [AM (in amo, love) + or (for o)], m., love, affection.

amplē [old case-form of amplius], adv., widely, largely. — amplius, compar., farther, more, longer: amplius quingenti, five hundred and more; ne quis, ... amplius (any more); amplius obsidum (see amplius); munera amplitissime missa (generous gifts).

amplificātus, p. p. of amplificō.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [amplificō- (amplō-) with FAC, make], 1. v. a., increase, enlarge, extend, heighten.

amplitūdō, -inis, [amplō- (large) + tudo], F., size, extent, greatness: cornuum (spread).

amplus, -a, -um, [?], perh. amb- (about) + st. akin to plus, plenus], adj. Of size and extent, lit. and fig., large, wide, great. — Esp., prominent, of consequence, splendid, noble, distinguished: munera (lavish, valuable); dimissae amplioribus copiis (the greater part of). — amplius, neut. comp. as noun (cf. plus), more, a greater number: amplius obsidum.

an, [?], conj. introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather. — Often with the first member only implied, or: quid venirent, an speculandi causa (or was it).

Anartēs, -ium, [?], m. plur., a people in Dacia (Transylvania), on the river Theiss, at the eastern end of the Hercynian forest.

Ancalites, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis, [amb-, about, caput, head], adj., (having a head on both sides), double-headed. — Less exactly, twofold, double: proelium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways).

ancora, -ae, [Gr.], F., anchor: in ancore, at anchor.

Andēs, -ium, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, in modern Anjou.

Andi, -ōrum, the same as the Andes.

Andocombogius, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief man of the Remi.

ānfractus (āmf-), -ūs, [am(b-)
angulus

†fractus, fr. FRAG (in frango, break)], m., a bending round. Hence, a winding, a circuit, a deviation (from a straight line).

angulus, -i, [prob. ancō- (st. of ancus, bent) + lus], m., (a little hook), a corner.

angustē [old case-form of angustus], adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters (closely).——Fig., sparingly (cf. ample), in small quantity.

angustiae, -ärum, [angustō- (narrow) + ia], f. plur., narrowness (prop. concrete, narrow); itinerum (a narrow pass); propter angustias (narrowness of the passage).——Fig., straits (difficult position, etc.); hard straits, difficulties: angustias premi, to be hard pushed.

angustus, -a, -um, [angor (squeezing) + tus], adj., narrow, confined: angustior a castra (less extensive); angustiore fastigio (narrowing, sloping, drawing in).——Fig., in angusto res est, the position is critical (cf. ‘in a tight place’).

anima, -ae, [ani- (treated as root, fr. AN, blow) + ma (f. of mus), cf. animus], f., breath. Hence, soul.——Plur., the soul (of man, abstractly).

animal, -ālis, [anima- + lis, n. of adj.], n., (a creature endowed with life), an animal (including man), a living creature (opp. to booty).

anima, -i, [ani- (st. as root, fr. AN, blow) + mus], m., breath, life, soul (vital).——Usually (the above meanings being appropriated to anima, wh. see), soul (as thinking, feeling), mind, feelings, feeling, intellect (but cf. mens), spirit: effeminare; levitas animi (disposition, nature, or together, want of constancy); animus relinquuit aliquem, one faints, loses consciousness; animi mollitia, want of energy or endurance; animo paratus, resolve; animum advertere (see animadvertere).——Esp. (in a good sense, often in plur.), spirit, constancy, courage, resolution: confirmare (encourage any one); re-languescere; promptus; paratus ad aliquid.——Also (as opp. to mens, wh. see), the moral powers, will, desires, affections, etc., the heart, the feelings, the disposition: bone animo esse, be well disposed, be of good cheer; esse in animo alculi, to have in mind, as a purpose; offendere or avertere (feelings); magni animi, of great ambition.——Also, animus magnus, courage, magnanimity, lofty spirit; animi magnitudo, lofty spirit; permulcere (angry spirit); mentes animosque perturbare (minds, as thinking, and hearts, as feeling, etc.); animi virtus, nobleness of soul; animi causa, for pleasure, for amusement, for fancy.

annōtinus, -a, -um, [some form of annō- (year) + tinus (cf. diutinus)], adj., last year’s, old (of ships made the year before).

annus, -i, [?], m., a year (as a point of time, as the course of the year, or as a period).
annus, -a, -um, [annō- (year) + us], adj., annual: magistratus creature (annually).

änser, -eris, [for hänser, akin to goose], m., a goose.

ante [old case-form], adv., before (of place and time), in front: ante dictum (above, before, previously); ante habuerat (formerly, once); iam ante, already before, already; paurcis ante diebus, a few days before. — Prep. with acc., before (of place or time): ante semittit (in advance of). — In dates, ante diem (a. d.) (on such a day before). — In comp., before (of place, time, and succession).

antēā [ante ēā, case-form of ēā], adv. (of time), before, previously, once.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [ante-cedo], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), go forward, advance, surpass (in size, etc.), exceed, precede, go in advance of.

antecursor, -ōris, [ante-cursor, runner], m. (a forerunner). — Esp. of the army, a scout, pioneer.

antēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [antefero], irr. v. a., place in advance, prefer. — Pass., be preferred, be the first, have the superiority.

antennā, -ae, [?], f., a yard (for sails).

antepōnē, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ante-pono], 3. v. a., (place in advance, cf. antefero), think of more importance.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ante-vertō], 3. v. a., (turn in front, cf. antepōnō), prefer.

antiquitās [antiquō- + tus], adv., from ancient times, from early times. — Less exactly, long ago, in early times, anciently.

antiquus, -a, -um, [anti- (cf. ante) + cue], adj., old (existing from early times, not so much in reference to present age as to former origin, cf. vetus), ancient.

Antistius, -i, [antistī- (antistes, overseer) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Antistius Reginus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Antōnius, -i, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus, Mark Antony, the famous triumvir, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul; also 2, his brother, Gaius, a legatus of Cæsar.

Ap., for Appius.

aperīō, -perīre, -perūi, -pertus, [ab-appario, get off, cf. operia, cover], 4. v. a., uncover, open. — apertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., open, exposed, uncovered, unobstructed: latus (the right side, not covered by the shield); collis (without trees); loca (open country); impetus maria (unbroken).

apertē [old case-form of apertus], adv., openly.

Apollō, -inis, [?], m., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and president of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and, on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity.

apparō, see adparo.

1. appellō, see adpello.
appellō (adv.), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [tād-pellō-, cf. compello], 1. v. a., call, name, address, call upon, style (declare one something or address in a certain character).
app-, see adp-.
Appius, -i, [?], a Sabine word?], m., a Roman prænomen.
Apr., for Aprilis.
Aprilis, -e, [prob. akin to aperio, open], (the month which opens the ground), adj., of April.
antus, -a, -um, [AP (in apiscor, lay hold of) + tus], adj., (fitted to), suited, adapted, fit, apt.
apūd [akin to ab], prep. with acc., at, among, with, before, on one's part, in relation to (a person); in one's house (company, possession).
aqua, -ae, [?], F., water, a water-course: aqua atque igne interdicere (a form of banishment among the Romans); mensūrae ex aqua, by the water-clock (a contrivance like an hour-glass for telling time by the running of water).
aquatīō, -ōnis, [aquā- (st. of aquor, fetch water) + tio], F., getting water (cf. pabulatio).
aquila, -ae, [F. of aquilus, dark gray, perch. remotely akin to aqua], F., an eagle. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.
Aquilīa, -ae, [Aquila- + eius], F., a city of Cisalpine Gaul (Venetia), founded by a Roman colony in B.C. 182 as an outpost on the northeast.
aquilīfer, -erī, [aquila-fer (reduced fr. -ferus, fer- (in ferō, bear) + us)], m., a standard bearer (of the eagle).

Aquitānia, -ae, [F. of adj. developed fr. Aquitanus], F., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean (see I. 1).
Aquitānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., of Aquitania. — Plur., as noun, the people of Aquitania. — Sing., a man of Aquitania, an Aquitanian.
Arar, -aris, [?], m., the Sabine, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.
arbiter, -trī, [ad-bito (go) + trus, cf. -trum], m., (a bystander), a witness. — Less exactly, a referee, an arbitrator.
arbitrium, -i, [arbitrō- (umpire, judge) + ium (cf. indicium)], n., judgment, will, pleasure (what one sees fit to do).
arbitror, -āri, -ātus, [arbitrō-, umpire, judge], 1. v. a. and n., think, suppose (judge).
arbor, -oris, [?], F., a tree.
arcessē, -ere, -sivi, -situs, [akin to accedē, but the exact relation uncertain], 3. v. a., summon, invite, send for (persons), call in: aliquem mercede (call in to serve for pay).
ārdeō, ārdère, ārsī, ārsus, [prob. aridō-, dry], 2. v. n., be hot, be on fire.
— Fig., be excited, be in a blaze, burn.
Arduenna, -ae, [?], F., the Ardenes (a very large forest region in northeastern Gaul).
arduus, -a, -um, [?], adj., high, steep, difficult (of ascent).
Arecomici, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a branch of the Volcae.
Areomericus (Arm-), -a, -um, [Celtic are, near, and mor, the sea],
argentum, -i, [akin to arguo, make bright], n., (the shining metal), silver. Also, of things made of the metal, silverware, silver.

argilla, -ae, [dim. akin to arguo, make bright, F., (white clay)], clay: fusilis (some vitrifying earth, such as porcelain is made of).

āridus, a-, um, [farō- (wh. aeo, be dry) + dus], adj., dry. — Neut. as noun, dry land.

ariēs, -ietis, [?], m., a ram. — Fig., a battering ram (a long timber armed at the end with metal for demolishing walls). — Less exactly, a buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge).

Ariovistus, -i, [?], m., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans.

Aristius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Marcus, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar’s army.

arma, -ōrum, [AR (fit) + tis (reduced)], F., (skill in fitting), skill, art. — Plur., the arts, the useful arts. artē [old case-form of artus], adv., closely, tightly.

articulus, -i, [artu- (joint) + cul-], m., a little joint. — Less exactly, a joint.

artificium, -i, [artific- (artificer) + ium], n., a skilful contrivance, an artifice, a trick. Also, a trade (opp. to ars, a higher art).

artus, -a, -um, [p. p. of arceo (shut up)], as adj., tightly bound, close: silva (thick).

Arvernus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Arverni (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne). — M. plur., the Arverni.

arx, arcis, [ARC (in arceo, shut up), + is (reduced)], F., a stronghold, a fortress, a citadel.
ascendō (ads-), -scendere, -scendi, -scensus, [ad-scando, clīmō], 3. v. a. and n., clīm up, clīm, ascēnd: val- lum (mount, scale).
ascēnsus (ads-), -īs [ad-Īscansus, cf. ascendo], m., a climbing up, an ascent, a going up.—Concr., a way up, a means of ascent: prohibere ascensum (from climbing up).
asciscō, see adsciscō.
aspectus, see adaspectus.
asper, -era-, -erum, [?], adj., rough, harsh.—Fig., fierce, violent.
ass-, see ads-.at [prob. form of ad], conj., but, but yet, at least.
atque (ac), [ad-que], conj., and (generally introducing some more important idea), and even, and especially.— Also, as, than: par atque, idem atque, the same as; simul atque, as soon as; similis atque, just like; aliter ac, otherwise than, different from what, etc.; alld atque, different from, etc.
Atrebās, -ātis, [Celtic], adj., Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul), rarely sing. of one.—Plur., the Atrebates.
Ātrius, -ī, [a-trī- (st. of ater, black) + ius], m., a Roman gentle name.—Esp., Quintus, a soldier in Cæsar’s army.
atteξō (ad-tē-), -texere, -texuī, -texus, [ad-texēo], 3. v. a., weave on, make on (by weaving).
attingō (ad-tē-), -tingere, -tīgī, -tāctus, [ad-tangō], 3. v. a., touch upon, touch, reach, join (of a nation’s boundaries).
attribuō (ad-tē-), -buere, -buī, -būtus, [ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., allot to, assign.
attuli, see adfero.
auctor, -ōris, [AUG (in augeō, increase) + tor], m., a voucher (for any act or statement), an authority, an adviser: deflectionis (leader); auctor esse, approve, advise; eis auctoribus, with their approval; auctore hoste, on the authority of the enemy.
auctoritās, -tātis, [auctor- (as if i-st.) + tas], f., influence, prestige, authority (not military or political, cf. imperium and potestas).
auctus, -a-, -um, p. p. of augeō.
audācia, -ae, [audac-(bold) + ia], f., daring, boldness, effrontery.
audācter, [audac- (bold) + ter], adv., with daring, boldly, fearlessly (but of an enemy): audacissime, with the greatest daring.
audāx, -ācis, [audā- (as if st. of audēo) + cus (reduced)] , adj., daring, bold.—See audaciam and audacter.
audēō, audēre, ausus, -[prob. avído-, eager], 2. v. a. and n., dare, venture, risk, dare to try (or do).—ausus, -a-, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, daring.
audiō, -dire, -divī, -ditus, [prob. akin to auris, ear], 4. v. a., hear, hear of.—audiēns, -entis, p. as adj., obedient (with dicto).
auditiō, -onis, [audi- (st. of audio) + tīo], f., a hearing, hearsay, report.
augeō, augēre, auxi, auctus, [AUG (causative or fr. unc. noun-stem)], 2. v. a., increase, magnify, enhance, add to (something).—Pass., increase.
Aulercus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj,
of the Aulerći (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — Plur., the Aulerći.

Aulus, -i, [?], m., a Roman præ-nomen.

auriga, -ae, [poss. akin to aura (cf. aurea, head stall)], c., a charioteer, a driver.

auris, -is, [akin to ear, st. aur- (cf. audio)], f., an ear.

Aurunculēius, -i, [Aurunculē (dim. of Auruncus, name of an Italian tribe) + eis], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar.

Auscī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a tribe of Aquitania.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of audaeō.

aut [?], but cf. autem], conj., or (regularly exclusive, cf. vel). — Repeated, either . . . or.

autem [?], akin to aut], conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. seō), on the other hand, then again, now (explanatory), whereas (in slight opposition to something preceding).

autumnus (auct-), -i, [for tauc-tominus, taeō (cf. augeō) + minus], m., autumn (the season of increase).

auxiliāris, -e, [auxiliō, help (as if auxiliō) + ris], adj., auxiliary. — Plur. as noun, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops (not Roman legionaries).

auxiliōr, -ārī, -ātus, [tauxiliō, help], 1. v. dep., give assistance.

auxiliōrum, -ī, [tauxiliō- (akin to augeō, increase) + ium], n., assistance, aid, remedy, relief: extremum (the last resource); ferre (to assist, to aid); auxilio (as a reënforcement); quo auxili causant habebat (as auxiliaries, etc.). — Plur., auxiliaries (as opp. to the regular heavy-armed infantry); reënforcements: auxilia tardare, hinder from rendering assistance.

Avaricēnsis, -e, [Avaricē- + en-sie], adj., of Avaricum. — Plur., the people of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -i, [Celtic], n., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges.

avēritia, -ae, [avarī- (greedy) + tia], f., covetousness, greed, avarice.

āvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [ab-veho], 3. v. a., carry off, carry away.

āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of averto.

āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, [ab-vertō], 3. v. a., turn aside, turn off, push aside. — Fig., alienate, estrange. — āversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., turned away. Hence, flying, or, with a change of point of view in translation, in the rear (of that to which the word is applied): ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur (by the enemy getting in their rear, etc.).

avis, -is, [unc. root + is], f., a bird.

avus, -i, [?], m., a grandfather.

Axona, -ae, [Celtic], f., a river of Gaul (now Aisne), a tributary of the Isara (Oise).
Bacenus, -is, [Teutonic], F., with sylva, a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

Baculus, -i, [baculus = baculum, staff], M., agnomen of Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar’s army.

Balearis, -e, [?], adj., Balearic (belonging to the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean, now Ibiza, Mallorca, and Minorca, famous for their slingers).

Balteus, -i, [?], M., a belt, a baldric (for the sword, passing over the shoulder, but sometimes also, a belt encircling the waist).

Balventius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name, only with Titus, a centurion in Cæsar’s army.

Barbarus, -a, -um, [prob. fr. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. balbus, stammering], adj., foreign (not Greek or Latin), uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians.

— Plur., the barbarians or savages (used of the Gauls).

Basilius, -i, [?], M., agnomen of Lucius Minucius Basilius, an officer in Cæsar’s army.

Batavi, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., the Batavi or Batavians, a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine.

Belgae, -orum, [?], M. plur., the Belgae or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul. — Perh. also a small tribe of that nation with this special name.

Belgium, -i, [Belga- + ium], N., the country of the Belgae.

bellicósus, -a, -um, [bellicus (of war) + osus], adj., warlike.

bellicus, -a, -um, [bellus (war) + cus], adj., of war, in war.

belli, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [bellō, war], 1. v. n., fight, make war; studium bellandi, a passion for war.

Bellovacī, -orum, [?], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

bellum, -i, [old duellum, (fr. duo), a strife between two], N., war, a war: bello persequi, etc. (in arms); bellum inferre, make war (offensive); bellum defendere, defend one’s self from war; parare bellum, make warlike preparations.

bene [old case-form of bonus, good], adv., well: bene gerere negotium, be successful in, etc.

beneficium, -i, [beneficio- (reduced) (cf. bene, FAC in facio) + ium], N., well-doing, a service, a favor, often rendered by Eng. plur., services, favors shown, services rendered: sortium beneficio, thanks to the lot; beneficio suo adductus, by gratitude for his favors.

benevolentia, -ae, [benevolent- (cf. bene, VOL in volo) + ia], F., goodwill, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, [Celtic], N., the chief town of the Hædui (Mont Beuvray) near Autun, which was founded later.
Bibrax, -ctis, [cf. last word], f., a town of the Remi.

Bibroci, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of southeast Britain.

biduum, -i, [bi- (= dvi-, akin to duo, -duum [akin to dies]), n., two days' time, two days.

biennium, -i, [bienni- (bi, akin to duo, -anno-, year) + ium], n., two years' time, the space of two years, two years.

Bigerriones, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Pyrenees (cf. Bigorre).

bini, -ae, -a, [bi- (= dvi, akin to duo) + nus], distrib. num. adj., plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets).

bipartitum, [abl. of bipartitus, parted in two], adv., in two divisions: bipartito conlocatis insidiis (in two places).

bipedalis, -e, [biped- (bi-ped-, in pes, foot) + alis], adj., of two feet (in measure), two feet (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for dvis, unc. case-form of duo], adv., twice.

Bituriges, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, Vibiscii (around Bordeaux) and Cubii (around Bourges).

Boduogna, -i, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Nervii.

Böia, f. sing. of Böii, Boia.

Böii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part joined the Helvetii in their emigration.

bonitas, -tatis, [†bonos- (good) + tas], f., goodness: agrorum (fertility).

bonus, -a, -um, [?], adj., good: bone animo esse, to be well disposed; optimum est, it is best; optimum inducet facere, express so high an opinion. — Neut. as noun, good, advantage; plur., goods, property, estate.

bōs, bovis, [akin to cow], c., a bull, a cow, an ox. — Plur., cattle.

braccium (brāch-), -i, [?], n., an arm.

Brannovices, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a division of the Aulerci living near the Hædii.

Brannovii (Bl-), -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the Hædii.

Bratuspantium, -i, [Celtic], n., a fortified town of the Beljovaci, not certainly identified.

brevis, -e, [for bregus, (bragh, break) + us], adj., short (of space or time): brevi, in a short space.

brevitatis, -tatis, [brevi- (short) + tas], f., shortness, short stature: brevitatis temporis, want of time.

breviter [†brevi- (short) + ter], adv., briefly.

Britanni, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., the Britons (including all the tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae, [†Britannos- + ia (f. of ins)], f., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um, [†Britannos- + cus], adj., of Britain, Briton: bellum (with Britain).

brūma, -ae, [†brevi- (short) + ma (superl.), sc. dies], f., the winter solstice.
Brutus, -tus, [brutus, heavy], a family name at Rome. — Esp., Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Caesar. He distinguished himself in command of Caesar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the civil war on the side of Caesar. But he joined the conspiracy against Caesar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Caesar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony.

cercimonia, -ae, [,ae], f., a rite, a ceremony.
Caerōsi, -orum, [,or], m. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
caeruleus, -a, -um, [perh. akin to caesius, bluish], adj., dark blue.
Caesar, -arīs, [,ar], m., a family name in the gens Julia. — Esp.: 1. C. Iulius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries. — 2. L. Iulius Caesar, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul.
caespēs, -itis, [,i], m., a sod (used in fortification).
caesium, -a, -um, p. p. of caedo.
calamitis, -ātīs, [,i], f., disaster (orig. to crops?), defeat, misfortune (also euphemistically for death): ejus (any accident to him).
Caletēs, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.
Caletī, -ōrum, same as the preceding.
callidus, -a, -um, [†callō- (cf. callum, thick skin) + dus], adj., (tough?), shrewd, cunning, skillful.
callō, -onis, [,i], m., a servant (of a soldier), a camp follower.
campester, -tris, -tre, [campō- (plain) + ster, as if †campet + tris...
(cf. equestris), adj., of the plain: "loca (level plains)."

campus, -i, [?], m., a plain.

Camulogenus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Aulerci.

Caninius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentle name.—Esp., C. Caninius Rebulus, a legatus of Cæsar.

canō, canere, cecīnī, cantus, [CAN], 3. v. a. and n., sing, sound (with voice or instrument).

Cantaber, -bra, -brum, [Celtic], adj., of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain, allied with the Gauls of Aquitania).—Plur., the Cantabri, the Cantabrians.

Cantium, -i, [Celtic], N., Kent (the southeast corner of Great Britain).

caper, -pré, [?], m., a goat, F., capra, -ae, a she-goat.

capillus, -i, [adj. form akin to caput, head], m., the hair (collectively).

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, [CAP], 3 v. a., take, capture, take possession of; get, acquire, seize; stipendium; nomen; arma (take up); montem (occupy).—Less exactly, choose, select: locum. — So also (esp. of ships, etc.), reach: portus (arrive at, make).—Fig., take in (deceive), captivate, beguile, also experience: dolorem; coniecturam (make); quietem (take, enjoy); fugam (take to flight).

caprea, -ae, [†caprē (reduced) (cf. caper, goat) + ea (f. of -eus)], F., a roe (a small animal of the deer kind).

Another reading for capra in vi, 27.

captivus, -a, -um, [as if ōcapť- (imaginary st. of captō, fr. capio) + vivus], adj., captive. — Masc. as noun, a captive, a prisoner.

captus, -a, -um, p. p. of capio.

captu, -ūs, [CAP (in capio) + tus], m., a seizing. Hence, what one can grasp.—Fig., capacity, character, nature.

caput, -itis, [?], akin to head], N., the head: capite demissa; capite solo ex aqua extare, have only the head above water.—Less exactly, person (cf. “head of cattle”); mouth (of a river).—Fig., life: poenam capitis (of death); capitis periculo (of life).

carō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, [?], 2. v. n., be without, go without.

carīna, -ae, [?], F., keel, bottom (of a ship).

carnutes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic people between the Loire and the Seine, about Orléans.

carō, carnis, [akin to crudus and raw], F., flesh, meat.

carpō, -pere, -pāś, -ptus, [akin to harvest], 3. v. a., pluck.—Fig., find fault with (cf. “pick at”).

carrum, -i, [Celtic], N., a cart (of the Gauls).

carrus, -i, m., another form for carrum.

cārō, -a, -um, [?], adj., dear, precious, valuable.

Carvilius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentle name.—Also, a king of part of Kent.

casa, -ae, [?], F., a cottage, a hut.

cāseus, -i, [?], m., cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum, [Celtic, cf. Vêlo-
casses and Cassiveinsunus], M. plur., a British tribe.

Cassinas, -a, -um, [†Cassio- (reduced) + ānus], adj., of Cassius: bellum (the war in B.C. 107, in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near Lake Geneva, and killed).

cassis, -idis, [?], F., a helmet (of metal, for horsemen, cf. galea).

Cassius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., L. Cassius Longinus, consul B.C. 107 (see Cassianus).

Cassiveinsunus, -i, [Celtic], M., a British chief ruling north of the Thames, who took command of the general resistance of his countrymen to Cæsar, but was finally reduced to submission.

castellum, -i, [†castrō- (fortress) + -um (N. of -lus)], N., a fortress, a fort, an outwork, a redoubt.

Casticus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Sequani.

castrum, -i, [skad (cover) + trum], N., a fortress.—Plur., a camp (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): in castris, in camp, also in service; castra ponere, pitch a camp; castra movere, break camp, move; quintis castris, after five days’ journey, as the Romans encamped every night.

cāsus, -ūs, [cad (in cado, fall) + tus], M., (what befalls), an accident, a chance (good or bad), a mischance: hoc ipso tempore et casu (emergency); casu, by accident, by chance; casu devenit, chanced to, etc.; quarum rerum casus (the occurrence, the happening, the possibility); eundem casum ferre (fate); belli casum sustinere (take the chances); in eiusmodi casu (a case); ad extremum casum, to the most critical position; ad omnes casus, against all accidents; in eum casum deduci (that pass).

Catamantaloedēs, -is, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, -ae, [?], F., a chain (for prisoners), a cable: in catenas con dict (into prison); in catenis tenere.

Caturiges, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people in Roman Gaul (Provincia).

Catuvolcus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, [?], F., a cause, a reason, an excuse, grounds, a motive (for an act), a right (to anything): satis causae, sufficient reason. Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for, on behalf of: libertatis causa; potentiae causa (to gain); praedandae causa (to, etc.); insidiarum causa, for an ambuscade; animi causa, for amusement, for fancy.—Also, a cause (in law), a case: causa cognita, after trial; causa indicta (unheard); causam dicere, plead one’s cause, stand a trial, be tried; causae dictio (a trial). Hence, also, a situation, a case: Germanorum unam esse causam (the case . . . the same); in eadem causa, in the same situation, also, on the same side.

caute [old case-form of cautus], adv., with caution, cautiously.

cautēs, -is, [akin to cos, whet-stone], F., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cautus, p. p. of caveo.
Cavarillus, -i, [Celtic], m., a prince of the Hædui.

Cavarinus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Senones, made their king by Cæsar.

caveō, cavère, cāvi, cautus, [perh. skv, cover], 2. v. n. and a., be on one's guard, guard against (something), take or give security.

cōdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [ʔ], 3. v. n., make way (in any direction). — Esp., give way, retreat, retire: cedentes, the flying; cedere loco, abandon a position, a military term. — Fig., yield: fortunae.

celer, -eris, -ere, [CEL (in cello, rush) + ris], adj., swift, quick, speedy, fast: motus (sudden).

celeritās, -tātis, [celeri- (in celer) + tās], p., swiftness, activity, speed, promptness: ad celeritatem onerandi, to secure quick loading; itineris (quick marching).

celeriter [celeri- (in celer) + ter], adv., quickly, speedily, very soon, soon.

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ʔ, akin to clam, secretly, and caligo, mis], 1. v. a., conceal, hide: arma. — Pass., pass unnoticed.

Celtae, -ārum, [Celtic], m. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain. — More particularly, the Celts (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnēis, -e, [Cēnabō- + ensis], adj., of Cēnabum, of the Cēnabenses, the people of Cēnabum.

Cēnabum (Gēn-), -i, [Celtic], n., the chief city of the Carnutes, now Orleans (from its later name, urbs Aurelianaensis).

Cēnimāgni, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a British tribe.

Cēnomāni, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a division of the Aulerici.

cēnoō, cēnsēre, cēnsūi, cēnsus, [ʔ], 2. v. a., (perh. fine), reckon, estimate. — Less exactly, give one's opinion, advise, decree (of the Senate), determine.

cēnus, -ūs, [akin to cēnoō], m., a numbering, a count, a census.

centum (C), [akin to humā-red], indecl. num. adj., a hundred.

centuriō, -onis, [†centuria- (century) + oj], m., a centurion. A subaltern officer from the ranks, commanding a century, originally a hundred men.

cerno, cernere, crēvī, crētus, (sifted), certus, (determined), [CER-, separate], 3. v. a., separate. Hence, distinguish, see, behold, descry. — Also, determine.

certāmen, -inis, [†certā- (in certo, fr. cerno) + men], n., a struggle, a contest, rivalry.

certē [old case-form of certus], adv., certainly, surely, at least (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more).

certus, -a, -um, p. p. of cerno as adj., determined, fixed, certain (of the thing as well as the person), sure, established, regular: certiorem facere, inform, order; certissimae res, absolutely certain facts; dies certa, an appointed day; certa subsidia (regular, as organized beforehand); certum in locum (particular).
cervus, -i, [root of corne (horn) + vus], m., a stag; plur., in military language, a structure of forked stakes (like stags’ horns), chevaux-de-frise.

(costerus), -a, -um, [Cf. (in ece, behold, hic, this) + terus (cf. alter)], adj., the rest of (cf. alius, other, not including all).—Usually plur., the rest, the remaining, the others; frumento ceterisque rebus (everything else necessary, where alius would mean some other things).


Cevenna, -ae, [Celtic], f., the Clévennes (a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley).

Chéruscī, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a tribe of the Germans between the Weser and the Elbe.

cībārius, -a, -um, [cībē-, food (reduced) + arius], adj., pertaining to food. — Neut. plur. as noun, provisions: molēta (ground corn).

cibus, -i, [?], m., food.

Cicerō, -ōnis, [cicer (chickpea) + ē, orig. a nickname, possibly from excrescences on the nose], m., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — Esp.: 1. Marcus Tullius, the great orator. — 2. Quintus (Tullius), his brother, in Cæsar’s service in Gaul as legatus.

Cimberiīus, -i, [akin to Cimbri], m., a prince of the Suevi.

Cimbri, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered at Aque Sextiae and Vercellae by Marius and Catulus, B.C. 102 and 101.


cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīntus, [?], 3. v. a., surround, encircle: flumen oppidum (run around). — Less exactly, man (occupy in a circuit, of walls).

cippus, -i, [?], m., a stake, a pillar, a post. — Plur., apparently jocously used of a peculiar form of palisades, boundary-posts (?), chevaux-de-frise.

circā [case-form (instr. ?) of circus (cf. circum)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around. — See circiter.

circinus, -i, [circō- (cf. circum) + nus], m., a pair of compasses, a compass.

circiter [circō- (around) + ter], adv. and prep. with acc., about. — Fig. (of time, number, and quantity), about (in the neighborhood of), near, not far from.

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumcire.

circuitus, -tīs, [circuitus], m., a circuit (a going round), a circuitous route, a circumference: in circuitu, all around.

circum [acc. of circō-, around (cf. curvus)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around.

circumcidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsūs, [circum-caedo], 3. v. a., cut around,
cut (the idea of around being implied in the context).—circum-
cisisus, -a, -um, p. p. — Fig., isolated: colliis.
circuitadô, -clûdere, -clûsî, -clû-
sus, [circum-claudo], 3. v. a., en-
close around, encircle, place a band
around.
circumdatus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumdeo.
circumdô, -dare, -dedi, -datus, [circum-
do], 1. v. a., put around:
murus circumdatus (encircling,
thrown around). — By a confusion
of ideas, surround, encircle: aciem
rheids.
circumducô, -ducere, -dûxi, -duc-
tus, [circum-duco], 3. v. a., lead
around.—Less exactly, of a line,
draw around.
circumdactus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumduco.
circu(m)eo, -fre, -iî, -itus, [circum-
eo], irr. v. n., go around.—Becoming
active, visit, make a tour of: hiberna.
circumfundô, -fundere, -fûdi, -fû-
sus, [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., pour
around. — Pass. (reflexive), pour
in, rush around, rush in on all sides.
—Also (cf. circumdo), surround:
multitudine praesidia (surround with
a swarming multitude).
circumiciô, -icere, -îeci, -iectus,
[circum-lacio], 3. v. a., throw around.
—Esp. in a military sense, hurl
around, throw around: circumiecta
multitudine (assailing on all sides).
circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumicio.
circummittô, -mittere, -mîsî, -mis-
sus, [circum-mitto], 3. v. a., send
around.
circummûniô, -îre, -îvi, -itus, [cir-
cum-munio], 4. v. a., fortify around,
throw fortifications around, fortify,
protect (by a fortification).
circumnûnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circummunio.
circumplector, -plectî, -plexus,
[circum-plecto, twine], 3. v. dep.,
embrace, surround.
circumvisistô, -sistere, -stetî, no
p. p., [circum-viso, place (one’s
self)], 3. v. a., stand around, flock
around, rally around, surround, hem
in, beset.
circumphiciô, -spicerâ, -spîxi, -spectus,
[circum-specio], 3. v. a.,
look about for.—Fig., think over,
consider, cast about for: animo con-
stîtua (by way of investigating or
divining).
circumstô, -stare, -stetî, no p. p.,
[circum-sto, stand], 1. v. a., sur-
round.
circumvâllatus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumvallo.
circumvâllô, -âre, -âvi, -âtus, [cir-
cum-vallo, intrench], 1. v. a., sur-
round with walls, blockade, invest.
circumvectus, p. p. of circum-
veho.
circumvehô, -vehere, -vexî, -vectus,
[circum-veho], 3. v. a., carry
around.—Esp. pass. as dep., ride
around, sail around.
circumveniô, -venire, -venî, -ven-
tus, [circum-venio, come], 4. v. a.,
swarm around.—Fig. (cf. ‘get round’),
impose upon, defraud, betray, cir-
cumvent.
circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumvenio.

cis [case-form of ce (cf. ec-ce, cetera)], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, this side of.

Cisalpinus, -a, -um, [cis Alpes (as if cisalpi-) + nus], adj., being this side the Alps, Cisalpine. Gallia (that part of Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps).

Cisrhenumus, -a, -um, [cis Rhe-num (as if cisrhenum-) + nus], adj., being this side the Rhine, this side the Rhine (as adj. phrase). — Plur. as noun, the people this side the Rhine (i.e. towards Gaul).

Cita, -ae, [perh. ci (in cieo) + ta (cf. nauta)], m., a Roman family name. — Only, C. Fulvius, a Roman knight doing business in Cenabum.

Citatus, -a, -um, p. p. of cito.

citer, -ra, -rum, [ce (cf. cis) + terus (reduced, cf. alter)], adj., on this side (rare and antiquated). — Usually citerior (compar.), nearer, hither (as adj.) : provincia, Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opp. to Farther Gaul, cf. Cisalpinus); Hispania (the eastern part of Spain).

Citō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [citō- (fr. cieō, put in motion)], i. v. a., urge on, hurry. — Citatus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in haste: citatus fertur, runs very rapidly.

Citō [abl. of citus (fr. cieō, put in motion)], adv., quickly: citissimē (very rapidly).

Citrā [case-form f. of citer], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, within (as opp. to beyond).

citrō [dat. of citer], adv., to this side: utro citroque, back and forth, to and fro.

civis, -is, [ci (in quietes, rest) + vis (weakening of -vus)], c., a citizen, a fellow-citizen.

civitas, -tātis, [civi- + tas], f., the state of being a citizen, citizenship. — Esp., Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise. — Less exactly, a body of fellow-citizens, the citizens (as a body), one's fellow-citizens, a state (composed of citizens), a city (because the city was the state), a nation, a tribe (politically): expellit e civitate (from the country).

Clam [case of st. akin to caligo, mist, etc.], adv. and prep. with abl., secretly.

Clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [freq. of clamo], i. v. a., keep crying out, vociferate, cry out.

Clāmor, -ōris, [clam (as if root of clamo) + or], m., a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry.

Clandestinus, -a, -um, [unc. st. (perh. manufactured from clam) + minus], adj., secret, clandestine.

Clārus, -a, -um, [CLA (in clamo, cry out) + rus], adj., bright, clear. — Fig., famous. — Also (of sound), loud, distinct.

Classis, -is, [CLA (in clamo, cry out) + tis], f., (a summoning). — Less exactly, the army (called out). — Esp., an army (called out for duty at sea), a fleet (the most common later meaning).

Claudius, -i, [claudō- (lame) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — Esp.,
Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius in B.C. 54.

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus, [of unc. form., akin to clavis, key], 3. v. a., close, shut, fasten. — Esp., claudere agmen, close the line of march, bring up the rear.

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of claudo.

clāvus, -i, [clau- (cf. clando) + us], m., a nail, spike.

clēmēna, -entis, [perh. CLA (in clarus, bright) + mens (cf. vehemens)], adj., (bright?), genile (of weather). — Fig., gentle, kind, merciful. — See clementia.

clēmentia, -ae, [clement- + ia], f., kindness, gentleness, humanity, Clemency.

cliēns, -entis, [= cluens, p. of clueo, hear, obey], c., (a hearer), a dependant, a vassal, a retainer.

clientēla, -ae, [client- + ūla (imitating suadela, etc.)], f., vassalage (as condition of a cliens). Hence (viewed fr. the other side), protection. — Phrases: magnae clientelae, many vassals (extensive relations of "clientage"); Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to, etc.).

clīvus, -i, [clī (lean) + vus], m., a slope, a declivity, an acclivity; adj. mollieum clivum, to make the ascent easier.

Clōdius, -i, [the popular form of Claudius], m., a Roman gentile name, belonging to the plebeian branch of the gens Claudia. — Esp., P. Clodius, a most bitter enemy of Cicero. He was killed in a fray by T. Annius Milo, who was defended by Cicero in a famous oration still extant.

Cn., for Gaetae.

coacervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-agervo], 1. v. a., heap up, mass together, heap on top (of others).

coāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of cogo.

coāctus, -tūs, [con-actus (cf. cogo, force)], m., compulsion.

coaegmentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-aegment-, joint], 1. v. a., fasten together.

coartō (-arc-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-arato], 1. v. a., press together, confine.

Cocosētes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Aquitania.

coemō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [con-emō], 3. v. a., buy up.

coēō, -ēre, -ēvi (-i), no p. p., [con-eō], irr. v. n., come together, unite, meet.

coepī, -isse, coeptus, [con-tapi (perf. of tāpo, cf. apiscor)], def. v. a., (have taken hold of), began, undertook, started. — coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. used in same sense as the active with pass. infinitives.

coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of coepī.

coercēō, -ercēre, -ercul, -ercitus, [con-arceo], 2. v. a., confine, keep in check.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-agito (in sense of revolve, discuss)], 1. v. a., consider, think over. — Esp. (as to some plan of action), think about, discuss (what to do), have an idea of, intend, consider (that something may happen), expect (contemplate the possibility): cogitare ne, see that not, think how not, plan to prevent; nihil cogitare de bello (have no thought of, etc.).
cōgnātiō, -ōnis, [con-(g)natio, birth], f., connection by birth.—Concretely, a family, a clan: magnae cognationis, having connections (by blood).

cōgnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of cognoscō.

cōgnōscō, -gnōscre, -gnōvī, -gnītus, [con-(g)nosco, learn], 3. v. a., learn, find out, find, become aware.—Esp., investigate, inquire into, learn about, study.—In perf. tenses (cf. nosco), know, be aware: cognitum est de aliqua re (something was known); causa cognita, upon a full investigation, after trial; egregia virtute erant cogniti (had been found to be of, etc.); ad cognoscentium, for inquiry.

cōgō, cōgere, cōgēi, coāctus, [concago], 3. v. a., bring together, collect, assemble, get together. Hence, force, compel, oblige: coactus, by compulsion.

cohors, -hortis, [con-fortis (reduced), akin to hortus, garden] f., an enclosure. Hence, a body of troops, a cohort (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohōrtačiō, -ōnis, [con-hortatio (cf. cohortor)], f., an encouraging, encouragement.—Esp. (to soldiers), an address (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohōrtor, -āri, -ātus, [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, rally, address (esp. of a commander): cohortāti inter se, encouraging, urging one another.

coll- (except collis), see conl-.

collis, -is, [?], m., a hill.

colō, colere, colui, cultus, [?], 3. v. a., till, cultivate.—Fig., attend upon, court, cultivate (as a friend), pay court to, worship (of divinities).

colōnia, -ae, [colōniā- (cf. colō) + ia], f., (state of a colonist).—Concretely, a colony (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupants of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

color, -ōris, [prob. akin to cāligō, as opp. to white], m., color.

com- (con-, co-) [the same as cum], adv. in comp., with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation.

combūrō, -übère, -ūssī, -ūstus, [con-uburo (?), relation to uro very uncertain, cf. bustum, funeral pyre], 3. v. a., burn up, consume.

comes, -itis, [con-fmitis (MA in meo, go) + tis], c., a companion (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower).

cōminus [formed by some false analogy from con manus], adv., hand to hand (cf. ēminus, at a distance), in close combat, at short range.

comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comitōr.

comitium, f, [?], perh. comit- (see comes) + ium, the assemblage of followers (cf. servitium), n., a part of the Forum at Rome.—Plur., an election (assembly of the people for voting).
comitor, -āri, -ātus, [comit-, company], i. v. dep., accompany. —
comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in present sense, accompanying.

commēstus, -tus, [con-mestus, cf. comemō], i. v., to go and fro, m., a going to and fro, an expedition (back and forth), a trip. Hence, communications (of an army). — So also, supplies (of an army), provisions.

commemōrō, -āri, -āvi, ātus, [commemorō, call to mind], i. v. a., remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative).

commendō, -āri, -āvi, ātus, [commando, commit], i. v. a., intrust, commend, recommend, surrender.

commendō, -āri, -āvi, ātus, [commito], i. v. a., intrust, commend, recommend, surrender.

commenō, -ēnis, [con-mēnit- (soldier) + o], m., fellow-soldier, comrade.

comminus, see comminus.

commissionā, -ae, [com-missura (cf. committo)], r., a joint, a seam.

commissionēs, -a, -um, p. p. of committo.

committō, -mittere, -misi, missus, [committo], 3. v. a., (let go (send) together or altogether). Hence, join, unite, attach: proelium (engage, begin the engagement). — Also, trust: se barbaris committere (put one’s self in the hands of, etc.); nihil his committere (place no confidence in, etc.). — Also, admit, allow (to happen), commit (suffer to be done, cf. admitto), perpetrate: neque commissum a se, nothing had been done by them; committere ut posset, leave it possible; nihil committerebant, did nothing.

Commius, -i, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Atrebates.

commodē [old case-form of commodus], adv., advantageously, conveniently, fitly, readily, to advantage: satis commodē, to much advantage; non satis commodē, not very easily.

commodum, see commodus.

commodus, -a, -um, [con-modus, measure, adj., (having the same measure with), fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous: commodissimum est, it is the best thing, most advantageous. — Neut. as noun, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: commodo rei publicae, without prejudice to the public interests; omnibus in vita commodis, all the blessings of life; rei familiaris commodum, the interests of one’s property; quas sui quisque commodi fecerat (for his own convenience).

commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus, [unc. case-form (of st. akin to moneo, warn) -facio], 3. v. a., remind.

commorātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoror.

commoror, -āri, -ātus, [con-moror], i. v. dep., delay, stay, linger.

commotus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoveo.

commoveō, -movērō, -mōvi, -mōtus, [con-moveo], 2. v. a., move, stir, agitate. — With reflex., or in pass., be moved, move (intrans.), stir. — Fig., disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, influence (with idea of violent feeling).
communícátus, -a, -um, p. p. of communico.

communícō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [communícō - (st. of communicus, communi- + cus)], 1. v. a., (make common), share, communicate, consult (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), add (a thing to another), put in along with (something else).

communīō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [communio], 4. v. a., strongly fortify, fortify, intrench, build (make by fortification).

commūnīs, -e, [con- + munia (cf. munia, duties)], adj., (having shares together), common, general, in common: ex communi consensu, by general agreement; consilium (general plan, concerted action); res (the common interest).

commütātiō, -ōnis, [con-mutatio (cf. commuto)], f., change: aestus (turn).

commūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commuto.

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [commuto], 1. v. a., change, exchange: studium bellī agricultūrā (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture).

comparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comparo.

1. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [comparo], 1. v. a., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for (with a different view of the object in English): omnibus rebus comparatis, having made all arrangements.

2. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-
compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of compelio.

conâtum, -i, [N. p. p. of conor as pass.], N., an attempt, an undertaking.

conâtus, -tus, [comâ- (st. of conor) + tus], M., an attempt, an effort.

conâtus, -a, -um, p. p. of conor.
concédō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus, [con-caedo], 3. v. a. and n., (give up a thing to one), allow, grant, assign (leave, where the rest is taken away), permit, yield the palm (to a superior), yield, make a concession.

concertō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [concerto], 1. v. n., contend.
concussus, -sūs, [con-caussus (cf. concedo)], M., a concession, a permission.

condidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [con-caedo], 3. v. n., fall down, fall.
condidō, -cidere, -cidi, -citus, [con-caedo], 3. v. a., cut to pieces, cut down (kill), cut up (land by estuaries).

conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [conciliō, assembly], 1. v. a., bring together. Hence, win over, secure (even by force), win, gain.

concilium, -i, [con-tcilium (call) + ium, cf. Kalendae], N., a meeting. — EsP., an assembly (of war or state), a council, a conference: per concilium, in council.

conciusus, -a, -um, p. p. of concido.
concitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of concito.

concitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [concito, freq. of cleo, stir], 1. v. a., arouse, stir up, call out (and so set in motion).

conclāmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conclamo.

conclāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [conclamo, cry out], 1. v. n., cry out, shout: victoriam (cogn. acc.), shout victory.

concludō, -cūdere, -cūsī, -cūsus, [con-claudo], 3. v. a., shut up, enclose: mare conclusum (enclosed, inland).

conclusus, -a, -um, p. p. of conclude.

Conconnetōdumnus, -i, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Carnutes.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepitūrus, [con-crepo], 1. v. n., rattle, clash: armis (clash their arms, of soldiers).

concurrō, -currere, -curri (cucurrī), cursus, [con-curro], 3. v. n., run together, rush up, rush in, rush (advance), flock to, hasten in: concursum est, there was a rush.

concurō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [concuro, freq. of curro, run], 1. v. n., rush to and fro: concursari iubet, orders a noise of running to and fro to be made.

concursus, -a, -um, p. p. of concuro.

concursus, -sūs, [con-cursus (cf. concuro)], M., a rushing to and fro, a dashing together (collision). — EsP., a charge, onset, a crowd running, a crowd.

condemnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of condemnno.

condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [condamno, condemn], 1. v. a., condemn, find guilty.

condiciō, -onis, [con-DIC, say (cf.
condicio, agree]. F., terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms (of fighting), state (of slavery): ad iniquam condicionem pugnandi, to fight on unequal terms.

condōnō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [condono], I. v. a., give up, pardon for the sake of.

Condūsī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, -ducere, -ductus, lead], 3. v. a., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire: manus conducta, a band of mercenaries.

cōnfecτus, -a, -um, p. p. of cōnficio.

cōnferceā, -fercire, -fēseri, -fertus, crowd together.
— cōnfertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -tātus, crowd], irr. v. a., bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect. — With or without culpam, lay the blame on, charge. — With reflexive, betake one's self, remove, take refuge. — So with other words, fortunas, (remove, transfer). — Also, postpone, delay.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, p. p. of cōnfercio.

cōnfestim [acc. of tcon-festis (cf. festino, hasten)], adv., in haste, immediately, at once.

cōnficō, -ficere, -ficī, -fectus, [con-facio], 3. v. a., (do up), accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform. — Also, make up, write up (of a document), work up, dress (of skins). — Also (cf. Eng. "done up"), finish up, exhaust, wear out: nondum confecta hieme, when the winter was not yet spent, before the end of, etc. — See also confio.

cōnfiō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, [confido, trust], 3. v. n., (trust fully), be confident, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on, feel assured. — cōnfsus, -a, -um, p. p. in act. sense, trusting in.

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [configo, fix], 3. v. a., fasten together, fasten.

cōnfinia, -e, [confinia], adj., having boundaries together, adjacent: confines Senonibus, neighbors of the Senones.

cōnfinium, -i, [confini- + ium], N., neighborhood, confines, common boundaries.

cōnfiō, -fīerī, -fectus, [con-flo], irr. v. n. (used rarely as pass. of cōnfigo), be accomplished, etc. (see cōnfigo).

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, [confirmatio, cf. confirmo], F., (positive) assurance, confirmation.

cōnfirmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of confirmo.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, confirm, make firm], I. v. a., strengthen. — Fig., strengthen, establish (pacem), reassure, encourage, confirm, assure (by oath): se (resolve). Hence (of things and statements), confirm, declare.

cōnfsus, -a, -um, p. p. of confido.

cōnstitō, -sitērī, -sessus, [con-
confixus, 34

fateor, confess], 2. v. dep., confess, acknowledge, admit.

confixus, -a, -um, p. p. of configo.

conflagro, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-
flagro, blaze], 1. v. n., be on fire, burn.

confictātus, -a, -um, p. p. of
conficto.

confictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-
fitcto, cf. confingo], 1. v. a., dash
against (one thing against another), assail, harass.

confingō, -fingere, -fīxi, -fictus,
[con-fingō, strike], 3. v. a. and n.,
dash against, contend, fight.

confiūnēns, -entis, [pres. p. of
confiūo], m., a meeting of two rivers,
conference.

confluō, -ere, -fluxī, no p. p. [con-
fluō], 3. v. n., flow together.—Less
exactly (of persons), flock together.

[con-fugīo], 3. v. n., flee, take refuge.

confundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus,
[con-fundo], 3. v. a., pour together.
—Less exactly, mingle, mix indiscriminately, unite without distinc-
tion, unite, combine.

congregō, -gregi, -gressus, [con-
gradior, step], 3. v. dep., come to-
gether.—In peace, unite with.—
Esp. in war, come in contact with,
engage, fight.

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of
congregō.

congressus, -sūs, [con-gressus, cf.
congregō], m., an engagement, en-
counter.

coniciō (-iicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus,
[con-iacio], 3. v. a., throw together,
hurl, cast, discharge: so conciere,

conlausō

throw one’s self, rush.—Less ex-
actly (esp. in a military sense), throw
(into prison), put (to flight), place,
station (cf. military throw troops
into, etc.), force.—Fig., put together.
(of ideas).

coniectūra, -ae, [con-iectura, cf.
conicio], F., a guess ("putting two
and two together"), a conjecture:
coniecturam capere, form a conjec-
ture, infer.

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conicio.

coniunctum [acc. of coniunctus
(iung as root) + tis, cf. coniun-
geo], adv., unitedly, in common, al-
together.

coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of con-
iungo.

coniungo, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus,
[coniungo, join], 3. v. a., unite,
connect, fasten together.—In pass.,
or with reflexive, unite (neut.),
connect one’s self, join.—coniunctus,
-a, -um, p. p. as adj., united, closely
connected.

coniūnx, -iugis, [coniūnx (tuca,
yoke, as st., with intrusive n from
iungo)], c., a spouse.—Esp., F.,
a wife.

coniūrātiō, -onis, [coniūratio, cf.
coniuro], F., conspiracy, a con-
federacy.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [coni-
uro], 1. v. n., swear together, take
an oath (together), swear mutual
oaths. Hence, conspire, plot.

conlātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of
confero.

conlaudātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p.
of conlausō.

conlausō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
conlēctus, 35

[con- laudo], i. v. a., praise (in set terms).

conlēctus (coll.-), -a, -um, p. p. of consiligo.

conligō (coll.-), -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [con-legō], 3. v. a., gather together, gather, collect, acquire (by accumulation).—With reflexive, collect one's self, recover.

conligō (coll.-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-līgo], i. v. a., bind together, fasten together: scuta (lock together).

conlocātus (coll.-), -a, -um, p. p. of conlocō.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-loco, place], i. v. a., place, set, station (of troops, etc.): angustius milites (stow, in a vessel).—Esp. (with or without nuptum), give in marriage, marry (of a father or guardian).—Fig., settle: rebus conlocandis, making dispositions.

conloquium (coll.-), -i, [con-loquium, cf. conloquor], n., a conference, an interview, a parley.

conloquor (coll.-), -loqui, -locūtus, [con-loquor], 3. v. dep., (talk together), confer, hold an interview (or parley), parley, converse.

cōnor, -āri, -ātus, [i. v. dep., attempt, try, endeavor: idem conari, make the same attempt.

conquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, -quiētūrus, [con-ueseco, rest], 3. v. n., rest, repose.

conquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītus, [con-ueira, seek], 3. v. a., search for, seek for, hunt up.

conquisītus, p. p. of conquirō.

consanguineus, -a, -um, [con-san- guin- (blood) + eus], adj., akin (by blood).—As noun, a kinsman.

consendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus, [con-scendo, climb], 3. v. a., climb, climb upon: navis (in navis) (go on board); vallum (man, mount).

cōscientia, -ae, [con-scientia, cf. conscious], f., consciousness, privity, conscience, knowledge.

consescō, -iscere, -scīvī, -scītus, [con-scisco, decrees], 3. v. a., resolve. Less exactly, with dat. of reflex., take to one's self: mortem (commit suicide).

cōscius, -a, -um, [con-tacius, sci (in scio, know) + us], adj., knowing (with one's self or another), conscious, aware of.

conscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [con-scribo], 3. v. a., write down.—Esp., enrol, conscribe, levy, enlist.

conscriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of conscribo.

conssecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consecro.

conssecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con- sacro, make sacred], i. v. a., hallow, consecrate.— conssecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., consecrated, sacred.

conssector, -āri, -ātus, [con-sector, freq. of consequor], i. v. dep., overtake, follow up.

conssecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of consequor.

consensus, -ōnis, [consensus, cf. consentio], f., agreement, unanimity.

consensus, -ōnis, [consensus, cf. consentio], m., agreement, consent, harmonious (or concerted) action.

consentiō, -sentire, -sēni, -sēn-
Cōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus, [Cōsequor], 3. v. dep., follow (and stay with), overtake. Hence, obtain, secure, attain, succeed in (some purpose). Also, follow close upon, succeed, ensue.

Cōservō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [Cōservo, save], 1. v. a., save, preserve, spare. Also, observe (law, right), regard.

Cōnsidius, -ī, [Cōn+sidius (akin to sedēō, sit)], a Roman name. — Esp., Publius, a Roman soldier.

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessūrus, [Cōn+sido], 3. v. n., sit down (in a place). Less exactly, take a position, halt, encamp, settle.

cōnsilium, -ī, [Cōn+silium (cf. consul, akin to salio, in some earlier unc. meaning)], n., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium). — Esp., wise counsel, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, counsel, design, purpose. — And so (design carried out), course, measure, conduct. — Phrases: ipsorum esse consilium (a matter for them to decide); quasi consilii sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation; commune consilium, concerted action; publicum consilium, action of the state, official action; barbaris consilium non defuit (an intelligent plan of action).

cōnsimilia, -e, [Cōn+similia], adj., very like, just like.

cōnstitō, -stere, -stit, no p. p., [Cōn+sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v.

n., take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops). — In perf. tenses, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay. — With in, occupy, rest on. — Fig., depend on, rest on.

Cōnsobrinus, -ī, [Cōn+sobrinus, cf. soror, sister], m., first cousin (on the mother's side). Less exactly, (any) cousin german.

Cōnsolātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consolor.


Cōnспектus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicio.

Cōnспектus, -tūs, [Cōn+spectus, cf. conspicio], m., sight. — in conspectu, in one's presence; in conspectum proferre (display).

Cōnspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicor.

Cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [Cōn+specio, look at], 3. v. a., catch sight of, esp'y, see.

Cōnspicor, -āri, ātus, [Cōn+spiro-, cf. SPEC, see], 1. v. dep., catch sight of, esp'y, see.

Cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [Cōn+spiro, breathe], 1. v. n., sound together. — Fig., harmonise, agree. — Also, conspire, league together.

Cōnstantēr, [Cōn+stant- (standing firm) + -er], adv., consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly.

Cōnstantia, -ae, [Cōn+stant- (stand-
cōnstituō, -stītue, -stītūtus, [con-statūtu], 3. v. a. and n., set up, raise, put together, make up. Hence, establish, station, arrange, draw up (aciem). — Fig., determine, appoint, agree upon, determine upon, fix, decide upon: praemia (offer).

cōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of cōnsto.

cōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of cōnsto.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -sulū, -sultus, [prob. consul, though poss. a kindred or independent verb], 3. v. a. and n., deliberate, consult, take counsel, decide. — With acc., consult, take the advice of. — With dat., take counsel for, consult the interests of, consult for the welfare of, look out for, do a service to: vitae (spare). — Phrase: sortibus consultum (est), lots were drawn to decide.

cōnsulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [consulō, decision], 1. v. n., consult: de bello (take measures for).

cōnsultō, [prob. like abl. abs. used impersonally], adv., with deliberation, purposely, designedly.

cōnsultum, -i, [N. p. p. of consul], N., a decision, an order, a decree. — Esp., senatus consultum, an order of the senate.
consumo

consumō, -sümere, -sümpeis, -sümptus, [con-sumo], 3. v. a., (take out of the general store). Hence, waste, consume, destroy, spend, exhaust.

consumptus, -a, -um, p. p. of consumo.

consurgō, -surgere, -surrexī, -surrectus, [con-surgo, rise], 3. v. n., rise, rise up. — Esp. of a session, break up.

contabulō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [contabulo, cf. tabula, board], i. v. a., build up (with floors in stories), floor with planks. — Also, build up (generally, as of a wall with towers).

contágio, -ōnis, [con-†tagio, fr. tag in tango, touch, cf. contingo], v., contact. — Esp. with something noxious, implying contagion.

contaminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of contaminō.

contāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [contamin- (st. of contāmen, i.e. TAG (touch) + men)], i. v. a., bring into contact, unite. — Esp. with notion of contagion (cf. contagio), contaminate: facinore contaminatus (implicated in).

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [con-tego], 3. v. a., cover up, cover.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptus, [con-temno, slight], 3. v. a., despise, disregard, hold in contempt.

contemptiō, -ōnis, [con-†emptio, cf. contemno], v., contempt, scorn: in contemptionem venire, incur the contempt, etc.

contemptus, -tūs, [con-†emptus, cf. contemno], m., contempt, scorn: contemptui est, is a matter of ridicule.

contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tensus, [con-tendo, stretch], 3. v. n., strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor, exert one's self, attempt, be zealous: id contendere et laborare, strive and exert one's self for, etc. — Esp. with verbs of motion, press on, hasten. — Also, fight, contend, wage war. — With ad and in like constructions, hasten, march, start to go (in haste): vi contendere, to force a passage; petere contendit, seek earnestly.

contentiō, -ōnis, [con-†tentio, cf. contendō], v., struggle, efforts. — Esp. contest, fighting, dispute.

contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of contendō and contineō.

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [con-textō], 3. v. a., interweave, weave together. — Also, weave (make by weaving).

contextus, -a, -um, p. p. of contexto.

continēns, -entis, pres. p. of contineō, wh. see.

continenter [continent- (holding together) + ter], adv., continually, without stopping, continuously, incessantly.

continentia, -ae, [continent- (holding together) + ia], v., self-restraint, moderation.

contineō, -tinere, -tinuī, -tentus, [con-teneo], 3. v. a., hold together, hold in. Hence, in many fig. meanings, restrain, hold in check, keep (within bounds), hem in, retain (in something). — Pass. or with reflex., keep within, remain, be included in, be bounded, consist in (be contained in). — Also, hold on to, join. — con-
tinēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., (holding together), continual, contiguous, continuous. — Also, restraining one's self, continent. — As noun, the continuous land, the continent.—contentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., satisfied, content.

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [con-tango, touch], 3. v. a. and n., touch, reach, join. — With dat., happen.

continuātiō, -ōnis, [continuā- (cf. continuō) + tio], F., continuation: continuatio imbrorum, incessant rains.

continuō [abl. of continuus], adv., immediately, straightway, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um, [con-|tenuus (ten in teneō (hold) + uus)], adj., continuous, successive: dies (successive).

contō, -ōnis, [prob. for convenō], F., an assembly. — Less exactly, an address, a harangue (to an assembly or to soldiers).

contōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of continentor.

contōnōr, -āri, ātus, [contion-,-address], 1. v. dep., harangue, address (an assembly or an army).

contra [unc. case-form (instr.? ) of conterus (con- + terus, comp. ending)], adv. and prep. with acc., opposite, contrary to, against, in opposition, on the other hand: contrā atque, contrary to what, etc.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, [con-traho], 3. v. a., draw together, draw in, bring together, gather together, contract, narrow, make smaller, bring into smaller compass.

contrārius, -a, -um, [conterō (see contra) + arius], adj., opposite (lit. and fig.), contrary: ex contrario, on the contrary; in contrarium partem, in the opposite direction.

contrōversia, -ae, [controvers- (opposite) + ia], F., a dispute, a quarrel. — Plur., grounds of quarrel.

contumēlia, -ae, [unc. form., akin to contumax and tumeō, swell], F., (swelling pride?), an outrage, an insult, an affront. — Fig., violence (of waves), buffeting.

convālescō₂, -valēscere, -valui, no p.p., [con-|valesco, cf. valeo, be well], 3. v. n., recover, get well.

convallis, -is, [con-vallis], F., a valley (enclosed on all sides). — Less exactly, a defile, a valley (of any kind).

convēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of convehō.

convehō, -vehere, vēxi, vectus, [con-vehō], 3. v. a., bring together, bring in, collect.

conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., come together, meet, assemble, come in, arrive, agree upon, agree. — With acc., meet, come to. — Also, of things, be agreed upon, be fitting, be necessary (in a loose sense in Eng.).

conventus, -tūs, [con-|ventus (cf. convenio and adventus)], m., an assembly, a meeting. — Esp., an assize, court (the regular assembly of Roman citizens in a provincial town on stated occasions, at which justice was dispensed).

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of convertō.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [con-vertō], 3. v. a., turn about, turn
Convictolitavis, -is, [Celtic], m., a young Hæduan nobleman.

convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of convinco.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victus, [con-vinco, conquer], 3. v. a., prove, make good (a charge, etc.): avaritia convicta, found guilty of avarice (changing the point of view for the Eng. idiom).

convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [convoco], 1. v. a., call together, summon, call (a council).

cōrōr, -ōrāri, -ortus, [con-orior, rise], 3. (and 4.) v. dep., arise, spring up, break out (of a war).

cōrūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of coorior.

cōpia, -ae, [cōpi- (con-opa, aid) + ia, cf. inopia, inops], f., abundance, plenty, supply (both great and small), quantity, number.— Esp., luxury (abundance of everything).— Plur. (esp. of forces), forces, resources, supplies.— Phrases: copiam facere, afford a supply, give an opportunity; magna copia locorum (choice); copia atque usus, necessary supplies.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, [copia (reduced) + oae], adj., abounding in wealth, well supplied, wealthy.

cōpula, -ae, [con-tapula (from AP, lay hold of)], f., (holding together), a grappling-hook.

cor, cordis, [root as st. (akin to Eng. heart)], n., the heart.— Phrase: cordi esse, be dear.

cōram [unc. case, formed from con and os, face], adv. and prep. with abl., face to face, present, in person.

Coriosolites, -tum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Areromic Gaul.

corium, -ī, [?], n., a hide, a skin.

cornū, -ūs, [?], n., a horn.— Fig., a wing (of an army).

cōrūna, -ae, [?], f., a garland.— Fig., a circle (line, of soldiers).— Phrase: sub corona, at auction (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction).

corpus, -oris, [unc. root + us], n., the body, the person.— Also, a body (dead).— Less exactly, extent (of a camp).— Phrase: magnitudo corporis, size, stature.

corrumpō, -rumpe, -rūpĭ, -ruptus, [con-rumpo, break], 3. v. a., spoil, ruin.

cortex, -icis, [?], m. (also f.), bark.

Corus (Caurus), -i, [?], m., the northwest wind.

cōtēs, -is, (cau-) [akin to cos, whetstone], f., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cotidiānus (quo-), -a, -um, [cotide- + anus], adj., daily: cotidiano labore.

cotidiē (quo-), [quot (how many)
Cotta, -ae, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Caesar.

Cotuátus, -i, [?], m., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -i, [Celtic], m., a young Hæduan nobleman.

crassitūdō, -inis, [crassō- + tudo (as if crassitu- + do)], f., thickness.

Crassus, -i, [crassus, fat], m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus (Licinius) Crassus, consul with Pompey, b.c. 55; one (with Caesar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. Publius Crassus (called Adulescens, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Caesar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. Marcus Crassus, another son of the Triumvir, quaestor, b.c. 54, in Caesar's army.

crātēs, -is, [?], f., a hurdle, a fascine (a hurdle used to hold up earthworks in fortification). — Also, wicker (for hurdles).

creātus, -a, -um, p.p. of creo.

crēber, -bra, -brum, [crē- (in creo, bring forth) + ber], adj., thick, close, numerous, frequent: arboreis (thickly growing); praesidia (continuous, not far apart, at short intervals).

crēbrō, [prob. abl. of creber], adv., frequently, constantly, in rapid succession, at short intervals.

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus, [ācre-], faith (of unc. formation) + do, place], 3. v. a. and n., trust, entrust, believe, suppose.

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], i. v. a., burn, consume: ignis cremari, be burned alive, be burned to death.

crēdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [unc. form., akin to cresco], i. v. a., (cause to grow), create. — Esp., elect, choose, appoint.

Crēs, Crētis, [Gr.], m., a Cretan. — As adj., Cretan.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus, [st. crē- (also in creo, bring forth) with -eco], 3. v. n., grow, increase, swell (of a river), be swelled, increase in influence (of a man), grow great, grow powerful.

Criticōnātus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Arverni.

cruciatūs, -tūs, [crucia- (st. of crucio, torture) + tus], m., crucifying. Hence, torture. — With a change of relation, suffering (of the person tortured).

crūdēlis, -e, [ācru- (in crudescer, akin to crudus, bloody) + iis, cf. Δρόλη, άνίμαλη], adj., (bloody?), cruel. — See the following.

crūdēlitās, -tātis, [crudelī- + tas], f., cruelty.

crūdēliter [crudelī- + ter], adv., cruelly, with cruelty.

crūs, crūris, [?], n., the leg.

cubīlē, -is, [ācubī- (st. akin to cumbo) + iis (cf. cruelis), n. of adj.], n., a couch, a resting-place, a bed, a lair.

culmen, -inis, [unc. root (in cellō, rise) + men], n., a height, a top, a summit, a roof.

culpa, -ae, [?], f., a fault, blame, guilt.

cultūra, -ae, [culte- (cf. colo, till)
cum [?], prep. with abl., with.

cum (quom), [case-form of qui],
conj., when, while, whenever. —
Often rendered by a different con-
struction in Eng.: cum non possent,
not being able ; cum prohibent, while
defending. — Of logical relations
(usually with subjv.), when, while,
since, inasmuch as, though, although:
cum . . . tum, while . . . so also ; cum
. . . tum maxime, not only . . . but
especially; cum primum, as soon as.
cumulus, i, [†cumō + ius], m.,
a mass, a heap, a pile.
cunctatiō, -ōnis, [cunctā- (st. of
cunctor) + iō], F., hesitation, re-
luctance, indisposition to fight.
cunctor, -āri, -ātus, [?], i. v. dep.,
hesitate, hang back, be reluctant: non quin
(have no hesitation in, etc.).
cunctus, -a, -um, [for conjunctus ?], adj., all, all together.
cuneātim [cuneā-, wedge (reduced)
+ atim, as if acc. of †cuneatis], adv.,
in the shape of a wedge. — Esp. of
soldiers, in (a peculiar wedge-shaped)
column of attack.
cuneus, i, [akin to conus, cone],
m., a wedge.
cuniculus, -i, [Gr.], m., (a cony). —
Transf., a burrow. Hence, a mine
.esp. in a military sense.
cupidē [old case-form of cupidus],
adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly.
cupiditās, -tāris, [cupīdō- + tas],
F., desire, eagerness, greed: cupidit-
tate adductus, through over seal.
cupidus, -a, -um, [noun st. akin to
cupio + dus], adj., eager, desirus,
longing (for), fond of, ambitious
(for), with a passion (for).
cupio, -pere, -pīvi, -pītus, [partly
root verb, partly from †cupi- (cf.
cupidus)], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n.,
be eager (for), be anxious, desire,
(stronger than volo). — With dat.,
wish well to, be zealous for. — Phrase:
cupientibus signum dat, gives the sig-
nal to his impatient soldiers.
cūr (quōr), [perh. for qua re],
adv., why (rel. and interr.).
cūra, -ae, [akin to caveō, beware],
F., care, anxiety, attention: curae
alici esse, be one’s care, object of
one’s attention.
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cura], i. v.
a. and n., take care, provide for. —
With gerundive, cause (to be done),
have (done).
currus, -ūs, [cur (?) + us, cf. cur-
ro, run], m., a chariot (= essedum).
cursus, -ūsūs, [cur (?) + tus, cf.
curro, run], m., a running, running,
speed, a run (in concrete sense), a
course (space or direction run) : cur-
sum adaquare (keep up with); cur-
sus incitato or magno, at full speed;
edem cursu, with the same impetus,
without stopping; in hoc medio cursu,
midway of this passage, from Britain
to Ireland.
custōdia, -ae, [custodī- (guard) +
ia], F., custody, guard (state of be-
ing guarded). — Plur. (concretely),
guards, keepers.
custōdiō

custōdiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, [custod-, guard, as if custodi-], 4. v. a., keep under guard, guard.

custōdis, -tōdis, [unc. st. + dis (cf. merces, -ēdis, palus, -ēdis)], c., a guard, a watchman, a keeper, a spy.

D, [half of CIC = M], 500.
D., for Decimus.
Dācus, -a, -um, [?], adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Galicia, Wallachia, etc.). — Plur., the Dacians.

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of damnō.
damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnō-, loss], 1. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

damnum, -i, [?], DA (give) + mensa (cf. alumnus), N., (fine), loss.

Dānuvius (-bius), -i, [?], M., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

dātus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de populo mereor (deserve well or ill of, properly win from); de consilio (by, cf. ex). — Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris. — Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de regno desperare; nihil de bello timere, have no fear of war; de potentatu contendere; de iniurias satisfacere. — In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia. —

Often with verbs of sense which may take acc.: sentio de, learn, discover. — Phrases: de improviso, of a sudden, unexpectedly. — In comp., down, off, away, through (cf. debeo, decerto).

debeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitus, [de-ha-beo], 2. v. a., (have off of one's possessions), owe, be bound, ought, must, cannot help: indicari debere (might well be, etc.). — Pass., be due, be owing.

decedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [de-ce-do], 3. v. n., (make way off, cf. cedo), retire, withdraw, withdraw from, shun. — Esp. (from life), die.

decem, [?], indecl. num. adj., ten.
deceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of decipio.
decernō, -cernere, -crevī, -cretus, [de-cerno], 3. v. a. and n., (decide off, so as to clear away), decide, determine, decree, order (as a result of determination).

decertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-certo, fight], 1. v. a. and n., contend (so as to close the contest, cf. "fight it out"), decide the issue, try the issue (of war), carry on war, fight (a general engagement): risk a decisive battle (with or without pugna).

decessus, -sūs, [de-cessus, cf. decedo and incessus], M., withdrawal, departure: aestus (ebb, fall).

Decetia, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, on the Loire, Decise.
décidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p., [decado], 3. v. n., fall off (or down), fall (from one's horse).

decimus, -a, -um, [decī (as st. of decem) + mus], adj., tenth. — Masc. as noun, a Roman prænomen (see Brutus).

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [de-caplo], 3. v. a., (take off, catch), beguile, deceive.

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-claro], 1. v. a., (clear off), make plain, declare (decide and state).

dēclīvīs, -e, [de-clīvis (or clīvas, slope)], adj., sloping down, inclined. — Plur. as noun, slopes.

dēclīvitās, -tās, [declīvi- + tas], F., slope: ad declivitatem, downward.

dēcērētum, -ī, [prop. N. of decretemus], N., a decree, a decision.

dēcēruitus, -a, -um, p. p. of decerno.

decumānus, -a, -um, [decumō (reduced) + anus], adj., belonging to the tenth: porta (the rear gate, of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted).

decurīōs, -ōnis, [decuria- (reduced) + o], m., a commander (of a decuria of cavalry, a small squadron).

dēcurrō, -currere, -currī (cucurri), -cursūrus, [de-currō], 3. v. n., run down, run away, hurry off.

decus, -oris, [unc. root (cf. decet, it becomes) + us], N., honor, glory.

dēdecus, -oris, [de-decus], N., disgrace, dishonor.

dēditicīus, -a, -um, [deātīō- (reduced) + cius], adj., surrendered. — Plur. as noun, prisoners (taken by surrender), subjects, persons surrendered.

dēditīō, -ōnis, [de-datio, cf. dēdo], F., surrender: in dēditionem accipere, receive one's surrender; in dēditionem venire, to surrender.

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēdo.

dēdō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītus, [de-dō], 3. v. a., give over, surrender, give up, devote. — In pass. or with reflex., surrender one's self, submit.

dēducō, -duere, -dūxī, -ductus, [de-duco], 3. v. a., lead down or off, lead away, withdraw, draw off (praedālia), take away (of men), bring away, lead (from one place to another), bring (into a situation). — Fig., induce, bring, lead. — Esp. of ships, launch (draw down); of women, marry (used of the man, cf. nubo); of things, bring, draw, turn. So, raise (a man to fortune). — Also, rem in periculum (cause a perilous situation); in controversiam deducta (coming to, etc.); deduci militēs (march out, led by their commander).

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēduco.

dēfatīgātīō (-fet-), -ōnis, [de-fatigatio], F., exhaustion.

dēfatīgātus (-fet-), -a, -um, p. p. of defatigo.

dēfatīgō (-fet-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-fatigo], 1. v. a., wear out, exhaust, worry, tire out.

dēfectīō, -ōnis, [de-factio, cf. deficio, fail], F., falling off, defection, falling away, revolt.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fēnī, -fēnsus, [de-fendo, strike], 3. v. a., ward off, defend one's self against. — Also, with changed relation, defend, protect.
défensió, -onis, [de-²fensio, cf. défendo], F., a defence.

défensor, -ōris, [de-²fensor, cf. défendo], M., a defender. — Also, a means of defence, a defence, a buffer.
— Phrase: speciem défensorum, a show of defence.

défero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [défero], irr. v. a., carry down, carry away, bring, land (of ships). — Pass., be borne down or off, drift (of ships), turn aside: delati in scrobis (falling). — Fig., confer upon, put in one's hands, hand over, report, lay before.

défessus, -a, -um, p. p. of défetisco.

défetiscor, -fisci, -fessus, [de-fatiscor, gape], 3. v. dep., crack open.
— Fig., become exhausted. — défessus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., exhausted: défessus, an exhausted man.

déficō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [de-facio, make], 3. v. a. and n., fail, fall away, revolt, fall off, abandon (with ab): animo (despond).

défigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [de-figo, fasten], 3. v. a. and n., fix (in or down, plant, set, fasten, drive down.

définītio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [de-finio, end'], 4. v. a., set limits to, fix, appoint.

défixus, -a, -um, p. p. of défigo.

défluō, - fluere, -fluxī, -fluxūrus, [de-fluo], 3. v. n., flow down, flow apart, divide (of a river).

défore, see désum.

déformis, -e, [de-forma (shape), weakened and decl. as adj.], adj., uncomely, unshapely, ugly, bad-looking.

défugiō, -fugere, -fugī, no p. p., [de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., fly from, avoid, fly, flee.

délicio (dēlic-), -icere, -ićī, -icētus, [de-iacio], 3. v. a., cast down, throw down, drive off, drive out, dislodge, kill (pass., fall), overthrow, throw on shore (of ships), deprive, reduce: ea spe diecīi, disappointed in this hope.

délectus, -a, -um, p. p. of décio.

délectus, -tūs, [de-lectus, cf. iacio, throw], m., a declivity, a slope.

déinceptus, [dein- (cf. déinde) + cepa, cf. cap in capio], adv., in succession.

déinde (dein) [de-inde, thence], adv., then, next.

délatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of défero.

délectūs, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [délecto, cf. délicio], 1. v. a., delight.
— Pass., take delight, delight.

délectus (dē-), -tūs, [de-lectus, cf. deligo, select], m., a levy, a conscription.

délectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo.

déleō, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētus, [de-³leo (akin to lino)], 2. v. a., (smear out), blot out, wipe out (of a disgrace). — Fig., annihiło comparing.

déléitus, -a, -um, p. p. of déleoe.

déliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-libero, perh. akin to libra, balance], 1. v. a. and n., discuss, consult, deliberate: re deliberata, after discussing the matter.

délibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-librō, bark (adj. de-liber)], 1. v. a., peel, strip (of bark).

délicitum, -i, [N. p. p. of delinquo], N., thing left undone, failure, offence.
déligátus, -a, -um, p. p. of déligo (āre).

déligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [deligo], 3. v. a., choose out, select. —
dēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., chosen, picked.

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [deligo, bind], 1. v. a., tie down, moor, tie.


dēmentia, -ae, [dement- + ia], F., madness, folly.

dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of démeto.

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, [de-meto, reap], 3. v. a., reap, cut down.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [de-migrō, depart], 1. v. n., move away (change residence), move one’s effects, emigrate.

dēminuō, -uere, -uī, -utus, [demino, cf. minus], 3. v. a. and n., diminish, curtail, lessen, detract: de volupitate quicquam (make any diminution of): quid de legibus (disregard in any manner); de sua benevolentia (lessen his good-will).

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of deminuo.

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [de-mitto], 3. v. a., let go down (cf. mitto), let down, stick down (at the bottom of a ditch). — In pass. or with reflex., let one’s self down, descend, set one’s self down. — Fig., despond (se animo), be discouraged. — dēmissus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., low-hanging, bowed (of the head).

dōmō, dēmere, dēmpsi, dēmptus,
dēpōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, [de-pono], 3. v. a., lay down, lay aside, deposit. — Fig., lose, abandon (hope), blot out (memory), resign.
dēpopulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of depopular.
dēpopular, -ārī, -ātus, [de-popular], i. v. dep., rāvage, lay waste; p. p., pass., laid waste.
dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-porto], i. v. a., carry off, carry away, remove.
dēposcō, -poscere, -posscī, no p. p., [de-posco], 3. v. a., demand earnestly, demand, call for, claim.
dēpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of depo-

nō.
dēprecātor, -ōris, [de-precator, cf. deprecōr], m., a mediator (to beg off something for somebody): eo deprecatorē, by his mediation.
dēprecōr, -ārī, -ātus, [de-precōr], i. v. dep., pray to avert something, pray (with accessory notion of relief), beg, beg off, pray for pardon, pray to be spared, resort to prayers, ask for quarter, beseech.
dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, hēnsus, [de-prehendō, grāsp], 3. v. a., capture, catch, seize, take possession of. — As in Eng., catch (come upon), surprise.
dēprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of deprehendo.
dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-pugno], fight decisively, fight it out.
dēpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-
pello.

dērēctē (dī-) [old case-form of directus], adv., straight: ad per-
pendiculum (perpendicularly).

dērēctus (dī-), -a, -um, p. p. of derigo.

dērigō (dī-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [de-regō], 3. v. a., straighten out, direct: aciem (form); opera (set in order, arrange). — dērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, straight up and down, perpendicular.
dērivātus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-

rivo.

dērivō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [perh. immedi-
ately fr. de-rivus (brook), prob. through adj. st.], i. v. a., draw off (water), divert.
dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-rogo, - in its political sense], i. v. a., take away, withdraw.
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēns-
sūrus, [de-scando], 3. v. n., climb down, descend. — Fig., resort to, have recourse to, adopt (with ad).
dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, [de-seco], i. v. a., cut off.
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [de-sero, join], 3. v. a., disunite. — Esp., abandon, forsake, give up, leave in the lurch. — dēserrtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., deserted, solitary.
dēserrtor, -ōris, [de-σerrtor, cf. desero], m., a deserter.
dēserrtus, -a, -um, p. p. of des-

ero.

dēsidērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of des-
idērō.

dēsidērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, cf. considero], i. v. a., feel the want of, desire, miss, need, desire (want to see), lose (of soldiers). — Pass., be missing (lost): perpauci desiderati quin cuncti, etc. (all with very few exceptions).
désidla, -ae, [desid- (st. of desce, de- sed as st.), F., idleness, sloth.

désignatus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-signo.

désignō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-sig-no], I. v. a., mark out, indicate, mean.

désiliō, -silīre, -silui, -sultus, [de-saliō], 4. v. n., leap down, leap (down), jump overboard, dismount.

désistō, -sistere, -stitūr, [de-sisto], 3. v. n., stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon: fuga (cease flying).

déspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio.

déspectus, -tūs, [de-*spectus, cf. despicio], m., a view down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectus (sheer precipice).

désperātīō, -ōnis, [de-*peratio, cf. despero], F., despair, desperation.

désperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of despero.

désperō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [des-pereo, cf. spes, hope], I. v. n. (but see below), cease to hope, despair.—

désperātus, -a, -um, as pass., despaired of. — Also as adj., (hopeless'), perh. orig. despaired of), hence deserve.

despiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [de-specio], 3. v. a. and n., look down, look down upon.— Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent); look down upon, despise.

despoliō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [des-polio], I. v. a., strip off.— With change of relation, strip (also fig., as in Eng.).

désstinatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of de-stino.
dētrāctō [de-teneo], 2. v. a., hold off, detain, delay, stop.

dētrāctō (-tracto), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-tracto], i. v. a., (hold off from one’s self), avoid, shun.

dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of dētraho.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, [de-trahō], 3. v. a., drag off, snatch (away). — With less violence, take away, take off, withdraw (with no violence at all).

dētrāctō, see dētracto.

dētrimentōsus, -a, -um, [dētrimentō- (reduced) + osus], adj., detrimental, hurtful.

dētrimentum, -i, [de-†trimentum (tri- in tero, rub, + mentum), cf. dētero], n., (a rubbing off), loss, injury. — Esp., defeat, disaster.

dēturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēturbo.

dēturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-turbo, disturbō], i. v. a., drive off (in confusion).

dēurō, -ērire, -ūsī, -ūstus, [de-uro], 3. v. a., burn off, burn up.

deus, -i, [akin to divus, Iovis, diea], m., a god.

dēus, -a, -um, p. p. of deuro.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [de-veho], 3. v. a., carry away, bring (to a place), bring along.

dēveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventūrus, [de-venio], 4. v. n., come away, land (come down from the sea), come (from one place to another).

dēvexus, -a, -um, [prop. a p. p. of deveho], adj., sloping. — Neut. plur. as noun, slopes, hillsides.

dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of devinco.

dēvinco, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, [de-vinco], 3. v. a., conquer (so as to prostrate), subdue (entirely).

dēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-voco], i. v. a., call down (or away). — Esp., fig., invite, bring: fortunas in dubium (risk).

dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēvovo.

dēvoveō, -vovere, -vōvī, -vōtus, [de-voveo], 2. v. a., vow (away). — Less exactly, devote. — dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as noun, a devoted follower (sworn to die with his companion).

dexter, -era, -erum, (-tra, -trum), [unc. st. (perh. akin to digitus?) + terus], adj., right (in the right hand). — dextra, f., (sc. manus), the right hand (esp. used as a pledge of faith, as with us).

Diablintes (-tres), -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci.


dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [t dicē (cf. causi-dicus)], i. v. a., adjudge, assign (in some legal manner). — Less exactly (esp. with reflex.), assign, make over: se in clientelam (bind one’s self, attach one’s self); se in servitutem (surrender).

dicō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, [dic, in dico and dicus], 3. v. a. and n., (point out?), say, speak, name. — Esp., with authority, name, appoint, fix: ius (administer, cf. dico); sententiam (give). — Special uses: dicunt, they
dictio; causam dicere, plead one's cause, hence be tried, be brought to trial. — See also dictum.

dictio, -onis, [dic (as root of dico) + tio], F., a speaking, a pleading (cf. dico): causae (pleading one's cause, trial).

dictum, -i, [N. p.p. of dico], N., a thing said, a statement, a remark, a command: dicto audientes esse alciui (be obedient, obey).

diducē, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, [dis-ducō], 3. v. a., draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide.

dies, -ēs, [prob. for dives, DVU + AS], M. (rarely F. in some uses), a day (in all Eng. senses). — Also, time: in dies, from day to day, with idea of increase or diminution: diem ex die ducere, put off a thing day after day; ad diem, on the day; dies longior, a later time.

differē, differre, distulī, dilātus, [dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., bear apart, spread. — Also, postpone, defer, differ.

difficilis, -e, [dis-facilis, easy], adj., not easy, difficult: iter (hard to pass over).

difficultās, -tās, [difficili- (weakened) + tās], F., difficulty: magna difficultate afficiabantur, was much troubled; rei frumentariae (difficulty of supplying grain).

difficultēter [difficili- (weakened) + ter], adv., with difficulty; compar., with greater difficulty.

diffidō, -fidere, -fius sum, [dis-fido], 3. v. n., distrust, not have confidence.

diffiās, -a, -um, p. p. of diffido.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus, [dis-fundo], 3. v. a., spread out.

digitus, -i, [?], M., a finger: pollex (the thumb). — As in Eng., a finger's breadth, a finger (as a measure).

dignitās, -tās, [dignō + tas], F., worthiness, worth, dignity, prestige, position (superior); tribuere (have respect for).

dignus, -a, -um, [?, perh. root of dico + nus], adj., worthy.

diūndicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dis-iudico, judge], 1. v. a. and n., decide (between two).

dilēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of diligō.

diligenter [diligent- + ter], adv., carefully, with care, with exactness, exactly, with pains: conservavit (took pains to save); parum diligenter, too carelessly.

diligentia, -ae, [diligent- + ia], F., care, pains, painstaking, diligence: remittere (cease to take pains, take less care).

diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [dis-lego], 3. v. a., (choose out), love, be fond of. — See also diligens.

dimēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dimetriō.

dimētior, -mētīri, -mēnus, [dimetior], 4. v. dep., measure (in parts), measure out (esp. of camp). — dimēnsum, -a, -um, measured.

dimicātiō, -ānis, [dimico], F., fight, contest.

dimico, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [dis-mico], 1. v. n., (brandish swords to decide a contest?), fight (a decisive battle), risk an engagement.

dimidius, -a, -um, [dis-mediōs],
dimittō

adj., (divided in the middle), half.
— Neut. as noun, the half.

dimittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus,
[dis-mitto], 3. v. a., let go away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon: oppugnationem (raise); victoriæm (let go, on purpose). — Also, send in different directions, send about, despatch, detail, desband, dismiss.

dirēctus, -a, -um, see rectus.

dirēptus, -a, -um, p. p. of diripio.

dirigō, see derigo.

dirīmō, -emere, -ēmī, -emptus,
[dis-emō, tāke], 3. v. a., take apart, break up (a conference).

diripīō, -ripere, -ripūl, -reptus,
[dis-rapio], 3. v. a., seize (in different directions), plunder, pillage, ravage.

dis-, di- (dir- dif.), [akin to duo?], insep. prep. (adv.), in comp., apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-. — Cf. discoed, discerno, dirimo, diffundo.

Dis, Dītis, [akin to dives, rich, as the earth is the source of riches], M., Pluto (the god of the under world, and so of death).

discēdō, -cedere, -cessī, -cessūrus,
[dis-cedo, go], 3. v. n., withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away: locus unde discesserant, the place which they had left; ab officio (fail in one's duty); spea hostibus (forsake, fail); ab signis (leave the ranks); ab armis (lay down one's arms).

disceptātōr, -tōris, [disceptā- (st. of disceptō, decide) + tor], M., a judge, an arbiter, umpire.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētus,
[dis-cerno, separate], 3. v. a., separate, distinguish.

discussus, -sūs, [dis-ī-cussus, cf. discoed], M., a departure, a withdrawal.

disciplīna, -ae, [discipulō- (reduced) + ina, cf. rapina], F., (pu-pillage?), discipline, instruction, a system (of doctrine, etc.), a course of instruction.

disciūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus,
[dis-claudo], 3. v. a., shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide.

discō, discere, didicī, discītūrus,
[for tādiscō (dic + sco)], 3. v. a. and n., learn: discendi causa, for instruction.

discrimen, -inis, [dis-crimen, cf. discerno], N., a separation, a decision. Hence, a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger.

discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of discutio.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus,
[dis-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., strike (or shake) apart, beat away. drive away, clear away, dislodge, shatter.

disciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [dis-
iacio], 3. v. a., hurl apart, break up (a phalanx), disperse, tear off (yards). — discǐectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder: pabulatio (in widely scattered places).

disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of discicio.

dispār, -paris, [dis-par], adj., unequal, inferior, ill-matched, different.

disparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dis-
dispergo, i. v. a., scatter, separate, (cf. disiungo).

dispergo, -spergere, -speri, -sper sus, [dis-sargo, scatter], 3. v. a., scatter, disperse.

dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of disp ergo.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [dis-pono], 3. v. a., place about (in various places), station (variously), array (at several posts).

dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dis pono.

disputātiō, -onis, [dis-putatio, cf. disputo], F., discussion, dispute.

disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dis puto, reckon], I. v. n. and a., discuss, investigate.

dissēnsiō, -onis, [dis-†sensio (cf. dissentio)], F., difference of opinion, disagreement, dissension.

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnī, -sēnsūrus, [dis-sentio, feel], 4. v. n., differ in opinion (cf. sentio), be at variance, disagree (ab, with).

disserō, -ere, [dis-sero], 3. v. a., plant here and there, place at intervals.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dis simulō, make like], I. v. a. and n., (pretend something is not), conceal (what is), dissemble.

dissipātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dis sipo.

dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dis-†suo, throw], I. v. a., scatter, disperse: dissipati, straggling troops.

dissuādeō, -suādere, -suāsi, -suā sus, [dis-suadeō], 2. v. a., advise to the contrary, oppose (in argument), dissuade.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus, [dis-teneō], 2. v. a., keep apart, hold asunder, keep from uniting, cut off (in military sense), isolate.

distō, -stāre, [dis-stō], I. v. n., stand apart, be distant: quantum fuctura distabat (as far as the distance between, etc.); quantum summa labra distabant (the width [of the ditch] at the top).

distrāhō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [dis-traho], 3. v. a., drag asunder, separate. Hence, distract.

distribuō, -buere, -buī, -būtus, [dis-tribuo, assign], 3. v. a., assign (to several), distribute, divide.

dītissimus, -a, -um, superl. of dives.

dīū [prob. acc. of st. akin to dies], adv., for a time, a long time, for some time, long: tam dīū, so long; quam dīū, how long; as long as; dīutius, any longer; dīutissime, for the longest time, longest.

diurnus, -a, -um, [†dius, akin to dīū and dies, + nus], adj., of the day, daily (as opposed to nightly): nocturnus diurnusque itineribus (by night and day).

diūtinus, -a, -um, [diū + tinus], adj., (long in time), long continued.

diūturnitās, -tās, [diūturno- + tas], F., length of time, long continuance, length (in time).

diūturnus, -a, -um, [diū + turnus, cf. hesternus], adj., long continued, long (in time).

diversus, p. p. of divertō.

divertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [dis-vertō], 3. v. a. and n., turn aside (or apart), separate.—diver-
satus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., separate, distant, diverse, different.

dives, -itis, [?], adj., rich.

Diviciacus, -i, [Celtic], m.: 1. A leader of the Hœdui, brother of Dumnorix.—2. A leader of the Suessiones.

Divicio, -onis, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Helvetii.

divido, -videre, -visi, -visus, [dia-
tvido, vidhi (?), cf. vidua, widow],
3. v. a., divide, separate.—divisus,
-a, -um, p.p. as adj., divided: Gallia
divisa est.—Also, spread out.

divinus, -a, -um, [divó- (as if
divi) + nus], adj., of the gods, divi-
: res divinæ, matters of reli-
gion, religion.

1. dô, dare, dedi, datus, [da,
give, cf. 2. do], 1. v. a., give, afford,
offer, allow, concede, assign, grant:
responsum (answer, reply); sibi
minus dubitationis dari, that he had
less hesitation; filiam in matri-
onium (marry); se vento (run
before the wind); manus (submit,
yield, from holding out the hands to
be bound); hostes in fugam (put
to flight); operam (take pains, exert
one's self, see to it that, etc.); nego-
tium uti (employ one's, etc., engage
one to, etc.); suspicionem (afford,
make a show, but also have an ap-
pearance); arbitres (assign referees,
a judicial function).

2. do [Dha, place], confounded
with 1. do, but appearing in comp.,
place, put, as abdô, condô.

doceô, docère, docu$, doctus, [unc.
formation akin to dico and disco],
2. v. a., teach, show, inform, repre-
sent, state (in the course of the
narrative).

documentum, -i, [docu- (?) as st.
of doceo] + mentum], N., a means
of teaching, a proof, a warning, an
example.

doleô, dolère, dolui, dolitûrus,
[perh. dolô- (st. of dolus, craft)],
2. v. n., feel pain, suffer.—Esp.
mentally, be pained, grieve.

dolor, -âris, [do- (as root of
doleo) + or], m., pain (physical or
mental), distress, indignation, cha-
grin, vexation: magno dolore ferre,
be very indignant, feel much cha-
grin; magno esse dolori, to be a
great annoyance or sorrow; almost
concrete, a grievance.

dulus, -i, [perh. akin to doleo,
originally stroke $], m., an artifice,
deceit, tricks, a stratagem.

domesticus, -a, -um, [domô- (as if
domus-, cf. modestus) + icus], adj.,
(of the house), of one's home, one's
own, at home: bellum (domestic,
internal, intestine).

domicilium, -î, [perh. domô-
+cilium (fr. root of colo)], N., an
abode, a house, a dwelling-place, a
house (as a permanent home).

dominor, -âri, -âtus, [dominô-],
1. v. dep., rule, be master.

dominus, -î, [†domô- (ruling)
+ nus], m., a master, an owner.

Domitian, -î, [domitô- (reduced)
+ius], m., a Roman gentile name.
—Esp., Lucius Domitianus Ahenobar-
bus, consul in B.C. 54.

domus, -î (-ius), [DOM (build ?)
+ us (-os and -us)], F., a house, a
home: domi, at home; domum, home,
dōnātus | 54 | duplex

to one's home; domo, from home; domo exire, go away, emigrate.

dōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dono.

Donnotaurus, -I, [Celtic], m., a Gallic name. — Esp., Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus, a chief of the Helvetii, son of C. Valerius Cabarus, and brother of C. Valerius Procillus. The first two names of these persons are Roman, taken from the name of their patron.

dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [donō-], i. v. a., present, give (as a gift). — Also, honor with a gift, present (one with a thing); civitate aliquem donare, give one the rights of citizenship.

dōnum, -I, [DA (give) + nus], n., a gift.

dōrsum (-ns), -I, [?], n. (and m.), the back. — Less exactly, a summit (of a long ridge).

dōs, dōtis, [DA (give) + tis (reduced)], f., a gift. — Esp., a marriage gift, a dowry, a portion (given at marriage).

Druides, -um, [Celtic], m., the Druids; the priests of the Gallic religion.

Dubis, -is, [Celtic], m., the Dubbs, a river of Gaul, flowing from the Jura into the Saône.

dubitātiō, -onis, [dubitā- (st. of dubito) + tio], f., doubt, hesitation: alicui minus dubitationis dari, to feel less doubt or hesitation.

dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [↑dubitō- (partic. of lost verb dubo ?), cf. dubius], i. v. n., doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful. — Also (absolutely, or with inf., rarely with quin), hesitate, feel hesitation, vacillate.

dubius, -a, -um, [duo + bis, cf. superbus and dubito], adj., doubtful: est dubium, there is doubt, it is doubtful.

ducentī, -ae, -a, [duō-centī (plur. of centum)], adj., two hundred.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus, [duc (in dúx)], 3. v. a., lead, draw, bring (of living things): primum plūm (be first centurion). — Esp. of a general, lead, march. — With or without in matrimonium, marry (of the man). — Less exactly, run (a line, a ditch), draw, make. — Fig., prolong, drag out. — As mercantile word, and so fig., reckon, consider.

ductus, -tūs, [duc + tūs], m., lead, command.

dum [pron. DA, prob. acc., cf. tum], conj., at that time. — Also, while, so long as. Hence, till, until.

Dumnorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Hādui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, [dual, of st. ḩdvō, cf. bis], num. adj., two.

duodecim [duo-decem], indecl. num. adj., twelve.

duodecimus, -a, -um, [duo-decimus], num. adj., twelfth.

duōdēni, -ae, -a, [duo deni], num. adj., twelve (in a set).

duodēvigitī [duo de viginti, twenty], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

duplex, -plicis, [duo-plex, cf. plico, fold], adj., two-fold, double: acies (in two divisions, arranged for successive attacks in the same direction, or for the same tactical purpose).
dupliche, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dupli-], i. v. a., double, increase two-fold.

dūritia, -ae, [durō- + tia], f., hardiness, hardship.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [durō-], i. v. a., harden, toughen, make hardy.

Dūrocortorum, -i, [Celtic], N., the chief city of the Remi, now Rheims.

dūrus, -a, -um, [=], adj., hard.—

Fig., hard, severe, difficult: si quid erat dūrus (any severe contest): si nil esset dūrus, if no accident happened.

Dūrus, -i, [dūrus], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Quintus Laberius Dūrus, a military tribune in Cæsar’s army, killed in Britain.

dux, ducis, [duc (lead) as st.], c., a leader, a guide, a commander.

ē, shortened form of ex (esp. in composition), which see.

eā [instr. or abl. of is], adv., this way, that way, thus, in that direction, in that quarter.

Eburōnes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Belgian tribe, dependents of the Treveri, living north of these between the Meuse and the Rhine.

Eburōvīces, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerici living in the region of modern Perche.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p.p., [ex-discō], 3. v. a., learn off, learn by heart, commit to memory.

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of edo.

ēdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditus, [ex-do], 3. v. a., put forth, give forth: exempla cruciatu̇umque (make an example by inflicting severe torture).—

ēditus, -a,-um, p. p. as adj., elevated, raised, high.

ēdoceō, -docere, -docuī, -doctus, [ex-doceō, teach], 2. v. a., show forth, explain, inform, tell, instruct.

ēducō, -ducere, -dux, -ductus, [ex-duco], 3. v. a., lead out, lead forth, draw (a sword), bring out (baggage-train).

ēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of educo.

effacīō (-farc-), -farcīre, -farsi, -fertus, [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., stuff out, fill in (solid).

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-tefeminō, or perh. tefeminō- (or -i), in either case from femina], 1. v. a., make into a woman.—Less exactly, (make like a woman), ennervate, weaken: animos (enfeeble, debauch).

efferō, efferēre, extuli, ēlatus, [ex-ferrō], irr. v. a., carry out, bring out, carry away.—Less exactly and fig., spread abroad, make known, publish abroad, puff up, elate (cf. Eng. “carried away”).—Also (cf. edo), raise up.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex-facio], 3. v. a., make out, make, enable, accomplish, cause, produce, cause to be, make into, make out (furnish): ut praebentem (make them afford); ut sint laboris (make capable of); ut possit (make possible); classem (get together, construct).

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus,
effossus, 3. v. a., dig out, gouge out.

*effossus*, -a, -um, p. p. of *effodi.*

effugii, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitūrus, [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., escape, flee (absolutely), fly from.

eögēns, pres. p. of ego.


*egestās, -tātis, [unc. st. (perh. agent-)+ tas], f., poverty, destitution.*

ego, meī, [cf. Eng. *I*], pron., I (me, etc.).— Plur., nōs, we, us, etc.

egoēvīt, -nōmet, etc., pron. emph., with encl. -met, I, we.

egredior, -gredi, -gressus, [ex-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., march out, go out, move beyond: finis (pass beyond); navi (land, disembark); unde erant egredi, the place they had left; ex oppido (evacuate).

*egregiūs* [old case-form of egregius], adv., remarkably, finely, extremely well.

*egregius, -a, -um, [exe grege (out of the herd)+ ius], adj., out of the common, remarkable, superior, excellent, uncommon, special.*

*egressus, -a, -um, p. p. of egregior.*

*egressus, -sūs, [e-gressus, cf. ingressus and egregior], m., a landing.*

*ēlicīo, -icere, -īcī, -iectus, [ex-lacio], 3. v. a., cast out, drive out, cast up (cf. edo).— With reflex., rush out, rush.*

*ēliciō, -licere, -licē, -licitus, [ex-lacio], 3. v. a., entice out, draw out.*

*ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [ex-lego], 3. v. a., pick out, select.—* ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., picked (troops).*

*Elusātēs, -ium, [Iberian], m. plur., a people dependent on the Arverni.*

*ēliciō, -licere, -licē, -licitus, [ex-lacio], 3. v. a., entice out, draw out.*

*ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [ex-lego], 3. v. a., pick out, select.—* ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., picked (troops).*

*Elusātēs, -ium, [Iberian], m. plur., a people dependent on the Aquitania.*

*ēminēbō, -nēre, -nūi, no p. p., [ex-†mineo, project], 2. v. n., stand out, project.*

*ēminus [ex manu, hand, cf. cominus], adv., at a distance, at long range.*

*ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [ex-mitto], 3. v. a., let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl, discharge. — Pass., or with reflex., rush out.*

*ēmō, emere, ēmi, ēmptus, [EM? orig. *take*], 3. v. a., (take, only in compounds).— Esp., buy (cf. Eng. sell, orig. give), purchase.*
ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [ex-nāscor],
3. v. dep., spring out, grow out.
ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enāscor.
enim [prob. e (in en, ecce) + nam], (always postpositive) conj., really.—Esp. as explanatory, for, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for of course . . . not, for you see . . . not.
ēnūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enuntio.
ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-
untio, announce], i. v. a., make
known, report, disclose, reveal: hosti-
bus enuntiari, (that) the enemy were
informed of:
eō, ire, īvi (iī), itūrus, [root i],
irr. v. n., go, pass, march, advance,
proceed.—Pass. inf. īri used with
verbs to form the fut. pass. inf.
eō [old dat. of is], adv., thither,
there (in sense of thither).—Often
translated by more def. expressions
in Eng., to the place (where, etc.), on
them (it, him, etc.) : usque eo ut, to
that degree that, so far that.
eō, abl. neut. used as the abl. of
degree of difference; see is.
eōdem [old dat. of idem, cf. eo,
thither], adv., to the same place, in
the same place (cf. eo), there also:
eodem conducit (to the same place
[as himself]); eodem pertinere, look
in the same direction, tend the same
way; eodem illo pertinere . . . ut,
favored the same idea . . . that,
belonged to the same design . . .
that.
ephippiātus, -a, -um, [ephippiā-
(as if st. of verb, cf. auratus) + tus,
see ephippium], adj., saddled, capar-
isoned: equites (riding on saddles,
as a less manly form of horsemanship).
ephippium, -i, [Gr. ἐφιππίον (ἐφί,
upon; ἄρως, a horse)], n., a horse-
cloth, caparison, housing.
epistula (epistola), -ae, [Gr.],
r., a letter, a note, a message (in
writing), a despatch.
Eπορδορίξ, -issors, [Celtic], m.:
1. A nobleman of the Hādai.—2.
Another, vii, 67.
epulum, -i, plur., -ae, -ārum, [ʔ], n.
(sing.), f. (plur.), a feast, a banquet.
eques, -itis, [equō + tis (re-
duced)], m., a horseman, a rider.—
Plur., cavalry.—Esp. (as orig. serv-
ing on horseback), a knight (one of
the moneyed class at Rome, next in
rank to the senate).—So also, a
knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding
class).
equester, -tris, -tre, [equit- +
tris], adj., of knights, of cavalry.
equitātus, -tūs, [equitā- (as st.
of equito, ride) + tus], m., cavalry,
horse (troops serving on horseback).
equus, -i, [ĀK (swift) + vus], m.,
a horse.
Eρατοσθένης, -iss, [Gr.], m., a
Greek philosopher and mathematician
of Alexandria, born at Cyrene
B.C. 276. He was famous for his
investigations in geography and as-
tronomy.
ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of erigo.
ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of eripio.
ergā [prob. instr. of same st. as
ergo], prep. with acc., towards (of
feeling and conduct): fides erga ali-
quem.
ergō (-ō rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. erga], adv., therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [ex-rego, make straight], 3. v. a., set up straight, raise up.—With reflex., get up.—ērēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., high, high and straight.

ēripō, -ripere, -ripūi, -reptus, [ex-rapiō], 3. v. a., snatch away, wrest (a thing from), deprive (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), take from, rescue: se eripere ne, save one’s self from doing a thing.

erō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [?], i. v. n., wander, go astray, err, be mistaken.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [ex-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., burst out, sailly out, make a sailly.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [ex-ruptio, cf. erumpo], F., a breaking out, a sailly, a sortie.

eseda, -ae (-um, -i), [Celtic], F. (and N.), a war chariot (of the Gauls).

esedārius, -i, [esedō- (-a) (reduced) + arius], M., a charioteer (a warrior fighting from an esedum).

Esuvīi, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., and: et . . . et, both . . . and.

etiam [et iam], conj., also, even, even now, yet: quin etiam, may more.

etsī [et sī], conj., even if, although, though.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsūrus, [ex-vado, go], 3. v. n., escape.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī (-vulī), -vulsus, [ex-vello], 3. v. a., pull out, pluck out.

ēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus, [ex-venio], 4. v. n., come out, turn out, happen.

ēventus, -tūs, [ex-ventus, cf. convenitus and evenio], M., result, issue, fate, success.

ēvocātus, -a, -um, p.p. of evoco.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-voco], i. v. a., call out, call forth, summon, challenge (ad pugnam), carry away (cupiditas longius), invite (omnes ad se praedae).—ēvocātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj. and noun, veteran (of soldiers who have served their time and are only called out in emergencies), veterans (almost equal volunteers).

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [ex-volo], i. v. n., fly out, rush out.

ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., out of (cf. ab, away from), out.—Less exactly, from (lit. and fig.), of (made of): faciā ex difficillimis redegerat, had made easy instead of most difficult, as they were. Hence, after.—Also, on account of; in accordance with, by means of.——Also, above (raised from).—Also (cf. ab), in, on: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march, starting from it; ex vinculis, in chains, doing something from them; so, ex equis, on horseback; ex eorum corporibus; ex ea civitate, from that nation, belonging there; ex fuga, in their flight.—Other phrases: ex commutatione dolere, suffer from the change; diem ex die, day after day; magna ex parte,
in a great degree, for the most part; quae rer ex, ask of, ask, cf. ab; ex eo plus doloris capere (on this account, etc.); ex cratibus (of, made of); unus e filius (one of, etc.); ex communi consensus, by common consent; ex percomutatione, by inquiry, from one which was made; ex Hispania (a man from); ex eo die quintus (from, after); ex usu, for the advantage, cf. “of use”; ex planitie editus (above, raised out of); e regione, opposite; ex litteris (in accordance with, from facts stated in, etc.); ex tertia parte aestimare (as a third, cf. heres ex asse), ex contrario, on the contrary.—In comp., out, completely (cf. “out and out”), off, up, after, from, un.

exactus, -a, -um, p.p. of exigo.

exagitō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-agito, freq. of ago, drive], I. v. a., pursue, drive, harass, persecute.

exāminātus, -a, -um, p.p. of examine.

exāminō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [examin- (st. of examen, tongue of the balance)], I. v. a., weigh.

exāminātus, -a, -um, p.p. of examine.

exanimo, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [exanim-], I. v. a., deprive of breath (life), kill.—exanimātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., out of breath, exhausted.

exārdecscō, -ārdecscere, ārī, no p.p., [ex-ardeisco, cf. ardeo, burn], 3. v. n., blaze up.—Fig., become enraged, become excited.

exaudīō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [exaudio], 4. v. a., hear (from a distance), hear distinctly.

excūlō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [ex-cedo], 3. v. n., go out, leave (with abl.), withdraw, retire.—Absolutely, leave the fight.

excellō, -ere, -ui, -sus, [ex-cello], 3. v. a. and n., raise, rise, surpass, excel.—excelsus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., high, elevated.

excelsus, -a, -um, p.p. of excellō.

exceptō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [excepto, cf. excipio], I. v. a., catch up, take hold of.

exceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of excipio.

excidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus, [ex-caedo], 3. v. a., cut out, cut off, break down (gates).

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpl, -ceptus, [ex-capio], 3. v. a., take off, take up, pick up, receive, catch (of animals). Hence, follow, come after, come next: vada (stand, of vessels); vim fluiminis (break); alios alii (succeed); hunc alii (follow, take up the cry in shouting).

excitātus, -a, -um, p.p. of excito.

excitō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-cito, cf. excio, call up], I. v. a., call out, rouse, stimulate (induce).—Also, raise (towers), kindle (fire).

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus, [ex-cludo], 3. v. a., shut out, cut off (from doing a thing), prevent.

exclusus, -a, -um, p.p. of excludo.

excogitō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-cogito], I. v. a., think out, devise.

excruciātus, -a, -um, p.p. of excrucio.

excruciō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [excrucio, cf. crux, cross], I. v. a., torture, torment.
excubitor, -tōris, [as if ex-ícub-itor, cf. excube], M., a sentinel (as lying out of the camp or tent).

excubō, -cubāre, -cubul, -cubitūrus, [ex-cubo], I. v. n., lie outside. — Esp. of camp, stand guard, keep a night-watch, watch.

exculcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [excalco], I. v. a., tread down, trample down.

excurrō, -currere, -currī, (-currī), -currōrisus, [ex-curro], 3. v. n., run out, make a sally. — See excursio.

excursiō, -onis, [ex-ícursal, cf. excurre], F., a sally, a sortie.

excūsātiō, -onis, [ex-ícusatio, cf. excusio], F., an excuse, an apology.

excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-ícusus, cf. causa, reason], I. v. a., give as an excuse. — Also (with change of relation), excuse, exculpate.

exemplum, -i, [ex-ícemplum, EM (in emo, take) + ius with parasitic p], N., (something taken out), a sample, a copy, a precedent, an example.

exēō, -āre, -ēvi (-ēi), -ētus, [ex-ēo], irr. v. n., go forth, go out, emigrate, march out, remove.

exēscēō, -ercēre, -ercul, -ercitus, [ex-îrceo, drive off], 2. v. a., train, practise, exercise.

exercitātiō, -onis, [exercitā- (st. of exercito) + tiō], F., practise, exercise.

exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exercito.

exercitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [exercitō-, cf. exerceo], I. v. a., train, practise. — exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., trained. — Superl., very well trained.

exercitus, -tūs, [as if ex-ercitus, cf. exerceo], M., (a training). — Concretely, (a body trained or in training), an army (large or small, acting independently), a force.

exhauriō, -haurēre, -haustr, -haustrus, [ex-haurio], 4. v. a., drain off. — Less exactly, carry off (earth).

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -ēctus, [ex-ago], 3. v. a., (lead out), pass, spend, finish, complete: exacta hiems, the end of winter; aestas exacta est (was ended).

exiguē [old case-form of exiguus], adv., scantily, meagrely: exigue habere frumentum (have a scanty supply of, etc.).

exiguitās, -tāsis, [exiguē + tas], F., scantiness, meagreness: temporis (short time, want of time); pellium (small size); castrorum (narrowness, small size).

exiguus, -a, -um, [ex-tagus (AG + uus), cf. exigo], adj., (exact?), narrow, scanty, small, meagre.

eximius, -a, -um, [ex-îmias, EM + ius, cf. eximo, take out], adj., (taken out), exceptional, remarkable, very high (opinion).

existimātiō, -onis, [ex-aestimatio, cf. existimo], F., estimate, opinion.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-aestimo, reckon], I. v. a. and n., estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine.

exitus, -tūs, [ex-îtus, cf. exeoe], M., (a going out), a passage (out, concretely). Hence, an end, the last part: quem habere exitum (what is the result of, etc.). — Fig., a result, a turn (of fortune), an issue.

expeditiō, -ōnis, [as if ex-tēpidi- + tio, cf. expediō], F., (light-armed service?), a getting ready, a dispatching. Hence, an expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached).

expeditus, p. p. of expediō.

expellō, -pellere, -pulē, -pulsus, [ex-pello], 3. v. a., drive out. — Fig., dispel.

experior, -perīri, -pertus, [ex-perior, pass. of pario, get], 4. v. dep., (get for one’s self?), experience, try: fortunam (risk, try, bear, endure).

expertus, -a, -um, p. p. of experior.

expiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of expio.

expiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-pio], 1. v. a., (purify), expiate. — Transferred to the signs of divine wrath, expiate: incommodum (wipe out, i.e. make good, retrieve).

expleo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, [expleo], 2. v. a., fill out, fill up, make up (filling the required measure).

explōrātor, -tōris, [as if ex-īplōrātor, cf. exploro], M., a scout, a pioneer (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. speculator, a spy).

explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exploro.

explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-ploro, prob. search by calling or crying], 1. v. a., investigate, explore, search, examine, reconnoitre. — explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p., assured, certain: explorata victoria, being assured of victory: habere omnia explorata, know certainly.

expōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, [ex-ponō], 3. v. a., place out, set out: exercitum (disembark, also draw up, array). — Fig., set forth (in speech), state.

exportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [exportō], 1. v. a., carry out, carry away, export.

exposcō, -poscere, -posposci, no p. p., [ex-posco], 3. v. a., demand (with eagerness).

exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressus, [ex-premo], 3. v. a., press out, force out: vocem (elicit, get out of one, extort). — Also (cf. edo), raise up: turris agger (as the mound of circumvallation rose with the towers on it as it approached the city).

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, [ex-pugnātio, cf. expugno], F., a storming (of a city), taking (of a city by storm).

expūgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of expugno.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [expugno, fight], 1. v. a., take (by storm), capture (by storming a city or boarding a ship): stipendiarius expugnatis, the cities of their tributaries sacked.

expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of expello.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisi-
exquisitus, [ex-quaerno, seek], 3. v. a., search out, inquire, ask for.

exquisitus, -a, -um, p. p. of exquir.  

exsequor, -sequi, -secutus, [ex-sequir], 3. v. dep., follow out, follow up: ius (enforce).  
exsequo, -serere, -serui, -serius, [ex-sego], 3. v. a., (dissentangle), thrust out, uncover.  
exspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of exsero.  

exsistent, -istere, -stiti, -stiturus(?), [ex-sisto], 3. v. n., stand out, rise up, come out: malacia (ensue); mutus (break out); cornu (grow out, project).  
exspecto, -aire, -avi, -atus, [ex-specto], 1. v. a. and n., look out for, wait for, wait to see (si, whether, etc.), expect, anticipate.  
exspoliō, -are, -avi, -atus, [ex-spolio], 1. v. a., strip off. — Also, strip of (cf. despolio). — Fig., deprive, rob (of, abl.).  
exstinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of exstingo.  
exstinguō, -stinguere, -stinxî, -stinctus, [ex-stinguo], 3. v. a., (punch out, as a fire in the woods?), extinguish (lit. and fig.), destroy, put an end to.  
exstō, -stäre, -stiti, -staturus(?), [ex-sto], 1. v. n., stand out: ex aqua (be above).  
exstruēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of exstruo.  
exstruō, -struere, -struxî, -struēctus, [ex-struō], 3. v. a., heap up, build up, pile up.  
exsul, -ulis, [ex- sol (of sobio), as st., with some lost connection of meaning, cf. consul], c., an exile.  
exter, -tera, -terum, [ex + terus (reduced)], adj., outer, outside. —  
extrēmus, -a, -um, superl., furthest, extreme, last: extremi, as noun, the rear; in extremis linguæ (at the extremity of, etc., and often in this sense); ad extremum, till the last, at last; ad extremum producta casum (to the last extremity): ab extrema parte, at the very end; in extrema se, almost in despair; in extremis suis rebus, in the last extremity; extremum fames, the last extremity of hunger.  
exterred, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, [ex-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, frighten greatly, terrify.  
exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of exterréo.  
extermecē, -termescere, -timui, no p. p., [ex-timesco], 3. v. a. and n., fear greatly, fear (much), dread.  
extorquēō, -torquère, -torsi, -tortus, [ex-torqueo, twist], 2. v. a., wrench from, wrest from, force from.  
extormentus, -a, -um, p. p. of extorqueo.  
exfrā [abl. or instr. (?) of exter, cf. supra], adv. and prep. with acc., outside, out of.  
extræctus, -a, -um, p. p. of extraho.  
extrahē, -tahere, -traxī, -trāctus, [ex-traho], 3. v. a., drag out: multum aestatis (drag out, waste).  
extrudē, -trudere, -trüsi, -trūsus, [ex-trudo], 3. v. a., thrust out, push out, shoot out (by dikes).  
exuō, -uere, -ui, -itus, [ex- unc. verb, cf. induo], 3. v. a., strip off: armis exutis, deprived of arms. —
Also (cf. desplo), strip, deprive, despoil; Romanos impedimentia.

facer, -brē, [fā (in facio) + ber (for brus)], (m. of facer, skiful), a mechanic, an engineer (in an army).

Fabius, -i, [fāba- (bean) + ius, cf. Cicero], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp.: i. Quintus Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone.—2. Gaius Fabius, a legatus of Caesar in Gaul.—3. Lucius Fabius, a centurion.

facilis, -e, [†fācō- (cf. beneficus) + ius], adj., easy (to do, cf. habilis), convenient, without difficulty, easy (generally).—facile, n. as adv., easily, conveniently, without difficulty.

facinus, -oris, [†fācin- (as if root of †facino, longer form of facio) + us], n., a deed (of any kind).—Esp. (as in English), a deed (of crime), a misdeed, a crime, guilt (referring to some particular act), criminal conduct. See admitto.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, [fāc + to], 3. v. a. and n., make, do, act.—Used in a great variety of senses as in Eng.: coniurationem (form); seminantes (do planting); iter (march, travel, proceed); vim (use violence, force a passage, offer resistance); raetes (build); testudinem (form); ea (perform); pacem (as in Eng.); finem orandi (put an end to, stop, etc., cease, etc.); phalangem (form); fidem (give assurance, also gain be-

liev, gain credence); gratum (do a favor); senatus consultum (make, pass); verba (speak, act as spokesman); potestatem (give an opportunity, permit, allow); satisfacere (do enough, satisfy).—Esp. with clause of result, cause (to), do (omitting in Eng. the connective that, and expressing the thing done in the indicative).—So in pass., be done, be caused, happen, result, ensue, occur, turn out, be: non sine causa fit, it is not without reason; fit ut, the result is that; fieri posse, be possible; quid fit, what is going on; fit gratulatio, one is congratulated.—Often with two accs. (or with adj. corresponding to second acc.), make, render: vectigalia deteriora (make less, diminish).—Esp.: certiorem facere, inform.—So with pred. gen.: nihil reliqui, leave nothing undone, leave no further possibility; sui commodi naves (make for his convenience).—factum, -i, n. of p.p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, act, thing done, etc.: id factum graviter tulit, took this action much to heart; recte factum, good conduct, (but notice the adverb); si quid opus facto, if anything was necessary to be done.—fiō, fierī, as pass. in all senses.

factiō, -onis, [prob. †factiō + o, but treated as fac + to, cf. co-
factum, n., a business, an employment. — Also, a party, a faction.

factus, -a, -um, p.p. of facio.

facultas, -tatis, [facul (for facili cf. simul) + tas], n., ease, facility.
— So, chance, power, opportunity. quantum facultates ad potuit, so far as opportunity was offered; sui conligendi (chance to, etc.). Hence, concretely, means, resources, supply: navius; facultates ad largiendum.

fagus, -i, [prob. BAG, eat, + AS (-ae), from the fruit], n., a beech, beech (of the timber).

fallō, fellere, fellei, falsus, [? SPHAL, trip up], 3. v. a. and n., deceive: spee aliquid (disappoint); failendo, by deceit. — falsus, -a, -um, p.p., deceived. — Also (transferred to things), false, unfounded.

falsus, -a, -um, p.p. of fallo.

falcis, [?], n., a sickle, a pruning-hook. — Also, a hook (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fama, -ae, [FA (in for, speak) + MA], n., speech, common talk, reputation. — Concretely, a rumor, a story.

famēs, -is, [?], n., hunger, starvation: famem tolerare, keep from starving, appease hunger.

família, -ae, [famulō, servant (reduced), + ia], n., a collection of attendants, a household. — Applied to Gaul, a clan, retainers.

familiarios, -e, [prob. familiä- + ris, but treated as famili- + aris (cf. animalis)], adj., of the household; res (estate, property). — Esp. as noun, a friend.

familiäritas, -tatis, [familiar- + tas], n., intimacy (with, genitive).

fās [FA (in for, speak) + as], indecl. n., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed).

fastigātē [old case-form of fastigaturus], adv., sloping.

fastigaturus, -a, -um, p.p. of fastigo.

fastigium, -i, [fastigō- (unc. form akin to fastus, scorn, cf. castigo) + ium, cf. fastigo], n., elevation, slope, descent (of a slope).

fastigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†fastigō- (cf. fastigium)], i. v. a., bring to a point. — Esp. fastigaturus, -a, -um, p.p as adj., inclined, sloping: leniter (with an easy slope).

fātum, -i, [N. of fatus, p.p. of for], n., (what is spoken, cf. fas), fate, lot, destiny.

faveō, favere, fāvi, fautūrus, [?], 2. v. n., favor, be favorable to.

fax, facis, [?], n., a torch, a firebrand, fire (lighted missiles).

fēlicitās, -tatis, [felic- (as if felici-) + tas], n., good fortune, good luck, lucky star: summa (perfect success).

fēliciter [felic- (as if felici-) + ter], adv., happily, fortunately, luckily, successfully.

femina, -ae, [FE, nurse, + mina, cf. alumna], n., a woman, a female.

femur, -oris (-inis), [?], n., the thigh.

fera, see feras.

ferāx, -ācis, [reduced noun-st. (akin to fero) + ax, as if †ferā + cis (reduced)], adj., fertile.
ferē [fī, old case-form of st. tferē- (akin to fero)], adv., almost, about. — Also, almost always, generally, usually, for the most part. — With negatives, hardly.

ferē, ferre, tuī, lātus (for lātus), [Bhar, bear, and Tol (Tla) in tollo], irr. a. and n., bear, carry, endure, tolerate, stand, withstand, carry off, win. — Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., commit, offer, etc. — With reflex. or in pass., rush, pass, proceed, roll (of a river). — With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, suffer, bear, take it, feel: acerbius ferre inopiam (suffer severely from); magno cum dolore ferre, be much pained or indignant at; molestē (graviter) ferre, be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at. — Special uses: responsa (carry away, receive); auxillum (carry aid, assist); arma (bear arms, fight); condicionem (propose); signa (bear on the standards, march); ventus ferebat (carried the ships, blew); consuetudo fert (is); opinio fert (goes); ut natura montis ferebat, according to the outline of the mountain.

ferrāmentum, -ī, [as if ferrā- (st. of verb from ferrum) + mentum], N., a tool (of iron).

ferrāria, -ae, [F. of ferrarius, cf. ferrum], F., an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, [ferē- + eus], adj., of iron, iron (made of iron).

ferrum, -ī, [?] N., iron, steel, sword.

fertilīs, -e, [†fertīl- + līs, (as if fer + tīla)], adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertilitās, -tātis, [fertili- + tās], F., fertility, productiveness.

ferus, -a, -um, [FER (rush) + us, cf. deer], adj., wild, ferocious. — Fem. as noun, wild beast, game.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factus, [†ferve- (case-form akin to ferveo) + facio], 3. v. a., heat, heat red-hot (iacula).

fervefactus, -a, -um, p.p. of fervefacio.

ferveō, fervere, ferbi (fervi), no p. p., [noun-st. akin to febris], 2. v. n., be hot, be red-hot.

fibula, -ae, [FIG (in figo, fasten) + bula], F., a clasp, a buckle.

fictus, -a, -um, p.p. of fingo.

fidēlis, -e, [fidē- (st. of fides) + līs], adj., faithful.

fidēs, -ēī, [FID (bind) + es], F., a promise, a pledge: laedere (break faith); fidem facere, give assurance; fidem praestare, keep faith, perform one's duty. — Also, good faith, fidelity. — Transferred, confidence, faith (in); fidem facere, gain credence. — Esp. of promised protection, protection, dependence, alliance: quorum in fide erat civitas (to whom ... was subject, under whose protection); Caesaris fidem sequi (come under, surrender one's self to); in fidem se permittere (venire), place themselves under protection of, etc.

fidūcia, -ae, [†fiduc- (fidu-, faithful, + cues, reduced) + ia], F., confidence, reliance.

figūra, -ae, [†figu- (FIG, in figo, + us) + ra, F. of rus], F., shape, form.

filla, -ae, [F. of filius], F., a daughter.
filius, -ī, [?], m., a son.

fingō, fingere, finxiō, fictus, [FIG, cf. figura]. 3. v. a., mould; voluum (compose). — Fig., invent, contrive.
— fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, N. pl., fictions: ficta respondent, make up answers; sibi (conjure up).

finiō, -ire, -ivī, (-ī), -ītus, [finī-], 4. v. a., set bounds to, limit, bound, measure (ending a division).

finis, -is, [?], m., a limit, an end: finem facere, put an end to, cease; quem ad finem, as far as. — Plur. as noun, neighbors. — Also, finitimus.

fiō [FU in fui], as pass. of facio, which see.

firmiter [firmō- + ter], adv., firmly, stoutly, steadily.

firmitūdō, -inis, [firmō- + tudo], v., solidity, strength (of resistance).

firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [firmō-], 1. v. a., make strong, strengthen, fortify.

firmus, -a, -um, [Dhar, hold, + mus], adj., strong (for resistance), firm, steady: minime firma, weakest.

fistūca, -ae, [?], f., a pile-driver.

Flaccus, see Valerius.

flagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [as if flagitō], p. p. of flago, akin to flagro, blaze], 1. v. a., ask (in heat ?), demand earnestly: Haedus frumentum, grain of the Hæduans.

flammē, -ae, [FLAG (blaze) + ma], F., flame, fire.

flectō, flectere, flēxi, flexus, [?], 3. v. a., bend, turn.

flēbō, flere, flēvi, flētus, [?], 2. v. a. and n., weep: flentes, in tears.

flētus, -tūs, [flē- (st. of flēo as root) + tus], M., weeping, lamentation: magno flētu, with many tears.

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, [?], 1. v. n. and a., blow.

flōrens, -entis, [pres. p. of floreo, bloom], as adj., blooming. — Fig., flourishing, prosperous, influential (juvenis): florentissimis rebus, in most prosperous circumstances.

flōre, flōris, [?], m., a flower. — Fig., the flower (of troops).

fluctus, -tūs, [FLU (c) (in fluo, cf. fluixi) + tus], m., a wave.

flūmen, -inis, [FLU (in fluo) + men], N., a river.

flūdō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus, (flūxūrus, fluctūrus, fluitūrus), [FLU], 3. v. n., flow.

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, [?], 3. v. a., dig.

foedus, -eris, [FID (in fides, cf. fidus) + us], N., a treaty, a league, a compact.

fore, for futurum esse; see sum. forem, for essem; see sum.

foris [abl. plur. of fora], as adv., out of doors. — Less exactly, outside (of anything, as beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae, [Dhar (in firmus) + ma], F., shape, form.

fora, foris, [FER (in fero) + tis (reduced)], F., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, perchance, accidentally, as it happened.
forte, see fors.

fortis, -e, [akin to firmus], adj.,
strong, brave, courageous: vir fortis,
a man of courage.

fortiter [forti- + ter], adv., brave-
ly, stoutly, undauntingly: fortius
factum, any deed of prowess.

fortitūdō, -inis, [forti- + tudio],
F., bravery, prowess.

fortuitō [abl. of †fortuitus, p. p.
of verb in -uo, cf. fortuna], adv., by
chance, accidentally, fortuitously.

fortūna, -ae, [†fortu- (FER + tus,
cf. fortuito) + na, F. of -nus], F.,
fortune, chance, fate, lot (one’s for-
tune), chances (belli), success (good
or bad). — Plur., fortunes, resources,
chances (means) of success. — Esp.,
good fortune, success: fortunam temp-
tare, try one’s chances.

fortūnātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of for-
tuno], as adj., fortunate, prosperous.

forum, -i, [akin to †fora], N., (an
open place), a market-place.

fossa, -ae, [F. of fossus, p. p. of
fodo, dig’], F., a ditch, a trench.

fovea, -ae, [?, perh. akin to foveo,
as a pit for storage], F., a pitfall.

frāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of frango.

frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctus,
[FRAG], 3. v. a., break (as a solid
body). — Esp. of ships, wreck. —
Fig., break down, crush.

frāter, -tris, [prob. FER + ter, cf.
pater], M., a brother.

frāternus, -a, -um, [frater + nus],
adj., of a brother, fraternal: nomem
(the name of brothers).

fraus, fraudis, [?, akin to frustra],
F., loss. Hence, treachery, deceit.

fremitus, -tus, [fremi- (st. of
fremo, roar) + tus], M., a murmur;
a confused noise, a roar.

frequēns, -entis, [orig. pres. p.
akin to farcio, stuff], adj., crowded,
numerous, in great numbers.

frētus, -a, -um, [root akin to
firmus + tus], adj., relying on, con-
fident in (on account of).

frigidus, -a, -um, [†frigō-(whence
frigēo, be cold) + dus], adj., cold.

frigus, -oris, [FRIG (in frigēo,
etc.) + us], N., cold. — Plur., cold
(cold “snaps,” frosts).

frōns, frontis, [ʔ, akin to brow],
F., brow, face: a media fronte, from
the middle of the forehead. — Less
exactly, front, brow: a fronte, in front.

fructuōsus, -a, -um, [fructu- +
osus], adj., fruitful.

fructus, -tus, [FRU(G) + tus], M.,
enjoyment. Hence, (what one en-
joys), fruit, crops, income, profit,
interest (from money): victoriae (ad-
vantages of victory).

frumentārius, -a, -um, [frumentō-
(reduced) + arius], adj., of grain:
loca (fruitful in grain); res (grain
supply, provisions); inopia (scarcity
of grain).

frumentātiō, -ōnis, [frumentā- (st.
of frumentor) + tio], F., foraging,
gathering grain, harvesting, foraging
expedition.

frumentor, -tāri, -tātus, [fru-
mentō-], 1. v. dep., forage, gather
grain, get supplies.

frumentum, -i, [FRU (in fruor) +
mentum], N., grain (cf. fructus). —
Plur., standing grain, crops.

fruor, frui, fructus, [FRU, cf. fruc-
tus], 3. v. dep., enjoy.
früstrā [abl. or instr. of st. akin to fraus, loss], adv., to no purpose, without effect.

[frūx], frūgis, [FRU(G) in fruar as st.], F., fruit. — Plur., crops.

Fūnus (-sius) [-i, [?]], m., a Roman gentile name. See Cita.

fuga, -ae, [FUG + a], F., flight: fit fuga, a rout ensues; fugae mandate se, take to flight; in fugam dare, put to flight; fugam petere, seek safety by flight, escape; ex fuga evaserat, had escaped from the flying crowd.

fugātus, -a, -um, p. p. of fugo.

fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugītūrus, [FUG (in fuga)], 3. v. a. and n., fly, fly from, run away. — Fig., shun, avoid.

fugitivus, -a, -um, [fugi- (st. of fugio ?) + tivus], adj., runaway. — Plur. as noun, runaway slaves.

fugō, āre, āvi, ātus, [fuga-], 1. v. a., put to flight, rout.

fūmō, āre, āvi, ātus, [fumō-], 1. v. n., smoke.

fūmus, -i, [FU (DHU) + mus, akin to dust], m., smoke. — Plur., smoke (in several columns).

funda, -ae, [akin to fundo], F., a sling.

funditor, -tōris, [funda (as if verb-st.) + tor], m., a slinger.

fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsus, [FUD], 3. v. a., pour. — Less exactly, scatter.

— Esp. of battle, put to rout, rout.

fūnebris, -e, [cf. funus], adj., of a funeral. — N. plur. as noun, funeral rites.

fungor, fungī, fūncus, [?], 3. v. dep., perform, discharge (abl.).

fūnis, -is, [?], m., a rope.

fūnus, -eris, [unc. root + us], n., (mutter ?), death, a funeral.

furor, -ōris, [FUR (cf. furo, rage) + or], m., madness, frenzy, fury.

fūrtum, -i, [N. p. p. of lost verb akin to fur, thief ], n., theft, a theft.

fūsilia, -e, [fuso- (p. p. of fundo) + lia, cf. flexilia], adj., (capable of being poured), molten (of metals), vitrified, red-hot.

futūrus, see sum.

Gabali, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.

Gabinius, -i, [Gabinō- (cf. Gabii) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Piso in B.C. 58.

gaesum, -i, [Celtic], n., a javelin.

Gāius (Cāius, C.), -i, [?], m., a Roman prænomen.

Galba, -ae, [Celtic, meaning far], m., a Gallic and Roman family name.


galea, -ae, [?, akin to galerus, leather cap], F., a helmet (of leather, worn by cavalry).

Gallia, -ae, [F. of adj. in -ius, Gallo- + ius], F., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Po, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium.
Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gallō- + cus], adj., of the Gauls, Gallic.
gallina, -ae, [gallo- (cock) + ina], F., a hen.
Gallus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of Gaul, Gallic.—As noun, a Gaul, the Gauls.—Also, as a Roman family name. See Trebius.
Garumna, -ae, [Celtic], c., a river of S. W. Gaul, now the Garonne.
Garumnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees, on the head waters of the Garonne.
Gatēs, -īum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic people of Aquitania.
gaudēō, gaudēre, gāvisus, [tga-vidēs, cf. avidus], 2. v. n., be delighted, rejoice.
gāvisus, -a, -um, p. p. (neut. pass.) of gaudēō.
Geidumnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Belgian tribe, dependants of the Nervii.
Genāva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Allobroges, at the outlet of Lake Leman, now Geneva.
gener, -ēri, [?], m., a son-in-law.
generātīm [as if acc. of gens-ratis (generā- + tis)], adv., by tribes.
gēns, gentis, [GEN, beget, + tis (reduced)], F., a family, a tribe, a clan, a people.
genus, -eris, [GEN, beget, + us], N., a generation, a race, a family (stock), a nation, a tribe.—Less exactly, a kind, a sort, a class.—Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae): genus hominum, the character of the inhabitants.
Gergovia, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city in the lands of the Arverni.
Germinus, -a, -um, [?], adj., German (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adj.).—Plur. as noun, the Germans.
Gerō, gerere, gessē, gestus, [GES, of unc. kin], 3. v. a., carry (indicating a more lively action than fero), carry on, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business).—Pass., be done, go on (of operations): rem bene (male) (operate successfully or otherwise, carry on operations, succeed well or ill); negoti bene gerendi, of successful action; his rebus gestis, after these operations; res gestae, exploits, operations, a campaign.
gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of gero.
gladius, -i, [?], m., a sword.
gláns, glandis, [?], F., a nut, an acorn.—Also, a ball (for shooting).
glēba (glae-), -ae, [?], F., a clod (of earth), a lump.
gloria, -ae, [akin to inclutus, renowned], F., fame, glory.
glorior, -āri, -ātus, [gloriā-], I. v. dep., glory in, boast of (abl.).
Gnaeus (Cnēius, Čn.), -i, [akin to gnauus, active], m., a Roman prænomen.
Gobannitiō, -onis, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.
Gorgobina, -ae, [Celtic], f., a city in the territory of the Hadui, founded by the Boii emigrating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Graecus, -a, -um, [Gr.], adj., of the Greeks, Greek. — As noun, a Greek, the Greeks. Cf. Germanus for relation of noun and adj.

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a people of the Alps, near Mt. Cenis.

grandis, -e, [?], adj., large, of great size.

grātia, -ae, [gratō- (reduced) + ia], f., “gratefulness” (in both Eng. senses of grateful), gratitude (that one has from others or towards others), good-will, favor. Hence, influence, friendship, source of influence, ground of friendship. — Esp.: gratias agere, express gratitude, render thanks, thank; gratias habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratias [gratiam] referre, make a grateful return, pay off an obligation, requite; gratiam inire, secure the gratitude of any one, conciliate. — With gen., for the sake of, on account of, for, to (for the purpose of): sii purgandi gratia, to excuse one’s self.

grātulātiō, -onis, [gratulā- + tio, cf. frumentatio], f., a congratulation (of others or one’s self), rejoicing: fit gratulatio, there is great rejoicing.

grātulōr, -āri, -ātus, [†gratulō- (gratō + lus)], i. v. dep., congratulate.

grātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of lost verb], adj., pleasing, grateful: gratum facere, do a favor.

gravīs, -ēris, -āvi, -ātus, [gravīr- (as if gravā-)], i. v. a., make heavy (cf. levo). — Pass. as dep., (make heavy for one’s self), be reluctant, be unwilling, object.

Grudīi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Belgian people, dependants of the Nervii.

gubernātor, -tōris, [gubernā-, steer, + tor], m., a pilot, a helmsman.

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†gustō- (st. akin to gustus, Eng. choose)], i. v. a., taste, eat.

Habeō, habēre, habui, habitus, [?], 2. v. a. and n., have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: sedes; equitatum circum se; adītum (have in itself, and so offer); castra (occupy); se habere, be; quantum in se habet (as
there is in, etc.); secum habere or apud se, have with him, also detain; censum and the like (hold, conduct); contentiones (carry on); orationem (deliver). — Esp. with p. p. as a sort of continued perfect (whence the perf. of modern languages), have, hold, keep: redempta habere, buy up and hold; civitates obstrictas (keep under obligation); equitatum coactum (get and keep). — Also, treat: pro amico. Hence, consider (cf. hold): pro explorato (consider certain). — Esp.: rationem habere, keep an account, take an account of, have regard for, consider, regard, act in view of: satis habere, be satisfied, be content; habere quemadmodum oppida defenderent (have any means of, etc.).

Haeduus (Aed-), -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Hadui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As noun, a Haduan, the Hadui.

haesitā, āre, āvi, ātūrus, [freq. of haereo, stick, cf. dictito], i. v. n., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh).

hāmus, ī, [ʔ], m., a hook.

harpagō, ēnīs, [Gr. ἁρπάγη (Latinized) + o], m., a hook (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), a grappling-iron.

Harūdes, -um, [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe originally from Jutland, remaining from the great expedition of the Cimbri.

haud [ʔ], adv., not (negating single words), not at all.

Hēvēticus, -a, -um, [Helvetiō- (reduced) + cus], adj., Helvetian (see Helvetius). Hēvētiōs, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. Germanus for the form. — Plur. as noun, the Helvetii.

Hēvīi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

Hercynius (Orcyn-), -a, -um, [Teutonic], adj. (only with silva), Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).

hērēditās, -ātis, [hered-, heir (as if heredi-), + tas], f., inheritance, an inheritance.

Hibernia, -ae, [ʔ], f., Ireland.

hibernus, -a, -um, [hiem- + ernus, cf. nocturnus], adj., of winter, winter (as adj.). — Neut. pl. (sc. castra), winter quarters, a winter encampment.

hīc [ti- (loc. of hi- of ce) ce], adv., here in this place, there (of a place just mentioned).

hīc, haec, hōc, hūius, [hi- (pron. st.) + ce, cf. ecce, cetera], dem. pron., (pointing to something near the speaker in place, time, or interest), this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than is): hīc pagus unus, this one canton; ex his qui arma ferre posseant (of these [before enumerated], those who, etc.). — Less commonly, of what follows: his mandatus (the following, as follows, these). — Esp.: haec memoria, the present generation: tempus (the
present) / his pænæ diebus, within
a few days. — hoc, neut. abl., used
adverbially, in this respect, on this
account, by so much. — Often where
a more definite word is used in Eng.: his ita respondit (to this
embassy). — Often hic . . . ille, the
one . . . the other, this (near by) . . .
the other (farther off), this last
(nearer on the page) . . . the other,
the latter . . . the former.
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [hiem-(as
if hiema-)], I. v. n., winter, pass the
winter.
hiems (-mpēs), -emis, [?], F., winter.
hinc ['him (loc. of ĕthi) + ce],
adv., from here, hence.
Hispānia, -ae, [Hispānī- + ēa (F.
of -ius)], F. (of adj., cf. Gallia),
Spain.
Hispānus, -a, -um, [?], adj.,
Spanish.
homō, -inis, [prob. humō- (the
earth) + o], c., a human being (cf.
vir, a man, as a male), a man (in-
cluding women).
honestus, -a, -um, [honest- (orig.
st. of honor) + tus], adj., esteemed,
respected, worthy, honorable.
honor (-ōs), -ōris, [unc. root + or],
m., honor, respect: honoris causā,
out of respect. — Also, honorable
position.
honōrīficus, -a, -um, [honor (as if
honi) -ficus (cf. beneficus)], adj.,
honorable, (giving honor).
hōrā, -ae, [Gr.], F., an hour (of
the day). — The Romans divided
their day into twelve hours from
sunrise to sunset, which were not
of equal length at all times of the
year, but were always so many
twelfths of the solar day.

horreō, horrēre, horrul, no p. p.,
[horrē, (orig. horēs, bristle) + us,
prob. used orig. of the sensation
called "goose pimples," where the
hair seems to stand on end], 2. v.
n. and a., bristle (see above). Hence,
shudder at, dread.

horribilis, -e, [horrē- (as if st. of
horreo) + bīls], adj., to be shud-
dered at, frightful, dreadful.

horridus, -a, -um, [horrē- (cf.
horreo) + dus], adj., bristling, horri-
ble, dreadful, frightful.

hortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of hortor.
hortor, -tārī, -tātus, [for horitor,
freq. of old thōtor, urge], I. v.
dep., encourage, urge on, urge, ad-
dress. — Less exactly, of things,
urge, move, prompt.

hospes, -itis, [prob. Ghas-pātis,
orig. host (lord of eating)], M., a host.
— Also, a guest, a stranger. Hence,
a guest-friend (in the peculiar re-
lation of hospitium, which was a
kind of hereditary friendship be-
tween persons of different countries,
not personal, but of a family or
state), a friend (of the kind above
mentioned): familiaris et hospes, a
personal and family friend.

hospitium, -i, [hospit- + ium],
N., the relation of host (or guest).
Hence (cf. hospes), friendship:
hospitium atque amicitia, alliance
and friendship, family and personal
friendship; hospitio Ariovistus ute-
batur, was in friendly relations with
Ariovistus.

hostis, -is, [Ghas (cf. hospes) +
h¿c, c., (orig. guest), a stranger, an enemy (of the state), the enemy (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

h¿c [ho- (dat. of hi-, see hic) + ce], adv., hither, here (in sense of kither), to this (place, etc., cf. eo): huc accedebant, to these [ships before mentioned], were added (see accedo); accedebat huc, to this was added the fact that, etc.

h¿iusmodi, see hic and modus.

h¿mani¿æ, -t¿si, [human¿ + tas], f., humanity (as opp. to bru-
tishness), civilisation, cultivation, refinement, courtesy.

h¿manus, -a, -um, [st. akin to homo, man, + nus], adj., civilised, cultivated, refined.

humilis, -e, [hum¿- (ground) + lis], adj., low, shallow (cf. altus, deep). — Fig., low, humble, poor.

humbil¿æ, -t¿tis, [humili- + tas], f., lowness, shallowness. — Fig., hum-
ble position, insignificance.

I.

I., for unus, etc., one.

iac¿æ, -c¿re, -cui, -cit¿rus, [?, cf. iaculum], 2. v. n., lie, lie dead: iacentes, the slain.

iac¿i, iacere, i¿ci, iactus, [?, cf. iaceo], 3. v. a., throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up); ancoras (cast, drop).

iac¿i, -are, -a¿v, -¿tus, [iact¿-], 1. v. a., (freq. of iacio), toss, toss about, bandy about (of talk), discuss.

iact¿ra, -ae, [iactu- + ra (f. of rus)], f., a throwing away, a loss, a sacrifice (of men in war), an offer (of reward).

iac¿tu, -a, -um, p. p. of iacio.

iaculum, -i, [i¿c¿ (akin to iacio, throw)], n., a javelin.

iam [acc. of pron. st.], adv., now (of progressive time, cf. nunc, emphatic and instantaneous), by this time, at last, already, at length; iam non, no longer; iam ante, some time before, even before; iam utebatur, was getting to use; iam reverti (was at last, etc.; was beginning to, etc.);
nihil iam, no longer; also with no idea of time, even, in fact.

ibi [old case-form of is (cf. tibi)], adv., there (in a place before mentioned).

Icicius, -i, [?], m., a nobleman of the Remi.

ictus, -t¿s, [ic (in ico, strike) + tus], m., a stroke: ictus scorpionis (a shot of, etc.).

Íd., for Ídus.

idcirco [Íd (N. acc. of is) -circo (case-form of same st. as circa, circum)], adv., for that reason, for this reason, therefore.

idem, eadem, idem, [is dem, cf. Ëum], dem. adj. pron., the same. — Often as noun, the same thing (things), the same: eadem quaerit, makes the same inquiries; idem castellum, this very fort.

identidem [cf. idem and tandem], adv., repeatedly, again and again.

id¿neus, -a, -um, [?, akin to
idem?, adj., fit, suitable, adapted: homo (capable); tempestas (favorable).

Idūs, -uum, [?, perh. akin to aestus], F. plur., the Ides (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of the other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).

ignis, -is, [?, same word as Sk. agnis, the god of fire], m., fire: igni necari, to be burned to death. — Plur., camp-fires.

ignōbilis, -e, [in- (g) nobilis], adj., not famous, obscure.

ignōminia, -ae, [ign ominis - (in- (g)nomen, name) + iia], F., want of fame, disgrace. — Almost concretely, disgraceful defeat.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ignarō, ignorō], 1. v. a., fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of. — Pass., be unobserved: non ignorans; not unaware of.

ignoscō, -noscere, -nōvī, -nōtus, [in- (unc. which meaning) (g)noscō, know], 3. v. n. and a., overlook, pardon.

ignōtus, -a, -um, [in- (g)notus], adj., unknown, strange.

ille, -a, -ud, [old ollus, fr. pron. root + 1us (?)], dem. pron., that (of something remote, cf. hic). — Often as noun (opposed to some other emphatic word), he, she, it, they: hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the other, the latter . . . the former.

illīc [loc. of ille + ce, cf. hic], adv., there (more remote, opposed to hic, near by), in that place (nation, country, etc.): illīc . . . quo, in the place to which, (but with more emphasis than ibi . . . quo).

illō [dat. of ille, cf. eo], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), that way.

Illyricum, -i, [?, m. of adj.], m., Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Caesar's province along with the two Gauls).

imbecillītās, -tātis, [imbecillō- (weak), + tas], F., weakness, feebleness: animi (feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity).

imber, imbris, [?], m., a rainstorm, a rain.

imitor, -tāri, -tātus, [imitō-, p. p. of timō (cf. imago)], 1. v. dep., imitate, copy.

immānīs, -e, [in- (manus, good?)], adj., ("uncanny"?), monstrous, huge, enormous.

immineō, -minēre, no perf., no p. p., [in-mineō], 2. v. n., overhang, project. — Fig., threaten.

immissus, p. p. of immitto.

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [in-mitto], 3. v. a., let in, let down (into), inserī, throw (upon), send against.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [im mola- (in-mola, meal)], 1. v. a., (sprinkle with the sacred meal), sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, [in-mortalis], adj., immortal.

immūnis, -e, [in- (munis, cf. communis and munia)], adj., free from tribute.
immunitàs, -tātis, [immunī- + tās], f., freedom from public burdens.

imparatūs, -a, -um, [in-paratus], adj., unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -i, [impedī- + mentum], n., a hindrance: esse impedimento, to hinder. — Esp. in plur., baggage, a baggage train (including the beasts of burden), pack-horses.

impediō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus, [†impe-diō (in-peś, foot, as if impedi-)], 4. v. a., entangle, hamper, interfere with. — Fig., hinder, embarrass, impede: in iure (hinder in exercise of).—

impeditūs, -a, -um, p. p., hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult (navigatio), impassable (loca): esse victoribūs nihil impedītum (there is no obstacle in the way of, etc.); prospectus (interrupted).

impidiōs, p. p. of impediō.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [in-pello], 3. v. a., drive on. — Fig., instigate, incite, impel.

impendeō, -ere, [in-pendeō, hang], 2. v. n., overhang.

impensus, -a, -um, [p. p. of impendo, expend], adj., expensive, very high (of price).

imperātor, -tōris, [imperā- + tor], m., commander (in chief), general.

imperātūm, -i, [N. p. p. of impero], n., an order, a command: ad imperatum, at one's command.

imperātūs, -a, -um, p. p. of impero.

imperfectus, -a, -um, [in-perfectus], adj., unfinished: re imperfecta, without accomplishing one's purpose, unsuccessful.

impetūs, -a, -um, [in-peritus, skilled], adj., unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in.

imperium, -i, [†imperō (whence impero, cf. pario, get) + ium], n., command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power (military), rule, sway (both sing. and plur.). — Concrete, an order, a command. — Esp.: novis imperiis studere (new forms of government); nullo certo imperio (command of any particular person); imperi aut potestatis, military or civil authority.

impērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†im-pe-rō (in-interoperōs, cf. pario, get)],[1 v. a. and n., demand (make requisition for, prob. orig. meaning), require (in same sense). Hence, order (in military sense), rule, command, give orders: illo imperante, under his command.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [impet- ro, bring to pass], 1. v. a., accomplish (anything by a request), succeed in (obtaining), obtain (a request): impetro a, prevail upon, persuade; ab ilis impetrari ut, they be persuaded to; ea re impeptrata, this being granted; si non impeptraret, if his request was not complied with; impetro ut, etc., obtain a request to, be allowed to, etc., succeed in having; impetrari posse, could be granted.

impetūs, -tūs, [in-mercetus (cf. peto, aim at)], m., a rush, an attack, an onset, a charge, an assault, violence, fury: facere (inroad, charge, invasion); is impetus, such fury, etc.; impetus gladiatorum exeperunt, re-
ceived the charge of the enemy with drawn swords.

impius, -a, -um, [im-pius], adj., impious (offending divine law).

implicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of implico.

implico, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātus (-ītus), [in-plico, fold], i. v. a., entangle, interweave, entwine.

implorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [imploro, cry out], i. v. a., implore, beseech.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [in-pono], 3. v. a., place upon, mount (men on horses), place, impose (fig).

importātus, -a, -um, p. p. of importo.

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [importo, carry], i. v. a., import.

impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of impono.

imprimis [in primis], adv., among the first, especially, particularly (more than anything else).

improbus, -a, -um, [in-probus, good], adj., bad, wicked, unprincipled.

improvisus, -a, -um, [in-provisus], adj., unforeseen: improvised (de improviso), on a sudden, unexpectedly, unawares.

imprudēns, -entis, [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one's guard, unguarded, not being aware.

imprudentia, -ae, [imprudentia + ia], f., ignorance, want of consideration, want of forethought.

impūbens, -eris (-is), [in-pubes], adj., beardless, immature. Hence, chaste, unmarried.

impūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [impugno, fight], i. v. a. and n., attack, invade, charge, fight (in an offensive warfare).

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of impello.

impulsus, -sūs, [in-pulsus, cf. impello, drive on], m., impulse. — Fig., instigation.

impūne [n. of impunis (impoena, punishment, weakened and decl. as adj.)], adv., with impunity.

impūnītās, -tātis, [impunis + tas], f., freedom from punishment, impunity.

Imus, -a, -um, superl. of inferius.

1. in-[cf. Eng. un-], neg. particle, only in composition.

2. in [?, cf. Eng. on; cf. also inde], prep. a. With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. ad, with terminus at or near), into, upon, within, to, against, among: in volgus elatum est (spread abroad among). — Of time, for, to, till. — Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, towards, against, upon: in ea exempla edere (visit upon); in se voluntas (good-will towards). — Often where Eng. has a different conception, in, on: adedere in silvas, hide in the woods; in civitatis conlocasse (had married in, etc.); in utram partem fluent (in which direction, etc.); in conspectum venire (in sight). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: murmum in modum (cf. quem ad modum); in eam sentientiam, to this purport; in speciem, with the appearance; in
altitudinem, in height, cf. to the height of. — Esp.: in Caesarem incidit, happened to meet Caesar; in perpetuum, for ever; in Morinœ (into the country of, etc.); in catenas concere, throw into prison; in fugam concere, put to flight.

b. With abl. of rest (lit. and fig.), in, on, among, within: in tanta pro-pinquitate (under circumstances of, in a case of); in tanto imperio P. R., when the R. people had such dominion. — Often, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him. — Esp.: in Meldia (in the country of); in anorcia, at anchor; in eo manere, abide by, etc.; in præsentia, for the present; in potestate, under the power; in opere esse, to be engaged in the work; in illo vestigio temporis positum (depending on, etc.); in eo constare (depend upon, etc.). — In comp. as adv., in, upon, towards, and the like.

inânia, -e [?], adj., empty. — Fig., empty, vain, idle, mere, bare.

incautē [old case-form of incautus], adv., incautiously, carelessly.

incautus, -a, -um, [in-cautus, p. p. of caveo], adj., incautious, of one’s guard.

incendium, -i, [in-candium, cf. incendo], n., a burning, a fire: incendia aedificiorum, the burning of buildings, each one being conceived as a separate burning, as is usual in Latin.

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -census, [in-tcando, cf. candeo, glow], 3. v. a., set fire to, burn. — Fig., rouse, excite, fire.

incensus, -a, -um, p. p. of incendo.

incipit, -a, -um, p. p. of incipio.

incertus, -a, -um, [in-certus], adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy, (rumores): itinera (obscure, blind); ordinibus (in disorder).

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cṣūras, [incado], 3. v. n., fall upon. — Less exactly and fig., fall in with, meet, occur, happen.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisers, [incado], 3. v. a., cut into, half cut down (trees).

incipiō, -ciper, -cēpī, -ceptus, [in-capio, take], 3. v. a. and n., begin, undertake.

incisus, -a, -um, p. p. of incido.

incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of incito.

incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-cito], 1. v. a., set in motion (in some particular direction) (lit. and fig.), urge on, drive, impel, excite, rouse. — incitātus, -a, -um, p. p., excited to anger, angered, spurred on: incitato quo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed. — Esp.: se aestus incitare (rush in).

incognitus, -a, -um, [in-cognitus], adj., unknown.


incolumia, -e [?], adj., unharmed, unhurt, preserved, safe, safe and sound, uninjured.

incommodē [old case-form of incommodus], adv., inconveniently, unfortunately, badly, ill.

incommodus, -a, -um, [in-commo-dus], adj., inconvenient, unfortunate.
incredibilis — Esp., incommodum, N. as noun, disadvantage, misfortune, euphemism for defeat, loss, disaster, harm.

incredibilis, -e, [in-credibilis], adj., incredible, marvellous, extraordinary.

increpidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-

increpidō- (cf. increpo)], 1. v. a., up-
braid, taunt, revile.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubi-
tūrus, [in-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie upon.

— Esp., fig., bend to, exert one's self: animo et opibus in (bend one's mind and energies to).

incursō, -ōnis, [in-ōrus, cf. incurro, rush upon], F., an inroad, an attack, an invasion, a raid.

incursus, -sūs, [in-cursus, cf. in-
curro, rush upon], M. an inroad, an attack.

incusō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-ācause, cf. causa, cause], 1. v. a., upbraid, rebuke, chide.

inde [tim loc. of is, cf. interim, hinc] -de (form akin to -dem, dum, cf. indu, old form of in], adv., from there, thence, from the place (which, etc.), after that, then.

indiciūm, -i, [indic- + ium], N., information: per indicium, through an informer.

indicō, -dicere, -dixī, -ductus, [in-
dico, say], 3. v. a., order, proclaim, appoint.

1. indictus, -a, -um, p. p. of indi-
cico.

2. indictus, -a, -um, [1. in-dictus], adj., unpleaded (causa, cf. dico), untried, unheard.

indignē [old case-form of indignus], adv., unworthily, shamefully (unworthy of one's self or of the circumstances).

indignitās, -tātis, [indigno + tas], F., unworthiness, disgrace (cf. indigne), outrage, an indignity.

indignor, -āri, -ātus, [indignō-].

1. v. dep., be indignant (deem unworthy of one's self).

indignus, -a, -um, [in-dignus], adj., unworthy.

indiligēns, -entis, [in-diligēns],

adj., negligent, careless, heedless.

indiligēnter [in-diligēnter, cf. in-
diligēns], adv., carelessly, negligently.

indiligēntia, -ae, [indiligēnt- + ia], F., carelessness, want of care, want of energy (application).

indūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [in-
duco], 3. v. a., draw on. Hence, cover: acuta pellibus. — Also, lead on. Hence, induce, instigate, impel.

inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of induco.

indulgēntia, -ae, [indulgēnt- (pres. p. of indulgeo) + ia], F., indulgence, favor, clemency.

indulgēō, -dulgēre, -dulsi, -dultus, [*?, perh. st. compounded of in-dul-
cis, pleasant towards], 2. v. n., favor, treat with indulgence.

induō, -duere, -dui, -dūtus, [*?, cf. exuō], 3. v. a., put on. Hence, fig. with reflex., pierce, impale (one's self): se vallis; se stimulis (be pierced by).

industriae [old case-form of indu-
strius, active], adv., actively, promptly, with energy.

indūtiae (indūc-), -ārum, [*?], F.
plur., a truce, an armistice.

Indiātiomārus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Treveri.
ineō, -ire, -īvi (-ii), -itus, [in-eo], irr. v. a., enter upon, go into.— Fig., adopt, make, begin, gain, secure.— Esp.: inīta asestate, at the beginning of summer; inire rationem, take an account; inire consilium, form a plan; inire numerum, enumerate.

inermis, -e (-us, etc.), [in-arma], adj., unarmed, defenceless.
nēra, -eris, [in-arā, skill], adj., shiftless, cowardly, sluggish, unmanly.

infamia, -ae, [infami- (disreputable) + ia], F., dishonor, disgrace: latrocinia nullam habent infamiam (bring no dishonor, are not held dishonorable); infamia et indignitas, shame and disgrace.

infāns, -antis, [in-fans, pres. p. of for, speak], c., a child, an infant, an infant child.

Infactus, -a, -um, [ī. in-factus], adj., not done.— Esp.: re infecta, without success, cf. imperfectus; re infecta dicere (without accomplishing one's purpose).

Inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [in-ferō], irr. v. a., bring in, import, put upon: in equum (mount one on horseback); bellum (make, of offensive war); signa (make a charge, advance); vulnera (infect).—Fig., cause, infect, commit: periculum (create, cause); spem (inspire); causam (adduce, assign, allege).

Inferus, -a, -um, [unc. st. + rus (cf. superus)], adj., low: inferior pars, the lower end; ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river. — Superl., infimus (imus), lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom: infimus collis, the foot of the hill, ad infimum, at the bottom. — Neut. as noun, the bottom.

infestus, -a, -um, [in-festus, fr. fendo, strike], adj., hostile, in hostile array: infestis signis, arrayed for fight, in a charge, in order of attack.

inficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [inficio], 3. v. a., (work into ?), dye, stain.

infidēlis, -e, [in-fidellis], adj., unfaithful, wavering in faith.

infigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [2. infigo], 3. v. a., fasten in, fix in, fix on.

infimus, see inferus.

infinitus, -a, -um, [in-finitus], adj., unbounded, countless, endless, numberless, infinite.


infirmus, -a, -um, [in-firmus, strong], adj., weak, feeble: animus (feeble courage, want of courage); arborea (unsound, weakened); infirmior, less powerful; naves (unseaworthy).

infīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of infogo.

inflectō, -flectere, -fīxi, -flexus, [in-flecto], 3. v. a., bend down. — Pass., or with reflex., become bent.

inflectus, -a, -um, p. p. of infecto.

influō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxūrus, [in-fluo], 3. v. n., flow into, empty into.

infodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossus, [in-fodio], 3. v. a., dig in, bury.

infra [instr. (?) of inferus], adv. and prep. with acc., below, farther down, less than.

ingēns, -entis, [in-gens, not be-
longing to the kind (?), adj., huge, enormous, very large.

ingrâtus, -a, -um, [in-gratus], adj., unpleasing.

ingredior, -gressus, [in-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., march into, enter, march in.

iniciō, -iciē, -iectus, [in-iacio], 3. v. a., throw into, throw upon. — Less exactly, place in, put on, embark. — Fig., inspire.

inieetus, -a, -um, p. p. of inicio.

inimicītia, -ae, [inimicio- + tia], F., enmity, hostility.

inimicus, -a, -um, [in-amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. — As noun, an enemy (personal, or not in war, cf. hostis, an enemy of the state, or an enemy at war), a rival, an opponent.

iniquitās, -tātis, [iniquō- + tas], F., inequality, irregularity, unevenness. — Fig., unfairness, unequal favorableness.

iniquus, -a, -um, [in-aequus], adj., uneven. — Fig., unjust (of persons and things), unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous. — Compar., iniquior locus, less favorable position.

initium, -i, [in-iitium (itū- + ium), cf. ineo], N., a beginning, the first of: initium capere, facere, begin, start; transseundi (the initiative, the first steps, the first attempt to, etc.); initium fit ab, the start is first made at (also lit.); fugae factum (the first tendency to fly was shown); retinendi (the first detention); silvarum (the edge); Remorum (boundary); artificiorum initia (the first principles, the first knowledge of, etc.).

infingō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūnctus, [in-tungo], 3. v. a., attach to. — Fig., impose upon (his... servitutem).

iniuria, -ae, [in-lus (right) + ia, cf. ininiusus], F., injustice, outrage, wrong, violence (as opposed to right), abuse.

iniussi [in-lussu, abl. of inusus], adv., without orders.

inlātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of infero.

inligātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of inligō (ill-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [inligo, bind], 1. v. n., bind on, attach, fasten to.

inlustris (ill-), -e, [in-lustrō- (or kindred st,), cf. lustrō, light], adj., distinguished, renowned, remarkable, famous: inlustrior loco natus, of any prominence.

innāscor, -nascī, -nātus, [innascor], 3. v. dep., grow in, spring up in. — Fig., be inspired, be excited. — innātus, p. p. as adj., natural, innate.

innātus, -a, -um, p. p. of innascor.

innitor, -nīti, -nīsus (-nīxus), [innitor], 3. v. dep., lean upon, support one's self on. — innixus, p. p. in present sense, leaning on.

innixus, -a, -um, p. p. of innitor.

innocēns, -entis, [in-nocens, p. of noceo, injure], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent.

innocentia, -ae, [innocent- + ia], F., blamelessness, integrity.

inopia, -ae, [inop- (needy) + ia], F., scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies.

inopināns, -antis, [in-opinans], adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting.
inquam, [?], def. v. n., say.

inrīdeō (irr.-), -ridēre, -ris, -risum, [in-rīdeo, laugh], 2. v. n., ridicule, laugh at.

inrīdiculūs (irr.-), [old case-form of inrīdiculus], adv., without humor.

inrumpō (irr.-), -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [in-rumpeo], 3. v. n. and a., break in, break into, storm.

inruptīō (irr.-), -ōnis, [in-ruptio and inrumpō], F., a breaking in, an attack (on a fortified place), raid, incursion.

insciēns, -entis, [in-sciens], adj., not knowing, unaware: insciente Caesare, without C.'s knowledge.

inscientia, -ae, [in-scient- + ia], F., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.

inscius, -a, -um, [in- = scius, cf. conscius and scio], adj., not knowing, unaware, ignorant.

insecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of insequor.

insequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [insequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue.

Inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertus, [insero, join], 3. v. a., insert, stick in.

insidēa, -ārum, [īnsīd- (cf. insideo, sit in) + ia], F. plur., an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, treachery: per insidias, with deception, treacherously.

insidiōr, -āri, -ātus, [insidiār-], 1. v. dep., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks.

insignis, -ei, [in-signē, mark, decl. as adj.], adj., marked, memorable, signal. — insignis, N. as noun, signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers).

Insiliō, -siliēre, -sili, -sultus, [insilio], 4. v. a., leap upon.

insimulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of insimulo.

insimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [insimulo, make like], 1. v. a., charge, accuse.

insinuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [insinuo], 1. v. a. and n., wind in. — With reflex., work one's way into, slip in.

insistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p., [in-sisto], 3. v. a. and n., stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one's footing. — Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae), devote one's self (in bellum).

insolenter [insolent- (cf. soleo, be wont) + ter], adv., (in an unusual manner), insultingly, insolently.

inspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [inspecto], 1. v. a. and n., look upon, look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes.

instābilis, -e, [in-stabilius, cf. sto], adj., unsteady. — Fig., changeable, uncertain.

instar [instā + rius (? , reduced)], N. indecl., (an image), in the likeness of (with gen.), like, in the manner of.

instigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [īn-stigō (stig (goad) + a)], 1. v. a., goad, stimulate, drive on, urge on.

institūō, -tuere, -tuī, -tuītus, [in-statuo], 3. v. a., set up, set in order, array: opus (finish). — Also, provide, procure, get ready. — Also, set about, undertake, begin to practice, adopt (a plan, etc.), begin, set on foot. — So, teach, train, habituate.

institūtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of instituo], N., a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom.
instō, -stāre, -stīf, -stātūrus, [in-stē, stand'], i. v. n., be at hand, press on.—Fig., threaten, impend, menace: tempus instantis belll, time of active, immediate war.

instrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of instruo.

instrūmentum, -i, [instru- (cf. instruo) + mentum], n., furniture, equipment, tools and stores (of soldiers).

instrūō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctus, [in-struo, build'], 3. v. a., build, fit up, fit out, array, draw up (of troops).


insuétus, -a, -um, [in-suetus], adj., unaccustomed, unused.

insula, -ae, [akin to in-salio ?], f., (‘tussocks’ in a swamp) an island.

insuper [in-super, above], adv., on the top, above, at the top.

integer, -gra, -grum, [in-tteger (tag, in tango, touch, + rus)], adj., untouched, unimpaired, unworn, fresh; as noun, fresh troops.—Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integra, before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action.

integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, [integō], 3. v. a., cover over, face (turris coriis).

intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [inter-ego], 3. v. a., (pick out [distinguish] between), learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware.

intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus, [in-tendo], 3. v. a., stretch, strain.—Esp. of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed: oculis intentis, with eyes intent; animis intentis in ea re, with their minds absorbed in this.

intentus, -a, -um, p. p. of intendō.

inter [in + ter, cf. alter], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., between, among: arbitros inter civitatis dat (to decide between); inter aciem, in the line.—Of time, within, for.

—Often in a reciprocal sense: inter se, with, to, from, etc., each other, one another; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other, one another; obsides inter eos dandos curavit, caused them to exchange hostages.

intercedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass (of time): ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere, exist between them and the Haedui.

interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of interceptō.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [inter-capio, take], 3. v. a., intercept, cut off.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [inter-claudio, shut], 3. v. a., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off).

interdicō, -dicere, -dīxī, -dictus, [inter-dico], 3. v. a., (intervene by an order), forbid, prohibit: Gallia Romanis interdicē (exclude the Romans, etc., by order); aqua atque igni (expel, by forbidding fire and water, the regular form of exile); interdicere ne, forbid to, order not to.

interdiā [inter-diā (acc. or abl.]);
akin to dies), adv., in the daytime, by day.

interdum [inter dum (orig. acc.)], adv., for a time, sometimes.

interēa [inter ea (prob. abl.)], adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interēō, -īre, -īvī (-ii), -ītūrus, [inter-eeo (go into pieces?, cf. interficio)], irr. v. n., perish, die, be killed.

interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of interficio.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [inter-facio], 3. v. a., (cut to pieces, cf. intereo), kill, put to death.

intericiō, -icere, -icēcī, -iectus, [inter-iacio], 3. v. a., throw in (between).
— Pass., lie between, intervene: spatio interiecto, intervening, i.e. leaving a short interval; portibus interiectis (lying at intervals); sagittariis (thrown in at intervals).

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of intericiō.

interim [loc. of interus, cf. inter, interior], adv., meanwhile.


interitus, -tūs, [inter-itus, cf. intereo], destruction, death.

intermissus, see intermitto.

intermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., (let go between), leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease: neque diem neque noctem (not cease day or night); spatiiis intermissis, leaving intervals; brevi tempore intermisso, waiting a short time; spatio intermisso, after a time; triduo intermisso (leaving an interval of, etc.); nocte intermissa, a night intervening; flumen intermittit (discontinue, leave a vacant place); subeuntes non integrimerunt (did not cease, etc.); intermissa profectione (delaying); vento intermisso (ceasing, failing); nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissa, ceasing their toil in the night time; tempus ab opere, at any time cease the work; diem quin, etc. (let a day pass without, etc.); intermissae trabes (separated); intermissis magistratibus, passed over for a year; pars oppidi intermissa a flumine (left unprotected); planities intermissa collibus (broken by, lying between).

internecīō, -onis, [inter-nectio, same root as neco, kill], f., extermination, annihilation (exercitus).

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [inter-pello, cf. appelio, -āre], i. v. a., interrupt, interfere with.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [inter-pono], 3. v. a., put in between (lit. and fig.), interpose, allege (an excuse to break off something): nulla suspicione belli interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder; fidem reliquis interponere (give a promise not to do something); decretum (put in, introduce, into the affairs of the Gauls); nulla dubitatione interposita, with no hesitation to prevent, etc.

interpres, -pretis, [inter-presa (akin to pretium?)], c., a mediator, an interpreter.

interpreter, -āri, -ātus, [interpreter-], i. v. dep., interpret, explain.
interrogatius, -a, -um, p. p. of interrogare.

interrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [interrogo], 1. v. a., (ask at intervals), question, interrogate, ask.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [inter-rumpo], 3. v. a., break off (between two points), break down (bridges), destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, [inter-scindo], 3. v. a., cut off (between two points), break down, tear down.

intersum, -esse, -ful, -futūrus, [inter-sum], irr. v. n., be between, be among, be in, be engaged in: non amplerius interśit, there is an interval of not more than, etc. ; proelio, divinis rebus (be engaged in, take part in).—Esp., impers., it is of importance, it interests, it concerns ; with neg., it makes no difference.

intervallum, -i, [inter-vallus, distance between stakes in a rampart], N., distance (between two things), distance apart, interval.

interveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventūrus, [inter-venio], 4. v. n., come between, come up (at a particular juncture), arrive.

interventus, -tūs, [inter-ventus, cf. eventus and intervenio], M., a coming (to interrupt something), intervention.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [in-texo], 3. v. a., weave in, weave together.

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of intexo.

intoleranter [intolerant- (not enduring) + ter], adv., (with no patience or restraint over one's self), fiercely, violently.

intrā [instr. (?) of tinterus, cf. inter and extra], adv. and prep. with acc., into, within, inside.

intritus, -a, -um, [in-tritus (p. p. of tero, wear)], adj., unworn. —Fig., unexhausted, unwearied.

intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [interśō-], 1. v. a., enter, go in.

intrōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [intro-duco], 3. v. a., lead in, bring in, march in (troops).

introęō, -ire, -ivī (-i), -itus, [intro-ęo], irr. v. a. and n., enter, come in.

introitus, -tūs, [intro-itus, cf. introęo], M., an entrance, an approach (means of entrance).

intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of intromitto.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -missi, -missus, [intro-mitto], 3. v. a., let go in, send in. —With reflex. or in pass., rush in: intrōmmissus, rushing in.

intrōrsus [intro-vorsus (petrified nom., p. p. of verto, turn)], adv., into the interior, inside, within.

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptūrus, [intro-rumpo], 3. v. n., break in, burst in.

intueor, -tuēri, -tuitus (-tūtus), [in-tueor], 2. v. dep., gaze upon, gaze at, cast one's eyes upon.

intuli, see infero.

intus [in + tus], adv., within.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, [in-usitatus], adj., unwonted, unaccustomed: inusitator, less familiar.

inūtilis, -e, [in-utilis], adj., of no use, unserviceable. —In a pregnant sense, unfavorable.
inveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, [in-venio], a. v. a., find, (come upon, cf. reperio, find by search), learn.

inventor, -tōris, [in-ventor, cf. invenio], m., a discoverer, an inventor.

inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of invenio.

inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvī, -rātū-rus, [in-veterasco], 3. v. n., grow old in, become established in.

invictus, -a, -um, [in-victus], adj., unconquered. — Also, unconquerable, invincible.

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -visus, [invideo, see], 2. v. n. and a., (look askance at), envy, be jealous of;

grudge.

invidia, -ae, [invidē- (envious) + ia], F., envy, odium.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in-violatus], adj., inviolate. — Also (cf. invictus), inviolable, sacred.

invisus, -a, -um, p. p. of invideo.

invitalūs, -a, -um, p. p. of invito.

invitātus, -mare, -āvī, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a., invite, request, attract.

invitus, -a, -um, [?], adj., unwilling. — Often rendered as adv., against one’s will.

ipse, -a, -um, [is-potis (?)], intens. pron., self, himself, etc. (as opp. to some one else, cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), his, etc. (emph.), himself, etc.: hoc ipso tempore, at this very time; ipse per se, in and of itself; inter se (regular reciprocal), each other, with each other, by each other, etc.

irācundia, -ae, [iracundō- + ia], N., wrath (as a permanent quality, cf. ira, a temporary feeling), irascibility, anger, passion, animosity.

irācundus, -a, -um, [ira + cundus], adj., of a violent temper, passionate, irascible.

is, ea, id, [pron. 1], dem. pron., this (less emph. than hic), that (unemph.), these, those, etc., the, a, he, she, it: quae pars ea, etc., the part which, etc.; eo deceptus quod, etc. (by the fact that, etc.); et id, and that too; ea quae, the things which, what; Rhodanus infuit et is transitur (and this river, etc.); cum ea ita sint, since this is so; is locus quo, a place where; neque eam plenissimam, and that not a very full one; manere in eo quod, etc., abide by what. — Abl. N., eo, the (old Eng. instrumental), so much, on that account, therefore; eo magis, all the more; eo gravius, so much the more severely.

iste, -a, -ud, [is-te (cf. tum, tantus, etc.)], dem. pron., that, that of yours.

ita [I + ta (instr. (?) of TA)], adv., so, in such a way, in this way, thus, to such an extent, as follows: ut . . .

ita, as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and; ita . . . ut, in proportion as, as; non ita, not so very, not very.

Italiania, -ae, [Italī- (reduced) + ia (F. of ius)], F., Italy.

itaque [ita que], adv., and so, accordingly, therefore.

item [i-tem (acc. ?, cf. idem)], adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way (before mentioned).

iter, itineris, [st. fr. I (go) + unc. term.], N., a road, a march, a way, a route, a course, a journey: in
itinerem, on the road; in eo itinerem, on the way; iter facere, march, travel; iter dare, allow to pass; itinere prohibere, forbid to pass, keep from passing; magnis itineribus, by forced marches; tutum iter, a safe passage.

iterum [I + terus, cf. alter], adv., a second time, again: semel atque iterum, again and again.

Itius [Celtic], adj., (with portus), the port where Cæsar embarked for Britain the second time; either Wissant or Boulogne.

Iuba, -ae, [ʔ], F., the mane.

Iubéô, iubère, iüssi, iüssus, [prob. ius-habeo, cf. praebeo], 2. v. a., order, command, bid.

Iūdicium, -i, [Iūdic- (in iūdex, judge) + iūm], N., a judgment, (judicial), a trial, an opinion (expressed officially); an opinion (generally), advice: optimum iūdicium facere, express (by some act) a very high opinion; iūdicio, by design; often translated by court.

Iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [Iūdic- (in iūdex, judge)], 1. v. a., formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider: nihil gravius de civitate (think nothing harsh about, etc.).

Iugum, -i, [Iug (in iungo) + um], N., a yoke; sub iugum mittere (an insult inflicted on a conquered army). Hence, a ridge, a crest (of a row of hills).

Iūmentum, -i, [Iug- (?) + mentum], N., a beast of burden, a pack-horse, a horse.

Iūncitura, -ae, [Iunctu- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., a joining, a joint: quan-
tum distabat iunctura, as far as the distance apart, of two things joined.

Iūncus, -a, -um, p. p. of iungo.

Iungō, iungere, iūnīxī, iūnctus, [Iug], 3. v. a., join, unite, attach together. — In pass. or with reflex., unite with, attach one’s self to.

Iūniors, comp. of iuvenis.

Iūnius, -i, [ʔ, prob. iuveni- + ius, but cf. Iuno], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Decimus Iūnius Brutus, see Brutus. — Also, Quintus Iūnius, a Spaniard in Cæsar’s service.

Iuppiter, Iovis, [Iovis-pater], M., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, [Celtic], M., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running N. E. from the Rhone to the Rhine, separating the Sequani and the Helvetii.

Iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iur- (st. of ius)], 1. v. n., swear, take an oath.

Iūs, iūris, [vu (akin to iug + us)], N., justice, right, rights (collectively), rights over (anything), claims.

Iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, [see the two words], N., an oath.

Iüssū [abl. of iussus], used as adv., by order, by command.

Iūstitia, -ae, [iustus- + tia], F., justice (just behavior), sense of justice, fair dealing.

Iūstus, -a, -um, [ius + tus], adj., just, lawful. — Also, complete, perfect, regular: populi Romani iūstitissimum esse imperium, that the Romans were best entitled to dominion.
**iuvensis**

- **-e**, adj., **young**. — As noun, a young man (not over 45), a youth: *iuvenes, the younger soldiers.*
- *iuventūs, -ātis, [iuven- (orig. st. of iuvensis) + tus], F., youth.* — Concretely, the youth, the young men.

**iuvō**, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, [?], r. v. a., help, aid, assist.

- *iusā [instr. (?) of iuuxtus, sup. of tiugis (iug + is)], adv. and prep. with acc., next, near, near by.*

**K**

**Kal.**, for **Kalendae** and its cases.

- **Kalendae** (Cal.), -ārum, [F. plur. of *calendus*, p. of verb akin to calo, call], F. plur., the Calends (the first day of the Roman month, when, as it would seem, the times of the moon were announced to the assembled people).

**L**

**L.**, for **Lucius**.

- **L** (ψ), [a corrupt form of the Greek letter ψ (prop. χ), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation], a sign for quinquāgintā.
- **Laberius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentle name. — See Durus.**

- **Labēnus, -ī, [?], perh. labia (līps) + ennus, M., a Roman family name. — Esp. Tītus Atius Labiēnus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the civil war on the side of Pompey.**

- **labor, -ōris, [rabh (seize) + or (for -ōs)], M., toil, exertion (in its disagreeable aspect), labor (as painful), trouble, hardship.**

- **lābor, lābī, lāpsus, [unc., cf. lābō, totter], 3. v. dep., slip, slide, fall. — Fig., commit an imprudence, go wrong, be disappointed.**

- **labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [labor-], 1. v. n., toil, exert one's self: id contendere et laborare ne, strive and be anxious not to have, etc.; animo**

- **lacrēmā, -ae, [takru- + ma], F., a tear.**

- **lacrīmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lacrima-], 1. v. a. and n., weep, shed tears.**

- **lacōs, -ūs, [?], M., a reservoir, a lake.**

- **laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, [unc.], 3. v. a., wound, injure. — Fig., esp., break (one's word, etc.), violate.**

- **laesus, -a, -um, p. p. of laedo.**
laetitia, -ae, [laetō- + tia], F., joy, gladness (cf. laetus).

laetus, -a, -um, [unc. root (perh. akin to glad) + tias], adj., joyful (of the inner feeling), rejoicing, glad.

languidē [old case-form of languidus], adv., with little energy, feebly.

languidus, -a, -um, [cf. langueo, be weary], adj., spiritless, listless, languid: languidor, with less spirit.

languor, -ōris, [lang (in langueo, be weary) + or], M., want of spirit, listlessness, weariness.

lapis, -idis, [?], M., a stone (to throw, etc.).—Collectively, stone, stones.

lāpus, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.

lāqueus, -ī, [lāc (in lacio, entice) + eus], M., a slip-noose.

lārgior, -īrī, -ītus, [lārgō-, abundant], a. v. dep., give lavishly, bestow upon, supply with.—Also, give bribes, give presents.

lārgēter [lārgō-(abundant) + tert], adv., lavishly: largēter posse, possess abundant influence.

lārgitiō, -ōnis, [lārgi- (st. of largior) + tio], F., lavish giving, bribery.

lassitudō, -dinis, [lassō- (weary) + tudo, cf. fortitudō], F., weariness, exhaustion.

lātē [old case-form of latus], adv., widely: latus, too far; longe lateque, far and wide.

lātebra, -ae, [lātē- (in lateo) + bra], F., a hiding-place.

lātēo, latēre, latui, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed.


Latobrigi, -ōrum, [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii.

lātō, -ōnis, [prob. st. borrowed fr. Greek + o], M., a mercenary (?), a robber.

lātōcinium, -ī, [latron- + cinium, cf. raticinor], N., freebooting, robbery, highway robbery.

lātus, -a, -um, [prob. for tālatus, cf. Eng. flat], adj., broad, wide, extensive.

lātus, lateris, [prob. latō-], N., the side (of the body).—Also, generally, a side, a flank, an end (of a hill).

lātus, -a, -um, [for tālatus, tua (cf. tollō, tuli) + tua], p. p. of fero.

laudārī, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laud-], i. v. a., praise, commend.

laus, laudis, [?], F., praise, credit, glory, merit (thing deserving praise).

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvī (lávī), -ātus (lātus, lōtus), [?], i. v. a., wash.—In pass. used reflexively, bathe.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laxō-, loose], i. v. a., loosen, open out, extend.

lēgātio, -ōnis, [legā- (despatch) + tio], F., (a sending or commission), an embassy, an embassy (message of ambassadors).

lēgātus, -ī, [prop. p. p. of lēgo, commission, despatch], M., an ambassador, envoy.—Also, a lieutenant, a legatus. To a Roman commander were assigned (lagare) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or en-
gaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the legati, and with the questor composed a kind of staff.

legio, -onis, [LEG (select) + io], F., (a levy); hence, a legion (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [legion- + arius], adj., of a legion, of the line, legionary (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

Lemannus, -i, [?], m., (with lacus either expressed or implied), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman.

Lemovices, -um, [Celtic], m. pl.: i. A Gallic tribe in modern Limousin. The name is preserved in Limoges.

lēnis, -e, [?], adj., gentle, smooth.

lēnitās, -tātis, [lēni- + tās], F., gentleness, gentle current (of a river).

lēniter [lēni- + tēr], adv., gently:

lenius, with less vigor.

Leponitii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.

lepus, -oris, [?], m., a hare.

Leucī (Levacī), -orum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle.

Levacī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Belgian Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

levia, -e, [for leghvīs, LAGH (jump) + us (with inserted i, cf. brevis), Eng. light], adj., light, slight, unimportant, of no weight:

auditio (mere hearsay without found-
dation).—Also (cf. gravīs), inconstant, fickle, wanting in character: quid easet levius (less dignified).

levitās, -tātis, [levi- + tas], F., lightness.—Also (cf. levis), inconstancy, fickleness.

levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [levi- (as if levō-)], i. v. a., lighten. Hence, free from a burden, relieve.

lēx, lēgis, [LEG (in lego, select)], F., a statute, a law.

Lexovii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Normandy.

libenter [libent- (willing) + ter], adv., willingly, with pleasure.—With a verb, be glad to, etc.

liber, -bera, -berum, [libō- (whence libet, it pleases) + rus (reduced)], adj., free (of persons and things), unrestricted, unencumbered.

liberalātīs, -tātis, [liberal- + tas], F., generosity, liberality.

liberaliter [liberal- + ter], adv., generously, kindly (respondit): oratione prosecutus (addressing in generous language).

liberātus, -a, -um, p. p. of libero.

liberē [old case-form of liber], adv., freely, boldly, without restraint: liberius, with too little restraint.

liberī, -orum, [prob. m. plur. of liber, the free members of the household], m. plur., children.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [liberō-], i. v. a., free, set free, relieve (from some bond); liberare se, secure one's freedom.

libertās, -tātis, [liberō- (reduced) + tas], F., liberty, freedom, independence.
librillus, -e, [libra- (pound) + illa], adj., of a pound weight: fundae (heavy missiles from slings, one-pounders).

licentia, -ae, [licent- (cf. licet) + ia], F., lawlessness, want of discipline.

licetor, licëri, licitus, [prob. pass. of licet], 2. v. dep. bid (at an auction).

licet, licère, licuit (licitum est), [†licē- (cf. delicus, reliquus)], 2. v. n., be allowed: id sibi, etc. (that they be allowed); per te licet, you allow, you do not hinder; licet conspicari, one can see; quibus esse licet, who may be, who have a chance to be; petere ut licet, to ask permission.

Liger, -eris, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul between the Hædui and the Bituriges, the Loire.

lignātīdī, -ōnis, [lignā- (cf. lignum, wood) + tio], F., getting wood.

lignātor, -tōris, [lignā- (cf. lignum, wood) + tor], M., wood-forager, wood-cutter.

illium, -i, [?], N., a lily. The name is applied jocously to a peculiar kind of chevaux-de-frise.

linea, -ae, [linē- (flax) + ea (F. of -eus)], F., a line.

Lingones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mts.

lingua, -ae, [?], F., tongue. Hence, language.

lingula, -ae, [lingua- + la (F. of -lus)], F., a little tongue, a tongue of land.

linter (lunt-), -tris, [?], F. (?), a trough, a skiff, a boat.


lis, litis, [for ṭstlīs, cf. locus and Eng. strife], F., a suit at law. — Also, the amount in dispute, damages.

Liscus, -i, [Celtic], M., a Hæduan, brother of Diviciacus.

Litavicus, -i, [Celtic], M., a Hæduan chief.

littera (lit-), -ae, [?, akin to lino, smear], F., a letter (of the alphabet). — Plur., letters, writing, an alphabet, a letter (an epistle), records.

litus, -oris, [?], N., a shore, a beach.

locus, -i, [for ṭstlocus (place) STL\[a\] + cus], M. (sing.), N. (generally pl.), a place, a spot, a position, a region (esp. in plur.), a point, the ground (in military language), space, extent (of space), room. — Fig., position, rank, a point, place (light, position, character), an opportunity, a chance: obсидum loco, as hostages.

locūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of loquor.

longē [old case-form of longus], adv., far, too far, absent, far away, distant: non longius mille (not more than); longe aeturum, would be far from helping; longius prodire (any distance); longius aberat, was rather far away; longe nobilissimus (far, altogether).

longinquus, -a, -um, [case-form of longus (perh. loc.) + cus], adj., long (of time and space), distant, long-continued.

longitūdō, -dinis, [longō- + tudo], F., length.

longurius, -i, [longō- + urlius], M., a long pole.

longus, -a, -um, [?], adj., long (of space and time); in longitudem
diem, to a more distant day; navis
longa, a ship of war, a war galley,
(opposed to the broader naves one-
erriae); longum est espectare, it is
too long to wait, it would take too
long to, etc.

loquor, loqui, locútus, [?], 3. v.
dep., speak, talk, converse.

loricá, -ae, [lorí- (strap) + ica], f.,
a coat of mail (orig. of leather
thongs). — Also, a breastwork, a
rampart (on a wall).

Lúcánus, -í, [Lucanó- + ius], m.,
a Roman gentle name. — Esp.,
Quintus Lucanius, a centurion in
Caesar’s army.

Lúcicus, -í, [luc- (in lux) + ius],
m., a Roman prænomen.

Lucterius, -í, [?], perh. Celtic], m.,
a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from
the Romans. — Esp., Lucterius Ca-
durcus, a commander under Ver-
cingetorix.

Lugotorix, -ígis, [Celtic], m., a
British prince.

lúna, -ae, [LUC (in luceo, shine)
+ na], f., the moon. Also personi-
fied, Luna, the Moon.

Lutetia, -ae, [?], f., a city of the
Parisii, on the island of modern Paris.

lux, lúcis, [LUC, shine, as st.], f.,
light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce,
or luce, at daybreak.

lúxuria, -ae, [luxuír- (luxuí-
excess) + rus] + iá], f., luxury,
rivulous living.

M

M., for Marcus.

M [corruption of CIC (orig. F)
through influence of mille], 1000.

mácería, -ae, [mácér- (whence
macerō, soften) + iá], f., (mortar ?),
a wall.

máchinátió, -onis, [machiná-
tio], f., contrivance (mechanical).
— Concretely, a contrivance, an en-
gine, a derrick.

maestus, -a, -um, [p. p. of mae-
reo, mis (in miser, wretched) +
tus], adj., sad, sorrowful, deflected.

Magetobriga, -ae, [Celtic], f.,
a town in Gaul where Ariovistus
defeated the Gauls. Position un-
certain.

magis [MAG (in magnus) + ius
(N. comparative)], adv., more,
rather: eo magis, so much the more,
all the more. See also maxime.

magistrátus, -tis, [magistrá-
(as
if st. of magistro, cf. magister,
master) + tus], m., a magistracy
(office of a magistrate). — Con-
cretely, a magistrate (cf. “the powers
that be”).

mágnificus, -a, -um, [magnó-
Ficus (fác (in facio) + us)], adj.,
splendid, grand, magnificent.

mágnitúdo, -dinis, [magnú-
tudo], f., greatness, great size, size,
extent, stature, force (venti), sever-
ity (supplici): silvarum (immense
woods); corporum (size, stature).

mágnopere, see opus.

mágnus, -a, -um, [MAG (increase)
+ nus, cf. magis], adj., great (in any
sense, of size, quantity, or degree),
large, extensive, important, serious
(motus), heavy (portoria), high
(aestus), loud (vox): magni habere,

mágnum, -a, -um, [MAG (increase)
+ nus, cf. magis], adj., great (in any
sense, of size, quantity, or degree),
large, extensive, important, serious
(motus), heavy (portoria), high
(aestus), loud (vox): magni habere,
value highly, make much account of; magni interest, it is of great importance. — māior, compar. in usual sense. — Also, māior (with or without natu), elder, older. — In plur. as noun, elders, ancestors. — maximus, superl., largest, very large, greatest, very great, etc.: maximis itineribus, by forced marches. See also Maximus.

māiestās, -tātis, [maioe- (orig. st. of māior) + tas], F., (superiority), majesty, dignity.

māior, see magnus.

malacia, -ae, [burr fr. Greek], F., (soft weather), a calm.

male [old case-form of malus], adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully. — peius, compar. — pessime, superl.

maleficium, -i, [malefic- (mischief) + ium], N., harm, mischief.

mālō, mālle, mālu, no p. p., [mage- (for magis) volo], irr. v. a. and n., wish more, wish rather, prefer, prefer rather.

malus, -a, -um, [?], adj., bad (in all senses), ill. — peior, compar. — pessimus, superl.

mālus, -i, [Gr.], M., (apple-tree), mast, beam (upright).

mandātum, -i, [N. p. p. of mando], N., a trust (given to one), instructions (given), a message (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -āitus, [?, mand- (manu-do)], I. v. a., put into one's hands, entrust, instruct (give instructions to), commit: se fugae (take to); quibus mandatum est, who had been instructed.

Mandubii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe north of the Haudii.

Mandubracius, -i, [Celtic], m., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.

māne [old case-form of āmanis (? ma + nis, cf. Matuta, goddess of dawn]) adv., in the morning.

maneō, manere, mānsi, mānsūrus, 2. v. n., stay, remain, stay at home (absolutely, opp. to proficiscor). — Fig., continue, stand by (in eo quod).

manipulāris, -is, [manipul- + aris, prop. adj.], M., comrade (of the same manipule or company).

manipulus, -i, [manu- tulus (ple + us)], M., (a handful, esp. of hay, used as an ensign), a maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

Manlius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Manlius, as proconsul, beaten by the Aquitani in B.C. 78.

mānsuefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus, [tmansue- (cf. mansuesco, grow tame, and calefaco) -faco], 3. v. a., tame. — Pass., mānsueficio, be tamed.

mānsueūtūdō, -dinis, [tmanseu-(cf. mansuefaciō) + tūdo], F., tameness, gentle disposition, kindness.

manus, -ūs, [?], F., the hand: in manibus nostrīa, just at hand, within reach; manu defendere (by arms); dat manus, hold out the hands to be bound, acknowledge one's self conquered, give in. — Also (cf. manipulus), a company, a band, a troop.

Marcomanni, -orum, [Teutonic, akin to march and man, "the men of the marches"] M. plur., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus.
Marcus, -i, [the hammer, akin to marceo, be soft, and morior, die], m., a Roman praenomen.

mare, -is, [?], n., the sea: mare oceanum, the ocean; nostrum (i.e. the Mediterranean).

maritimus, -a, -um, [mari + timus, cf. finitimus], adj., of the sea, sea-, maritaine, naval, on the sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the seaside). — Also, maritimus.

Marius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

Mars, Mārtis, [?], perh. mar (in morior, die) + tis, the slayer, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], m., Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with the Greek Αρης and worshipped as the god of war. Caesar again identifies him with the Celtic Hēsus. — See aequus.

mās, maris, [?], adj., male. — Noun, a male.

matara, -ae, [Celtic], f., a javelin (of a peculiar kind, used by the Gauls).

mater, -tris, [?], prob. ma *(create) + ter], f., a mother, a matron.

mater familiaris (old gen. of familia), f., a matron.

mater, -ae (nes, -ēi), [?], prob. mater + ia (f. of -iua)], f., wood (cut, for material), timber, (cf. lignum, wood for fuel).

materior, āri, -ātus, [materi-a-],
1. v. dep., get timber, bring wood.

Matiscō, -onis, [Celtic], f., a city of the Hēdui, now Macom.

mātrimōnum, -i, [mater- (as if matri) + monium], n. (motherhood), marriage, matrimony: in matrimonium ducere, marry.

Matrona, -ae, [Celtic], m., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, the Marne.

māturē [old case-form of maturus], adv., early, speedily.

māturēscō, -turēscere, -turēfi, no p. p., [maturē- (cf. matureo) + sco],
3. v. n., get ripe, ripen.

māturē, āre, -āvi, -ātus, [maturē-],
1. v. a. and n., hasten, make haste.

māturus, -a, -um, [matur- (MA, (in mane) + tus) + rus], adj., early.
— Also (by unc. conn. of ideas), ripe, mature.

maximē [old case-form of maximus], adv., in the greatest degree, most, very, in the highest degree, especially: ea maxime ratione, in that way more than any other; maxime confidebat, had the greatest confidence.

Maximus [sup. of magnus, as noun], m., a Roman family name.

medeor, -ēri, no p. p., [†medō- (whence medicus, remedium), root unc., cf. meditor], 2. v. dep., attend (as a physician), heal. — Fig., remedy, relieve.

mediocris, -cre, [mediō- + crisis], adj., middling, moderate: spatum (a little, no great); non mediocris, no little, no small degree of.
mediocrity [mediocr- + ter], adv., moderately: non mediocrer, in no small degree.

Mediomatriči, -ōrum, (-um), [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Rhine, about Metz.

Mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [medī-terra (land) + aneus], adj., inland.

medius, -a, -um, [med (cf. Eng. mid) + ius], adj., the middle of (as noun in Eng.), mid-: in colle medio (half way up); locus medius utriusque (half way between); de media nocte, about midnight.

Meldi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul.

melior, compar. of bonus.

Melodūnum, -i, [Celtic], n., a city of the Senones, on an island in the Seine, now Melun; see Metiosedum.

membrum, -i, [prob. formed with suffix -rum (n. of -rūs)], n., a limb, a part of the body.

meminī, -isse, [perf. of man, in mens, etc.], def. verb a., remem-ber.

memoria, -ae, [memor + ia], f., (mindfulness), memory, recollection, power of memory: memoria tenere, remember; memoriam prodere, hand down the memory (of something just mentioned); memoriam deponere, cease to remember; memoria proditum, handed down by tradition; supra hanc memoriam, beyond the memory of this generation; dignum memoria, worthy of remembrance; nostrā memorīā, within our memory, in our own time.

Menapiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

mendācium, -i, [mendac- (false) + ium], n., falsehood, a falsehood.

mēns, mentis, [MAN + tia (reduced)], f., (a thought ?), the intellect (as opposed to the moral powers, cf. animus), the mind, a state of mind: mentes animoaeque, minds and hearts; oculis mentibusque, with eyes and thoughts.

mēnsis, -is, [unc. form fr. MA, measure (cf. moon, month)], m., a month.

mēnsūra, -ae, [†mensu- (MA, measure, as if man, + tu) + ra (f. of -rūs)], f., measure: ex aqua me-nsurae, measures by the water-clock; itinerum (accurate length).

mentīō, -ōnis, [as if MAN (in memini) + tio (prob. †menti + o)], f., mention.

mercātōr, -tōris, [†mercā- (cf. mercor, trade) + tor], m., a trader (who carries his own wares abroad).

mercātūra, -ae, [†mercatur- + ra (f. of -rūs)], f., traffic, trade, com-mercial enterprise.

mercēs, -ēdis, [mercē- (cf. merx, merchandise) + dus (reduced)], f., hire, pay, wages.

Mercurius, -i, [unc. form, akin to merces, etc.], m., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by Cæsar with a Celtic divinity, probably Teutates.
mëreo, -ēri, -itus, (also mereo, active), 2. v. dep., win, deserve, gain. — Also (from earning pay), serve: mereri de, serve the interests of.

meriēdiānus, -a, -um, [merēdiē- + anus], adj., of middy: tempus (noon).

merēdiēs, -ēi, [prob. medio- (reduced) -dies], M., middy, noon. — Also, the south.

meritum, -ī, [N. p. p. of mereo], N., desert, service. — meritō (abl. as adv.), deservedly: minus merito, without the fault; magis . . . quam merito eorum, more than by any act of theirs; merito eius a se fieri, that he deserved that he should do it.

meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of mereo.

Messāla, -ae, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Valerius Messala, consul, B.C. 61, with Marcus Piso.

mētiōr, mētiērī, mēnusus, [†meti- (MA + tis ?)], 4. v. dep., measure, measure out; deal out (rations); distribute.

Metiosēdum, -i, [Celtic], N., earlier name of Melodunum.

Mētius, -ī, [?], M., a Gaul in relations of hospitality (see hospes) with Ariovistus.

metō, metere, messuī, messusus, [?], 3. v. a., cut, reap, gather.

metus, -tūs, [unc. root + tus], M., fear. — Often superfluous with other words of fearing: metu territate, terrify. — Esp.: hoc metu, fear of this.

meus, -a, -um, [MA (in me) + ius], poss. adj. pron., my, mine.

mihi, see ego.

miles, -itis, [unc. st. akin to mille as root + tis (reduced)], c., a soldier, a common soldier (as opposed to officers), a legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service). — Collectively, the soldiers, the soldiers.

militāris, -e, [milit- + aris], adj., of the soldiers, military: signa (battle-standards). See res.

militia, -ae, [milit- + ia], F., military service, service (in the army).

mille, indecl. mília, -ium, [akin to miles], adj. in sing., noun in plur., a thousand: mille passuum, a thousand paces, a mile.

Minerva, -ae, [unc. form akin to memini, etc.], F., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek Athene.

minimē [old case-form of minimus], adv., in the smallest degree, least, very little, not at all.

minimus, -a, -um, [lost st. (whence minuō) + imus (cf. infimus), superl. of parvus], adj., smallest, least. — Neut. as noun and adv., the least, least, very little.

minor, -us, [lost st. (cf. minimus) + ior (compar. ending)], adj., compar. of parvus, smaller, less: dimidio minor, half as large. — Neut. as noun and adv., less, not much, not very, not so much, not so: quo minus, in order that . . . not; si minus, if not; minus valebat (not so strong, less, etc.); minus uti (not so well); minus magnus fluctus (less violent, smaller).

Minucius (Minut-), -I, [perh. akin
to \textit{minus]}, \textit{m., a Roman gentile name. See Basilus and Rufus.}

\textit{minuō}, -ure, -ui, -itus, [\textit{tminu}- (cf. \textit{minus})], 3. v. a. and n., lessen, weaken, diminish: aestus (ebb); vim (break the force, etc.); controversias (settle); desidiam (cure, correct); ostentationem (humble).

\textit{mirātus}, -a, -um, p. p. of \textit{miror}.


\textit{mirus}, -a, -um, [\textit{SMi} (cf. \textit{smile}) + rue], adj., surprising, marvelous, wonderful: mirum in modum, in a surprising manner.

\textit{miser}, -era, -erum, [\textit{MIS} (cf. \textit{maereo}) + rue], adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor.

\textit{misericordia}, -ae, [\textit{misericord-} (merciful) + ia], F., mercy, pity, clemency.

\textit{miseror}, -āri, -ātus, [\textit{t miserō-}], 1. v. dep., bewail, complain of.

\textit{missus}, -a, -um, p. p. of \textit{mitto}.

\textit{missus}, -sūs, [\textit{MIT} (? root of \textit{mitto} + tus], M., a sending: missus Caesaris, despatched by Casar, under orders of Caesar.

\textit{mitissimus} [old case-form of \textit{mitissimus}], adv., superl. of mite (N. of \textit{mitis}), very gently, very mildly, in very gentle terms.

\textit{mittō}, mittere, misī, missus, [?], 3. v. a., let go (cf. omitto), send, despatch, discharge, shoot: sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke. See iugum.

\textit{mobilis}, -e, [prob. movi- (as if st. of \textit{moveo}, or a kindred st.) + bilis], adj., easily movaē, movable, mobile; fickle, hasty.

\textit{mōbilitās}, -tātis, [mobili- + taē], F., mobility, activity (of troops), inconstancy, fickleness.

\textit{mōbiliter} [mobilī- + ter (prob. terum, reduced)], adv., easily (of motion), readily.


\textit{modestia}, -ae, [\textit{modesto-} + ia], F., moderation, self-control, subordination (of soldiers).

\textit{modō} [abl. of \textit{modus}], adv., (with measure ?), only, merely, just, even; just now, lately: paulum modo (just a very); non . . . modo, not only; aspectum modo, the mere sight.

\textit{modus}, -i, [\textit{MOD} (cf. \textit{moderor}) + us], M., measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, style, method: ad hunc modum, after this fashion; nullo modō, in no way. See eiusmodi.

\textit{moenia}, -ium, [\textit{MI} (distribute ?) + nis (cf. \textit{communis}) (orig. shares of work done by citizens ?)], N. plur., fortifications, walls of a city.

\textit{mōles}, -is, [?], cf. \textit{molestus}], F., a mass. — Esp., a dike, a dam.

\textit{molestē} [old case-form of \textit{molestus}, troublesome], adv., heavily, severely: molestē ferre, take hardly, be vexed at.

\textit{mōlimentum}, -i, [moli- (st. of \textit{molor}, strive) + mentum], N., trouble, difficulty, exertion.

\textit{mollitus}, -a, -um, p. p. of \textit{molo.}

\textit{mollō}, -ire, -ivī, -itus, [mollī-], 4. v. a., soften. — Fig., make easy: clivum.
mollis, -e, [?] adj., soft, tender. — Fig., weak, feeble, not hard, not firm: animus ad resistendum; litus (gently sloping).

mollitieś, -ēī (also, -a, -ae), [mollitiēs + ties (cf. -tia)], F., softness. — Fig., weakness: animi (feebleness of purpose, weakness of character).

molō, -ere, -ui, -itus, [?], 3. v. a., grind. See cibarius.

mōmentum, -ī, [mōvi- (as st. of moveo, movē) + mentum], N., means of motion, cause of motion. — Fig., weight, importance, influence: habere (be of importance).

Mōna, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain, but confounded with Anglesea.

mōneō, -ere, -ui, -itus, [causative of man (in memini) or denominaive fr. a kindred st.], 2. v. a., remind, warn, advise, urge.

mōnēs, montis, [man (in mineō, project) + tis (reduced)], M., a mountain, height.

mōra, -ae, [prob. root of memor, mindful, + a], F., delay, grounds of delay.

morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of moror.

morbus, -ī, [mar (in morior, die) + bus], M., sickness, illness.

Morinī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M., plur., a tribe of the Belgae on the coast of Picardy.

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus (morītūrus), [mar (cf. mora)], 3. v. dep., die.

Moritasgus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Senones.

moror, -ārī, -ātus, [mora-], 1. v. dep., retard, hinder, check (the advance of), delay, wait, stay.

mora, mortiīs, [mar (cf. morior) + tis], F., death: sibi mortem consciscere, commit suicide.

mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of morior.

mōs, mōris, [?], M., a custom, a usage, a way (of acting). — Plur., customs, habits, character (as consisting of habits, cf. ingénium and indoles, of native qualities).

Mōsa, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse, or Maas.

mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo.

mōtus, -tūs, [movi- (as st. of moveo) + tus], M., a movement, a disturbance, an uprising: expeditior (movement of ships); celer atque instabilis (changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare); siderum (revolutions).

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, [?], 2. v. a., set in motion, move, stir: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp).

mulier, -eris, [?], F., a woman.

müliō, -onis, [mulō- + o], M., a muleteer, a driver.

multītūdō, -dinis, [multō- + tūdo], F., a great number, great numbers, number (generally). — Esp., the multitude, the common people.

multō, see multus.

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [multa-, fine], 1. v. a., punish (by fine), deprive (one of a thing as a punishment).

multum, see multus.

multus, -a, -um, [? poss. root of mille, miles, + tus], adj., much,
mulus 98 nactus

many: multe die, late in the day; ad multam noctem, till late at night.
— multum, neut. as noun and adv., much. — Also, plur., multa, many things, much, a great deal. — Abl., multo, much, far: multo facilius. — As compar., plús, plúris, n. noun and adv.; plur. as adj., more, much, very: as noun, several, many. — As superl., plurímus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much: quam plurími, as many as possible; quam plurímos possunt, the most they can; plurínum posse, have most power, be very strong or influential; plurínum valere, have very great weight.

múlus, -i, [?], perh. akin to molo, grind], m. (the mill-beast), a mule.

Múnátius, -i, [prob. akin to munus], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Munatius Plancus, a legatus in Caesar’s army.

mundus, -i, [?], m. (orig. adj., well ordered, a translation of Gr. οικός, the universe, the world.

múnimentum, -i, [muni- + mentum], n., a fortification. — Plur., a defence.

múnió, Íre, -ívī (-īī), -itus, [muni- (st. of moenia)], 4. v. a. and n., fortify.— Less exactly, protect, defend, furnish (by way of protection), make (by embankment), construct: castra; iter. — munitissima castra (very strongly fortified).

múnitio, -onis, [muni- + tio], f., fortification (abstractly). — Concretely, a fortification, works, fortifications, defences: munitio operis, building works of defence; munitio- nis causa, to build works, etc.

múnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of munio.

múrus, -eris, [min (as if root of moenia) + us, orig. share (cf. moenia)], n., a duty, a service, a task: munus militiae, military service. — Also, (a contribution), a tribute, a gift, a present.

múrālis, -e, [muro- + alia], adj., of a wall, wall: pilum (heavy javelin for service in siege operations).

múrus, -i, [?], m., a wall (in itself considered, cf. moenia, defences).

músculus, -i, [mus + culus, dimin.], m., (little mouse), a shed (small and very strong, for covering besieging soldiers).

mútulus, -a, -um, [?], adj., mutilated: corinthus (with short broken horns, of the elk).

Nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.

nam [old case-form, cf. tam, quam], conj., for.

Nam[mē]lus, -i, [Celtic], m., a Helvetian sent as ambassador to Cæsar.

Namnetes, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Loire around Nantes.

namque [nam-que], conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam).

nanciscor, -iscì, nactus (nactus), [NAC], 3. v. dep., find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain.

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.
Nantuātēs, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.

Narbō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now Narbonne.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, [GNA, cf. gignō], 3. v. dep., be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised (of beasts), be found (plumbum).—nātus, p. p., sprung, born.

Nasua, -ae, [?, Germanic], M., a leader of the Suevi.

nātālis, -e, [natu- (reduced) + alis], adj., of birth: dies natalis, a birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis, [GNA (cf. nascor) + tio, perh. through intermediate st.], F., (a birth), a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan.

nātivus, -a, -um, [natu- (reduced) + ivus], adj., native, natural.

nātūra, -ae, [natu- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., (birth), nature, character (of living creature), character, nature (of inanimate things); ea rerum natura, such the state of the case; secundum naturam fluminis, down stream; natura triquetra (in form); natura cogebat, must necessarily; de rerum natura (physical science); eadem feminae marisque (form, organisation); naturam vincere (human nature); natura loci, nature of the ground.

nātus, -a -um, p. p. of nascor.

nātus, tūs, [GNA (cf. nascor) + tus], M., birth: maiores natu, elders.

nauta, -ae, [borrowed from Gr. nautēs], M., a sailor, a boatman.

nauticus, -a, -um, [nauta- + cua], adj., of a sailor (or sailors), naval.

nāvālis, -e, [navi- (reduced) + alia], adj., of ships, naval: navalis pugna, sea-fight.

nāvicula, -ae, [navi- + cula], F., a boat, a small vessel, a skiff.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, [navigā- + tio], F., a sailing, a voyage, travelling by sea, a trip (by sea).

nāvigium, -i, [navigō- (?), navi- + tagus + ium], N., a vessel (general), “a craft,” a boat.

nāvigō, āre, āvī, āitus, [navigō- (see navigium)], I. v. n., sail.

nāvis, -is, [(s)NU, float (increased), with added i], F., a ship, a vessel, a boat: oneraria (a transport); longa (a war galley); navi egredi, land.

nāvī, -are, āvī, āitus, [gnavō, busy], I. v. a., do one’s best: operam (do one’s best).

nē [NA, unc. case-form], conj., lest, that . . . not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), so that . . . not, for fear that.—After verbs of fearing, that.—Also adv., ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either; ne Vorenus quidem, nor Vorenus either; Vorenus, too, did not, etc.

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as nē, orig. = nonne], conj., not? (as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as question in Eng.), do, etc.—See also necne, nec.

nec, see neque.

necessārius, -a, -um, [necessō- (reduced) + arius], adj., (closely bound?), necessary: tempus (critical); causa (pressing, unavoidable):
necese

res (absolutely necessary, needful, indispensable).—Also, as noun, a connection (a person bound by any tie), a kinsman, a close friend.—Abl. as adv., necessariū, of necessity, necessarily, unavoidably.

necesse [?, ne-cessē-, cf. cedo], indecl. adj., necessary.—With est, one must, one cannot but, one must inevitably.

necesitās, -tās, [necessē- + tas], f., necessity, constraint, compulsion: temporis (exigency); suarum necessitatum causa (interests).

necessitūdō, -dinis, [necessē- + tudo], f., close connection (cf. necessarius), intimacy, close relations.

 necne [nec ne], conj., or not (in double questions).

 necō, -āre, -āvi (-ui), -ātus (-tus), [nec (st. of nec, death)], i. v. a., put to death, kill, murder (in cold blood).

nēcubī [ne cubī (? for quobī, see ubi)], conj., that nowhere, lest anywhere, that not ... anywhere.

 nefārius, -a, -um, [nefas + ius], adj., wicked, infamous, abominable.

 nefās, [nefas], n. indecl., a crime (against divine law) : nefas est, it is not allowable.

neglegō (necl-), -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [nec (= ne) -lego], 3. v. a., not regard, disregard, neglect: injurias (leave unavenged, leave unpunished); hac parte neglecta (leave unnoticed); metu mortis neglecto (careless of, etc.).

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?, poss. ne-alo], i. v. a. and n., say no, say ... not, refuse.

negōtiōr, -āri, -ātus, [negotiō-], i. v. dep., do business (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).

negōtiūm, -i, [negotiūm, ease], n., business, occupation, an undertaking.—Less definitely, a matter, a thing.—Also, difficulty, trouble: in ipso negotio, at the moment of action; negotium conficere, make a thorough business of a thing, finish a thing up; quid negoti, what business? cf. Eng. “what business have you here?”; dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to.

Nemetes, -um, [Teutonic], m. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, tēnēminis, [ne-homo, man], c., no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one.

nēquāquam [ne-quaquam, anyway (cf. eā, qua)], adv., in no way, by no means.

 neque (nec) [ne-que], adv., and not, and yet ... not, nor: neque ... neque, neither ... nor.

nēqui(d)quam [nēquic-], [ne . . . qui(d)quam, anything], adv., to no purpose, in vain, not without reason.

Nervicus, -a, -um, [Nervō- (reduced) + cus], adj., of the Nervii, Nervian.

Nervius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., Nervian.—m. plur., the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -i, [prob. for †nevrus], m., a sinew.—Fig., in plur., strength, vigor.

neu, see neve.

neuter, -tra, -trum, [ne-uter, which (of two)], adj. pron., neither.—Plur., neither party, neither side.
nève (neu) [ne-ve], conj., or not, and not, nor.

nex, necis, [?], F., death, violent death, execution.

nihil, see nihilum.

nihilum, -i (nihil), [ne-hilum, trivl, whi?], N. (also indecl.), nothing: nihil reliqui, nothing left; nihil respondere, make no answer.—nihilō, abl. as adv., none, no. — nihil, acc. as adv., not at all: non nihil, somewhat.

nimius, -a, -um, [nimi- (? st. of nimis, too much) + ius], adj., too much, too great.

nisi [ne-si], conj., (not ... if), unless, except, except in case: nisi cum, until; nisi rogatus, without being asked.

nīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of nitor.

Nitiobriges (-broges), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

nitor, nīsus (nīxus), nītī, [prob. genu, knee], 3. v. dep., (strain with the knee against something), struggle, strive, exert one’s self: niti insidias (rely upon).

nīx, nivos, [?], F., snow.

nōbilis, -e, [as if (g)no (root of nosco, know) + bilis], adj., famous, noble, well-born (cf. “notable”). — Plur. as noun, the nobles.

nōbilitās, -tātis, [nobilis + tas], F., nobility. — Concretely, the nobility, the nobles.

nōcēns, see noceo.

nōcēs, nōcērēs, -ui, no p. p. [akin to nēx, death], 2. v. n., do harm to, injure, harm, harass. — nōcēns, -entis, p. as adj., hurtful, guilty (of some harm).

noctū [abl. of ā noctus (noc- + tus)], as adv., by night.

nocturnus, -ā, -um, [noc- + turnus, cf. diurnus], adj., of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night: tempus (night-time).

nōdus, -i, [?], M., a knot, a joint: nōdi et articuli, protuberant joints.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, [ne-volo], irr. v. a. and n., not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have: noli, nōlite, do not (with infin.).

nōmen, -minis, [(c)no (root of nosco, know) + men], N., a name (what one is known by), name (fame, prestige). — As a name represents an account, an account: nomine dotis (on account of, as); suo nomine, on his own account; nomine obsidum, under pretense of hostages.

nōminātim [acc. of real or supposed nominatis (nominā- + tis)], adv., by name (individually).

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nomin-], 1. v. a., name, mention, call by name.

nōn [ne-oenum (unum)], adv., not: non est dubium, there is no doubt; non mediocrum, in no small degree. nōnāgintā, indecl., num., ninety.

nōndum (see dum), not yet.

nōnnullos (see nullus), some.

nōnumquam (see numquam), sometimes.

nōnus, -a, -um, [noven- (? ) + nus (mus)], num. adj., ninth.

Nōrēia, -ae, [Teutonic], F., a city of the Norici, in modern Styria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, [st. akin to Noreia + cus], adj., of the Norici, Norican.

nōs, nōsme, see ego, egomet.
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus,  
[(o)nA, know], 3. v. a., learn, become acquainted with. — In perf. tenses, know. — nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., known, familiar, well-known: notis vadis (being acquainted with, etc.).

nōster, -tra, -trum, [prob. nos (nom. plur.) + ter], poss. adj. pron., our, ours. — In plur., our men (the Romans), our forces.

nōtītia, -ae, [nōtī- + tia], F., acquaintance with, knowledge.

nōtus, p. p. of nosco.

novem [unc. reduced case-form], indecl. num. adj., nine.

Noviodūnum, -i, [Celtic], N.:

novitās, -tātis, [novī- + tat], F., novelty, strangeness, strange character: rei (novelty, unexpected occurrence).

novus, -a, -um, [?], cf. Eng. new], adj., new, novel, fresh: res novae, a change of government, revolution. — novissimus, -a, -um, superl., latest, last: agmen (the rear).

nox, noctis, [akin to noceo, harm], F., night: prima nocte, in the early part of the night; multa nocte, late at night.

noxia, -ae, [NOC (in noceo, harm) + unc. term.], F., crime, guilt.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus, [akin to nubes, cloud], 3. v. N., veil one's self (of the bride), marry (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nudo.

nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nudō-], 1. v. a., lay bare, expose, strip. —

Less exactly, clear (murum defenso-ribus).

nūdus, -a, -um, [?], root (akin to naked) + dus], adj., naked, bare, unprotected, exposed.

nūllus, -a, -um, [ne-ullus], adj., not any, no.— As noun, no one.— nōn nūllus, some. — Plur. as noun, some, some persons.

num [pron. NA, cf. tum], adv., interrog. particle, suggesting a neg. answer, does, is, etc., it is not, is it? and the like: num posse (in indirect discourse, could he, etc.).

nūmen, -inis, [NU (in nuo, nod) + men], N., (a nod), will, power. Hence, divinity.

numerus, -i, [†numo- (cf. nummus, Numa) + rus], M., a number, number: in hostium numero habuit (in the place of, etc., euphemism for slaughtered); totidem numero, the same number; impedimentorum (quantity, i.e. number of pack-horses); ad numerum, to the required number; aliquo numero, of some account.

Numīdā, -ae, [?], M., a Numidian (employed in the Roman army as cavalry, cf. Zouave, Turco).

nummus, -i, [akin to numerus], M., a coin: pro nummo, for coin.

numquam (num-) [ne-umquam], adv., never.

nunc [num-ce, cf. hic], adv., now (emphatic, as an instantaneous now, cf. iam, unemphatic and continuous): etiam nunc, even then (of the past considered as present).

nūntītus, -a, -um, p. p. of nuntio.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nuntiō-],
nullius

I. v. a., send news, report, make known: nuntiatum est ei . . . ne (he was ordered not to, etc.).

nullius, -i, [†nóvent- (p. of †noveo, be new) + ius], m., (newcomer), a messenger. Hence, news: nuntium mittere (send word); per eorum nullios (agents).

nūper [for novi-per, cf. parum per], adv., lately, recently, not long ago.
nūsquam [ne-usquam], adv., nowhere, in no case (almost equal never).
nūtus, -tūs, [nu + tus], m., a nod, a sign: ad nutum, at one’s beck, at one’s command; nutus, by signs.

ob [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.), and prep. with acc. (near), against. Hence, on account of, for: ob eam rem, for this reason, on this account. — In comp., towards, to, against, over.
obserētus, -a, -um, [ob-σerētus, as if p. p. of ἐρω, cf. aes, money], adj., bound in debt (to some one). — As noun, a debtor, a servant for debt.
obduōic, -duicere, -duīcī, -ductus, [ob-duco], 3. v. a., lead towards, lead against: fossam (throw out, in a military sense, carry along).
obēō, -ire, -ī, -itus, [ob-eō], irr. v. a., go to, go about, attend to.
obiciō, -icere, -icī, -iectus, [ob-iciō], 3. v. a., throw against, throw in the way, present, throw up (against the enemy, etc.), set up, expose. — obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying opposite, lying in the way.
obitus, -tūs, [ob-itus, cf. obeō], m., a going to. — Esp., a going to death (cf. obire mortem), destruction, annihilation.
obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of obiciō.
oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of offero.

oblīquē [old case-form of obliquus], adv., obliquely, slanting.
obliquus, -a, -um, [ob-tliquus, cf. li(c)mus, aslant], adj., slanting.
obliviscor, -livisci, -lītus, [ob-livio, cf. liveo], 3. v. dep., (grow dark against ?), forget.
oblsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [manufactured from ob sacrum (near or by some sacred object)], 1. v. a., entreat, adjure, implore.

obsequentia, -ae, [obsequent- (yielding) + ia], f., compliance, deference: nīmia obsequentia, too ready compliance.

observātus, -a, -um, p. p. of observo.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [observe], 1. v. a., (be on the watch towards ?), guard, maintain, keep: iudicum (follow, comply with); dies natalis (keep, celebrate).

obses, -idis, [ob-tses, cf. praeses and obsideo], c., (a person under guard), a hostage.

obsessīō, -onis, [ob-tsessio, cf. obsideo], f., a blockade, a siege, a state of siege (cf. oppugnatio, of actual siege operations).
obsessus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideō.
obsideō, -sidēre, -ādē, - sessus, [ob-sedeō], 2. v. a., (sit down against), blockade, beset, guard.

obsidiō, -ōnis, [obsidīō- (reduced) + o], F., a siege (cf. obsessio), a blockade: obsidione liberare (from besetting enemies). — Also, the art of siege.

obsignātus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsigno.
obsignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [obsigno], 1. v. a., seal up, seal.


obstinātō [old case-form of obstinatus, fr. obstino, persist], adv., persistently.

obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of obstringo.

obstringō, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictus, [ob-stringo], 3. v. a., bind (lit. and fig.): habere obstrictas (under obligation).

obstruícustus, -a, -um, p. p. of obstruo.

obstruō, -struerē, -struxī, -strictus, [ob-streō, pile], 3. v. a., block up, barricade.

obtemperō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [ob-tempero], 1. v. n., (conform to), comply with, submit to.

obtēstātus, -a, -um, p. p. of obstēstor.

obtestor, -āri, -ātus, [ob-testor, cf. testis, witness], 1. v. dep., implore (calling something to witness).

obtineō, -tīnere, -tinui, -tentus, [ob-teneo], 2. v. a., hold (against something or somebody), retain, maintain, occupy, possess: provinciam (have control of as prætor); instisimam apud eum causam obtineres, be entirely free from obligation towards him, as having a perfect right to benefits conferred.

obtuli, perf. of offero.

obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ob-venīo], 4. v. n., come to, come in one's way, fall to (by lot).

obviam [ob-viam], adv., in the way of, to meet (any one): obviam venire, come to meet.

occāsiō, -ōnis, [ob--caseo, cf. occido], F., opportunity: occasio brevis, a short time; rem occasionis, a matter of opportunity.

occāsus, -āsus, [ob-caseus, cf. occido], M., a falling, a setting (of the sun): solis (the sunset, the west).

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cáurus, [ob-cado], 3. v. n., fall, be slain, set: sol occidens, the west.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus, [ob-caedo, cut], 3. v. a., kill, massacre: occisi, the slain.

occisus, -a, -um, p. p. of occido.

occultātīō, -ōnis, [occulta- + tio], F., concealment.

occultātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occulto.

occultō [old case-form of occultus], adv., secretly.

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [occultō-], 1. v. a., conceal, hide.

occultus, -a, -um, [p. p. of occulto], as adj., concealed: in occulto, in secret; ex occulto, from an ambush, in ambush; in occulto esse continere, keep themselves hidden; insidiandi ex occulto, of attacking from an ambuscade.
occupātiō, -ōnis, [occupā- + tio], f., occupation (engagement in business), business affairs (of business): occupationes tantularum rerum, engagement in such trifling matters.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occupo.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [toccupō- or †occup-, ob and st. akin to capio], 1. v. a., seize, take possession of, seize upon, occupy (only in military sense): regna (usurp); in opere occupati (engaged, employed).

occurreō, -currere, -currī (-cucurri?), -cursūrus, [ob-curro], 3. v. n., run to meet, meet, come upon, find, fall in with, meet. Hence in pregnant sense, thwart, baffle, frustrate: eo (run, to meet an enemy); ad animum (occur).

Oceanus, -i, [Gr.], m., the ocean (with or without mare).

Ocelum, -i, [Celtic], N., a town of the Graiocii in Cisalpine Gaul (prob. Oulx in Piedmont).

octāvus, -a, -um, [octo + vus, poss. †octau + us], num. adj., eighth.

octingentiō, -ae, -a, [st. akin to octo + centum], num. adj., eight hundred.

octō [ʔ], indecl. num. adj., eight.

octōdecim [octo-decem], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

Octodūrus, -i, [Celtic], M., a town of the Veragri, now Martigny.

octōgintā [octo + ʔ], indecl. num. adj., eighty.

octōni, -ae, -a, [octo + nus], adj., eight at a time, eight each, eight.

oculus, -i, [tōcō- (cf. AK, see) + lus], m., the eye: sub oculis, in sight, before the eyes.

ōdiō, ōdissē, [perf. of lost verb (with pres. sense), akin to odium], def. v. a., hate, detest.

odium, -i, [VADH (spurn) + ium], n., hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnus, [ob-fendo], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, hurt: animum (hurt the feelings, alienate, shock).—Absolutely, suffer a mishap.

offensō, -ōnis, [ob-†fensio, cf. defensio and offendo], f., striking against. — Fig., offence: sine offensione animi, without wounding one's feelings.

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus, [ob-tero], irr. v. a., (bring to), throw in one's way, offer: se hostibus (throw themselves upon); se morti (expose one's self to); quos sibi oblatos (placed in his power); beneficium (confer, render).

officium, -i, [ob-†facium, cf. beneficium], N., (doing something to one), a service, performance of a duty. — Transf., a duty, allegiance, an obligation: discedere ab officio, fail of one's duty.

Olovicō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a king of the Nitiobriges.

omittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by: consilium (leave untried, neglect); omnibus ommissus rebus, leaving everything else.

omnīnō [abl. of †omninus (omni- + nus)], adv., altogether, entirely, only, utterly, in all, at all, any way, only just, whatever (with negatives).
omnia, -e, [?], adj., all, the whole of (as divisible or divided, cf. totus as indivisible or not divided). — In sing., every (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. quisque, each, emphatically); celerius omni opinione (of any one); omni tempore, on all occasions, always; omnes preces, every form of prayers; omnibus rebus, everything, everything else; per omnia, etc. (through nothing but, etc.). — In plur. as a short expression for all others.

onerarius, -a, -um, [oner- (as st. of onus) + arian], adj., for burdens: naves (transports).

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [oner- (as st. of onus)], 1. v. a., load: celeritas onerandi (of ships), facility of loading.

onus, -eris, [unc. root + us], N., a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo. — Abstr., weight. — Esp.: tanta onera navium, ships of such weight.

opera, -ae, [oper- (as st. of opus) + a (of -us)], F., work, pains, attention: operam navare, do one's best; operam dare, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains. — With ut, try, take care: opera uti (services, help, etc.); quorum opera interfactus (through whose means, agency).

opinīō, -onis, [opinō- (cf. necopus) + o], F., notion, expectation: celerius omni opinione, quicker than any one would suppose; opinio virtutis (reputation for, etc.); tanta opinio huius belii (impression); tantam opinionem timoris praebeat (gave such an idea, impression); also, opinio timoris (display, cause for an impression); speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praebere, make a show and give an impression of being combatants; nomen atque opinio (reputation); ut fert illorum opinio, as their notion is; ad opinionem Galliae, for an impression on the Gauls; opinione praecipere, to anticipate.

opportet, -ère, -uit, no p. p., [noun-st. from ob and st. akin to porto, cf. opportunus], 2. v. imper., it behooves, it ought, it is best: poenam sequi (the punishment was to follow); frumentum metiri (he ought, etc.); alio tempore atque oportuit (than it should have been).

oppidānum, -a, -um, [oppidō- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a (the) town. — Plur. as noun, the townspeople.

oppidum, -i, [ob-+pedum (a plain?)], N., (the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state), a stronghold, a town (usually fortified).

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [ob-pono], 3. v. a., set against, oppose (something to something else): novem oppositio legionibus, with nine legions opposed to the enemy. — oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., opposed, lying in the way, opposite.

opportūnē [old case-form of opportunus], adv., opportunely, seasonably.

opportūnitās, -tātis, [opportunō- + tas], F., timeliness, fitness (of time or circumstance), good luck (in time or circumstance), favorable chance.
convenience (of a means of fortification).

opportūnus, -a, -um, [ob-portfolio, nus, cf. portus, harbor, and Portunus], adj., (coming to harbor ?), opportune, advantageous, lucky.

oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of oppono.

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of opprimo.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ob-premo], 3. v. a., (press against), overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake (surprise).

oppūgnātio, -ōnis, [oppugnā- + tio], F., a siege (of actual operations, cf. obsidio, blockade), besieging, an attack (in a formal manner against a defended position).

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob-pugno, fight], 1. v. a., attack (formally, but without blockade), lay siege to, carry on a siege, assail (a defended position).

[ops, cf. Ops, the goddess], opis, [?], F., help, aid. — Plur., resources, means, strength, blessings. — Also, help (from several sources).

optātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of opto, wish], as adj., desired, desirable, wished for, welcome.

optimē, superl. of bene.

optimus, -a, -um, [op (cf. ops? + timus (cf. finitimus)], superl. of bonus.

opus, operis, [op + uss], N., work, labor (as accomplishing its purpose, cf. labor, as tiresome). — In military sense, a work, works, fortifications: natura et opere munitus (by nature and art); operum atque artificiorum (trades, handicrafts). — In abl., magno (quanto) (tant) opere, very much, very, greatly: (how much), (so much, so, so earnestly): often as one word, magnopere, quantopere, tantopere.

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., need, necessity: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, if he needed anything of Caesar; si quid opus facto, etc., if anything needs to be done.

ōra, -ae, [?], F., a shore, a coast.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, [orā- (speak) + tio], F., speech, words, talk, address, discourse, argument.

ōrātor, -ōris, [orā- (speak) + tor], M., a speaker, an ambassador, envoy.

orbis, -is, [?], M., a circle (a circular plane): orbis terrarum, the circle of lands, the whole world.— Less exactly, a hollow square (in military language), a circle.

Orcynia, -ae, [Teutonic or Celtic], F., see Hercynius.

ōrdō, -inis, [akin to ordior, begin a web], M., a series, a row, a tier, a rank (of soldiers), a grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), an arrangement, an order: perturbatis ordinibus, the ranks being broken; ratio ordique agminis, the plan and arrangement of the march; ordines servare, to keep their places, (of soldiers, also of anything laid in rows or tiers, preserve the arrangement, not deviating from it).

Orgetorix, -igis, [Celtic], M., a nobleman of the Helvetii.
Orior, oriri, ortus, [?], 3. (and 4). v. dep., arise, spring up: orta luce, at daybreak. — Fig., begin, start, spring from, arise, be started, have its source. — oriens, -entis, p. as adj., rising: sol (sunrise, the east).

Ornamentum, -i, [ornā- + mentum], n., an adornment. — Fig., an honor (an addition to one's dignity), a source of dignity.

Ornatus, -a, -um, p. p. of orno.

Ornō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [unc. noun-st.], i. v. a., adorn, equip, furnish. — Fig., honor. — Ornatus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., furnished, well-equipped, honored.

Orō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [or- (as st. of os, mouth)], i. v. a. and n., speak. — Esp., pray, entreat.

Ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of orior.

Ortus, -tūs, [or (in orior) + tus], m., a rising: solis (sunrise, the east).

Oś, orīs, [?], n., the mouth, the face: ora convertere, turn the eyes.

Osismi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Gaul (in Brittany).

Ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus, [obs-tendo], 3. v. a., (stretch towards), present, show, point out, make known, state, declare: copias (discover, unmask).

Ostentātiō, -onis, [ostenta- + tio], f., a showing, a display: ostentationis causa, for display; ostentationem comminuere, humble the pride.

Ostentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ostento-], i. v. a., display, exhibit.

Ottium, -i, [?], n., repose, inactivity, quiet (freedom from disturbance).

Övum, -i, [perh. avi- + um], (belonging to a bird?), n., an egg.

P

P., for Publius.

Pābulātiō, -onis, [pabolā- + tio], f., a foraging, getting fodder: pabulationis causa, for forage.

Pābulātor, -tōris, [pabolā- + tor], m., a forager.

Pābulor, -ārī, -ātus, [pabolū-], i. v. dep., forage, gather fodder.

Pābulum, -i, [pā (in pasco, feed) + bulum], n., fodder (for animals, including the stalk as well as the grain), green fodder.

Pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. of pacō.

Paciscor, -isci, pācōtus (also paciscō, -ere) [pacī (as st. of pāco, agree) + sco], 3. v. a. and dep., bargain. — Esp., pāctus, -a, -um, p. p., agreed upon, settled.

Pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pac-, in pax, peace], i. v. a., pacify, subdue. — Pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., peaceable, quiet, subject (as reduced to peace).

Pāctum, -i, [see pactus], n., (a thing agreed), an agreement, an arrangement. Hence, a method, a way (of doing anything): quo pacto, in what way, how.

Pāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of paciscor and pango.

Pādis, -i, [Celtic], m., the Po, the great river of Northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul).
Pāemāniī, -īrum, [Celtic], m. pl., people of the Belgians.
pae̱ne [ʔ], adv., almost, nearly.
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, [tpe̱enitō̱- (perh. p. p. of verb akin to punīō, punīsh)], 2. v. a., imper., it repents (one), one repents, one regrets.
pāgus, -i, [PAG (in pango) + us (with unc. conn. of ideas)], m., a district, a canton (cf. vicus, a smaller collection of dwellings).

calam [unc. case-form, cf. clam], adv., openly, publicly, without concealment.

calma, -ae, [Gr.], f., the palm (of the hand).

calās, -ūdis, [ʔ], f., a marsh.
calūster, -tris, -tre, [palud- + tris], adj., marshy, swampy.

candō, pandere, pandi, passus, [akin to pandus, bent], 3. v. a., spread out (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): passis manibus, with outstretched hands; passis capillis, with dishevelled hair.

pār, paris, [perh. akin to paro, pario (through the idea of barter or exchange)], adj., equal, alike, like: intervallum (the same). — Esp., equal in power, a match for.

parātus, -a, -um, p. p. of paro.

parē, [old case-form of parcus], adv., sparingly, frugally.

parē, par cere, peperci (parisi), parsūrus (parcitūrus), [akin to parcus (par + cūs), acquisitive, and so frugal?], 3. v. n., spare. — Esp., save alive: parendo, by economy, by frugality.

parēna, -entis, [PAR (in pario) + ens], c., a parent.

parentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [parent-], i. v. n., make a funereal offering (to deceased relatives, esp. parents). Hence, avenge (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pāreō, pārēre, pārūi, pāritūrus, [parō- (cf. opiparous)], 2. v. n., be prepared, appear, obey, submit to.

parō, parere, peperī, partus (paritūrus), [PAR, procure (perh. orig. by barter, cf. par)] 3. v. a., procure, acquire, secure.

Parīsīiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. Rheims, (Remi), Trèves (Treveri).

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [parō-, cf. opiparous, and pareō], i. v. a., procure, provide, prepare, get ready for (bellum used concretely for the means of war), arrange. — parātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ready, prepared: animo parato (with mind resolved), resolute, determined; paratus in armis, armed for war.

pars, partis, [PAR + tis (reduced), akin to portio, and perh. to par through idea of barter], f., (a dividing), a portion, a part, a share.

— Often of position or direction merely, side, direction, region: una ex parte, on one side; in utrum partem, in which side; ex utraque parte, on both sides; sinistra pars, the left flank; pars fluminis (bank); maior pars, the majority. — Fig.: qua ex parte, in which respect; omnibus partibus, in all respects; in utramque partem, in both respects, both ways, (of a plan); in
utramque partem, on both sides (of a discussion). — Esp. : tres partes, three quarters, (three parts out of four); ex parte, in part; ad inferiorem partem fluminis, down the river; ab inferiore parte fluminis (further down, etc.). — partim, acc. as adv., in part, partly, some . . . others.

partim, see pars.

partior, -iri, -itus, [parti-], 4. v. dep., divide: partitis temporibus, alternately.

partitus, -a, -um, p. p. of partior.

partus, -a, -um, p. p. of pario.

parum, [akin to parvus, perh. for parvum], adv., not very, not much, not sufficiently: parum diligenter, too carelessly, without sufficient care.

parvulus, -a, -um, [parvō- + lus], adj., small, slight, insignificant: ab parvulīs, from infancy.

parvus, -a, -um, [perh. for paurus, cf. paucus], adj., small, slight, little.

passim [acc. of passis (pad in pando, spread) + tis], adv., in all directions, all about.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of pando.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of patior.

passus, -sūs, [PAD (in pando) + tus], m., (a spreading of the legs), a stride (of both feet), a step, a pace (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): mille passuum, a Roman mile, five thousand feet.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [noun-st. akin to pateo + facio], 3. v. a., lay open, open.

patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of patefacio.

patefiō, pass. of patefacio.

pateō, -ēre, -ūi, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open. — patēns, -entis, p. as adj., open, exposed.

pater, -tris, [PA (in pasco ?) + ter], m., a father. — Plur., ancestors.

patienter, [patient- + ter], adv., patiently.

patientia, -ae, [patient- + ia], f., patience, endurance, forbearance (in refraining from fighting).

patior, pati, passus, [?], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure, allow, permit: vim tempesstatīs (endure, stand).

patrīus, -a, -um, [patri- + ius], adj., of a father, ancestral, of one's fathers.

patrōnus, -i, [fr. pater, for form cf. colonus + nus], m., a patron, a protector.

patruus, -i, [pat (e) r- + nus ?], m., an uncle (on the father's side, cf. avunculus, on the mother's).

paucītās, -tātis, [paucō- + tas], f., small number.

paucus, -a, -um, [PAU (cf. paulus and parvus) + cus], adj., almost always in plur., few, some few (but with implied only in a semi-negative sense): paucis (paucα) respondit (in a few words, briefly).

paulātim [paulō- (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of paulās (paulā + tis)], adv., little by little, a little at a time, gradually, few at a time.

paulisper [paulis (abl. plur. of paulus ?) per], adv., a little while.
paulō [abl. of paulus, little], as adv., a little, slightly.
paululum [acc. of paulus, dim. of paulus], as adv., a very little.
paulum [acc. of paulus (PAU+lus, cf. paucus)], as adv., a little, a short distance, somewhat.
pāx, pācis, [PAC (fāx), as st.], F. (a treaty?), peace, favor.
peccō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, [?], I. v. n., go wrong, commit a fault.
pectus, -oris, [perh. pect (as root of pecto, comb) + us, from the rounded shape of the breast, cf. pectinatus], N., the breast.
pecūnia, -ae, [† pecūnō- (pecū-(cattle) + nus, cf. Vacuna) + ia], F., money (originally cattle), wealth.
pecus, -oris, [PEC (tie?) + us], N., cattle (especially sheep and goats): pecore vivere (flesh of cattle).
— Pl., cattle, flocks and herds.
pedālis, -e, [ped- + alis], adj., of a foot (in thickness), a foot thick.
pedes, -itis, [ped- (as if pedi) + ties (reduced)], C., a footman, a foot-soldier. — Collectively, the infantry.
pedester, -tris, -tre, [pedit- + tris], adj., of infantry, of persons on foot: itinera (journeys on foot, marches, land routes); proelium (on land); copiae (the foot, the infantry).
peditātus, -tūs, [pedit- + atus, cf. consulatus], M., foot, infantry.
Pediūs, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Pediūs, a nephew of Caesar and a legatus under him in Gaul. He sided with Augustus, and was afterwards made consul by Augustus’s patronage.
pēior, see malus.
pēius, see male.
pellis, -is, [?], F., a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal): sub pellibus, in tents, i.e. in the field.
pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus, [?], 3. v. a., strike, beat, drive, defeat, repulse, rout.
pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnsus, [?], 3. v. a., hang, weigh, weigh out. Hence (since money was earlier weighed, not counted), pay, pay out.
— Esp. with words of punishment, pay (a penalty), suffer (punishment, cf. dare and capere).
penes [prob. acc. of st. in -os akin to penitus], prep. with acc., in the power of.
penitus [st. akin to penes, penus, etc. + itus, cf. antiquitus], adv., far within, deeply, entirely, utterly: penitus ad extremos finis (clear to, all the way to).
1. per [unc. case-form], adv. (in composition) and prep. w. acc., through, along, over, among. — Fig., through, by means of (cf. ab, by, directly), by the agency of. — Often accompanied by the idea of hindrance: per anni tempus potuit, the time of the year would allow; per te licere, you do not prevent, you allow; per actatem non poterant (on account of). — Often in adv. expressions: per fidem, in good faith, in reference to a deception on the other side; per concilium, in council; per insidias, treacherously; per cruciatum, with torture; per vim, forcibly; locus ipse per se (in and of itself).
2. per [prob. a different case of
perfēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-*duco.

perondinu̇s, -a, -um, [perendie (†peren-die, cf. postridie) + inus], adj., (of the day beyond, cf. per), of day after to-morrow: perendino die, day after to-morrow, in two days.

perse̱, -fre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, [1. per-se, ge], irr. v. n., *perish, be killed (in battle).

peresquitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [1. per-equito, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., ride over (or around).

perexiguus, -a, -um, [2. per-exiguus], adj., very small.

perfacili̇s, -e, [2. per-facili̇s], adj., very easy.

perfec̊tus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-ficio.

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [1. per-fervo], irr. v. a., carry through (or over) : opinionem (spread among); consilium (carry over); famam (bring). — Also, bear through (to the end), endure, suffer, submit to.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [1. per-facio, make], 3. v. a., accomplish, complete, finish, make (complete). — With ut (uti), succeed (in doing or having done), cause to.

perfida, -ae, [perfīdō- + ia], F., perfidy, treachery, faithlessness.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus, [1. per-frango], 3. v. a., break through.

perfuga, -ae, [per-*fuga (fug + a, cf. scriba)], M., a refugee, a fugitive, a deserter.

perfugīō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p., [1. per-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, flee (to a place), escape to.

same st. as 1. per], adv. in comp., very, exceedingly, completely.

perfēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perago.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus, [1. per-ago], 3. v. a., conduct through, finish, accomplish: consilium (hold to the end); conventus (finish holding).

perangustus, -a, -um, [2. per-angustus], adj., very narrow.

perceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of percipio.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [1. per-capio], 3. v. a., take in (completely), learn, acquire, hear. — Esp. of harvests, gather. Hence, fig., reap: fructus victoriae.

percontātiō, -ōnis, [percontā- (inquire) + tio], F., inquiry, inquiries (though sing. in Latin).

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -currī, -cursus, [1. per-curro], 3. v. n. and a., run along.

percussus, -a,-um, p. p. of percūtiō.

percūtiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [1. per-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., hit, strike, run through.

perdisco, -discere, -didicī, no p. p., [1. per-diSCO], 3. v. a., learn thoroughly, get by heart.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdo.

perdo, perdere, perdidi, perditus, [1. per-do], 3. v. a., destroy (cf. intericio), ruin. — Perditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ruined, desperate, abandoned.

perdīciō, -dicere, -dūxi, -ductus, [1. per-duco], 3. v. a., lead through, lead along, bring over, carry along, make (fossam), march (legionem). — Fig., prolong, win over, bring: rem ad extremum casum (reduce).
perfugium, -i, [I. per-fugium, cf. perfugio], N., a place of refuge, refuge.

pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus (?), [I. per-rego, keep straight], 3. v. n., (keep one’s direction?), keep on, continue to advance, advance.

periclitōr, -āri, -ātus, [†periclitōr-(as if p. p. of periculor, cf. periculum)], i. v. dep., try, make a trial, be exposed, be put in peril.

pericūlōsus, -a, -um, [poricūlō-+ osus], adj., dangerous.

periculum (-clum), -i, [†peri- (cf. experior, try) + culum], N., a trial, an attempt. Hence, peril, danger, risk.

perītus, -a, -um, [†peri- (cf. experior, try) + tus], p. p. as adj., (tried), experienced, skilled, skilful.

perīlātos, -a, -um, p. p. of perfero.

perīlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perlegō.

perlegō, -legere, -lägi, -läctus, [I. per-legō], 3. v. a., read through, read (a letter aloud).

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus, [I. per-ino], 3. v. a., wash all over. — Pass. (as reflex.), bathe.

permagnus, -a, -um, [2. permagnus], adj., very great, very large.

permaneō, -manere, -mānī, mānāsūrus, [I. per-mano], 2. v. n., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist: in eadem libertate (continue to live, etc.).

permiscēdo, -miscēre, -miscui, -mixtus (-mistus) [2. per-misceo], 2. v. a., mix (thoroughly), mingle.

permissaus, -a, -um, p. p. of permitto.

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [I. per-mitto], 3. v. a., (give over), grant, allow, give up, entrust: fortunes (trust); summam imperi (place in the hands of, etc.); suffragiiis rem (leave the matter to, etc.).

permixtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permisceo.

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permoveo.

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, [I. per-moveo], 2. v. a., move (thoroughly), influence, affect.— permōtus, -a, -um, p. p., much affected, much influenced, overcome.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsus, [I. per-mulceo], 2. v. a., smooth over. Hence, soothe, pacify.

permiciēs, -ēs, [?, akin to nēx, death], F., destruction, ruin.

perpaucus, -a, -um, [2. perpaucus], adj.— Plur., very few, but very few, only a very few.

perpendiculum, -i, [perpendi- (st. of perpendo, hang down) + culum], N., a plumb line: ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly.

perpetior, -peti, -pessus, [I. per-patior], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure.

perpetuus, -a, -um, [I. per-petuus (pet (aim) + vus)], adj., (keeping on through), continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent: vita (whole); paludes (continuous); in perpetuum, forever, permanently. — Abl. as adv., perpetuō, forever, constantly, continually.

perquirō, -quirere, -quisīvi, -quīsītus, [I. per-quaero], 3. v. a., search for, inquire about.
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpl, -ruptus, [I. per-rumpo]. 3. v. a. and n., break through, force one’s way through, break, force a passage.

perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of perrumpo.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [I. per-scribo]. 3. v. a., write out (in full).

persequor, -sequi, -secutus, [I. persequor]. 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue, attack: mortem, inuarias (avenge).

persevěrō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [perseverō, very strict]. 1. v. n., persist.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solvūs, [2. per-solve]. 3. v. a., pay (fully). — Esp. (cf. pendo) of penalties, pay, suffer (punishment).

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of perspicio.

perspicicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus, [I. per-pectio]. 3. v. a., see through, see, inspect, examine. — Also, see thoroughly. — Fig., see clearly, see, understand, learn, observe, find, discover.


perterrēdō, -terrēre, -terrui, -terrītus, [I. per-terreio]. 2. v. a., terrify, alarm: perterritus equitatus (put in a panic); timore perterritus, struck with terror; quos perterritos (panic-stricken, flying in terror).

pertinācia, -ae, [pertinac- + ia], F., obstinacy, stubbornness.

pertinea, -tinēre, -tinui, no p. p., [I. per-teneo]. 2. v. n., (hold a course towards), tend, extend. — Fig., have to do with, tend: cedem illo ut, etc. (have the same purpose, look in the same direction); res ad plures pertinet (more are implicated in, etc.).

pertuli, see perferro.

perturbātiō, -onis, perturbā+-tio], F., disturbance, alarm, panic, demoralization.

perturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perturbo.

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [I. perturbō, disturb]. 1. v. a., disturb, throw into confusion, confuse, throw into disorder, alarm, terrify.

pervāgor, -āri, -ātus, [I. pervagor]. 1. v. dep., roam about, scatter.

pervenīō, -venire, -vēni, -venitus, [I. per-venio]. 4. v. n., (come through to), arrive at, get as far as, reach, come. — Fig., arrive: ad hunc locum (come to this point); pars (of property, come, fall).

perventus, -a, -um, p. p. of pervenio.

pēs, pedis, [PAD, tread, as st.], M., the foot. — Also, as a measure, a foot. — Esp.: pedem referre, draw back, give way; pedibus proeliari (on foot); ad pedes desilire (to the ground, from on horseback, etc.); pedibus aditus, approach by land.

petō, petere, petitīv, petitus, [PAT]. 3. v. a. and n., (fall?, fly?), aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to get, go to. Hence, ask, request,
look for, get: petentibus Haeduís (at the request of, etc.); fugam (take to).

Petrocorii, -órum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe on the Garonne (Perigord).

Petroñius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Marcus Petroñius, a centurion in Cæsar’s army.

Petrosidius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Lucius Petrosidius, a standard-bearer in Cæsar’s army.

phalanx, -angis, [Gr. φάλανξ], f., a phalanx (properly an arrangement of troops in a solid mass from eight to twenty-four deep, but applied also to other bodies of troops), an array.

Pictones (Pect-), -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Poitou).

pietás, -tátis, [pīō, dutiful, + tās], f., filial affection, affection (for the gods or one’s country, etc.), patriotism.

pilum, -i, [?], n., a pestle. — Also, a javelin (the peculiar weapon of the Roman legion, with a heavy wooden shaft about 4 ft. long, and an iron head on a long iron shank, making a missile more than 6 ft. long): pilum murale, a heavier missile of the same kind for use in siege works.

pilus, -i, [pilum], m., a century (of soldiers, a name applied to indicate the rank of centurions, see centurio). — Also, a centurion (of a particular rank). — Phrases: primi pilí centurio (of the first century or rank); primum pilum duxerat, had commanded in the first century of the first cohort, been first centurion.

pinna, -ae, [= penna, feather (PET (fly) + na)], f., an artificial parapet (of osier or the like run along the top of a wall).

Pirústae, -ārum, [?], m. plur., a tribe of Illyria.

piscis, -is, [?], m., a fish. — Collectively, fish.

Pisō, -ōnis, [pīō (pease) + o], m., (a man with a wart like a pea?, cf. Cicero), a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii b.c. 107, and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. Lucius Calpurnius Piso Case·sonius, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar’s wife. — 3. Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala in b.c. 61. — 4. Piso, an Aquitanian (probably enfranchised by one of the above named).

pix, picis, [?], f., pitch.

placeō, -ère, -uī, -itus, [adcej (cf. placo, and placidus)], 2. v. n., please. — Esp. in third person, it pleases (one), one likes, one determines, one decides.

placidē [old case-form of placidus, quiet], adv., quietly, calmly.

plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [st. akin to placo], 1. v. a., pacify, appease.

Plancus, -i, [perh. akin to planus], m. (Flat-foot), a Roman family name. — See Munatius.

plānē [old case-form of planus], adv., flatly, clearly, entirely.

plānitiēs, -ēi, [planē + tia, cf. -tia], f., a plain.

plānus, -a, -um, [unc. root + nus], adj., flat, level, even: carinae planiores (less deep, less rounding).
plēba (plēbēs), is (-ē), [PLE (in plenus) + unc. term. (cf. turba)], v., the populace, the multitude, the common people.

plēnē [old case-form of plenus], adv., fully, entirely, completely.

plēnus, -a, -um, [PLE (in pleo, fill) + nus], adj., full: luna; legio.

plērumque, see plerusque.

plerusque, -aque, -unque, [PLE (in pleo, fill) + rūs-que (cf. -pletus, plenus)], adj. only in plur., most of, very many. — Acc. sing. as adv., plērumque, generally, usually, for the most part, very often.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nervii.

plumbum, -i, [?], n., lead. — plumbum album, tin.

plūrimus, see multus.

plūs, [akin to pleo, fill], see multus.

pluteus, -i, [?], m., a mantelet, a cover (movable, for defence). — Also, a bulwark, a defence, a breastwork.

pōculum, -i, [root (or st.) PO- (in potus, drink) + culum], n., a drinking-cup.

poena, -ae, [perh. † podi- (PU) + na (cf. punio, punish)], v., a penalty. Hence, a punishment (see persolvo, repeto).

pollex, -icis, [?], m., the thumb (with or without digitus).

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus, [† por- for pro (cf. portendo) -līceor, bid], 2. v. dep., offer, promise (voluntarily): liberaliter (made liberal offers).

pollicitātiō, -onis, [pollicitā- + tio], v., an offer, a promise.
porrectus, -a, -um, p. p. of porrigo.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, rēctus, [†por- (cf. pollicere), -rego], 3. v. a., stretch forth: porrecta loca pertin- tent (stretch out in extent).

porrō [?, akin to †por (cf. porri- go)], adv., furthermore, further, then (in narration).

porta, -ae, [POR (go through) + ta], F., (way of traffic?), a gate.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [porta-?], i. v. a., carry (perh. orig. by way of traffic), bring, convey.

portōrium, -i, [?, porta (reduced) + orium (N. of -orius), perh. orig. †portor + ius], N., (gate-money? or carrier’s money?), a duty (an imp- post), a toll.

portus, -tūs, [POR (cf. porta) + tus], M., (a place of access), a harbor, a haven, a port.

poscō, poscere, poposci, no p. p., [perh. akin to prex, prayer], 3 v. a., demand (with some idea of claim, stronger than peto, weaker than flagito), require, claim.

positus, -a, -um, p. p. of pono.

possessō, -ōnis, [†por-†sessio (cf. obsessio)], F., possession, occupation —Concretely (as in Eng.), possessions, lands (possessed).

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [†por-sedeo], 2 v. a., (settle farther on?), occupy (in a military sense), possess (lands, of a people), hold possession of.

possum, posse, potui, [pote- (for potis) -sum], irr. v. n., be able, can, etc.: plurimum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence; tautum potest, has so much weight, power, influence; largiter posse, have great influence; multitudo posse, be strong in numbers; equitātu nihil posse, have no strength in cavalry; quidquid possunt, whatever power they have; quid virtute possent, what they could do by valor; fieri posse, be possible; ut spatum intercedere possent (might intervene); quam maximum potest, the greatest possible.

post [?, prob. abl. of st. akin to postis (cf. ante, antes, rows, and antae, pilasters)], adv. and prep. with acc., behind, after: post diem tertium, three days after; post se, in their rear; post hunc, next to him.

postea [post ea], adv., afterwards.

posteaquam [postea quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after (only with clause).

posterus, -a, -um, [post- (or st. akin) + terus (orig. compar.)], adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day. Plur. as noun, posterity. — postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last. — postrēmō, abl., lastly, finally.

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [post-pōno], 3. v. a., place behind, postpone: omnibus rebus post- positis, disregarding everything else.

postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of postpono.

postquam, [post quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after.

postrēmō, see posterus.

postrēmus, see posterus.

postridē [†posteri- (loc. of pos-
postulatum, -i, [N. p. p. of postulo], N., a demand, a requirement, a request, a claim.

postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], i. v. a., claim (with idea of right, less urgent than posco), ask, request, require: tempus anni (require, make necessary).

potēns, -entis, [p. of possum as adj.], adj., powerful: homo (influential); potentiores, men of influence.

potentātus, -tūs, [potent- + atus, cf. consulatus], m., the chief power, supremacy.

potentia, -ae, [potent- + ia], f., power (political influence), authority (not official or legal).

potestās, -tātis, [potent- + tas], f., power (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), power (generally), control, ability, opportunity, chance: sui potestatem facere, give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them; se potestati alicuius permittere (surrender, etc.); consistendi potestas erat nulli (chance, possibility); discendendi potestatem facere (give permission, etc.); facta potestate, having obtained permission; imperium aut potestas, military or civil power; deorum vis ac potestas, the power and dominion of the gods.

potior, potīrī, potitus, [poti-, cf. potis, able], 4 v. dep., become master of, possess one's self of, get the control of: imperio (secure); castris (capture).

potior, -us, -ōris, (compar. of potis), adj., preferable. — potius, acc as adv., rather, preferably.

potitus, -a, -um, p. p. of potior.

praē [unc. case-form of same st. as pro], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., before, in comparison with. — Esp. with words implying hindrance, for, on account of (some obstacle). — In comp., before others, very, before, at the head of.

praecātus, -a, -um, [praec-acutus (p. p. of acuo)], p. p. as adj., sharpened to a point, pointed.

praebō, praebère, praebui, praebitus, [praeb-habeo], 2 v. a., (hold before one), offer, present, furnish: munimenta (furnish, and so afford, make).

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvi, -cautus, [praec-caveo], 2. v. n., take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [praec-cedo], 3. v. a., go before. — Fig., excel, surpass.

praecēps, -ēpitis, [praec-caput], adj., headlong, in haste: locus praecēps, a steep incline.

praecēptum, -i, [p. p. of praecepio], N., an instruction, an order.

praecēptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praecepio.

praecēpiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [praec-capio], 3. v. a., take beforehand, anticipate. — Also, order, give instructions.

praecēpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [praec-cept-], i. v. a., throw headlong: se (plunge headlong).

praecipnē [old case-form of praecipius], adv., especially.
praecipitus, -a, -um, [praecapitus (cap + vus)], adj., (taking the first place), special.

praecüdö, -clüdere, -clüsi, -clüsus, [praec-clauo], 3. v. a., (close in front of some one or something), shut off, barricade.

praecö, -önis, [?], m., a herald.

Praecönius, -i, [praecen- + inus], m., a Roman family name. — See Valerius.

praecurū, -currere, -currei (currī), -cursūrus, [praec-curru], 3. v. n., run on before, hasten on before, hasten in advance, hurry on before: equites (ride on in advance); celeritate (get the start of, etc.).

praedia, -ae, [prob. praexthida (root of -hendo, seise, + a)], F., booty, prey, plunder.

praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†praedēcō- (or similar st. from praem with dicō)], 1. v. a. and n., make known (before one), proclaim, assert, describe, boast, vaunt one’s self.

praedor, -āri, -ātus, [praedā], 1. v. dep., plunder, take booty.

praedūcō, -ducere, -ducē, -ductus, [praed-ducō], 3. v. a., lead (etc.), before: murum (carry out, draw round).

praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeficio. — As noun, see praeficio.

praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [praefero], irr. v. a., place before, esteem above, prefer to (with quam): see alciui (show one’s self better than).

praeficiō, -ficere, -ficē, -fectus, [praefacō], 3. v. a., put before, place in command of, set over. — praefectus, p. p. as noun, a cap-
tain (esp. of cavalry), a commander, an officer.

praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [praefigo], 3. v. a., fix in front, set on the edge (of something).

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of praefigo.

praemetus, -metuere, no perf., no p. p., [praemetuo], 3. v. a. and n., fear beforehand, be anxious.

praemittō, -mittere, -missi, -missus, [praemitto], 3. v. a., send forward, send on, send ahead.

praemium, -i, [praetemium (em, in emo, busy, + ium)], (taken before the general distribution or disposal of booty?), N., a reward, a prize, distinction (as a reward or prize): magno praemio remunerari (a great price).

praecoccupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [praec-occupo], 1. v. a., take in opposition or beforehand: timor animos (take complete possession of, to the exclusion of everything else); vias (close against one), preoccupy.

praepo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [praepo], 1. v. a., wish in preference, choose rather, prefer.

praeparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prae-paro], 1. v. a., prepare beforehand.

praepōnō, -ponere, -posui, -positus, [praepono], 3. v. a., put in command, set over.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rupī, -ruptus, [praerumpo], 3. v. a., break off (at the end or in front). — praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., precipitous.

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praerumpo.

praesaepiō (-sēp), -saepire, -saepsi,
praesaeptus

-aeptus, [pra-aeptio], 4. v. a., 
hedge in, wall off.

praesaeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of 
praesaeptio.

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, 
-scriptus, [praes-scribo], 3. v. a., 
(write down beforehand), prescribe, 
order, direct, give directions.

praescriptum, -i, [N. p. p. of 
praescribo], N., an order, orders.

praescriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of 
praescribo.

praesēns, -entis, p. of praesum.

praesentia, -ae, [praesent- + ia], 
*. presence, the present moment: in 
praesentia, for the moment, at the 
moment.

praesentīō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēn-
sus, [praes-sentio], 4. v. a., see before-
hand, find out in time, find out (be-
forehand).

praesertim [as if acc. of tpraes-
sertis (ser, in sero (join) + tia)], 
adv., especially, particularly.

praesidiō, -i, [praes-idiōm (sed 
+ ium), cf. obseidiōm], N., (a sit-
ting down before), a guard, a garri-
son, a force (detached for occupation 
or guard): intra praesidia, within the 
lines. — Fig., protection, assistance, 
support: praesidio litterarum 
(with the assistance of, etc.); in fuga 
praesidium ponere, seek safety in 
flight.

praestō [?, perh. "praesto," I am 
here (as if quoted)], adv., on hand, 
ready, waiting for, in attendance 
upon: praesto esse, be waiting for, 
meet.

praestō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātus 
(stitus), [praes-stō], I. v. a. and n., 
stand before, be at the head, excel, be 
superior: praestat, it is better. — 
Also, causatively (bring before), fur-
nish, display: officium (discharge, 
perform); stabilitem (afford, pos-
sess); idem (keep, perform one’s 
duty).

praesum, -esse, -fui, [praes-sum]. 
irr. v. n., be in front, be at the head 
of, be in command: magistratum 
(hold) — praesēns, -entis, p., present, 
immediate: pluribus praesentibus, 
in the presence of many; praesens 
adesse, be present in person.

praeter [compar. of prae (cf. 
inter)], adv. and prep. with acc., 
along by, past, beyond. — Fig., ex-
cept, beside, contrary to.

praeterēā [praeter-ēa (abl.) ?]. 
adv., furthermore, besides: si nemo 
praeterēa, if no one else.

praeterēō, -ēre, -ērī, -ētus, [praeter-
ō], irr. v. a. and n., go by, pass by, 
pass over. — praeteritus, -a, -um, 
p. p. as adj., past. — Esp. N. plur., 
praeterita, the past (cf. "bygones").

praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of pra-
tereō.

praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, 
-missus, [praeter-mitto], 3. v. a., let 
go by, let slip, omit, neglect.

praeterquam [praeter-quam], con-
junctive adv., except, besides.

praetor, -tōris, [praet-ītor, (1, go 
+ tor)], M., (a leader), a commander. 
— Esp., a praetor, one of a class of 
magistrates at Rome. In early times 
two had judicial powers and the 
others regular commands abroad. 
Later all during their year of office 
had judicial powers, but like the
praetórius

consuls (who were originally called prætors) they had a year abroad as propraetors: legatus pro praetore (lieutenant in command, acting as a praetor).

praetórius, -a, -um, [praetor- + ius], adj., of a praetor (in all its senses); praetoria cohors, the body guard, of a commander (see praetor).

praeeurō, -üre, -üssi, -üstus, [praeeuro], 3. v. a., burn at the end (in front); praestae sudes (burnt at the point, to harden them).

praeeustus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeuro.

praeevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [praeeverto, turn], 3. v. a., anticipate, forestall, attend to first.

praevus, -a, -um, [?], adj., crooked.

— Fig., wrong, vicious.


prendō (prehendo), prendere, prendi, prēnus, [praee+endo], 3. v. a., seize (against some one else?), seize (generally), take, grasp.

pretium, -i, [?], N., a price, cost, value.

† prex, precis (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), [?], P., a prayer, an entreaty, an imprecation.

pridie [loc. of st. of pro (praee?) -die, cf. postridie], adv., the day before.

primum [abl. of primus], adv., at first (opposed to afterwards, cf. primum).

primum [acc. of primus], adv., first (in order of incidents, opposed to next, etc.), in the first place: cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.

primus, -a, -um, see prior.

princeps, -ipis, [primi- (reduced) -cep (CAP as st.)], adj., (taking the lead), first, chief, foremost: principes belli inferendi (leaders in, etc.); locus (chief, highest); ea princeps persolvit (was the first to). — Often as noun, leading man, leader, chief man, chief: legationis (head).

principátus, -tus, [principe- (st), cf. consulátus], M., foremost position, first place, highest place, the lead (in power and influence among states), leadership.

prior, -us, -oris, [compar. of st. of pro], adj., former, before: priores, those in front; non priores inferre (not the first to, etc.). — prius, N. as adv., before (see also priusquam).

primum, -a, -um, superl., first: agmen (front); primos civitates (the best men); a prima obsidione, from the beginning of the siege: in primis, especially. — See primo and primum.

pristinus, -a, -um, [pristinus, cf. diutinus], adj., (of former times), old, former: pristinus dies, the day before.

prius, see prior.

priusquam [prius-quam], conj. adv., earlier than, before. Often separated.

privátim [as if acc. of † priva-
tis (privā- + tis), adv., privately, as private persons (opp. to magistratus): de suis privatim rebus (their own private affairs); plus posse privatim (in their own name, opposed to official action).

privātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of privo, deprive], adj., (destitute of official character), private, personal.

prō [for prod, abl. of st. akin to prae, prior, etc.], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of: nihil pro sane, nothing prudent; pro explorato, ascertained, as certain. — Also, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, according to, considering, in return for, for. — In comp., before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward).

probātus, -a, -um, p. p. of probō.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probō-], i. v. a., (make good, find good), approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with, favor (a plan), adopt (a measure).

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., go forward, advance, proceed: longius (go to a distance).

Procilius, -i, [Procūlō- + lus], M., a Roman family name. — See Valerius.

prōclinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of proclinō.

prōclinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro-clīne], i. v. a., (bend forward), throw down: res proclinata (falling, ruined).

prōcōnsul, -ulis, [pro-consul, on account of the phrase pro consul], M., a proconsul, an ex-consul (during his term of service abroad).

procūl [?, f. pro-cūl, “off” (pro + cus) + lus (reduced, cf. simul)], adv., at a distance (not necessarily great), at some distance, afar, from afar.

prōcumbē, -cumbere, -cubū, no p. p., [pro-cumbo, lie], 3. v. n., fall (forward), fall (generally), sink down, lie down (for rest), become lodged (of grain). — Less exactly, incline, slope, lean.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [procūro], i. v. a., care for, have charge of, attend to.

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, (-curri), -cursūrus, [pro-curro], 3. v. n., run forward, charge, rush out.

prōdeō, -ire, -ivi (-īi), -itus, [prod (see pro) -eo], irr. v. n., go forth, come forth, come out, go forward: longius (go to any distance).

prōdesse, see prōsum.

prōditīō, -ōnis, [pro-ūditio, cf. prodo], r., (a giving away), treason, treachery.

prōditor, -tōris, [pro-dator (cf. prodo)], M., a traitor, a betrayer.

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of prodo.

prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [pro-do], 3. v. a., (give forward), give forth, publish, betray (give away), transmit, hand down: memoriam (preserve, by handing down to posterity); memoria proditum, told in tradition, handed down.

prōdučō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, [pro-duco], 3. v. a., lead forth, lead out, bring out (lumina), draw up (troops). — Fig., protract, prolong.
pro ductus, -a, -um, p. p. of produco.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, [proelīō-], i. v. dep., fight (in war).

proelium, -ī, [?], n., a battle (a single encounter; great or small), a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish: commit-
torie (engage, join battle, risk a bat-
tle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight).

profectio, -ōnis, [pro-factio (cf. proficiscor)], r., a setting out, a de-
parture, retreat (the special idea coming from the context), starting, evacuation.

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
ficio.

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of prof-
iciscor.

prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [prō-
ferō], irr. v. a., bring forth, bring out.

proficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectūrus, [pro-
faciō], 3. v. n., (make way forward), advance (cf. proficiscor).
— Fig., gain advantage (“get on”), gain (much or little), accomplish (something): satis ad laudem pro-
fectum est, enough has been done for glory; ad pacem parum profi-
ci, not much was doing towards peace; plus multitudo telorum profi-
cere (have the advantage in).

proficiscor, -ficiscī, -fectus, [pro-
fftaciscor (cf. proficio)], 3. v. dep., (make way forward).— Esp., start, leave, depart, set out, withdraw, march out, go out, come out, sail out; quo proficiscimus, whether we are going; unde erant profecti, whence

they had come; ad proficiendum pertinere (to a journey, etc.).

profiteor, -sītēri, -sessus, [pro-
fateor, confess], 2. v. dep., declare publicly: se (offer one’s self, volun-
teer as, declare one’s self).

proficītus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
figo.

prōfigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†prō-
figō- (pro-figus, FLIG + us)], 1. v. a., (dash to the ground).— Esp., put to rout, rout.


profugīō, - fugere, -fugi, -fugītūrus, [pro-fugio], 3. v. n., flee forth, flee, escape, make one’s escape.

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [pro-(g)natus], p. p. as adj., sprung from: prophesied, descendant of.

prōgredior, -fredī, -gressus, [pro-
gradiō, step, go], 3. v. dep., go forward, march forward, march out, come out. Also, fig., proceed, go: amentia longius (go).

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
gredior.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuí, -hibitus, [pro-
habeō], 2. v. a., hold off, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid.— Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), protect: alicuem ab omni militum injuria (keeping one protected from the assailant).

prohibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-
hibeo.

prōciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [pro-
ficio], 3. v. a., throw forward, throw away, cast (down, cf. pro), abandon: aquilam intra vallum (throw over);
proinde, casting themselves; se ex navi (leap).

proinde [pro-inde], adv., (from there forward), therefore, hence.

prōminēns, -entis, p. of prōmineo.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no p. p., [prō-mineo (cf. minor, project)], 2. v. n., lean forward, lean over.

prōmiscuē [old case-form of prōmiscuus], adv., in common.

prōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōmitto.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [prō-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go forward), let grow (of the hair): prōmissae capillo sunt, they wear long hair.

prōmōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōmoveo.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, [prō-moveo], 2. v. a., move forward, advance, push forward.

prōmptus, -a, -um, [p. p. of prōmo, bring forth], as adj., (taken out of the store ready for distribution), ready, quick, active.

prōmunturium, (-mon-), -i, [akin to prōmineo], N., a headland.

prōnē [old case-form of prōnus, leaning], adv., with a slope.

prōnuntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prōnuntio], 1. v. a., (publish forth), make known, communicate, declare, give orders, make proclamation.

prope [?], akin to pro, cf. procul and proximus], adv. and prep. with acc., near. — Fig., almost, nearly. — Compar., prōpius, nearer: prōpius tumulum (as prep.). — Superl., prōsimē, lately, last.

prōpellō, -pelle, -puli, -pulsus, [pro-pello], 3. v. a., drive away (cf. pro), repulse, rout, dislodge, force back (changing the point of view).

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro-perō, quick], 1. v. a. and n., hasten, be in haste, make haste.

propinquītās, -tātis, [propinquō-tas], F., vicinity, a being near, a position near: propinquitates fluminum (positions near, etc.). — Esp., nearness in blood, relationship, a relation (by blood).

propinquus, -a, -um, [st. akin to prope (or case-form) + cus], adj., near at hand, near. — Esp. by blood, related. — As noun in plur., relatives.


prōpōneō, -pōne, -posuī, -positus, [pro-pono], 3. v. a., place before, set before, lay before: vexillum (hang out). — Less exactly, offer, put in the way, present (difficulty), make known, state, represent.

prōpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōpono.

proprius, -a, -um, [?; akin to prope?], adj., of one's own: fines (particular); hoc proprium virtutis (a peculiar property, a mark).

propter [prope + ter, cf. aliter, .praeter], adv. and prep. with acc., near by. — Also, on account of (cf. "all along of ").
properea [propter- ea (prob. abl. or instr. of is)], adv., on this account. — With quod, because, inasmuch as.

propungator, -tiris, [propugnator (cf. propugno)], m., a defender.

propungō, -äre, -āvi, -āturus, [propugno], i. v. n., (rush forward to fight, or fight in front), rush out (fighting), discharge missiles (ex silvis).

propulseō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [propulseo (cf. propello)], i. v. a., repel, keep off, drive off, defend one's self against.

prōra, -ae, [Gr.], v., the prow (of a ship).

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -ruitus, [propuesto], 3. v. a., dash down, overthrow, demolish.

prōrutus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōruo.

prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōsequor.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [prōsequor], 3. v. dep., pursue, follow (on one's way), escort. — Fig. (from escorting), address, take leave of one (with some kind of attention).

prōspectus, -tūs, [prospectus (cf. spsectus)], m., outlook, view: in prospectu, in sight; prospectu tenebris adempto, the view cut off by the darkness.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectus, [prospicium], 3. v. a., look forward, look out. — Fig., provide for, take care, look out.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvi, -stātus, [prosterno], 3. v. a., dash to the ground, overthrow (lit. and fig.).

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, [proā-sum], irr. v. n., be for the advantage of, benefit: quod alīcui prodest, by which one profits.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, [pro-tego], 3. v. a., (cover in front), protect, cover.

prōtereo, -terēre, -terrui, -territus, [pro-tereo], 2. v. a., frighten away, drive away in fright.

prōteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōtereo.

prōtinus (-tēnus), [pro-tenus, as far as], adv., forward, straight on. Hence, straightway, forthwith, at once, instantly (keeping right on).

prōturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōturbō.

prōturbō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [pro-turbō, disturbāō], 3. v. a., drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge.

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōvehō.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [pro-vehō], 3. v. a., carry forward.

— In pass., be carried forth, sail out, set sail: leni Africō pro vectus (sail with, be driven by).

prōvenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [pro-venire], 4. v. n., come forward. — Esp. of fruits, come up, grow.

prōventus, -tūs, [pro-ventus, cf. eventus and provenio], m., an issue (a coming forth), success, a result.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, [pro-video], 2. v. a., foresee, see beforehand, take care, make provision, provide, arrange beforehand: satis est providum, sufficient provision has been made.

prōvincia, -ae, [provincē- (vinc-].
as root of vinco (conquer) + us + ia], F., (office of one extending the frontier by conquest in the field), office (of a commander or governor), a province (in general), a function. — Transf., a province (governed by a Roman magistrate). — Esp., The Province (of Gaul); so with nostra, ulterior, citerior (the province, as opposed to the unconquered parts of Gaul).

prōvinctialis, -e, [provincia- + lis], adj., of a province. — Esp., of the province (of Gaul).

provisus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro- video.

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [provolō], i. v. n., fly forth. — Less exactly, rush forth, rush out, fly out (of cavalry, etc.).

proximē, see prope.

proximus, see proprius.

prūdentia, -ae, [prudent-, foreseeing, + ia], F., foresight, discretion.

Ptiānii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Aquitania.

pūbēs (pūber), -ēris, [?, prob. same root as puer], adj., adult. — Plur. as noun, adults, grown men, young men of age.

pūbicus [old case-form of publicus], adv., publicly, in the name of the state, as a state, on behalf of the state: publice iurare (for the people, making the oath bind them).

pūbicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [publicō-], i. v. a., (make belong to the people), confiscate.

pūbicus, -a, -um, [pulēs- + cus], adj., of the people (as a state), of the state, public: consilium (a state measure, a public measure, action by the state, action by general consent); res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the interests of state, public business; relatis in publicum cornibus (publicly displayed); mulieres in publicum procurere (abroad into the streets).

Pūblius, -ī, [prob. populō + us, cf. publicus], m., a Roman prænome- men.

puđet, pudēre, puduit (puditum est), [?], 2. v. impers., (it shame); one is ashamed (translating the accusative as subject).

pudor, -ōris, [PUD (in pudet) + or], m., shame, a sense of shame, a sense of honor.

puer, -ī, [?], m., a boy. — Plur., children (of either sex); a pueris, from childhood.

puerīlis, -e, [puerō- (reduced) + lis], adj., of a child: aetas (of childhood).

pūgna, -ae, [PUG (in pugno) + na], F., a fight (less formal than proelium): ad pugnam, for fighting; genus pugnae (of fighting).

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pugna-], i. v. n., fight, engage. — Often imper. in pass., pugnatum est, etc., an engagement took place, they fought, the fighting continued. — Esp.: pug- nandii potestatem fecit, offered battle; pugnantes, those engaged.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, [?], adj., beautiful, handsome, fine. — Fig., fine, noble, splendid.

Pullō, -ōnis, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Titus Pullō, a centurion in Cæsar’s army.
pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pello.
pulsus, -ūs, [PEL (in pello) + tus], M., a stroke, a beat: pulsu re-
monum praestare (the working, etc.).
pulvis, -eris, [?], M., dust.
puppis, -is, [?], F., the stern.
pūrgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of pur-
go.
pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tpurīgō-
(purō + tagus, cf. ago)], I. v. a.,
clean, clear. — Fig., excuse, exoner-
ate, free from suspicion, exculpate.
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [putō- (st.
of putus, clean)], I. v. a., clean up,
clear up. — Esp.: rationes (clear up
accounts). Hence alone, reckon,
think, suppose.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, [?], adj., only
with montes, the Pyrenees moun-
tains, between France and Spain.

Q

Quā [abl. or instr. (?) of qui], rel.
adv., by which (way), where.
quadragēnī, -ae, -a, [quadraginta
(reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj.,
forty each, forty (each often omitted
in Eng.).
quadragintā [akin to quattuor],
indecl. num. adj., forty.
quadringenti, -ae, -a, [akin to
quattuor], num. adj., four hundred.
quaerō, quaeerere, quaeisivi, quaes-
itus, [?; with r for original s], 3. v.
a., search for, look for, inquire about,
inquire, ask: eadem (make the same
inquiries).
quaestō, -onis, [quaes (as root of
quaero) + tio], F., an investigation:
habere de aliquo (examine, as wit-
wesses, usually by torture).
quaestor, -tōris, [quaes (as root
of quaero) + tor], M., (investigator,
or acquireor, perh. both). — Esp., a
quaestor (the Roman officer who had
charge of the finances of an army).
quaestus, -tūs, [quaes (as root of
quaero) + tus], M., acquisition.
quālis, -e, [quō- (st. of quis) +
alis], inter. adj., of what sort? qualis
ascensus (what is the nature of? etc.).
quam [case-form of quis and qui,
cf. tam, nam], adv. and conj.: 1. In-
terrog., how? — 2. Rel., as, than:
preferre quam (rather than). — Often
with superlatives, as much as possible:
quam maximus, the greatest possible;
quam maxime, very much. — See
also postquam, posteaquam, prius-
quam (often separated), which are
best translated by a single word,
omitting the relative part, according
to the common English idiom.
quamenti (often written separ-
ately), adv. (see diu): 1. Interrog.,
how long? — 2. Rel., as long, as
long as (with antecedent omitted).
quam ob rem (often found to-
gether), adv. phrase: 1. Interrog.,
why? — 2. Rel., on which account,
for which reason.
quamvis [quam vis], adv., as you
please, however, no matter how.
quando [quam + unc. case-form
akin to de], adv., at any time: si
quando, if ever, whenever.
quantō, see quantus.
quantus, -a, -um, [prob. for kā- (root of qua) + vant + us], adj.: 1. Interrog., how great? how much? quantum boni, how much good? quantae civitates (how important?).
   — 2. Relative, as great as, as much as: tantum . . . quantum, so much . . . as; so quanta . . . tanta pecunia.
quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, [quantus-vis (from volō)], however great, as great as you please.
quā rē, adv. phrase, by which thing, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance, etc.), why.—The relative and interrogative senses are not always distinguishable; neque commissum qua rē, nothing had been done for which, etc.; res hortabantur qua rē, etc. (many reasons for doing so urged, etc., to).
quartus, -a, -um, [quattuor- (reduced) + tus], num. adj., fourth: quartus decimus, fourteenth.
quasi [quam (or quā) -si], conj., as if: quasi vero, as if forsooth (ironical).
quattuor [?, reduced pl.], indecl. num. adj., four.
quattuordecim [quattuor-decem], indecl. num. adj., fourteen.
quae [unc. case-form of qui], (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects), conj., and.—Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other.
quem ad modum, phrase as adv., how, just as, as.
queror, querī, questus, [?, with r for original s], 3. v. dep., complain, complain of, find fault, find fault with, bewail, lament.
questus, -a, -um, p. p. of queror.
qui, quae, quod, cūius, [prob. qui- + i (demon.)], rel. pron., who, which, that.—Often where a demon. is used in Eng., this, that.—Often implying an antecedent, he who, etc.: ea quae, things which, whatever; qua de causa, for this reason; qui patebant (though they, etc.); qui videant, men to see, scouts; qui, and they; habere esse quae, with subj. (something to, etc.); qui potuisse- sent (men who); qui postularent, to demand; haec esse quae, this was what; qui facetur, in that he, etc.; paucis diebus quibus (after); idem quod, the same as.—quō, abl. of degree of difference as adv., the (more, less, etc.).—See also quis, quod, 2 quo, and 3 quo.
quicquam, see quisquam.
quicumque, quae-, quod-, [quicumque (cf. quisque)], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whichever, whatever.
quidam, quae-, quod- (quid-), [qui-dam (case of DA, cf. nam, tam)], indef. adj. pron., a (possibly known, but not identified), a certain, certain, a kind of (referred to as belonging to the class, but not exactly the thing spoken of): artificio quodam, a kind of trick; quidam ex militibus (one).
quidem [unc. case-form of qui + dem (fr. DA, cf. tandem, idem)], adv., giving emphasis, but with no regular English equivalent: me . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either; vestrae quidem certe, yours at least,
quīse, -ēs, [quīse- (st. of quiesco, 
keep quiet) + tīs (reduced)] F., rest, 
sleep, repose.

quīstus, -a, -um, [quīse- (st. of 
quiesco, cf. quies)] p. p. as 
adj., at rest, quiet, peaceful, settled, 
at peace, free from disturbance.

quīn [qui (abl. or instr. of qui) +
ne], conj., interrog., how not? and 
rel., by which not: quīn etiam, nay 
even, in fact.— After negative verbs 
of hinderance and doubt, so but that, 
but that, that, from (doing a thing),
to (do a thing); non dubito quīn, I 
doubt not that; also, rarely, I do not 
hesitate to; non aliter sentio quīn, I 
have no other idea than that; non 
expecto quīn, I do not delay doing, 
etc.; nec abest ab eo quīn, it is not 
far from being the case that, etc.

quīnām (quīse-), quaē, quod-
(quoi-), cūīus-, [qui-nām], interr. 
pron., who? etc. (emph.): quibusnam 
manibus (with what possible? etc.).

quīncūnx, -ūnīcis, [quīnquē-uncia, 
ounce], F., (an arrangement of dots 
in the form marked on the five-
ounce piece of copper, ""), a quīn-
cūnx: in quincuncial disposition (in 
quincuncial or alternate order).

quīndecim [quinque-decem], in-
decl. num. adj., fifteen.

quīngenti, -ae, -a, [quinque-cent-
tum], num. adj., five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, [quinque + nus], 
distrib. num. adj., five at a time, five 
(at a time).

quīnquāgintā [quinque + unc. 
st.], indecl. num. adj., fifty.

quīnque ['], indecl. num. adj., 
five.

quinthus, -a, -um, [quinque + tūs]. 
num. adj., fifth. — Esp. as a Roman 
prænomen (orig. the fifth-born?).

Quintus, -i, see quintus.

quīs (qui), quaē, quīd (quoi), 
cūīus [st. qui- and qui-]: 1. Interrog. 
adj. pron., who? which? what? — 2, 
Indef., one, any one, any thing: ne 
quīd, that nothing; ubi quīs, when 
any one; si quīs, if any one.

quīsnam, see quīnam.

quīspiam, quaē, quīd- (quoi-), 
cūīus-, [quīspiam (po-iam, cf. quīppe, 
nempe)], indef. adj. pron., any, any 
one, any thing.

quīsquam, no fem., quīd- (quīc-), 
cūīus-, [quīsquam], indef. pron. used 
substantively (cf. ulla), only with 
negatives and words implying a 
negative, making a universal nega-
tive, any one, anything. — As adj., 
any.

quīsquē, quaē, quīd- (quoi-), 
cūīus-, [quīsquē], indef. adj. pron. 
(distrib. universal), each, each one, 
every. — Esp. with superlatives, im-
plying that things are taken in the 
order of their quality: nobilissimus 
quīsquē, all the noblest, one after 
the other in the order of their no-
bility; antiquissimum quodque tem-
pus, the most ancient times in their 
order; decimus quīsquē, every tenth, 
the tenth part of, one in ten.— 
With ut, and ita, a proportion is 
indicated, in proportion as . . . so, 
the more . . . the more.

quīquis, quaēquaē, quīcquīd 
(quoiquid), cūiuscuius, [quis,
doubled], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whatever, every one who, all who.

quiavis, quae-, quid- (quod-), cuius-, [qui-vis], indef. adj. pron.,
who you please, any one, any whatever (affirmative), any (whatever).

1. quō, see qui.

2. quō [old dat. of qui], adv.: 1. Interrog., whither? — 2. Rel.,
whither, into which, as far as (i.e. to what end): quo intrare (which);
habere quo (have any place to go to, or the like). — 3. Indef., anywhere.

3. quō [abl. of qui], as conj., in order that (with comparatives), that:
magis eo quam quo (than that, than because). — Esp., quō minus, that
not, so that not: recusare quominus, refuse to.

quoad [quo-ad], conj., (up to which point), as far as, until, as long as.

quōd [N. of qui], conj., (as to which), because, inasmuch as, in
that, as for the fact that, the fact that, as for (with clause ex-
pressing the action): quōd al, now
if, but if.

quō minus, see 3 quo.

quoniam [quom (cum) -iam],
conj., (when now), inasmuch as, since, as, seeing that.

quoque [?], conj., following the
word it affects, (by all means?), also,
as well. Cf. etiam (usually pre-
ceding).

quōque, see quisque.

quōque, quo with enclitic.

quōqueversus, see versus.

quot [akin to quis], adj. pron.
indecl.: 1. Interrog., how many? —
2. Rel., as many, as many as (with
implied antecedent), the number
which.

quotannis [quot-anmis], adv., (as
many years as there are), every year,
yearly.

quotiens [quot + iens, cf. quin-
quiens], adv.: 1. Interrog., how
often? how many times? — 2. Rel.,
as often, as often as (with implied
antecedent).

rādix, -icis, [?], F., a root. — Plur.,
the roots (of a tree), the foot (of a
mountain).

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus, [?],
3. v. a., shave, scrape.

rāmus, -i, [?], M., a branch, a
bough, a prong (of antlers).

rapiditās, -tātis, [rapidō- + tās],
F., swiftness, rapidity.

rapīna, -ae, [rapī- (as if st. of
rapio, seize) + na (F. of -nus)], F.,
plunder. — Plur., plundering.

rārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., thin,
scattered, singly, in small bodies (of
soldiers), a few at a time, few (as
being wide apart).

rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of rado.

ratīō, -ōnis, [ratī- (ra, in reor,
+ ti) + o], F., a reckoning, an ac-
count, a roll. — Also, calculation,
reason, prudence, terms, a plan, sci-
ence (or art, or knowledge, as sys-
tematic), a reason (as consisting in
a calculation), a manner, a method,
a consideration: rationem habere, take an account, take account of; have regard to, take into consideration, take measures, take care of, a mercantile term, cf. account; rei mili- taris (art, also nature); omnibus rationibus, in all ways, in all respects; proeli (character); reposere (demand an account, make one responsible); rationem habere ut, take care that, etc.; rationem habere fumentandi (take measures for, etc.).

ratia, -is, [?], F., a raft.

Rauraci, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine.

re-, red-, [abl. of unc. st. perh. akin to -rue], insep. prep., back, again, away, out, un.- — Esp. implying a giving or taking something which is due, or which creates an obligation by the taking, see recipio, refero.

rebellio, -onis, [rebelli- + o], F., a renewal of war, an uprising, a rebellion.

Rebilus, -i, [?], M., a Roman family name. — See Caninius.

receddo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessurus, [re-cedo], 3. v. n., make way back, retire, withdraw.

recens, -entis, [prob. p. of lost verb recceo, be back, (cf. recipero)], adj., (? , just coming back?), new, fresh, late.

recenseo, -censere, -censui, -census, [re-censeo, estimate], 2. v. a., review, inspect (of troops).

receptaculum, -i, [recepta- + culum], N., a retreat, a place of refuge.

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of recipio.

receptus, -tus, [re-captus, cf. recipio], m., a retreat, a way of retreat, a refuge: receptui canere, to sound a retreat.

recessus, -sus, [re-cessus (cf. recedo)], m., a retreat: recessum dare (a chance to retreat).

recidio, -cidere, -cidi, -cäsius, [re-cado], 3. v. n., fall again, fall back, fall upon (one after some one else).

recipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [re-capio], 3. v. a., take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit: misericordiam (admit of); tela recipi, be exposed to missiles; ad se (attack). — With reflexive, retreat, fly, return, retire, get off, withdraw, resort: se ad aliquem (rally on).

recitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-cito], I. v. a., read (aloud).

reclinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of reclino.

reclinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-clino], I. v. a. and n., lean back, lean over, lean: reclinatus, leaning.

rectē [old case-form of rectus], adv., straight, right, rightly: recte factum, a good action.

rectus, -a, -um, [p. p. of rego], adj., (directed), straight: recta regione, in a straight direction, parallel with.

recuperō (-cip-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [+recipere-, from recō- (cf. recens) + parus (cf. pario)], I. v. a., get back, recover, regain.

recusō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-cause (cf. excusō)], I. v. a. and n., (give an excuse for drawing back), refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; abs., make
objections: de stipendio (refuse to pay, etc.) quin (refuse to); quominus (refuse to); periculum (refuse to incur).

rēda (rhēda), -ae, [perh. Celtic form akin to rota], F., a wagon (with four wheels).

reductus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo.

redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo.

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [re (red) -do], 3. v. a., give back, restore, pay (something due, cf. re), render: supplicatio (offer).

redemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of redimo.

reō, -ire, -ii (-ii), -iturus, [re (red) -eo], irr. v. n., go back, return, come down again (collis ad planitiem): eodem unde redierat (come); summa (be referred).

redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus, [re (red-) ago], 3. v. a., bring back, reduce, render, bring (sub imperium Galliam), make (one thing out of another).

redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -emptus, [re (red-) emo], 3. v. a., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy.

reintegrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of redintegro.

reintegrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re (red-) integro], 1. v. a., renew (again), restore, revive (spem).

reditū, -ōnis, [red-itūs (cf. redeo)], F., a return.

reditus, -tūs, [re- (red-) tūtus], M., a return.

Redones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Brittany.

redūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, [re-duco], 3. v. a., lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back.

refectus, -a, -um, p. p. of reficio.

referō, -ferre, -tuli, -latus, [refero], irr. v. a., bring back, return, bring (where something belongs), report. — Esp.: ad senatum (lay before for action); de re publica (consult in regard to); gratiam (make return, show one's gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back).

reficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [refacio], irr. v. a., repair, refresh: se ex labore (rest); exercitum (allow to recover).

refractus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractus, [re-frango], 3. v. a., break away, break in (portas): vim fluminis (break, opposite to its direction).

refugiō, -fugere, -fugī, -fugitus, [re-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, escape.

Rēginus, -i, [akin to rex], M., a Roman family name. — See Antiustius.

regiō, -ōnis, [REG + io, but cf. ratio], F., a direction, a part (of the country, etc.), a region, a country, a district: recta regione, straight, along, parallel; e regione, over against, just opposite.

rēgius, -a, -um, [REG + ius], adj., of a king, regal, royal.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [regnō-], 1. v. n., rule, be in power, reign.

rēgnum, -i, [REG + num (N. of -nus)], N., a kingdom, royal power, a throne. — Plur., the royal power (of several cases).
regō, regere, réxi, rectus, [akin to tex], 3. v. a., direct, manage, rule, have control of.

réiciō, icere, -iēci, -iectus, [re-iacio], 3. v. a., throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off.

rélectus, -a, -um, p. p. of reicio.

relanguēscō, -languēscrere, -langui, no p. p., [re-languesco], 3. v. n., languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened.

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero.

relāgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of relego.

relēgō, -āre, -āvi, -āitus, [re-lēgo, deputē], 1. v. a., remove, separate.

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquō.

religīō, -ōnis, [-?], re-legio (cf. religio), f., (the original meaning unc.), a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror, religion.—Plur., religious matters (of all kinds).

relinquō, -linquere, -liqui, -lictus, [re-linquō], 3. v. a., leave behind, leave, abandon: obsidionem (raise).

— Pass., be left, remain.

reliquus, -a, -um, [re-liquus (LIQ (leave) + us)], adj., left, remaining, the rest, the other, other (meaning all other), the others, all other, future (of time), remaining: nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsurus, [re-maneo], 2. v. n., remain behind, remain, stay.

rēmex, -īgis, [remō- with unc. term. (perh. tagus)], M., an oarsman, a rower.

Rēmī, -rūm, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgae about Rheims, which was their capital.

rēmīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [remīg-], 1. v. n., row.

remigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [remigrō], 1. v. n., move back, return.

remīniscor, -minisci, [re- míniscor (MAN, in memini, + isco)], 3. v. dep., remember.

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of remitto.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [re-mitto], 3. v. a., let go back, send back, throw back.—Fig., relax, cease to use, give up: remissoribus frígibibus (less intense).

remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p., [remollēsco], 3. v. n., soften away, soften, become feeble.

remōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of removeō.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, [re-moveō], 2. v. a., move back, move away, send away, remove, draw away, get out of the way.—remotus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., far away, remote.

remūneror, -āri, -āitus, [re-mu- nero], 1. v. dep., repay, requite.

Rēmus, -i, [-?], M., one of the Remi.

rēmus, -i, [-?], M., an oar.

rēnō, -ōnis, [-?], M., a skin, a pelt.

renovō, -āre, -āvi, -āitus, [re-novo, fr. novus, new], 1. v. a., renew.

renūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of renuntio.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -āitus, [renuntio], 1. v. a., bring back word, report, proclaim.
repellē, -pelle, -ppulē, -pulēs, [re-pello], 3. v. a., drive back, repel, repulse: ab hac ape repulsi, disappointed in this hope.

repente [?], adv., suddenly.

repentinus, -a, -um, [repente + inus], adj., sudden, hasty.—repentinōs, abl. as adv., suddenly.

reperiō, reperire, reperiēre, repertus, [re- (red-) pārio], 4. v. a., find out, discover, find (by inquiry, cf. invenio): reperti sunt multi, there were many.

repertus, -a, -um, p. p. of reperiō.

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, [re-peto], 3. v. a., try to get back, demand back, ask for: poenas (in-\text{\textit{fact}}, exact, cf. sumō).

repleō, -piēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [re-pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, supply well.

replētus, -a, -um, p. p. of repleo.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-\text{\textit{porto}}], 1. v. a., carry back.

repōscō, -posere, no perf., no p. p., [re-\text{\textit{posco}}], 3. v. a., demand back, demand (something due).

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-\text{\textit{praesento}}], 1. v. a., make present, do at once.

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus, [re-\text{\textit{prehendo}}], 3. v. a., drag back, seize hold of, find fault with, blame, censure.

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of reprimō.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [re-\text{\textit{premo}}], 3. v. a., check.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [repudiō-], 1. v. a., (spurn with the feet, cf. tripudium), spurn, refuse, reject.

repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-pugno, fight], 1. v. n., resist.—Fig., be in opposition.

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of repello.

requīrō, -quirere, -quisīvī, quīsitus, [re-\text{\textit{quāero}}], 3. v. a., search out. Hence, request, require, demand, need.

rēs, rei, [akin to reor, reckon], F., property, business, an affair, a matter, a thing (in the most general sense), a fact, an occurrence, an event, a case, an action, an act.—Often to be translated from the context: ob sām rem, for this reason; quam ob rem, for which reason, wherefore; his rebus, by these means, for these reasons, on this account; ea rea, this, (often equivalent to a pronoun); qua in re, in which; eius rei, of this; his rebus cognitis (this); qua ex re futurum, the result of which would be; huic rei, for this purpose, for this; alia re iurare (in any other way); nihil earum rerum quas, etc., nothing of what, etc.; sine certa re, without certain grounds; omnibus rebus, in every respect, in all ways; his omnibus rebus unum repugnas (considerations, reasons, arguments); quibus rebus occurrendum esse (dangers); rem deferre, lay the matter before, not for consultation, bring information, cf. rem referre; rerum omnium causae, all accidents; rem gerere, operate, conduct operations, in war, succeed well or ill; his rebus gesta, after these operations, events; male re gesta, want of success; rerum natura, nature, also, state of the case;
imperitus rerum, ignorant of the world; omnium rerum summa (of the whole, of all the forces); ei Rei student (this branch, cavalry); cuius rei, of which, ships.—Esp., the affairs (of a person), position, interests, condition, fortunes, circumstances: Gallicis rebus favere (the interests of Gaul); rem esse in angusto (affairs, things); commutatio rerum, change of fortunes.—Esp.: res secundae, or adversae, success, prosperity, or adversity, want of success; res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business, politics; res communis, the common interest; de re publica, in regard to the welfare of the state, about politics; res divinae, divine worship, and everything pertaining to it, religion; res familiaris, property; res militaris, warfare, the art of war; res frumentaria, grain supply, grain; res alicui est, one has business with, has to do with, and the like; one's affair is; res est, it is a fact, it is so; novae res, a new form of government, revolution.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, [re-scindo], 3. v. a., cut away, tear down, break down, destroy. resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītus, [re-scisco, inquire], 3. v. a., find out, learn, discover.

rescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scripsitus, [re-scribo, write], 3. v. a., transfer (by writing). reservātus, -a, -um, p.p. of reservo.

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-servo], 1. v. a., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve.

resideō, -sidere, -sēdī, no p.p., [re-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain.

residō, -siderē, -sēdī, no p.p., [re-sido], 3. v. n., sink down, become calm, subside.

resistō, -sistere, -stī, no p.p., [re-sisto], 3. v. n., stand back, stop, withstand, make a stand, resist, remain.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [re-śpecio], 3. v. a. and n., look back, look back at, look behind one, see behind one, consider.

respondō, -spondere, -spōndi, -spōnsus, [re-spondeo, promise], 2. v. n., reply, answer.

respōnsum, -i, [N. p. p. of respondō], n., a reply.—Plur., a reply (of several parts).

rēs pública, see res.

respūō, -spuere, -spūi, no p.p., [re-śpuo], 3. v. a., spit out.—Fig., spurn, reject.

restinctus, -a, -um, p.p. of restinguo.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctus, [re-stinguo, quench], 3. v. a., extinguish.

restituō, -stituerē, -stītū, -stitūtus, [re-statuo], 3. v. a., set up again, replace, restore, make anew.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of restituō.

retentus, -a, -um, p.p. of retineo.

retineō, -tīnere, -tīnī, -tentus, [re-teneo], 2. v. a., hold back, restrain, (quin, from doing something), detain, retain: memoriam (preserve); Gallos (arrest).

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus,
[re-trahō], 3. v. a., drag back, bring back (a person).

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, [re-vello, pull], 3. v. a., tear away, pull away.

reversus, -a -um, p. p. of revertō.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [re-vertō], 3. v. n., return (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses, return, go back, come back.

revisciō, -vincire, -vinxi, -vincitus, [re-vincio], 4. v. a., bind back (to something), make fast, fasten, bind.

reviscitus, -a, -um, p. p. of reviscio.

revoctās, -a, -um, p. p. of revocō.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-voce], 1. v. a., call back, call away, call off, recall.

rēx, régis, [reg, rule, as st.], m., a king.

Rhēnum, -i, [Celtic?], m., the Rhine.

Rodanum, -i, [Celtic?], m., the Rhone.

rīpa, -ae, [?], f., a bank.

rivus, -i, [akin to Gr. ῥῦος], m., a brook, a stream (not so large as flumen).

rōbur, -oris, [?], n., oak.

rogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of rogo.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a. and n., ask, request, ask for: sacramento rogare milites (bind by an oath, enlist under oath).

Rōma, -ae, [?], f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, [Roma- + unus], m., Roman. — As noun, a Roman.

Rōscius, -i, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp. Lucius Roscius, a legatus of Cæsar.

rōstrum, -i, [rod- (in rodo, gnaw) + trum], n., a beak. — Esp. of a ship, the beak, the ram (used as in modern naval fighting).

rota, -ae, [?], f., a wheel.

rubus, -i, [?], perh. rub- (in ruber) + us], m., (red?), a bramble.

Rūfus, -i, [prob. dial. form = rubus, red'], m., a Roman family name. See Sulpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, [?], m., a rumor (confused report), report.

rūpes, -is, [rup (cf. rump) + unc. term.], f., a cliff, a rock (in position).

rūrus [for reversus], adv., back again, back, again, in turn.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence.

Rutiliūs, -i, [prob. akin to ruber], m., red. — As a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Sempronius Rutilius, a cavalry officer under Cæsar.

S

Sabinus, -i, [unc. st. (cf. sabulus, sand) + inus], m., (Sabine). — As a Roman family name. — See Titurius.

Sabis, -is, [Celtic], m., a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now Sambre.

Sacerdōs, -dōtis, [sacrō-dos (Da + tis)], c., (arranger of sacred rites?), a priest.

sacrāmentum, -i, [sacrā-, hallow, + mentum], n., an oath.

sacrificium, -i, [sacrificō- (sacrō-
saepe [N. of *saepis* (perh. same as *saepes*), adv., often: minime saepe, most rarely.—saepius, compar., many times, repeatedly.]

saepenumero [saepes, numero], adv., oftentimes, many times.

saepēs, -is, [akin to saepio, hedge in], F., a hedge.

saeviō, -ire, -ī, -ītūrus, [saevō-, raging (as if saevi-)], 4. v. n., be angry, rage, be violent.

sagitta, -ae, [?], F., an arrow.

sagittārius, -i, [sagitta- + arius], M., an archer, a Bowman.

sagulum, -i, [sagō- (cloak) + īum], N., a cloak (military).

saltus, -tūs, [?, perh. sal (in salio, leap) + tus], M., a wooded height, a glade, a pass (in the mountains).

salūs, -ūtis, [salvō, (?) safe, + tis (cf. virtus)], F., health, well-being, welfare, safety, preservation, deliverance, life (as saved or lost); salutis desperata, despairing of saving one's self; salutis suae causa, to protect one's self; ad salutem contendere (a place of safety).

Samarobrīva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Ambiani, now Amiens.

sancio, sacrificio, sānxiō, sāntus, [SAc (in sacer)], 4. v. a., bind (in some religious manner), make sacred, solemnly establish (by law).—sāntus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable.

sāntus, -a, -um, p. p. of sancio.

sanguis, -inis, [?], M., blood (as the vital fluid, generally in the body, cf. crūor).

sānitās, -tātis, [sano- + tās], F., soundness, sound mind, good sense.

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sano-], i. v. a., make sound, make good, repair.

Santones, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe between the Loire and the Garonne.

Santoni, see Santones.

sānus, -a, -um, [sā- (akin to salvus) + nus], adj., sound (in body or mind), sane, discreet: nihil pro sano facere (nothing discreet).

sapiō, -ere, -iī (-īvī, no p. p., [?], sap], 3. v. a. and n., taste (actively or passively). Hence, be wise, understand (what to do).

sarcina, -ae, [sarc-, (as if st. of sarcio, or a kindred noun-st.) + na (F. of nus)], F., a pack (sewed up?).—Plur., baggage (soldiers' packs, cf. impedimenta, baggage not carried by soldiers).

sarcīō, sacrire, sarsiō, sartus, [?], 4. v. a., mend, patch.—Fig., restore, repair.

sarmentum, -i, [perh. SARF, prune (but cf. sarcina) + mentum], N., (either prunings or tied fagots), only in plur., fagots, fascines.

satis [?], adv., enough, sufficiently.—Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: satis habere, consider sufficient, be satisfied; neque ... satis commodo (not very, etc.); satis grandis, rather large, tolerably large.—Often a mild expression for very and the like.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus, [satis facio], 3. v. n., do enough for, satisfy, make amends, excuse one's self, apologise.
satisfactio, -onis, [satis-factio (cf. satisfacere)], F., amends, excuses, an apology.
satus, -a, -um, p. p. of sero.
saucius, -a, -um, [?], adj., wounded.
saxum, -i, [?], N., a rock (as movable), cf. rupes.
scālæ, -ārum, (sing. rare), [perh. acad- (in scando, climb) + la], F., a ladder, a scaling ladder.
Sciādis, -is, [?], M., a river of Gaul, the Scheldt.
scapha, -ae, [Gr., orig. a "dug-out"], F., a skiff, a boat.
scelerātus, -a, -um, [as if (perh. really) p. p. of scelero (stain with crime?)], adj., villainous, accursed.
scienter [scient- (cf. scio) + ter], adv., knowingly, skillfully.
scientia, -ae, [scient- (cf. scio) + ia], F., knowledge, acquaintance with (thing in the genitive), skill.
scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, [scīd, split], 3. v. a., tear, tear down.
scīō, scire, scīvi, scītus, [?], 4. v. a., (separate?), distinguish, know.
scorpiō, -onis, [?], M., a scorpion; a machine for throwing darts. Hence, a shot from an engine (of that kind).
scribō, scribere, scrīpsi, scriptus, [?], 3. v. a. and n., write, give an account (in writing).
scrobis, -is, [prob. akin to scribo], M. and F., a ditch, a pit.
scūtum, -i, [?], N., a shield, of the Roman legion, made of wood, con-

vex, oblong (2½ by 4 ft.), covered with leather.
sec- sec- [old abl. of unc. st.], prep., mostly as adv. in comp., apart, away, aside, off, un.
sec, see sui.
sēbum, -i, [?], N., tallow.
secō, secāre, secū, sectus, [prob. causative of sec], i. v. a., cut, reap.
secrētō [abl. of secretus, p. p. of secernō, separate], adv., in private, privately.
secūtō, -onis, [sec (in seco) + tio], F., a cutting. Hence (prob. from dividing in lots), a lot of booty, booty.
sector, -āri, -ātus, [prob. sectā (sequ + ta, cf. moneta)], i. v. dep., pursue, chase after.
sectūra, -ae, [prob. sectu- (sec + tus) + ra, F. of -rā], F., a cutting, a mine, a shaft, a gallery.
secundum, see secundus.
secundus, -a, -um, [part. in -dus of sequor], adj., following. Hence, second.— Also (as not opposing), favorable, successful: secundiores res, greater prosperity; proelium secundum nostris (in favor of); secundo flumine, down the stream; secunda acies, the second line of battle, the second division. — Neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with; secundum ea, besides that.
secūris, -is, [sec + unc. term.], F., an axe. — Esp., the axe of the lic-
tor (as a symbol of the power of life and death).
secus, [sequ (in sequor) + unc. term.], adv., (inferior), otherwise.—
Compar., sēcius (sētius), less: nihilō secius, none the less, nevertheless.

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of sequor.

sed [abl. of unc. st., cf. re], conj., apart (cf. sediitio, and securus), but (stronger than autem or at), but yet.

sedecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen.

sēdēs, -is, [SED + es (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. -us)], F., a seat. Hence, an abode (both in sing. and plur.), a settlement: locus ac sedes, a place of abode.

sēdiitio, -ōnis, [sed-ōtio (I + tio)], F., a secession, a mutiny, an uprising.

sēdiōtōs, -a, -um, [sedition- + osus], adj., seditions, factious.

Sedulius, -i, [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Sedusīi, -ōrum, [Teut.], M. plur., a tribe of Germans.

seges, -etis, [unc. st. + tis], F., a crop of grain (growing), a field (of grain).

Sēgni, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul.

Segōnax (.ovax), -actis, [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiacī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

Segusīavi (ānī), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

semel [prob. n. of adj., akin to similia], adv., once: semel atque iterum, more than once, again and again; ut semel, when once, as soon as.

sēmentias, -tis, [semen (seed) + tis, cf. Carmentis, virtus], F., a sow·ing: sementia facere, sow grain.

sēmita, -ae, [se-(sed-) + mīta (M. in melo, go, cf. comes)], F., a side path, a by path, a path (over the mountains).

semper [tēmōr- (?) (in semel) -per (cf. parumper)], adv., throughout all time, all the time, always.

Semprōnius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See Rutilius.

senātor, -ōris, [tēnā- (as if verb-st. akin to senex, perh. really so, cf. senatus) + tor], M., (an elder). Hence, a senator.

senātus, -tus, [tēnā- (as if, perh. really, verb-st. akin to senex)], M., a senate (council of old men). — Esp., the senate (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

senex [senī- + cus (reduced)]. — Gen., senis, [?], cf. seneschal], adj. (only M.), old. — Esp. as noun, an old man (above forty-five).

sēnī, -ae, -a, [sec(s) + ni], distrib. num. adj., six each, six (where each is implied in Eng. by the context).

Senones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near Sens (their chief town, ancietly Agedincum).

sententia, -ae, [tēsent- (p. of simpler pres. of sentio) + ia], F., (feeling, thinking). Hence, a way of thinking, an opinion, a view, a determination, a sentiment, a feeling, a purpose, a design. — Esp., officially, a judgment, an opinion, a sentence, a vote: in ea sententia permanere
sentiō (of that mind); in sam sententiam, to this purport.

sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, [?], a. v. a., perceive (by the senses), know, see, think (of an opinion made up), learn about, learn: unum sentiunt ac probant, hold the same opinion, etc.

sentis, -is, [?], m., a briar.

sēparātum [as if acc. of separātus (separā- + -ātus)], adv., separately, privately (apart from others).

sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of separa.

sēparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [se- (sed-) paro], i. v. a., (get apart?), separate.

— Esp. sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate.

septem [?], indecl. num. adj., seven.

septentriones (septem, triones), -um, m. plur., the seven plough oxen (the stars of the Great Bear).— Hence, the north. — Also (by an error), in the sing., septentrio, -onis, the north: a septentrionibus, in the north; sub septentrionibus, in the north, towards the north.

septimus, -a, -um, [septem + mus, cf. primus], adj., the seventh.

septingenti, -ae, -a, [septem (in some form) -centum (?)], num. adj., seven hundred.

septuāgintā [from septem, in some unc. manner], indecl. num. adj., seventy.

septultūra, -ae, [septulu- (cf. sepelium, burial) + ra (f. of -rās)], f., burial, burying.

Sēquana, -ae, [Celtic], f., the Seine.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, n. of Macon). — Masc. sing., one of the Sequani, a Sequanian. — Masc. plur., the Sequani.

sequor, sequi, secutus, [sequ-], 3. v. dep., follow, accompany: damnatum poena (be inflicted upon, the penalty following the condemnation); eventus (ensue); hiems quae secuta est (the following); fidem (hold to, remain under, come under, surrender one's self to, etc.); aestīs commutationem (take advantage of).

Ser., for Servius.

sērnō, -ōnis [ser (in sero, twine) + mo (prob. -mō- + o)], m., (series?). Hence, conversation (continuous series of speech), talk, intercourse, conversation with (genitive).

sērō, serere, sēvi, satus, [sa, redupl.], 3. v. a., plant, sow.

sērō [abl. of serus], adv., too late.

Sertōrius, -i, [sētor (garland-maker?) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Q. Sertorius, a partisan of Marius, who held a command in Spain against the party of Sulla from B.C. 80 to B.C. 72.

sērvillā, -ē, [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin, cf. servio) + ius], adj., of slaves, of a slave, servile: in servilem modum, as with slaves, (i.e. by torture); tumultus (the servile war, the revolt of the slaves under Spartacus in B.C. 73).

sērviō, -ire, if (-ivī), ītūrus [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin)], 4. v. n., be a slave (to some one or something); rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow); bello (devote one's self to).

servitūs, -tūtis, [servitu- (servō
Servius

+ tus) + tis, cf. iuvventus, semen-
tis], v., slavery, servitude.

Servius, -i, [servō + ius], m., a
Roman prænomen.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [servō-],
v. a., watch, guard, keep, preserve:
praesidia (hold, maintain); ordines
(keep); fidem (keep one’s word).

servus, -i, [unc. root (ser, bind?)
+vus], m., a slave.

sēsō, see sui.

sēsequipēdālia, -e, [sēsequiped- (a
foot and a half) + aliā], adj., of a
foot and a half, eighteen-inch (beams,
etc.).

seu, see sive.

sevēritās, -ātis, [severō + tas],
v., strictness, harshness, severity.

sevōcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [se (sed)
-voce], v. a., call aside, call out
(aside).

sex [s], indecl. num. adj., sīx;
sexāgintā [sex + unc. term.],
indecl. num. adj., sīxty.

sexcentī (ses-), -ae, -a, [sex-cen-
tum], num. adj., sīx hundred.

Sextius, -i, [sextō + ius], m., a
Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1.
Titus Sextius, a legatus of Cæsar.
— 2. Publius Sextius Baculus, a
centurion in Cæsar’s army.

si [loc. prob. akin to se], conj.,
in this way, in this case, so, cf. sic,
if, in case. — Esp., to see if, whether:
id si fieret, should this happen, etc.
abi, see sui.

Sibudāes, -um, [Celtic], m. pl.,
a people of Aquitania, near the
Pyrenees.

sic [si-ce, cf. hic], adv., so, in
this manner, in such a manner,
thus: sic ... ut, so ... that, so well
... that; sic reperiebat (this). —
sicūti, as conj., just as, just as if.
siccitās, -tātis, [siccō + tas], v.,
dryness, drought, dry weather.—Plur.
in same sense, of different occasions.
sicīt (sicūti), see sic.

sidus, -eris, [sed + us], n.,
(position?), a heavenly body.

signifer, -ferī, [signo-fer (fer
(bear) + us)], m., a standard-bearer.
significātōs, -ōnis, [significā- +
tō], v., a making of signs, a signal,
an intimidation, a warning.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sign-
ificō- (signō-ācus, cf. facio)], v.
n., make signs, indicate, make known,
spread news, give an intimidation,
give information, show: hac re signi-
ficari, this is an indication; de
fuga; deditio nem (make signs of).

signum, -i, [unc. root + num (n.
of -nus)], n., (a device?), a sign, a
signal. — Esp., a standard (for mili-
tary purposes, carried by any body
of men, consisting of some device in
metal on a pole). — Phrases: signa
convertere, wheel, change front, face
about; signa inferre, advance to at-
tack, charge; conversa signa inferre,
change front and charge; infestis
signis (for an attack, at charge);
signa ferre, move, move on, march;
signa subsequi, keep the line of
march; signa relinquere, leave the
ranks; se continere ad signa, keep
the ranks; a signis discedere, desert,
leave the ranks; ad signa convenire,
join the army; ad signa consistere,
rally around the standard; signa
constituere, halt.
Silanus, -i, [?-], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Silanus, a legatus of Caesar.

silentium, -i, [silent- + ium], n., stillness, silence. — silentio, abl., in silence, silently.

Silius, -i, [?-], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Titus Silius, a military tribune in Caesar’s army.

silva, -ae, [?-], f., a forest, woods, forests. — Plur. in same sense.

silvester (-tris), -tris, -tre, [silva- (as if silvus-, cf. palustris) + tris], adj., woody, wooded.

similis, -e, [†simō- (cf. simplex, semper) + lis], adj., like, similar.

similitūdō, -inis, [simili- + tudo], f., likeness, resemblance (to, genitive).

simul [n. of similis, cf. facul], adv., at the same time: simul atque (or without atque), as soon as; simul . . . simul, both . . . and.

simulācrum, -i, [simulā- + crum], n., an image, a likeness.

simulātiō, -onis, [simulā- + tio], f., a pretence, a show, deceit.

simulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of simulō.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [simili- (as if, perh. orig., †simulō)], i. v. a., pretend, make a show of (something), feign.

simultās, -tātis, [simili- (cf. simul) + tas], f., (likeness?, equality?), rivalry.

sīn [si-ne], conj., (if not), but if.

sincērē [old case-form of sincerus], adv., honestly, truly, frankly.

sine [?-], prep. with abl., without.

singillātim (singul-), [as if singulā- (singulus) + tim (acc. of singul)], adv., singly, one by one, individually.

singulāris, -e, [singulō- + aris], adj., solitary, single. Hence, unique, extraordinary, unparalleled, unequalled, marvellous.

singuli, -ae, -a, [sim (in similis) + unc. term.], adj., one at a time, single, each, one by one, several (severally). — Often to denote distribution, one to each: singuli singulōs, (with verb), one . . . each; singulis legionibus singulōs legatos (one over each); ab singulis legionibus singulōs legatos discedere (each from his); inter singulas legiones (between each two, one to each); navis singulas Romanis equitibus (severally, separately, one to each); sevcare singulas (individuals, one by one).

sinister, -tra, -trum, [?-], adj., left: sub sinistra (manu), on the left.

sinistrōrsus [sinistro-vorsus (versus)], adv., to the left.

sīnō, sinere, sivi, situs, [si (of unc. meaning)], 3. v. a., (lay down, cf. pono), leave. Hence, permit, allow.

situs, -tūs, [si + tus], m., (a laying, a leaving), situation, position, site.

sive, seu, [si-ve], conj., if either, or if: sive . . . sive, either . . . or, whether . . . or.

socrēr, -eri, [?-], m., a father-in-law.

sociātēs, -tātis, [sociō- + tas], f., an alliance.

socius, -i, [SEQU (follow) + TUS], m., a companion, an ally, a comrade.

sōl, sōlis, [?-], m., the sun. — Also personified, Sol, the Sun. — See also under orior, occido, occasus.
sōläciuṃ (sōlāct-), -i, [solarcō- + ium], N., a consolation, a comfort.
soldurius, -i, [Teutonic], M., a retainer, a follower.
solē, solère, solitus, [?], 2. v. n., be wont, be accustomed.
sōlitūdō, -inis, [sōlō- + tudo], F., loneliness. Hence, a wilderness.
sollertia, -ae, [sollert- (sollō- + ars, with complete skill, cf. sollicito) + īa], F., skill, ingenuity, shrewdness.
sollicitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sollicito.
sollicitō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [sollicitō- (sollō-citus, entirely roused)], 1. v. a., stir up, instigate, make overtures to, tamper with, approach (with money, etc.), offer bribes to, tempt.
sollicitūdō, -inis, ['sollicitu- (st. akin to sollicitus) + do], F., anxiety, apprehension.
solum, -i, [?], N., the soil, the foundation, the bottom: solum agrī, the bare ground; ab infimo solo, from the very bottom.
sōlus, -a, -um, [?], adj., alone, only.—sōlum, N. as adv., alone, only.
solitus, -a, -um, p. p. of solvo.
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, [prob. se-loqu, loose], 3. v. a., unbind, loose. — Esp. with navis, weigh anchor, set sail. — Also without navis, absolutely, set sail.
sonitus, -tūs, [soni- (as st. of sono) + tūs], M., a sound, noise.
sonus, -i, [son + us], M., a sound.
sōror, -ōris, [?], F., a sister: soror ex matre, a half-sister.
sōrs, sortis, [perh. ser (in sero) + tis, but the orig. sense is unc.], F., a lot (for divination), chance.

Sōtiātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of Aquitania.
spatium, -i, [?], N., space, extent, a space, a distance. — Transf., time, space of time, lapse of time. — Phrases: quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for; in-termisso spatio, after an interval; spatia omnis temporis, the whole course of time.
speciēs, -īē, [spec + iēs (akin to -ia)], F., (a sight, prob. both act. and pass.). — Passively, a sight, a show, an appearance: summam speciēs earum stantium, a perfect appearance of standing trees (lit. of them standing); ad speciem, for show.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spectō-], 1. v. a. and n., look at, regard, have regard to, lie towards (of a country), face.
speculātor, -tōris, [speculā- + tor] M., a spy, a scout.
speculātorius, -a, -um, [speculator + ius], adj., (of a scout), scouting, reconnoitring (navigia).
speculator, -ārī, -ātus, [speculō-], cf. specula, watch-tower], 1. v. dep., spy, reconnoitre: speculandi causa, as a spy.
spērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of spero.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spes- (prob. orig. st. of spēs) with r for s], 1. v. a. and n., hope, hope for, expect.
spēs, -ē, [?], F., hope, expectation: summam in spēm venire, have the greatest hope.
spiritus, -tūs, [spirit- (as st. of spiro, breathe) + tūs], M., breath. — Also, spirit. Hence, in pl., pride, arrogance, temper.
spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [spoliō-, booty]. I. v. a., despoil, strip. — Fig., rob, deprive, despoil.

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), [prob. akin to spondeo, promise], F., only with poss. or (poetic) gen., of one's own accord, voluntarily, on one's own account. — Rarely, by one's influence.

stabilīō, -āre, -āvi (ii), -ātus, [stabilī-], 4. v. a., make firm.

stabilitās, -ātīs, [stabilī- + tas], F., steadiness, firmness.

statim [acc. of īstatīs (sta- + tis)], adv., (as one stands, on the spot), at once, forthwith, immediately.

statiō, -ōnis, [apparently STA + tio, prob. īstatīs + o], whence the common -tio used as ending without regard to its origin], F., (a standing), a position, a post, a picket; in statione, on guard.

statuō, -uere, -uī, -itus, [statu-], 3. v. a., set up. Hence, establish, resolve upon, determine, consider (make up one's mind), take measures. — Euphemistic for, punish (de eo causa cognita).

statūra, -ae, [statu- + ra, F. of -rus], F., (a standing), stature, size.

status, -tūs, [STA + tus], M., (a standing), a position, a condition, a state, a situation.

stimulus, -ī, [Īstigmō- (STIG + mus) + lus], M., a good, a spur. — As name of a caithrop or instrument of defence, "spurs."

stipendiārius, -a, -um, [stipendiā- + arius], adj., tributary, under tribute, subject to tribute.

stipendium, -ī, [stipī-, gift, and st. akin to pendo (perh. īpendus, cf. pendulus) + ium], N., a tribute.

stipes, stipitis, [ʔ], M., a trunk (of a tree).

stirps, stirpis, [ʔ], M. and F., a stock, a stem. — Fig., a race: stirpem hominum interfici, men to be killed root and branch.

stō, stāre, stētī, statūrus, [STA], I. v. n., stand, be placed: decreto (stand by, abide by).

strāmentum, -ī, [STRA (form of root of sterno) + mentum], N., (something strewn), straw, thatch. — Also plur., saddle-cloths.

strepitus, -tūs, [strepī- (as st. of strepō, roar) + tus], M., a noise, a confused din.

studeō, studēre, studui, no p. p., [Īstudī- (or īstuda-), cf. studium], 2. v. n., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (a thing in the dat.).

studiōsē, [old case-form of studiosus], adv., eagerly, zealously.

studium, -ī, [prob. īstudī- + ium, cf. studēo], N., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (for a thing), enthusiasm. Hence, a pursuit (to which one is devoted), an occupation.

stultitia, -ae, [stultī- (foolish) + tia], F., folly.

sub [unc. case, prob. abl., akin to super], adv. (in comp.) and prep.:

a. With abl. (of rest in a place), under: sub oculis, before the eyes. — Also, just by: sub monte (at the foot of); sub sinistra, at the left; sub vallo, just under the wall.

b. With acc. (of motion towards...
a place), under, close to. — Of time, just at, just before: sub vesperum.

C. In comp., under, up (from under), away (from beneath), secretly (underhand), in succession, a little, slightly.

subāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of subigo.
subdolus, -a, -um, [sub-dolus, artificē], adj., cunning, wily.

subācūsō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [sub-duco], 3. v. a., draw up, lead up: navis (beach, draw up).

subductūs, -ōnis, [sub-ductio, cf. subāduco], f., a drawing up, a beaching (of ships).

subductus, -a, -um, p. p. of subduco.

subēō, -ère, -ī, -itus, [sub-eo], irr. v. a., go under, undergo, encounter, come up, approach.

subfodiō (suff.), -fodere, -fōdi, -fossus, [sub-fodio], 3. v. a., dig under, stab (underneath).

subfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of subfodio.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [sub-iacio], 3. v. a., throw under, place below, place under, subject, expose to. — Also, throw up. — Subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying near.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [sub-ago], 3. v. a., bring under, subject.

subitu, see subitus.

subitus, -a, -um, [p. p. of subeo], adj., (coming up secretly from under), sudden, suddenly (as if adv. taken with the verb), quick, hasty. — Subitū, abl. as adv., suddenly, of a sudden.

sublātus, -a, -um, [sub- (t) latus], p. p. of tollō.

sublevātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sublevo.

sublevō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sublevo], 1. v. a., lighten up, lighten, raise, raise up, assist, render assistance. — With reflexive, rise up. — Sublevātus, p. p., supporting one’s self.

sublīca, -ae, [-?, f., a pile.

subluō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus, [sub-luo], 3. v. a., wash underneath, wash : flumen collis radicēs.

subministrō (sum-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sub-ministro], 1. v. a., supply (as needed), furnish (from time to time), provide.

submittō (sum-), -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., send up, send to one’s assistance, send as reinforcements, send (as help), reinforce.

submōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of submoveo.

submoveō (sum-), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [sub-moveo], 2. v. a., drive off, dislodge.

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [subruo], 3. v. a., dig under, undermine.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [subsequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, follow on, follow, succeed to.

subsidium, -i, [sub-taedium (sed + ium)], N., (a sitting in reserve), a reserve, a reinforcement, help, relief, support, assistance, resources, provisions: subsidio mittere, send assistance; subsidium ferre, rescue; subsidium comparare, make provision.

subsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [sub-sido], 3. v. n., sit down, remain behind.
subeistō, -sistere, -stit, no p. p., [sub-sisto], 3. v. n., stop behind, halt, make a stand: ancore (hold).

subsum, esse, -fui, futūrus, [subsum], irr. v. n., be under, be near, be close by (a certain distance off), be near at hand, approach.

subtrahō, -trahere, -träxi, -trāctus, [sub-traho], 3. v. a., take away (underneath), carry away, take away (generally).

subvectiō, -onis, [sub-vectio, cf. subveho], f., bringing up, transportation, conveyance.

subveho, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, [sub-veho], 3. v. a., bring up.

subvenīō, -venire, -venī, -ventūrus, [sub-venio], 4. v. n., come under, come to the support of, come to the assistance of, assist.

succeedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [sub-cedo], 3. v. n., come up, advance, come in place of, succeed to, take the place of, come next. — Also, be successful, prosper.

succeundo, -cendere, -cendi, -census, [sub-tcando (cf. candeo, glow)], 3. v. a., set on fire (as if beneath).

succēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succeedo.

successus, -ūs, [sub-cessus (cf. succedo)], m., a coming up, an advance, a close approach.

succīdō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus, [sub-caedo], 3. v. a., cut under, cut down.

succīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succeedo.

succumbō, -cumbere, - cubulī, -cubitūrus, [sub-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie down (under), give way, succumb.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursū-

rus, [sub-curro], 3. v. n., rush to support, rush to one’s rescue, run to help, succor.

sūdis, -is, [?] f., a stake.

Suessiones, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of the Belgians between the Marne and the Isère. Their town Noviodunum was later called from them Soissons.

Suēvi (Suēbi), -ōrum, [Teutonic], m. plur., name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians.

Suēvus, -a, -um, [see Suevi], adj., Swabian. — As noun, a Swabian (man or woman).

sufficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [subficio], 3. v. a., make in place of, supply the place of. Hence, suffice, be sufficient, be adequate.

suffrāgium, -ī, [akin to suffringo, break up], n., (a pastern bone, or a potsherd, either used as a ballot), a ballot, vote.

Sugambrī (Sig-), -ōrum, [Teutonic], m., a German tribe between the Sieg and the Lippe.

suggestus, -tūs, [sub-gestus, cf. sugerō], m., (earth brought up), a raised mound, a tribunal, a platform (whence the Roman commander addressed his troops).

sūi (prop. gen. n. of suus), sibi sē, [sva], reflex. pron., himself, etc. — Often to be translated by the personal, he, etc., also each other. — Esp.: inter se, from, with, by, etc., each other; inter esse duos, give each other, exchange; per se, of himself, etc. (without outside influence or excitement); see ipse.
Sulla, -ae, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.


sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, [As, cf. am, is], irr. v. n., be (exist). — Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula). — Phrases: erant duo itinera (there were); sibi esse in animo, that he had in mind, intended; para quae est ad Hispaniam (lies); eorum est, they have; multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged).

summa, -ae, [F. of summus as noun], f., (the top), the sum, the total, the main part: summum rerum, the whole amount; bellum, (the general management, the chief control); imperium, (the chief command); imperium bellicum administrandi (the chief management, etc.); rerum consiliorumque (chief control); summum exercitum, the main body, etc.; summam victoriae, the whole victory.

summus, see superus.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmpstus, [sub-emo, take], 3. v. a., take away, take, get, assume: supplicium de (in)fect, cf. capere; laborem (spend).

sūmpluōsus, -a, -um, [sumptu- + oeus], adj., expensive, costly.

sūmpstus, -tis, [sub-emptus, cf. sumo], m., (a taking out of the stock on hand), expense.

superātus, -a, -um, p.p. of supero.

superbē [old case-form of superbus], adv., haughtily, arrogantly, with arrogance.

superior, see superus.

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [superō-], r. v. a. and n., overtop. Hence, get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive (vita).

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [super-sedeō], 2. v. n., sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [super-sum], irr. v. n., be over and above, remain, survive.

superus, -a, -um, [sub- (st. akin to sub, perh. same) + rus (cf. inferus)], higher, being above (of space only). — Compar. (in wider meanings), superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), past, before, superior, victorious. — Suprl., suprēmus [supra- (?) + imus (?)], highest. — Also, summus [super- + mus], highest, the highest part of, the top of. — Fig., greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent: ab summō, from the top, at the end; summis copiis, with all the forces, in force, with all one's might.

suppetō, -petere, -petīvi, -petītūrus, [sub-peto, aim at], 3. v. n., (? but cf. sufficio and subvenio), be on hand, be supplied, be to be found, hold out.

supplēmentum, -i, [supplē- (as st. of suppleo, fill up) + mentum], n., a supply (to fill up), a reinforcement.

supplex, -icus, [sub-trplex (PLIC
supplicātiō

(sold), as st., cf. duplex], c., a sup-
pliant.

supplicātiō, ōnis, [supplicā- +
tiō], F., a supplication. — Esp., a
thanksgiving (prayer to the gods
upon any signal success, decreed by
the senate).

suppliciter [suppli- (as st. of
supplex) + ter], adv., in the guise
of supplicants, as suppliants.

supplicium, -i, [suppli- (st. of
supplex) + ium], N., a supplication,
a sacrifice. — Also, esp., a punish-
ment (usually of death).

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub-
portō], 1. v. a., bring up, convey,
supply, furnish.

supra [instr. (?) of superus], adv.
and prep. with acc., above, before.

susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of sus-
cipio.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus,
[sub(s)cipio], 3. v. a., take up, take
upon one’s self (sib). assume, under-
take, engage in, undergo.

suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicio.

suspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sus-
picor.

suspicīō, -spicerē, -spēxi, -spectus,
[sub-specio], 3. v. a. and n., look up,
look up at, look askance at. Hence,
suspect: suspecta nobis, an object of
suspicion to us.

suspicīō (-spītīō), ōnis, [sub-

tespecio, cf. suspicio], F., suspicion
an imputation (timoria), an indica-
tion: dabat . . . fugae (endeavor
excite a suspicion); neque abest sus-
picio, and there is a suspicion abro-
not without suspicion.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, [†suspic- (d
as adj., under suspicion.

sustentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sus-
tento.

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub(s)
tento (cf. sustineō)], 1. v. a. and n.
sustain, hold out: bella (hold ou
against); aegro is dies sustentatur
with difficulty they hold out for th
that; pecore famem (keep from star
vation by means of, etc.).

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinūī, -tensus,
sub(s)-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., hold
up under, withstand, endure, hold
out, bear, stop, rein in (horses); sus-
tinere se, stand up.

sustulī, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, [sva + ius, cf. se],
adj. pron. (reflex., referring back to
subject), his, hers, its, theirs, etc. —
Sometimes emphatic, his own, etc.,
sua clementia, his characteristic
clemency. — Often without noun,
sui, their (his) men, countrymen,
their friends; sua, their (his) posses-
sions, their property: se suaque
omnia, themselves and all they had.

T

T., for Titus.

tabernāculum, -i, [taberna- + cu-
lum], N., (a hut of boards), a tent.

tabula, -ae, [†tabā- (TA (stretch)

+ bus?) + la], F., a board. Hence,
a record (written on a board covered
with wax), a document, a list.

tabulātus, -a, -um, [tabulā- (as
taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus, [tacē- (TAC + us)], 2. v. a. and n., be silent, be silent about, keep secret, conceal, say nothing about.—tacitus, p. p. as adj., silent, in silence.

tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. of taceō.

tālea, -ae, [perh. akin to tālus, ankle-bone], F., a rod, a bar.
	tālis, -e, [TA (akin to that) + alia], adj. pron., such, so great.

tam [unc. case of TA (cf. quam, nam)], adv., so (as indicated in the context), so much.
	
tamen [unc. case-form of TA (locat.?)], adv., (introducing a thought opposed to some preceding concession expressed or implied), yet, nevertheless, still, however, for all that, notwithstanding; after all, at least.

Tamesis, -is, [Celtic], M., the Thames.

tametsi, [tamen (or tam ?) -etsi], adv., (still although, anticipating the thought to which tamen properly belongs), although, though.

tandum [tam-dem, cf. idem], adv., (just so, even so ?), at last.—In questions, to add emphasis, pray, tell me, or trans. only by emphasis.

tangō, tangere, tēgī, tāctus, [TAG], 3. v. a., touch, border on.

tantopere, see opus.

tantulus, -a, -um, [tantō- + lus], adj., so small, so little, so trifling.

tantum, see tansus.

tantummodo [tantum modo], adv., (somuch only), only, merely, only just.

tantundem [tantum-dem, cf. idem], adv., just so far.

tantus, -a, -um, [prob. TA + vant (adj. term.) + us], adj., so much, so great, such (of magnitude): tanti est, is of so much weight; tanta exiguitas tempora, so little time.—Esp., so much (and no more), only so much: tantum progradi (so far as).

tantum, n. as adv., only, merely.

Tarbelli, -īrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Aquitania.

tardātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tardō.

tardō [old case-form of tardus], adv., slowly, tardily, with delay.

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [tardō], 1. v. a., retard, check, hinder: Romans ad insequendum (hinder from pursuing, retard the pursuit of, etc.).

tardus, -a, -um, [?], adj., slow, slack, sluggish, without alacrity.

Tarusātēs, -īum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Aquitania.

Tasgetius, -īus, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Carnutes.

taurus, -i, [perh. STAV + rus, akin to steer], M., a bull.

Taximagulus, -īus, [Celtic], M., a prince of Britain.

taxus, -i, [?], F., a yew-tree.—Also, yew (the berries used as poison).

Tectosages, -ūm, [Celtic], M. pl., a branch of the Volcae, which see.

tēctum, -i, [N. p. p. of tego], N., a roof, a house.

tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of tego.

tegimentum (tegus), -i, [tegi- (st. of tego) + mentum], N., a covering.

tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus, [TEG], 3. v. a., cover, thatch, hide, conceal.
tēlum, -i, [2], N., a weapon (of offence), a missile, a javelin, a spear.
temerārius, -a, -um, [tetemēri- + arius], adj., reckless, rash, hasty.
temerē [old case-form of tēmerērus], adv., blindly, without reason, without cause. Hence, recklessly, hастily.
temerītās, -tātis, [tēmerē- (hasty) + tas], F., blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, hasty temper.
tēmō, -onis, [3], M., a pole (of a wagon, etc.).
temperantia, -ae, [temperant- + ia], F., self-control, prudence.
temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tempero.
temperō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [temper- (st. of tempus)], i. v. a., (divide), mix properly. Hence, control, control one's self, refrain, restrain one's self from (quin).—Esp., temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., temperate, mild.
tempestās, -tātis, [tempest- (st. of tempus) + tas], F., a season, weather. —Esp., bad weather, a storm, a tempest.
temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvī, ātus, [tentē-, p. p. of teneo, hold], i. v. a., handle. Hence, try, attempt, make an attempt upon, tempt: iter (try to force).
tempus, -oris, [TEM (cut, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], N., (a cutting).—Esp., a division of time, a time, time (in general), a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis: tam necessario tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; uno tempore, at once; tempore exclusus, cut off by the want of time.
tenčerī (-therī), -ōrum, [Teu-tonic], M. plur., a branch of the Usi-petes, which see.
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsumus (tenitus), [TEN + do (of unc. origin)], 3. v. a., stretch, stretch out. —Esp., stretch a tent, encamp.
tenebrae, -ārum, [?, perh. akin to temere], F. plur., darkness.
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus (?), [teneō- (TEN + us)], 2. v. a., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: circitūs millia (occupy, extend).—Also, restrain, detain: teneere obeidibus (bind); se teneere, remain; memoriæ tenere, remember.
tener, -era, -erum, [TEN + rus], adj., (stretched, thin), delicate, tender, young.
tenuis, -e, [TEN + us, with accidental i, cf. gravis], adj., thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor.
tenuitās, -tātis, [tenui- + tas], F., thinness, weakness, poverty.
tenuiter [tenui- + ter], adv., thinly, slightly.
ter [prob. mutilated case of tres], num. adv., three times, thrice.
teres, -etis, [tere- (as st. of tereo) + tis], adj., (rubbed), smooth and round, tapering.
tergum, -i [4], N., the back: terga vertere, turn and fly; a tergo, in the rear.
terni, -ae, -a, [tri- + nas], distrib. num. adj., three each, three at once.
terra, -ae, [TERS(ī) + a, cf. torreo, dry up], F., (the dry land), the earth, the land. —Also, a land, a
Terrasidius. — Also, the ground. — Plur., the world.

Terrasidius, -i, [Celtic], m., a Roman gentile (?) name. — Esp., Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune in Cæsar’s army.

Terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra- (as if terrē-) + nus], adj., of earth.

Terrēs, terrēre, terrui, territus, [†terrē- (?)], 2. v. a., frighten, alarm, frighten off, deter.

Territō, -āre, no perf. or p. p., [terrītō-], i. v. a., frighten: metu (alarm with fears, keep alarmed).

teror, -ōris, [terr + or], m., fright, alarm, terror, dread, panic.

tertius, -a, -um, [prob. tri- + tus], num. adj., third (in order); pars (one-third).

testamentum, ĕ, [testē- (witness) + mentum], n., a will.

testimōnium, -i, [testī- + monium], n., proof, evidence.

testis, -is, [?] c., a witness.

testūdō, -inis, [testē- (akin to testa, tile) + do], f., a tortoise. — Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another). — Also, a shelter (a small roof over attacking soldiers).

Teutomatus, -i, [Celtic], m., a king of the Nitiobriges.

Teutones, -um, (-i, -ōrum), [Teutonic], m. plur., a great German people in Jutland who overran Gaul in B.C. 113 along with the Cimbri. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquae Sextiae (Aix).

tignum, -i, [?] n., a log, a timber, a pile.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Tigurini. — M. pl., the Tigurini, a canton or division of the Helvetii.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., [†timō- (cf. timidus)], 2. v. a. and n., be afraid, fear. — With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear); timentes, as noun, the timid, the fearful.

timidē [old case-form of timidus], adv., with timidity: non timide, fearlessly.

timidus, -a, -um, [†timō- (cf. timeo) + duō], adj., cowardly, frightened, timid.

timor, -ōris, [tim- (cf. timeo) + or], m., alarm, fear, dread.

Titūrius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Titūrius Sabinus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Titus, -i, [?], m., a Roman praenomen.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†toler- (tol + us)], i. v. a. and n., (raise up), bear, endure, hold out, support: famem (keep from starvation).

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus, [tol], 3. v. a., raise, carry, carry off. Hence, remove, take away, destroy: conloquium (break off). — Esp., sublātus, -a, -um, p. p., elated.

Tolossa, -ae, [Celtic], f., Toulouse, a city of the Volcae Tectosages.

Tolosas, -ium, [Tolosa- + tie], m. plur., the people of Toulouse.

torrentum, -i, [torqu + mentum], n., (means of twisting), torture.

— Also, an engine (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, a shot from an engine, a missile.

torreo, torrēre, torrui, tostus,
[torrō- (cf. torrus, firebrand)], 2. v. a., scorch, burn.

tot [TA + ti], indecl. adj., so many.

totidem [toti- (cf. tot) + dem], indecl. adj., just as many, as many, the same number.

tōtus, -a, -um, [TA + tūs], adj., the whole, the whole of, all, entire.— Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout.

trābs (trabēs), trabis, [?], F., a beam, a timber.

trāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of traho.

trāditus, -a, -um, p. p. of trado.

trādō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītus, [trans-dō], 3. v. a., hand over, give up, give over, deliver up, surrender, commend, recommend.— Also, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate.

trāducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [trans-duco], 3. v. a., lead over (with two accusatives), lead across, bring over, lead through, transport, draw over, win over, transfer, lead (along).

trāgula, -ae, [?], F., a javelin (perh. with a barb, like a boat-hook) used by the Gauls.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [trah (for †tragh)], 3. v. a., drag, drag along, draw in.

trāció, -icere, -ićī, -ictus, [trans-iclo], 3. v. a., throw across, throw over.— Also, strike through, transfix, pierce.

trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of tracio.

trāiectus, -ītus, [trans-ictus, cf. tracio], m., (a throwing across), a passage, a route.

trānō, āre, āvī, -ātus, [trans-no], 1. v. a. and n., swim across.

tranquillitās, -tātis, [tranquillō + tas], F., stillness, calm.

trāns [?], akin to terebra, auger], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of.— In comp., over, across, through.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, [trans-Alpes + inus], adj., Transalpine (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensūrus, [trans-scando], 3. v. n., climb across, board (ships).

trānsducō, see traduco.

trānseo, -re, -ii, -itus, [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., go across, cross, pass over, go over, pass through, pass, migrate, pass by.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tullī, -lātus, [trans-fero], irr. v. a., carry over, transfer, change the place of: ad se bellum (direct against, transferring from somewhere else).

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [trans-figo], 3. v. a., pierce through.

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdiō, -fossus, [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., dig through.— Also, pierce through, wound (by stabbing).

trānsgregō, -grediō, -gressus, [trans-gradiō], 3. v. dep., step across, step over, cross.

trānsgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of trānsgregō.

trānsitus, -tūs, [trans-itus, cf. transeo], m., a crossing: difficult transitu, of difficult passage, difficult to cross.

trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transfero.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, [trans-mare (sea) + inus], adj., foreign.
transmissus, -ūs, [trans-missus, cf. transmittō], m., a crossing, a distance across: pari spatio transmissus, with a passage of the same length.

transmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of transmittō.

transmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [trans-mittō], 3. v. a., send over.

transportātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transporto.

transportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [transporto], 1. v. a., bring over (with two accusatives), transport, carry over: milites navibus transportari (were crossing, being taken over).

Transrhēnānus, -a, -um, [trans-Rhenum + anus], adj., living across the Rhine.—Plur. as noun, the people across the Rhine.

transstrum, -i, [trans (trant-?) + trum], n., a thwart, cross-beam.

transversus, -a, -um, [p. p. of transverto], as adj., across, athwart, oblique, transverse: fossa (a cross-ditch).

Trebius, -i, [T?], m., a Roman gentile name. — See Gallus.

Trebonius, -i, [T?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Exp., Gaius Trebonius: 1, a Roman knight; 2, a legatus in Cæsar’s army.

trecentī, -ae, -a, [tri-centum], num. adj., three hundred.

tredecim [tres-decem], indecl. num. adj., thirteen.

trepidūs, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [trepidō-], 1. v. n., bustle about, hurry: totis trepidatur castra, there is a bustle throughout the camp.

trēs, tria, gen. trium, [st. tri-], num. adj., three.

Trēverī (-virī), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle. Sing., Trevir.

Trīboeces, -um (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg.

tribūnus, -i, [tribu-+ nus], m., (a chief of a tribe). With or without plebis, a tribune (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons). — With militum or militaris, a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune.

tribūu, -vere, -uī, -utus, [tribu-], 3. v. a., (distribute by tribes), distribute. Hence, grant, render, assign, attribute: tantum dignitatis (pay such respect); magnopere virtutī (attribute it so very much to valor); rei publicae (grant out of regard to); plus libertātī (have more regard for).

tribūtum, -i, [N. p. p. of tribuo], N., a tribute.

trīduum, -i, [tri-+ st. akin to dies, cf. biduum], N., three days’ time, three days.

trīennium, -i, [trienni- (tri-annus) + ium], N., three years.

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty.

trīnī, -ae, -a, [tri-+ nus], distrib. num. adj., three each, three sets of, three (of things in sets).

Trinobantes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester.

tripartitus (tripert-), -a, -um.
triplus, -a, -um, [tri-pletas ( Sprint as st.)], adj., threefold: acies (in three divisions or lines), triple.

triestis, -e, [unc. root + tia], adj., sad, gloomy, depressed.

triestita, -ae, [triesti- + tia], F., sadness, a gloomy state (of mind).

truncus, -i, [ ?], M., a trunk.

tū, tuī, [TVa], plur. vōs [va], pron. 2d person, you (sing.); you (plur.).

tuba, -ae, [ ?], F., a trumpet (a straight instrument for infantry).

tueor, tuērē, tūtus (tuitus), [ ?, 2. v. dep., watch, guard, protect. See also tūtus.

tuli, perf. of fero.

Tulingi, -orum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe.

Tullius, -i, [Tullo- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — See Cicero.

Tullus, -ī, [?), M., a Roman family name. — See Volcius.

theum [prob. acc. of tēa], adv., then (at a time indicated by the context), at this time: cum . . . tum, see cum; tum vero (then, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative); tum maxime, just then, but especially.

tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus, [tumultu-], I. v. dep., make an uproar. — As impersonal, there is an uproar.

tumultuōsē [old case-form of tumultuosus], adv., with disorder, noisily.

tumultus, -tūs, [tumulo- (perh. reduced) + tus], M., (a swelling, an uprising?), an uproar, confusion, a commotion. — Esp, an uprising, a commotion (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared). — See servilis.

tumulus, -i, [tumulo- (whence tumeō, swell + ius], M., (a swelling?), a hill, a mound.

tunc [tum-ce, cf. hic], adj., just then, then, at that time.

turma, -ae, [tur (cf. turba, turbo) + ma], F., (a throng?), a squadron, a troop (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Tvirones, -um (-i, -orum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Their city became afterwards Tours.

turpis, -e, [ ?], adj., ugly (in appearance). Hence, becoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable.

turpiter [turpi- + ter], adv. dishonorably: turpiter factum, an inglorious deed.

turpitūdō, -inis, [turpi- + tudo], F., baseness. Hence, disgrace.

turris, -is, [ ?], F., a tower.

tūtō [old case-form of tutus], adv., safely, with safety.

tūtus, -a, -um, [p. p. of tueor], as adj., protected, safe, secure: victis nihil tutum, no safety for the conquered. — tūtō, abl. as adv., in safety, safely.

tuus, -a, -um, [TVa + ius], adj. pron., your, yours.
ubi [supposed to be quō (dat. of quō) + bi], adv., where, in which:  
ubi ubi, in the place where. — Also,  
of time, when:  ubi primum, as soon as.

Ubilī, -ōrum, [Teutonic], m. plur.,  
a German tribe on the Rhine, opposi-  
te Cologne, near which city they  
were afterwards settled.

ubique [ubi-que, cf. quiesque],  
adv., everywhere, anywhere.

ulciscor, ulciscis, ultus, [?], 3. v.  
dep., punish (an injury, or the doer),  
avenge (an injury), take vengeance (absolutely).

ūllus, -a, -um; gen. -ius, [unō- +  
lus], adj., a single (with negatives),  
any. — As noun (less common),  
anybody, any one.

ulterior, -us, -ōris, [comp. of  
ulterō-, cf. ultra], adj., farther, more  
remote: uteriores, those farther off.  
— Superl., ultimus, -a, -um, [ul- +  
timus], farthest: ultimi, those in the  
rear.

ultrā [unc. case, perh. instr., of  
ūlter], adv. and prep. with acc.,  
beyond.

ultrō [dat. of ālter (us)], adv.,  
to the farther side, beyond:  
ultra citroque, this way and that, back and  
forth. — Esp. beyond what is  
expected or required, voluntarily,  
without provocation, freely, besides:  
sibi par cere cogi (in spite of himself);  
ad se venire (without his asking it).

ultus, -a, -um, p. p. of ulciscor.

ululātus, -tūs, [ululā- (yell) +  
tus], m., a yell, a loud cry.

umerus, -I, [?], m., the shoulder.

umquam (unquam), [supposed to  
be for cum-quam (cf. quisquam)],  
adv. (with neg.), ever: neque . . .  
umquam, and never.

ūnā, [instr. (or abl.?) of unus],  
adv., together, along with them, etc.,  
at the same time, in the same place,  
also.

unde [supposed to be for from  
cume (cum, cf. umquam, + de, cf. inde)],  
adv., whence, from which.

undecim [unos-decem], indecl.  
um. adj., eleven.

undecimus, -a, -um, [unos-dece-  
mus], num. adj., eleventh.

undique [unde-que, cf. quique],  
adv., from every side, from all quar-  
ters. — Also (cf. ab), on every side.

universus, -a, -um, [unō-versus],  
adj., all together, all (in a mass),  
entire.

ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -ius, [?], old  
oenus], adj., one, a single, the same,  
one (as adv.): una celeritate  
(alone); unum se esse, that he was  
the only one; ad unum, to a man.

urbānus, -a, -um, [urbi- (reduced)  
+ anus], adj., of a city. — Esp., of  
the city (Rome), in the city.

urbs, urbis, [?], f., a city. — Esp.,  
the city (Rome).

urgeō (urgueō), urgeère, ursī, no  
a., press, press hard, urge.

ūrus, -I, [Teutonic], m., a wild ox.  
Usipetes, -um, [Teutonic], m. pl.,  
a German tribe who migrated from  
eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.
úsitátus, -a, -um, p. p. of usitor.

úsitor, ārī, ātus, [úsitā- (as if p. p. of úso, freq. of utor)], r. v.
dep., practise. — úsitátus, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, used, practised,
customary, much practised.

úsque [unc. case of quō (cf. usquam) -que (cf. quisque)], adv.,
(everywhere), all the way, even to, to
that degree (with eo ut), all the time,
till, even till.

úsus, -a, -um, p. p. of útor.

úsus, -úsis, [út (in utor) + tus],
m., use, practice, experience. Hence, 
advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est,
it is necessary, there is need, is necessary
(with personal subject); also,
ex usu, usu, of advantage, of service,
advantageous, to the advantage; usu
venire, happen, occur, turn out, come
to pass (on trial, in practice); usu
navium eripi, be deprived of all use
of the ships; quae sunt usu, which
are serviceable, are needed, are of
use.

út (útī), [supposed to be for
quoti (quō- + tī?)]], adv. and conj.:
a. Interrog., how? — b. Rel., as, so
as, when, inasmuch as, considering
that it was. — Esp. with subjv., that,
in order that, to, so that, so as to,
although, granting that. — Often with
object-clause compressed in Eng.
into some other form of speech:
poenam ut, etc. (of being), etc.; id
facere ut, do this, namely. — Esp.:
ut semel, when once, as soon as;
timere ut, fear that not; ut quisque
est... ita (in proportion as).

úter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trūs [quō
(cf. ubi) + terus (reduced), cf. alter],
adj.: a. Interrog., which (of two)?:
úter utri, which to the other. — b.
Relative, whichever (of two), the
one who (of two). — Neut., utrum,
adv., (which of the two), whether.

úterque, utra, utrum; gen. utrius,
[uter-que, cf. quisque], adj., both:
medium utriusque, between the two.
— Plur., of sets: utraque castra,
both camps; utrique, both parties. —
Rarely of single things: utraque,
both women.

útī, see ut.

útilīs, -e, [útī- (st. akin to utor)
+ īs], adj., useful, of use, helpful.

útilitas, -tātis, [útīll- + tas], f.,
advantage, benefit, service.

útor, útī, úsus, [ʔ], old oetor,
akin to aveo?], 3. v. dep., avail
one’s self of, use, exercise, practise,
enjoy, adopt, employ, have (in sense
of enjoy or employ), possess, show
(qualities which one exercises),
occupy (a town), navigate (a sea):
pace (remain at peace). — Esp. with
two nouns, employ as, have as, and
the like: aliquo adiutore (have one’s
services). — usus, p. p., often merely
with.

útrimque [unc. case of uter (cf.
interim) + que (cf. quisque)], adv.,
on both sides.

útrum, see uter.

uxor, -ōris, [ʔ], f., a wife.
V, for quinque, five.

Vacalus, -i, [?], m., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

Vacaëios, -onis, [vacæ- + tio], f., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity.

Vacō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [prob. *vacō- (cf. vacuus)], i. v. n., be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste.

Vacuus, -a, -um, [prob. vac (empty) + vus], adj., free, unoccupied, vacant, destitute of (ab or abl.).

Vadum, -i, [VAD (in vado, go) + um], n., a ford.—Plur., a ford, shoals, shallows: vado, by fording.

Vagātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vagor.

Vagina, -ae, [?], f., a sheath.

Vagor, -āri, -ātus, [vagō-, roving], i. v. dep., roam about, roam, wander.

Valēs, valēre, valūi, valītūrus, [?], prob. denominative, cf. validus, strong], 2. v. n., be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful.—Often with N. pron. or adj. as cog. acc.: plurimum valere, be very strong, have great weight, have great influence; minus valet, is not very strong; quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent, whatever strength they have is in infantry; tantum valebat, had such weight; pudor valet, self-respect controls.

Valerius, -i, [akin to valeo], m., a Roman gentle name.—Esp. : i. Gaius Valerius Flaccus, proprætor in Gaul, B.C. 83.—2. Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a legatus under some unknown proprætor in Gaul. He was defeated and killed in Aquitania.—3. Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul who received the Roman citizenship prob. from No. 1.—4. Gaius Valerius Procilius, and (5) Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus, sons of No. 3, who fought for Caesar in the war against Vercingetorix.

Valetiæus, -i, [?], m., a noble of the Hœdui.

Valētūdō, -inis, [prob. valent- + tudo], f., health.—Also, ill health.

Vallēs, -is, [?], f., a valley.

Vāllum, -i, [N. of vallus], n., a palisade, a rampart (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), a wall.

Vallus, -i, [?], m., a stake.

Vangiones, -um, [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms.

Varietās, -tātis, [variō- + tas], f., diversity, variety: pellium (different colors).

Varius, -a, -um, [prob. akin to várus, bent], adj., various, diverse.

Vāstātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vasto.

Vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vastō-], i. v. a., lay waste, devastate, ravage.

Vāstus, -a, -um, [?], adj., waste.—Also, immense, vast.

Vāticinātiō, -onis, [vaticinā- (foretell) + tio], f., divination.

-Ve [?], conj. enclit., or.

Vectigal, -ālis, [N. of vectigalis], n., an impost, tribute.—Plur., revenues (of a state).
vectigális, -e, [†vectigō- (vectis, akin to veho, + unc. term., cf. castigo) + alia], adj., tributary: vectigális habent, make tributary.

vectórius, -a, -um, [vector- (cf. veho, carry) + inus], adj., carrying: navigia (transporti).

vehementer [vehement- (violent) + ter], adv., violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly.

vel [prob. imperat. of volo, wish], conj., or: vel ... vel, either ... or. — As adv., even.

Velānius, -i, [?), m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Velānius, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar’s army.

Veliocassēs, -ium, (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -i, [Celtic], n., a town of the Senones.

Vellāvi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of Gaul in the Cevennes mountains.

vēlōcitās, -tātis, [veloci- + tas], F., swiftness, fleetness, speed.

vēlōciter [veloci- + ter], adv., swiftly, quickly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, [st. akin to volo (cf. colonus) + cus (reduced?)], adj., swift, quick.

vēlum, -i, [?], cf. vexillum], n., a curtain, a veil. — Also, a sail.

velut [vel-ut], adv., even as, just as:

velut si, just as if, as if, no less than if.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [venā- (hunt) + tio], F., hunting, the chase. — Plur., hunting, hunting excursions.

vēnātor, -ōris, [venā- (hunt) + tor], m., a hunter.

vĕndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [venum de], 3. v. a., put to sale, sell.

Venelli (Unelli), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.

Venētī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetiā, ae, [venetī- + ia (f. of -ius)], F., the territory of the Veneti.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [Venetī- + cus], adj., of the Veneti.

venia, -ae, [?], F., indulgence, favor, pardon: potentibus veniam dare, grant their request.

venīō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, [gām (for gvenio)], 4. v. n., come, go: in spem (have hopes). — See also usu.

ventītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [as if ventītō- (from ventō, old freq. of venio)], 1. v. n., come often, visit.

ventus, -i, [?], m., the wind: vento se dare, run before the wind.

vēr, vēris, [for tvasar, vas, burn], N., spring.

Veragri, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic people of the Alps, on the upper Rhone.

Verbigenus, -i, [Celtic], m., a canton of the Helvetii.

verbūm, -i, [?], cf. morbus], n., a word: pluribus verbis, at great length; animos verbi confirmavit (with encouraging words); facit verba, speak for, etc.; magna contumelia verborum, with most insulting words.

Vercassivellaunus, -i, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, the uncle of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix, -īgis, [Celtic], m., a noble of the Arverni. Being
chosen king, he made a stout resistance to Cæsar, but was finally overpowered by the Romans and surrendered by his followers.

vereor, -erē, -ētus, [prob. †verō-(akin to wary)], 2. v. dep., fear, be afraid, dreaded. — veritus, p. p. in pres. sense, fearing.

vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?], 3. v. n., incline, slope, look towards (of an exposure), lie towards.

vergobretus, -i, [Celtic], m., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Arverni.

verisimilis, -e, [veri similis], adj., (like the truth), probable, likely.

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor.

vērō [abl. of vērus], adv., in truth, in fact, certainly. — With weakened force, but, on the other hand, however. — Often untranslatable, expressing an intensive (emphatic) opposition, or pointing to the main time, circumstance, fact, or agent in a narrative.

versō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [verō-], 1. v. a., turn (this way and that), deal with (some one or something). — Esp. in pass. as dep., turn one's self, engage in, be, fight (as indicated by the context).

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of verō.

versus (versum), [orig. p. p. of verō], adv. and prep. with acc., towards, in the direction of: quoque versus (or as one word), in every direction, all about.

versus, -ūs, [vert + tus], m., a turning. — Esp., a verse (of poetry, where the rhythm turns and begins anew), a line.

Verticō, -ōnis, [Celtic], m., one of the Nervii.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, [vertī], 3. v. a., turn: terga (turn and face).

Verudoctius, -i, [Celtic], m., a noble of the Helvetii.

vērus, -a, -um, [?, ver (in vereor) + us], adj., (? seen, visible), true. — Neut. as noun, the truth: repperit esse vera, found the truth to be. — Also, just, right. — See also vero.

verūtum, -i, [veru (a spit) + tum], n., a spear (of a light kind), a dart.

Vesontiō, -onis, [Celtic], m., the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon.

vesper, -erē, [?], m., the evening.

vester, -tra, -trum, [ves- + ter (us)], poss. adj. pron., your, yours.

vestigium, -i, [vestīgō- (cf. vestigo) + tum], n., the footprint, the footprint, a track. — Esp.: e vestigio, forthwith (from one's tracks!); eodem vestigio, in the same spot; in illo vestigio temporis, at that instant of time.

vestīs, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -ītus, [vesti-], 4. v. a., clothe, cover. — Pass., clothe one's self with (with thing in abl.), wear.

vestīs, -is, [ves (cover) + tis], f., clothing, garments.

vestitus, -tūs, [vesti- + tus], m., clothing, garments.

veterānus, -a, -um, [veterā- (as if st. of vetero) + nus], adj., veteran (long in service).

vetō, vetāre, vetūl, vetitus, [st. akin to vetus], 1. v. a., forbid.
vetus, -eris, [?] adj., old, former, of long standing: miles (old soldiers, veterans).

vexátus, -a, -um, p. p. of vexo.

véxillum, -i, [?], apparently a dim. of veum, N., a flag: sub vexillo, in a detachment, without any signa, which were carried only in the regular corps.

vexó, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [āvexō- (as if p. p. of vehō)], I. v. a., (carry this way and that), harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun (a country), ravage (lands).

via, -ae, [for veha? (veh- + a)], F., a road, a way, a route, a march: tridui viam, three days' journey.

vīátor, -tōris, [vīā- (as st. of vīo) + tor], M., a traveller.

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, [akin to viginti], distrib. num. adj., twenty (apiece).

vīcēsimus, -a, -um [akin to vīginti], num. adj., twentieth.

vīciēs (ēna), [akin to viginti], num. adv., twenty times: vices centum milia passuum, two thousand miles.

vīcinitās, -tās, [vīcināb- (neighboring) + tas], F., neighborhood, vicinity. — Plur. neighbors.

vicius, gen. (nom. not found), change, turn: in vicem, in turn.

victima, -ae, [akin to vinco, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], F., a victim, a sacrifice.

victor, -tōris, [vīc (in vinco) + tor], M., a victor. — Often as adj., victorious, triumphant.

victōria, -ae, [victor- + ia], F., victory, success (in war).

victus, -ātus, [VIC (?), (cf. vixi) + tus], M., living, life. — Also, means of living, food: domus victusque, intercourse, life in common.

vicus, -i, [VIC (enter) + us], M., (a dwelling), a village (a collection of dwellings).

videō, vidère, vidi, vīsus, [VID, perh. through a noun-st.], 2. v. a., see, observe, examine (reconnoitre), take care (see that). — In pass., be seen, appear, seem, seem best.

Vienna, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, [vigil- (awake) + ia], F., a watch, watching. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and reckoned the time thereby.

viginti [dvē- (st. of duo) + form akin to centum (perh. the same)], indecl. num. adj., twenty.

vīmen, -inis, [root (or st.) vi (twine) + men], N., a twig (flexible, for weaving), osier.

vincīō, vincère, vinnĭō, vinctus, [perh. akin to vinco], 4. v. a., bind, fetter.

vincō, vincere, vici, victus, [VIC], 3. v. a. and n., conquer, defeat, prevail: naturam (outdo).

vinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of vincio.

vinculum (vinculum), -i, [tvincō- (st. akin to vincio, perh. primitive of it) + lum (N. of lus)], N., a chain: ex vinculis, in chains; see ex: in vincula, into prison, into confinement.

vindicō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [vindic-, defender], 1. v. a., claim, claim one's rights against, defend: in aliquem (punish); Galliām in libertātem
vinea -ae, [vinō- + ea (f. of -eus)], F., a vineyard, a vine arbor. Hence, a shed (defence, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).

vinum, -i, [?], N., wine.

violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], i. v. a., abuse, violate (a sacred object), lay waste: hospites (injure, a guest being held sacred).

vir, virī, [?], M., a man, a husband.

virēs, see vis.

virgō, -inis, [?], F., a maiden, a maid, a virgin.

virgultum, -i, [virgula- (?)+ tum, cf. tumultus], N., only in pl., shrubbery, a thicket, bushes (cut for military purposes).

Viridomārus, -i, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Hœdui.

Viridovix, -icis, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Venelli.

virītim [vir + itim, as if acc. of verbal in -tis], adv., man by man (of distribution), to each individual.

Viromandūi, -īrum, [Celtic], M., plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.

virtus, -tūtis, [vir- (reduced) + tus], F., manliness, valor, prowess, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtus: virtute (with gen.), thanks to. — Plur., virtues, merits, good qualities.

vis, vis (?), [?], F., force, might, violence. — Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere, use violence; vim hostium prohibere (violent attack); vi fluminis oppressi, overcome by the

violent current. — Plur., strength, force, powers, bodily vigor.

visus, -a, -um, p. p. of video.

vīta, -ae, [root of vivo + ta], F., life, the course of life.

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], vita-?], i. v. a., (escape with life, live through ?), escape, avoid, dodge.

vitrum, -i, [?], N., wood (a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue).

vivō, vivere, vivī, victus, [vic (vigor?), cf. victus], 3. v. n., live: lacte (live on).

vivus, -a, -um, [vigor (?) + us], adj., alive, living.

vix [poss. vic (in vinco)], adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely. — Also, of time, hardly (... when).

Vocātēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

Voccō, -onis, [Celtic], M., a king of Noricum.

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [voc- (st. of vox)], i. v. a., call by name, call, summon, invite.

Vocontii, -orum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe between the Isère and the Durance.

Volcae, -ārum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province. — See Tectosages and Arecomici.

Volcānus (Vul-), -i, [?], M., Vulcana (the god of fire and metals).

Volcātius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Volciatus Tullus, a young man in Cæsar’s suite.

volgus (vul-), -i, [volg (press) + us], N., the crowd, the common people, the mass: in volgus effere,
be spread abroad; militum (the common soldiers, the army). — vol-
gō, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere.

volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vol-
nero.

volnerō (vul-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [volner-], i. v. a., wound, hurt.

volnus (vul-), -eris, [prob. akin to vello, pluck], n., a wound.

volō, velle, voluī, [vol], irr. v. a. and n., wish, be willing, want: velle aliquem aliquid, want one for anything, want anything of one; quid sibi vellent, what they wanted, or meant, or intended to do, what business they had.

voltus (vul-), -tūs, [vol + tus], m., (wish, expression of counten-
ance), look, countenance, face: vol-
tūs fingere, compose one's counten-
ance, conceal one's feelings; alcius volutum ferre, dare to look in one's face.

voluntārius, -a, -um, [volent- (p. of volo) + arius], adj., voluntary.
— As noun, a volunteer.

voluntās, -tātis, [volent- (p. of volo) + tas], f., willingness, good-
will, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination: voluntates alienare (good-will).

voluptās, -tātis, [volup- (akin to volo) + tas], f., pleasure, delight.

Volusēnus, -i, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Gaius Volu-
seanus Quadratus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

Vorēnus, -i, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Vore-
nus, a centurion of Cæsar's army.

vōs, see tu.

Vosegus, -i, [Celtic], m., the Vosges Mountains, running north-
erly from the Jura along the Rhine.

voveō, vovēre, vōvi, vōitus, [?], 2. v. a., vow, make a vow.

vōx, vōcis, [voc as st.], f., a voice, a word, an expression, a shout. — Collectively, cries, words, talk. — Plur., talk, reports: nulla vox au-
dita (not a word); militum vocibus carpi (taunts); concursu ac vocibus cogi (outcries).

X, for decem, ten.

XX, for vigintī, twenty.
To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10 N—6 48